

How To Learn Astrology

# **How To Learn Astrology**

**By  
Michael Erlewine**

# How To Learn Astrology

An ebook from  
Startypes.com  
315 Marion Avenue  
Big Rapids, Michigan 49307  
First published 2006  
©2006 Michael Erlewine

ISBN 978-0-9794970-2-5

All rights reserved. No part of the publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior permission of the publisher.

Some images © 2007 JupiterImages Corporation

Cover photo by Margaret Erlewine.

Photos are mostly by Margaret Erlewine. Some are by Michael Erlewine or Kate White.

# How To Learn Astrology

**This book is dedicated to  
Margaret Erlewine**

## ***Table of Contents***

<b>Table of Contents .....</b>	<b>5</b>
Greetings!.....	29
Celestial Influences .....	30
Astrology Not a Matter of Faith.....	31
What This Course Offers .....	33
Learn To Read Natal Charts .....	34
Examine Your Relationships .....	35
Determine Career Moves .....	37
Living with Astrology.....	38
Getting Your Forecast .....	38
How Best to Use This Course .....	40
Astrology Now .....	40
The Study of Cycles .....	43
Life As Cycles .....	44
The Tangle of Cycles .....	46
The Straighter The Line.....	47
<b>The Houses.....</b>	<b>50</b>
The Houses.....	50
What Are Houses? .....	51
Houses Are Three Dimensional .....	52
House Cusps.....	53
Why Houses Are Important .....	54
The Meaning of the Twelve Houses .....	56
<b>House Keywords .....</b>	<b>57</b>
First House Keywords .....	58
Second House Keywords .....	59
Third House Keywords .....	60
Fourth House Keywords.....	61
Fifth House Keywords .....	62
Sixth House Keywords .....	63
Seventh House Keywords .....	64
Eighth House Keywords .....	65
Ninth House Keywords.....	66
Tenth House Keywords.....	67

## How To Learn Astrology

Eleventh House Keywords .....	68
Twelfth House Keywords.....	69
<b>Houses Interpretations .....</b>	<b>70</b>
First House: Interpretation.....	70
Second House: Interpretation.....	71
Third House: Interpretation.....	72
Fourth House: Interpretation .....	73
Fifth House: Interpretation.....	74
Sixth House: Interpretation.....	75
Seventh House: Interpretation.....	76
Eighth House: Interpretation.....	77
Ninth House: Interpretation .....	78
Tenth House: Interpretation.....	79
Eleventh House: Interpretation .....	80
Twelfth House: Interpretation .....	81
<b>Signs Interpretations .....</b>	<b>82</b>
Aries .....	83
Taurus .....	84
Gemini.....	85
Cancer.....	86
Leo .....	87
Virgo.....	88
Libra .....	89
Scorpio .....	90
Capricorn.....	92
Aquarius .....	93
Pisces.....	94
<b>Zodiac: Keywords .....</b>	<b>95</b>
Aries .....	96
Taurus .....	97
Gemini.....	98
Cancer.....	99
Leo .....	100
Virgo.....	101
Libra .....	102
Scorpio .....	103

## How To Learn Astrology

Sagittarius .....	104
Capricorn.....	105
Aquarius .....	106
Pisces.....	107
<b>Cycles and Signs .....</b>	<b>108</b>
What's Your Sun Sign? .....	110
Different Sun Signs .....	111
Learning the Signs .....	112
<b>Zodiac Cycles .....</b>	<b>113</b>
Capricorn.....	114
Aquarius .....	115
Pisces.....	116
Aries Phase.....	117
Taurus Phase.....	118
Gemini.....	119
Cancer.....	120
Leo .....	121
Virgo.....	122
Libra .....	123
Scorpio .....	124
Sagittarius .....	125
The Familiar Sun Signs .....	126
Sun Sign Dates .....	127
Visualizing Your Sun Sign .....	128
Sun Sign Astrology Works.....	130
The Sun is the Self .....	132
Rote Memorization .....	134
The Point of No Return.....	
<b>Zodiac Correspondences .....</b>	<b>135</b>
Aries .....	137
Taurus .....	142
Gemini.....	147
Cancer.....	152
Leo .....	157
Virgo.....	162
Libra .....	167

## How To Learn Astrology

Scorpio .....	172
Sagittarius .....	177
Capricorn.....	182
Aquarius .....	187
Pisces.....	192
<b>Correspondences Part 1 .....</b>	<b>197</b>
Gender .....	197
Positive/Negative .....	198
Month .....	199
Day of Week.....	200
Phrase.....	201
Keyword .....	202
Tendency .....	203
12 Phases .....	204
Critical Degrees.....	205
House.....	206
Quadruplicities .....	207
Quadruplicity .....	208
Triplicities .....	209
Triplicities 2 .....	210
Triplicities 3 .....	211
Triplicities 4 .....	212
Triplicities 5 .....	213
<b>Correspondences Part 2 .....</b>	<b>213</b>
Number .....	215
Color.....	216
King's Color Scale 6 .....	217
Perfume.....	218
Animals .....	219
Plants .....	220
Gems.....	221
Metal .....	222
Mineral Salts .....	223
Music Key.....	224
Musical Tone.....	225
Nature Spirits .....	226

## How To Learn Astrology

Four Animal Types .....	227
Bestial/Bi-Corporal .....	228
Ruminant Signs .....	229
Ascension.....	230
Nocturnal/Diurnal .....	231
Ascending/Descending.....	232
Aestival/Hyemal .....	233
Tropical Equinoctial .....	234
Temperaments .....	235
Body Part .....	236
Disease .....	237
Apostle .....	238
Evangelist.....	239
4 Consecrated Beings .....	240
Infernal River .....	241
Hindu Deities.....	242
40 Buddhist Meditations .....	243
4 Divisions Pranava Vada .....	244
Greek Deities .....	245
Egyptian Deities .....	246
Roman Deities.....	247
Ruling Planet.....	248
Detriment.....	249
Exalted .....	250
Fall .....	251
Lineal figure.....	252
Path on the Tree of Life.....	253
Path Title .....	254
Qliphotic Name.....	255
Sephirotic Number.....	256
Hebrew Letter.....	257
12 Tribes of Israel.....	258
12 Prophets.....	259
Jewish Calendar.....	260
Order of Blessed Spirits .....	261
Angel .....	262

## How To Learn Astrology

Elemental Ruler.....	263
Four Angels.....	264
Hierarchy.....	265
Alice Bailey.....	266
Realm.....	267
12 Degrees of the Damned .....	268
Magical Powers.....	269
Magical Weapons.....	270
Legendary Order of Beings .....	271
Vegetable Drugs .....	272
Tarot Trump .....	273
Tarot Design.....	274
Tarot Trump Title.....	276
Fortunate/Unfortunate .....	278
Commanding/Obeying 4.....	279
Affinities.....	280
Barren/Fruitful .....	281
Bitter/Sweet.....	282
Whole/Broken.....	283
Hot/Cold .....	284
Conceptive .....	285
Crooked.....	286
Dry/Moist .....	287
Hoarse/Mute.....	288
Violent Signs .....	289
Vital Signs .....	290
Voice Signs .....	291
Whole Signs .....	292
Boreal Signs.....	293
Changeable (East Side of Chart) .....	294
Changeable (West Side of Chart) .....	295
Brutish.....	296
Beholding Signs .....	297
Imperfect Signs .....	298
Initiating Signs.....	299
<b>Planets Introduction.....</b>	<b>300</b>

## How To Learn Astrology

A Working System.....	301
The Planets.....	303
The Lights.....	304
The Sun.....	306
The Moon.....	307
The Major or External Planets.....	308
Mars.....	309
Jupiter.....	310
Saturn.....	311
Putting It All Together.....	312
<b>The Inner is the Key to the Outer.....</b>	<b>312</b>
The Inner is the Key to the Outer.....	313
Jupiter is the Life Path.....	314
Earth and the Inner Planets.....	315
The Earth/Sun.....	316
The Key to Mars is Earth.....	317
The Key to Earth is Venus.....	318
The Key to Venus is Mercury.....	319
The Sun as Key.....	320
<b>Planet Interpretations.....</b>	<b>321</b>
The Sun.....	322
The Moon.....	323
Mercury.....	324
Venus.....	325
Mars.....	326
Jupiter.....	327
Saturn.....	328
Uranus.....	329
Neptune.....	330
Pluto.....	331
<b>Planets: Meaning.....</b>	<b>332</b>
The Sun.....	333
The Moon.....	334
Mercury.....	335
Venus.....	336
Mars.....	337

## How To Learn Astrology

Jupiter .....	338
Saturn.....	339
Uranus.....	340
Neptune/.....	341
Pluto/ .....	342
<b>Planet Interpretations .....</b>	<b>343</b>
The Sun.....	344
The Moon .....	345
Mercury .....	346
Venus.....	347
Mars .....	348
Jupiter .....	349
Saturn.....	350
Uranus.....	351
Neptune.....	352
Pluto .....	353
North Node.....	354
Ascendant .....	355
Midheaven.....	356
Vertex.....	357
<b>Planet Keywords .....</b>	<b>358</b>
The Sun.....	359
The Moon .....	361
Mercury .....	363
Venus.....	365
Mars .....	368
Jupiter .....	370
Saturn.....	372
Uranus.....	375
Neptune.....	377
Pluto .....	379
North Node.....	381
Ascendant .....	383
Midheaven.....	384
Vertex.....	386
<b>Transcendental Planets .....</b>	<b>387</b>

## How To Learn Astrology

The Turning Point.....	388
Esoteric Astrology .....	390
Hide in Plain Sight.....	391
The Afterlife.....	393
Metaphysical .....	394
The Outer Planets .....	395
Uranus.....	397
Neptune.....	399
Pluto .....	401
<b>The Planets as Chakras .....</b>	<b>402</b>
Vast Areas of Life .....	404
Opening the Chakras .....	405
Summing Up .....	407
Esoteric Keys .....	408
The Key To The Outer Is Always The Inner ...	409
<b>Planets as Chakras .....</b>	<b>411</b>
The Inner is the Key to the Outer 0 .....	412
Mercury Through Mars .....	414
Climateric Years.....	416
The Point.....	417
Mercury and Earth.....	418
The Ultimate Talisman .....	420
Saturn.....	422
<b>Saturn: A Formal Definition.....</b>	<b>423</b>
Saturn: Natural Law.....	424
The Guardian at the Threshold .....	426
The Saturn Chakra .....	427
Experience under Saturn.....	429
<b>Jupiter is the KEY to Your Natal Saturn</b>	<b>430</b>
Vision of Jupiter is Baptism or Rebirth.....	432
Summary.....	433
Vocational Struggle? .....	435
Natal Jupiter .....	436
New Chakra Level.....	438
Planet Chakras.....	439

## How To Learn Astrology

Saturn Chakra .....	441
Jupiter Chakra .....	442
Jupiter Profile .....	443
Mars Chakra.....	444
Earth or Heart Chakra .....	446
The Inner Planets.....	448
Venus, the Key to the Earth Chakra 6 .....	449
Mercury - The Light of Love .....	451
The Sun Center Itself .....	452
<b>Esoteric Planets Diagram .....</b>	<b>453</b>
Saturn.....	454
Jupiter .....	455
Mars .....	455
Earth.....	456
Venus .....	456
Outgoing.....	457
Uranus.....	458
Neptune.....	458
Pluto .....	459
<b>The Aspects.....</b>	<b>460</b>
Aspect Orbs .....	460
Standard Aspects.....	461
Exact Aspects .....	463
Tight or Wide Orbs .....	464
Entering and Leaving Orbs.....	465
Planets, Bodies, and Points 4 .....	466
Standard Aspect Set .....	468
Large Scale Patterns.....	469
The Forest and the Trees.....	470
The Main Point Here .....	471
Where In The Cycle?.....	473
<b>Full-Phase Aspects .....</b>	<b>474</b>
Conjunction - New Idea.....	475
Semisextile (waxing) - Planning .....	476
Semisquare (waxing) - Overcome Resistance.....	477
Sextile (waxing) - Making Plans .....	478

## How To Learn Astrology

Square (waxing) - Positive Start.....	479
Trine (waxing) - Building.....	480
Sequiquadrate (waxing) - Push On .....	481
Inconjunct (waxing) - Connect Up .....	482
Opposition - Result or Experience.....	483
Inconjunct (waning) - Dawning .....	484
Sequiquadrate (waning) - Gather Things .....	485
Trine (waning) - Conservation .....	486
Square (waning) - Responsibility.....	487
Sextile (waning) - Analysis .....	488
Semisquare (waning) - Push In .....	489
Semisextile (waning) - Encapsulation.....	490
<b>Aspects Continued.....</b>	<b>491</b>
The Phases of the Moon .....	492
Which Side Are You On? .....	493
<b>Aspect Phase Keywords.....</b>	<b>497</b>
Conjunction: 0 Degrees.....	499
Semisquare: 45 Degrees.....	501
Sextile: 60 Degrees.....	502
Square (waxing) - 90 Degrees .....	503
Trine: 120 Degrees.....	504
Sequiquadrate: 135 Degrees .....	505
Inconjunct: 150 Degrees .....	506
Opposition: 180 Degrees.....	507
Inconjunct: 210 Degrees .....	508
Sequiquadrate: 225 Degrees .....	509
Trine: 240 Degrees.....	510
Square: 270 Degrees .....	511
Sextile: 300 Degrees.....	512
Semisquare: 315 Degrees.....	513
SemiSextile: 330 Degrees.....	514
<b>Cycle Phases .....</b>	<b>514</b>
Phases Keywords.....	515
Phase 1 90 Waxing .....	516
Phase 2 120 Waxing .....	517
Phase 3 135 Waxing .....	518

## How To Learn Astrology

Phase 4 Opposition .....	519
Phase 5 135 Waning .....	520
Phase 6 120 Waning .....	521
Phase 7 90 Waning .....	522
Phase 8 60 Waning .....	523
Phase 9 45 Waning .....	524
Phase 10 Conjunction .....	525
Phase 11 45 Waxing .....	526
Phase 12 60 Waxing .....	527
<b>Cycles Continued .....</b>	<b>528</b>
Cycle Phases .....	529
Cycle of the Breath.....	530
Inward and Outward Points of a Cycle .....	532
Cycles: Four Main Phases .....	534
Cycles Are Organic .....	535
<b>Cycle Phases .....</b>	<b>537</b>
Conjunction - New Idea .....	541
Semisextile (Waxing) - Making Plans .....	542
Semisquare (waxing) - Overcome Resistance .....	543
Sextile (waxing) - Paying the Dues.....	544
Square (waxing) - Positive Start.....	545
Trine (waxing) - Building.....	546
Sequiquadrate (waxing) - Push On .....	547
Inconjunct (waxing) - Connect Up .....	548
Opposition - Result or Experience.....	549
Inconjunct (waning) - Dawning .....	550
Sequiquadrate (waning) - Gather Things 1 ...	551
Trine (waning) - Conservation .....	552
Square (waning) - Responsibility.....	553
Sextile (waning) - Analysis .....	554
Semisquare (waning) - Packing It In.....	555
SemiSextile (waning) - Encapsulation .....	556
<b>The Study of Cycles .....</b>	<b>557</b>
Life As Cycles .....	559
A Tangle of Cycles .....	561
Investment and Returns .....	562

## How To Learn Astrology

Making Bodies.....	564
As Below, So Above.....	566
Who Is The Spaceman?.....	568
<b>The Twelve Phases .....</b>	<b>570</b>
Phase 10: Capricorn Phase .....	572
Phase 11: Aquarius Phase 6.....	573
Phase 12: Pisces Phase .....	574
Phase 01: Aries Phase.....	575
Phase 02: Taurus Phase.....	576
Phase 03: Gemini Phase.....	577
Phase 04: Cancer Phase .....	578
Phase 05: Leo Phase .....	579
Phase 06: Virgo Phase.....	580
Phase 07: Libra Phase .....	581
Phase 08: Scorpio Phase.....	582
Phase 09: Sagittarius Phase .....	583
<b>Phase Details.....</b>	<b>584</b>
Phase 10 .....	585
Phase 11 .....	586
Phase 12.....	587
Phase 01 .....	588
Phase 02 .....	589
Phase 03 .....	590
Phase 04 .....	591
Phase 05 .....	592
Phase 06 .....	593
Phase 07 .....	594
Phase 08 .....	595
Phase 09 .....	596
<b>Transits .....</b>	<b>597</b>
Snapshot.....	597
Charting It.....	598
The Bi-Wheel .....	599
Transits on the Wheel .....	600
The Wheel of Houses.....	601
Interpreting Transits .....	602

## How To Learn Astrology

Transits to the Natal Chart .....	603
The Quadrants or Sectors .....	605
<b>The Saturn Cycle .....</b>	<b>606</b>
Saturn in Your Chart.....	608
Transits on the House Wheel 4	<b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b>
Interpreting Transits .....	<b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b>
Transits to the Natal Chart	<b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b>
The Quadrants or Sectors .	<b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b>
Saturn Transits ....	<b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b>
Saturn in Your Chart.....	<b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b>
The 2nd Sector: New Beginning.....	609
The 3rd Sector: Rising.....	611
The 4th Sector: Consolidation .....	612
The 1st Sector: The Obscure Sector 8 .....	614
<b>Saturn Cycle Summary .....</b>	<b>616</b>
Your Natal Saturn.....	618
Saturn on the First House Cusp 5 .....	619
The Early Riser .....	620
Saturn on the Fourth House Cusp.....	622
Teen Prominence .....	623
Saturn on the Descendant 7.....	624
The Late Bloomer.....	625
<b>Saturn on the Angles .....</b>	<b>627</b>
Saturn on the Tenth House Cusp .....	627
Saturn 10th House .....	628
More Thoughts .....	629
Saturn Sectors .....	630
The 2nd Sector: New Beginning.....	631
The 3rd Sector: Rising.....	633
The 4th Sector: Consolidation .....	634
The 1st Sector: The Obscure Sector 8 .....	636

Saturn Cycle Summary .....	638
<b>Saturn in the Natal Chart .....</b>	<b>640</b>
Saturn on the First House Cusp .....	641
Saturn on the Fourth House Cusp.....	643
Saturn on the Descendant.....	645
Saturn on the Tenth House Cusp .....	647
Closing Thoughts .....	648
<b>Your Saturn Transits.....</b>	<b>649</b>
Tenth House Saturn Transit .....	650
Eleventh House Saturn Transit .....	653
Eleventh House (Tomb-Sign) .....	655
Twelfth House Saturn Transit.....	656
First House Saturn Transit .....	658
Second House Saturn Transit .....	660
Second House (Tomb-Sign).....	661
Third House Saturn Transit .....	662
Fourth House Saturn Transit .....	664
Fifth House Saturn Transit .....	666
Fifth House (Tomb Sign) .....	668
Sixth House Saturn Transit .....	669
Seventh House Saturn Transit .....	671
Eighth House Saturn Transit .....	673
Eighth House (Tomb Sign) .....	674
Ninth House Saturn Transit .....	675
<b>The Saturn Passage .....</b>	<b>676</b>
The Slow Curve.....	678
The Closed Circle.....	679
Awareness of the Saturn Return .....	680
Forever Young .....	682
The Turning Point.....	683
<b>Basic Chart Factors .....</b>	<b>685</b>
The Four Elements.....	685
Luck Element 7 .....	687
Cautionary Element.....	688
List of Signs and Elements.....	689

## How To Learn Astrology

The Fire Element.....	690
Want Fire - Your Luck Element .....	691
Have Fire - Your Cautionary Element.....	692
The Water Element .....	693
Want Water - Your Luck Element.....	694
Have Water - Your Cautionary Element .....	695
The Air Element .....	696
Want Air - Your Luck Element .....	697
Have Air - Your Cautionary Element .....	698
The Earth Element .....	699
Want Earth - Your Luck Element.....	700
<b>The Qudruplicities .....</b>	<b>701</b>
Cardinal Signs.....	703
Want Cardinal Signs.....	704
Above Average Cardinal Signs .....	705
Fixed Signs .....	706
Want Fixed Signs.....	707
Above Average Fixed Signs .....	708
Mutable Signs .....	709
Want Mutable Signs .....	710
Above Average Mutable Signs .....	711
<b>Hemisphere Balance .....</b>	<b>712</b>
East Hemisphere.....	713
Wants East Hemisphere.....	714
West Hemisphere.....	715
Wants West Hemisphere.....	716
North Hemisphere .....	717
Wants North Hemisphere .....	718
South Hemisphere.....	719
Wants South Hemisphere .....	720
<b>Dignities.....</b>	<b>721</b>
Rulership .....	722
The Ancient Rulership .....	723
The Modern Rulership.....	724
Exaltation .....	725
Planets in Detriment 2 .....	726

## How To Learn Astrology

Planets in Fall.....	727
The Ancient Rulership.....	<b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b>
The Modern Rulership.....	<b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b>
Exaltation .....	<b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b>
Planets in Detriment.....	<b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b>
Planets in Fall.....	<b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b>
<b>Major Chart Patterns .....</b>	<b>728</b>
StarType Patterns .....	728
How StarTypes Came To Be.....	730
Sun-Centered Astrology .....	731
Two Indispensable Charts.....	733
Startypes Examines The Large-Scale Planetary Patterns.....	734
Green Lines and Red Lines.....	736
Major Patterns .....	737
Sun Cross .....	739
The Receivers .....	740
Major Chart Types.....	741
Relationship Types.....	743
The Four Main Relationship Types.....	744
Chart Types.....	745
The Two Views.....	746
The First Step.....	747
<b>Determining Your Chart Type.....</b>	<b>749</b>
The Lover Chart Type .....	751
The Independent or Blue-Line Chart Types ...	752
The Loved One Chart Type.....	753
The Four Chart Types .....	754
The Lover .....	756
In Service .....	757
Green-Bordered Types.....	758
Compassion .....	759
The Loved One: Red Lines .....	760

## How To Learn Astrology

The Other Side .....	762
The Independent (blue-borders).....	763
Self-Sufficient .....	764
An Island to Themselves .....	765
Multi-Relational Chart Type (maroon) .....	766
<b>Different Views of You .....</b>	<b>768</b>
Inner and Outer .....	768
Geocentric or Heliocentric? .....	769
The Geocentric Natal Chart (Outer Chart).....	770
The Heliocentric Chart (Inner Chart) .....	771
Two Views .....	772
The Perspective .....	773
The Geocentric Chart (Outer Chart) .....	774
The Heliocentric Chart (Inner Chart) .....	775
The Comparison.....	776
The Heliocentric Chart.....	778
Differences in Chart Patterns .....	779
Inner and Outer Comparison.....	780
Difference in Positions.....	781
The Other Shoe.....	783
Astronomers and Astrologers .....	784
<b>Your Astrological Toolbox.....</b>	<b>786</b>
The Toolbox .....	786
The Lights, Planets, and Angles.....	787
The Signs of the Zodiac .....	788
The South.....	789
The North .....	790
The East.....	791
The West.....	792
The Twelve Houses.....	793
House Cusps.....	794
The Twelve House Cusps .....	795
Putting in the Planets .....	796
Astrology Chart Forms .....	797
The Standard Wheel of Twelve Houses.....	798
Unequal Wheel of Houses.....	799

## How To Learn Astrology

The Euro Wheel .....	801
The 360-Degree Open Wheel .....	802
My Favorite Style Open Wheel.....	804
<b>Astrological Symbols.....</b>	<b>806</b>
The Planets .....	806
The Sun Symbol.....	807
The Moon Symbol .....	808
Mercury Symbol .....	809
Venus Symbol .....	810
Mars Symbol .....	811
Jupiter Symbol .....	812
Saturn Symbol.....	813
Uranus Symbol.....	814
Neptune Symbol.....	815
Pluto Symbol .....	816
Earth Symbol.....	817
The Signs .....	818
Aries Symbol .....	819
Taurus Symbol .....	820
Gemini Symbol.....	821
Cancer Symbol.....	822
Leo Symbol .....	823
Virgo Symbol .....	824
Libra Symbol .....	825
Scorpio Symbol .....	826
Sagittarius Symbol .....	827
Capricorn Symbol.....	828
Pisces Symbol.....	830
<b>Astronomy for Astrologers.....</b>	<b>831</b>
The Solar System.....	831
The Natal Chart.....	832
Natal and Transit.....	833
The Bi-Wheel .....	834
The Obliquity of the Ecliptic.....	835
The Band of the Zodiac.....	837
Ecliptic Coordinate System .....	838

## How To Learn Astrology

Equatorial Coordinates.....	841
Horizon Coordinate System .....	844
Astronomy of Astrology: The Earth's Tilt .....	846
The Earth's Tilt ....	<b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b>
The Tropics of Cancer and Capricorn .....	847
The Earth's Tilt ....	<b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b>
The Earth's Tilt .....	848
Planet Longitude and Latitude.....	850
From the Sky to the Chart Form: Part 2 .....	<b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b>
From the Sky to the Chart Form: Part 3 .....	853
Snapshots of Earth at a Birth .....	854
The View at Birth.	<b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b>
The Ecliptic Sphere .....	<b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b>
The Celestial/Equatorial Sphere.....	857
The Horizon Sphere .....	859
The Tropical Zodiac or Ecliptic .....	860
Tropical Zodiac.....	861
The Ecliptic Plane.....	861
The Ecliptic Sphere .....	863
Geographic and Celestial Latitude .....	<b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b>
Latitude .....	865
The Pole Star (North Star).	<b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b>
Circles of Latitude.....	865
North and South Circles .....	867
Cities on the Same Meridian .....	867
Longitude and Latitude.....	869
Longitude Meridian.....	870
Meridian Alignment.....	871
The Horizon.....	873
The Horizon System.....	875
The Straighter The Line, The Finer The Curve	877
Time Spiral .....	878

<b>Astrology as a Business.....</b>	<b>879</b>
Setting Up an Astrological Practice .....	880
Signs of Success.....	880
Rites of Passage .....	881
You Know You're an Astrologer When .....	883
Amateur or Professional? .....	884
Clients Must Request .....	886
The Home Office .....	888
The Downtown Office .....	889
Most Important Tool .....	890
Other Tools You Need.....	892
Techniques.....	893
Popular Techniques .....	895
Birth Charts .....	895
Transits, Directions, and Progressions.....	896
Client Confidentiality.....	897
How Long a Session? .....	899
Documenting the Reading.....	901
Tell It Like It Is .....	902
Techniques as Experience .....	904
Read from the Client or the Chart? .....	906
Other Persons Present.....	907
Death and Medicine .....	908
Astrological Jargon.....	909
Friendship with Clients .....	911
Astrological Therapy.....	912
Setting up A Business .....	914
Word of Mouth.....	916
Business Cards .....	917
Your Web Page.....	918
Other Advertising .....	919
Paid Advertising .....	920
Astrology Classes.....	921
Lectures .....	922
Newspaper and Radio Astrology .....	923
Fellow Astrologers.....	925

## How To Learn Astrology

You the Author .....	926
Your Computer Printout.....	927
Summary.....	927
<b>Birth Data.....</b>	<b>929</b>
The Birth Time.....	930
Time Changes.....	931
Daylight Savings Time (DST).....	932
The Birth Place.....	933
World Time Zones.....	934
<b>The Astrology Reading.....</b>	<b>936</b>
Midwife of the Psyche .....	938
Locked In.....	939
Venting.....	941
Blowing Off Steam.....	943
Getting It All Out.....	945
Coming Down: Re-Entry.....	947
Getting A Grip .....	949
The Counselor's Role.....	951
After the Release .....	953
Accepting What Is .....	955
The Turning Point.....	957
Pressures of Counseling .....	959
The Rites of Passage.....	961
<b>The Moon .....</b>	<b>962</b>
Eastern Astrology: Lunation Cycle .....	962
The Lunar Birthday.....	963
The Cycle of the Sun and Moon.....	964
Lunar Gaps .....	966
Thirty Lunar Days.....	968
Moments of Clarity .....	969
Summary: Lunar Gaps .....	971
Observation Times .....	972
Lunar Opportunities.....	974
Taking Advantage of the Lunar Cycle .....	975
Lunation Cycle in Western Astrology.....	975
The Phases of the Moon .....	977

## How To Learn Astrology

Phase Cycles .....	978
New Moon .....	979
Second Quarter .....	980
Full Moon .....	981
Fourth Quarter.....	982
Seed Impulse: Themes .....	984
Eclipses.....	985
The Vision of the Eclipse.....	986
The Lunation Cycle: East and West .....	988
East and West.....	989
Gaps in the Clouds.....	990
The Thirty Lunar Days.....	991
The Four Quarters.....	993
Protector Days .....	994
Days of Observation.....	996
Health and Healing.....	997
Purification Days .....	998
Insight Moments.....	999
Open Channels .....	1001
East and West.....	1002
Summary.....	1004
<b>The Lunation Cycle .....</b>	<b>1005</b>
Earth's Aura.....	1006
Auroras.....	1008
Rainfall .....	1009
Thunderstorms and Cosmic Radiation .....	1010
The Moon and Geomagnetic Activity.....	1011
Polar Cap Absorption (PCA) .....	1013
Solar Sectors.....	1014
Solar Flares.....	1017
Summary.....	1018
Exoteric References .....	1019
Mind Practice .....	1022
Mind Practice .....	1023
Sitting and Looking.....	1024
The Techniques .....	1025

**The Retrograde Phenomenon ..... 1028**

Burn Rate .....	1028
Psychometrists .....	1030
Outer Planets Retrograde .....	1031
Inner Planets Retrograde .....	1033
Background .....	1035
Geocentric and Heliocentric: Interface .....	1036
Before and Behind.....	1038
The Burn Rate .....	1040
The Past, Present, and Future .....	1042
Retrograde and Direct .....	1043
Inner and Outer .....	1045
The Retrograde Loop: Conjunct .....	1046
Sun Conjunct Planet.....	1047
Planet Retrogrades .....	1048
Planet Retrograde Interpretation .....	1049
Sun Opposition Planet.....	1050
Sun Opposition Planet Interpretation.....	1051
Planet Goes Direct in Motion.....	1052
Planet Direct Interpretation.....	1053
Sun Conjunct Planet (again.....	1054
Sun Conjunct Planet Interpretation .....	1055
Summary .....	1057
Astrologer Michael Erlewine.....	1059

**Michael Erlewine ..... Error! Bookmark not defined.**

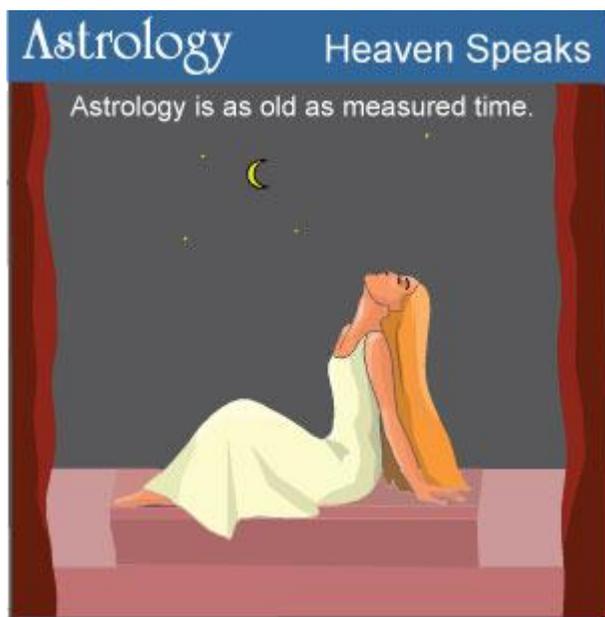
Michael Erlewine . <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b>	
A Brief Bio of Michael Erlewine <b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b>	
Example Astro*Image Card .....	1061
Personal Astrology Readings .....	1062
The Heart Center House .....	1062
Heart Center Library.....	1063
The All-Music Guide / All-Movie Guide.....	1064
Heart Center Meditation Room.....	1066
Heart Center Symbol.....	1068

## How To Learn Astrology

Music Career.....	1069
<b>Email: .....</b>	<b>1071</b>

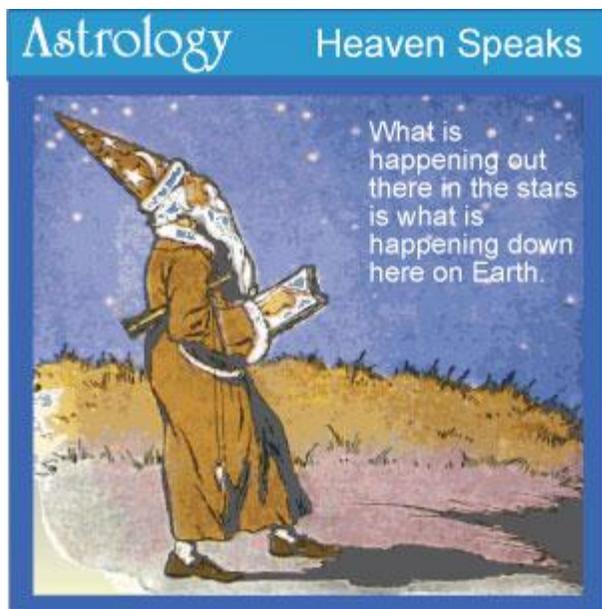
## How To Learn Astrology

### Greetings!



My name is Michael Erlewine and I will be your guide through this course on astrology. As for my qualifications, I have been studying astrology for over forty years and, during this time, I have worked as a teacher, a programmer, an author and a counselor. You can read about my background elsewhere in this course, but for now, let's get down to it.

Astrology is ancient, probably as old as when man first measured time. It is present in some form in all countries and cultures, and always has been. In fact, the majority of the world's population uses astrology at the day-to-day level and not just for entertainment, as we do here the West. Before we begin our study of astrology, it might be important to clear away two popular misconceptions about astrology.



### **Celestial Influences**

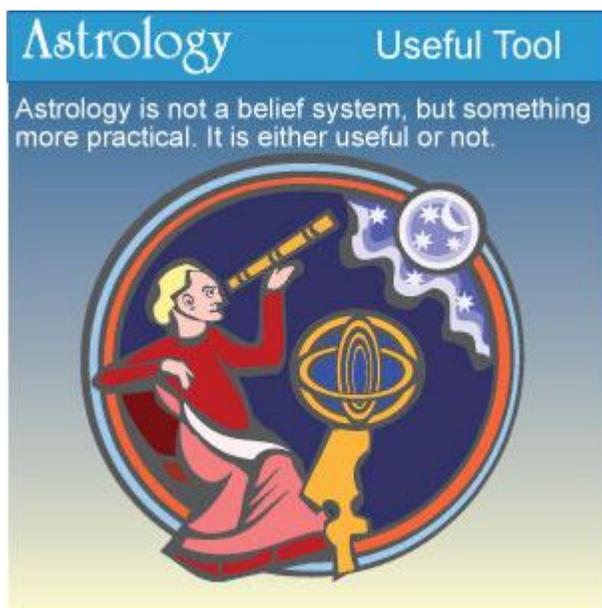
One popular misconception about astrology is that the planets out there in the heavens cause events to happen down here on the earth. Professional astrologers I have known, and I have known many, do not hold with these theories of "celestial influence"—theories that the planets somehow make things happen to us; instead, modern astrologers see the heavens and the earth as one whole entity, interpenetrating, and sharing the same space and time, which, in fact, is the case.

They do not see the various planetary configurations as *causing* events to happen here on earth, but rather see the earth—itself a planet—and all of the other planets, as interacting in the very same space, as sharing in whatever events are occurring; in other words, whatever events are taking place out there in the heavens are also happening down here on earth. Neither is the

## How To Learn Astrology

cause of the other, both are happening simultaneously. The planetary configurations are just grand signatures—like writing in the sky—signs of events happening right here in our own lives. Both are products of the same moment, one acted out in the heavens above and the other acted out on the Earth below.

In other words, there is only one grand "play" or moment. The great drama enacted in the sky above is also acted out (in exact detail) here on Earth, and, in the same moment. Another way to say this is that the Earth is a part of the cosmos and shares in that cosmic moment. Astrologers perceive that all major cosmic events (eclipses, etc.) are interactive; they represent an activity also taking place within our self and consciousness.



### **Astrology Not a Matter of Faith**

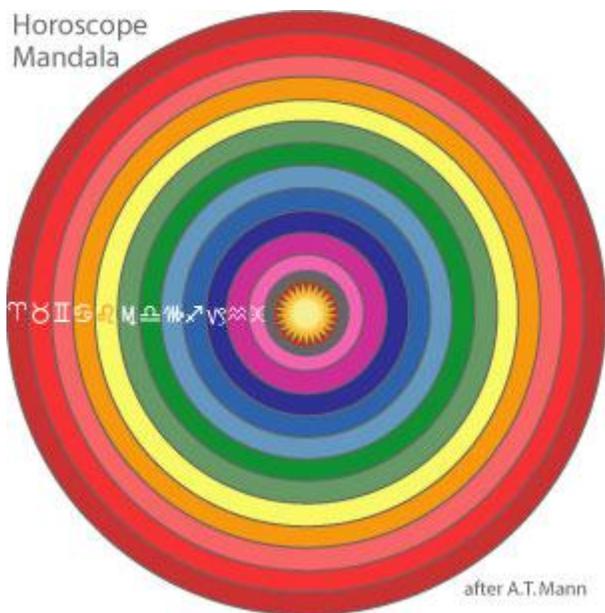
A second misconception about astrology is that to be an astrologer you have to somehow "believe" in astrology.

## How To Learn Astrology

Astrology is not a question of belief, any more than you “believe” in psychology. It is not a question of belief but rather one of use. I, personally, find astrology useful in my life; it is a way of understanding who I am and what my life is about, plain and simple. I don't "believe" in astrology. I use it when I find it useful and leave it alone when I don't, like any other tool. Astrology is useful, or it is not.

In summary, astrology is a study of heavenly cycles and cosmic events as they are reflected in our earthly environment and vice versa—a vast cosmic clock. Astrologers find the cosmic patterns revealed in the rhythmic motions of the planets useful in shedding light on the seemingly helter-skelter of everyday life. Astrologers *do* study the sky writing of the heavens, but only to better live life here on the Earth.

Horoscope  
Mandala



after A.T. Mann

## How To Learn Astrology

### **What This Course Offers**

I would like to give you here an idea of what you need coming into this course, as well as what you can expect to have gotten out of it when you are done.

As for requirements, there are none, other than your own interest in astrology. Previous knowledge of the subject is not assumed, and you can learn at your own pace. If course outlines are too confining, you are free to jump around and sample whatever sections interest you. I have tried to make the sections short, using illustrations as much as possible, either to illustrate concepts or just because they are fun to look at.

We will start at the beginning, working with concepts you may or may not already be familiar with, such as sun sign astrology, the signs, planets, and so forth. From there, we will learn the major elements of modern astrology, including planets, signs, houses, and aspects. We will study many other areas of astrology as well.

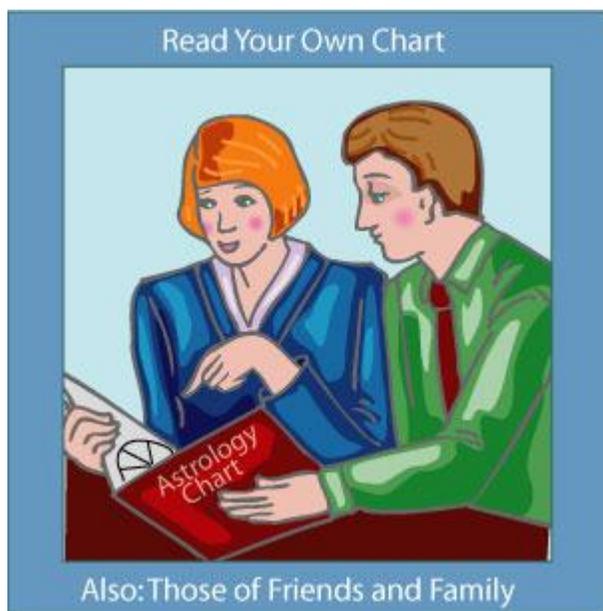
Throughout this course, since we don't all learn in the same way, I have tried to offer several approaches. Of course, you will be introduced to the concepts, keywords, phrases, and images that astrologers have studied by rote memory and used for centuries. For those of you who like the nuts and bolts approach, we also offer much of the astronomy that astrology is built upon.

In addition, in most modules you have the option of learning a more in-depth approach to astrology, one that explains not only why and how these concepts were created, but one that also encourages you to use the concepts dynamically, developing your own keywords, and thus gaining a better understanding of how they actually work.

## How To Learn Astrology

Most important, we will study how to use astrology to interpret our own chart and those of our family and friends. This is the reason most of us study astrology in the first place: to better understand ourselves and our lives.

And, last but not least, I have done my best to include, wherever possible, short sidebars on the esoteric meaning of astrology, on the inner or hidden side of the subject.

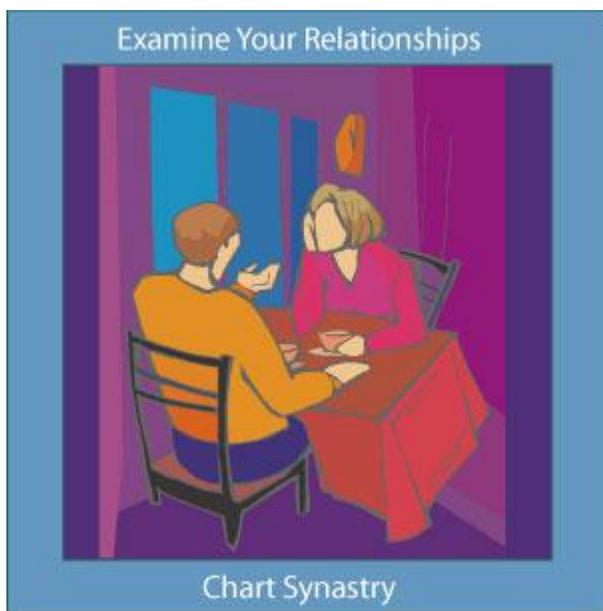


### **Learn To Read Natal Charts**

Most of us study astrology because it offers us another view of our self from the one we have known up to that point. Astrology gives us a different perspective, a second opinion as to who we are and why it is we are here. It can also help us to maximize our talents and to take a direction in life that will be successful and fulfilling.

## How To Learn Astrology

The first thing, therefore, most of us want to do is learn more about our natal chart, that personal astrological chart created for us in regard to the moment of the day we were born. As we study the various planets, signs, houses and aspects (the basic building blocks of astrology), we learn how these are configured in our birth chart, and how this becomes our own particular astrological signature. Learning about your own chart is perhaps the best place to begin. It is where most of us start out. We will spend the bulk of this beginning course introducing you to the basic elements of your natal chart, showing you how to use them.



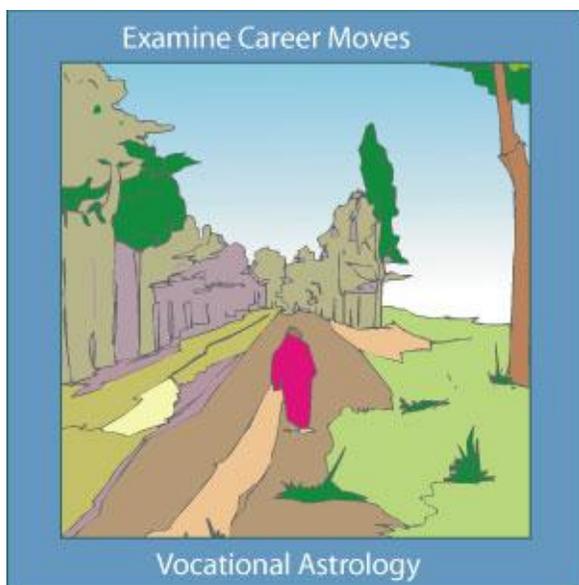
### **Examine Your Relationships**

Once we have learned the basics of astrology and have some idea of what our chart is like—who we are, astrologically—we will also want to look at the charts of our family, our friends, and even those of our not-so-

## How To Learn Astrology

friends, not to mention those of celebrities, important events in our lives, and so on.

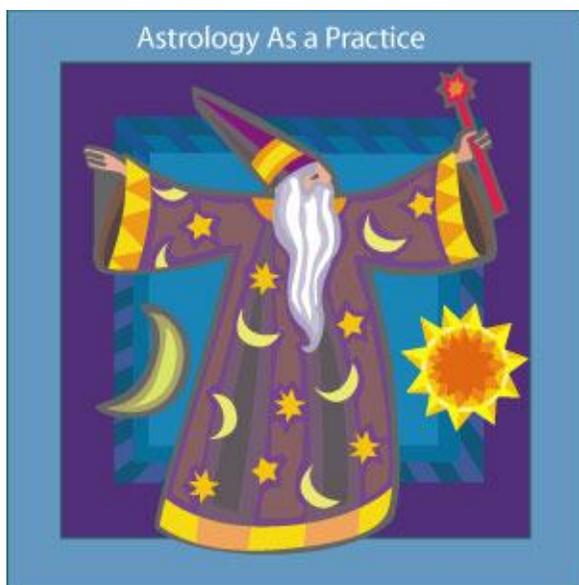
When we have satisfied our thirst to know something about ourselves through astrology, the next thing most of us will want to do is find out about our relationships, particularly if we are married or have a partner. If we are in a relationship, our well-being depends upon our partner's well-being, so what makes them tick is important to us. I have been doing astrological readings for some forty years now and the most frequently asked question that comes up during a consultation is: what about my partner? Or, if the client does not have a partner at that point, then they have a list of candidates to look at astrologically. At the very least, most people want some idea as to what kind of partner would be best for them. In this course, we will learn to examine relationships astrologically.



## How To Learn Astrology

### **Determine Career Moves**

Almost as popular as learning about relationships is learning about your career. Regardless of how much or how little vocational training you may have had up to this point in your life, what are you best suited for? Most clients I have worked with want to be put to some good use—to be used up in the most satisfying and successful way possible. Finding our path, our road to success (making a living) is something each of us must do before we can turn our attention to anything else, such as to relationships, marriage, children, etc. If the wolf is at our door, that fact alone will keep us from enjoying many of the other areas of our life; finding a career, therefore, your particular 'way through life' (how to be successful), is of key importance. In this course, we will learn several methods to determine career potential.

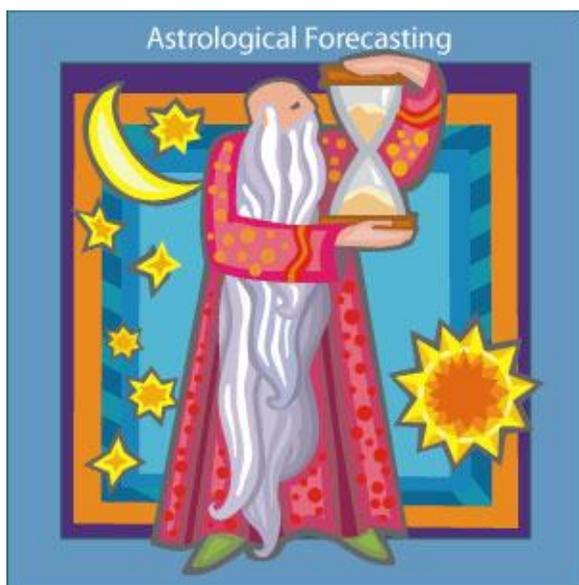


## How To Learn Astrology

### Living with Astrology

As we shall see, astrology is not only a way to better understand who we are or what makes our neighbor tick, it is, itself, a way to live life—a path. In this course we shall learn how to become aware of the cycles of ups and downs we all go through (and have always gone through) since the day we were born.

Our life is filled with cycles, even if we have not learned to recognize these cycles in the world around us. The monthly solunar cycle of the phases of the Moon, the cycles of the various planets and their aspects, the daily cycle of day and night, etc.—all are astrological cycles that we can learn to be aware of and then put to use.



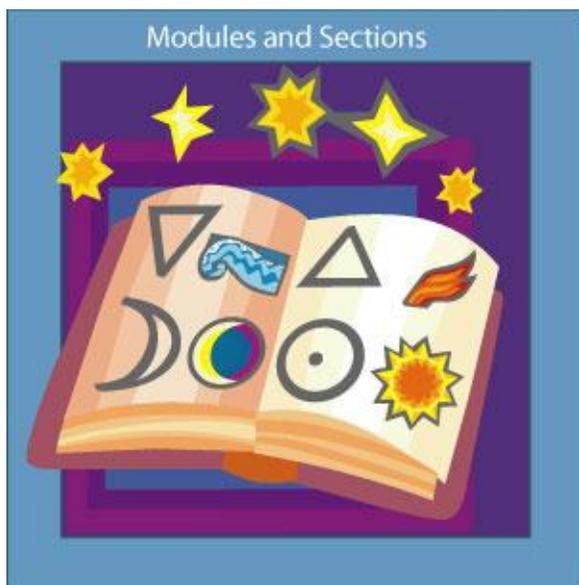
### Getting Your Forecast

"Coming events cast their shadows" is an ancient astrological slogan. Looking ahead is something astrology is good at. In this beginning course we will learn to use various astrological forecasting methods

## How To Learn Astrology

such as the daily transits of the inner planets, the monthly lunar cycle, solar cycles, and the long-term cycle of the planet Saturn. Whether it is today, tomorrow, or the in next thirty years, astrology has things to show us that are worth considering.

Astrology is perhaps used most often as a way to better understand who we are by examining our self and life through the natal chart; however, the astrological principles we find in our birth chart are not static. They can be used to look ahead as well as to look back. Once we understand our own personal chart, with its inclinations and disinclinations, we can scan ahead in time—we can look days and weeks ahead of time to when a particular astrological climate is available. We can look forward to these astrological events just as we now look forward to celebrating our birthday. A birthday is, of course, an astrological event. In this course, we learn to use astrological forecasting tools to help us pick the appropriate days for different kinds of events.

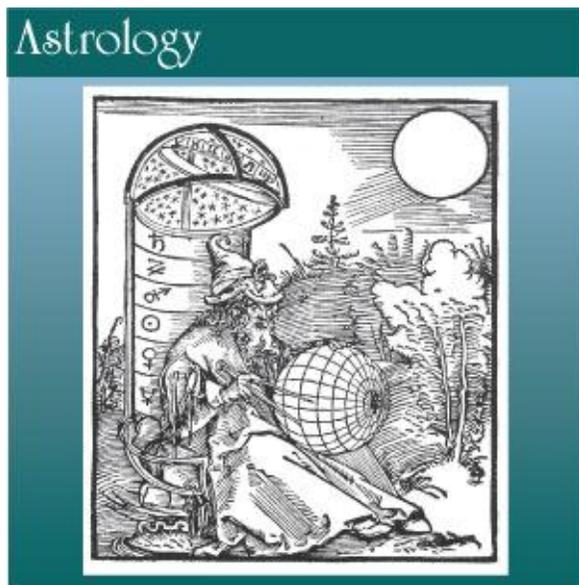


## How To Learn Astrology

### How Best to Use This Course

As you can see, this course is laid out in modules. Each module has different sections, and each section has different topics. Once you select a section from a module, that section will be displayed on a separate page, with the text for the selected topic running down the right-hand side of your screen; however, the rest of the topics in that section are still available to you, and are listed along the left-hand side of the screen.

You can browse through all of the topics, looking for those that most interest you at the moment. Each topic has an image or diagram to help illustrate what is being presented. If a topic does not warrant an image, you will get an image anyway—something fun to look at.



### Astrology Now

Astrology is ancient, probably as old as when man first measured time. It is present in all countries and in all cultures, and always has been. In fact, the majority of

## How To Learn Astrology

the world's population uses astrology on a day-to-day basis, and not just for entertainment, as we do here the West. It would seem that almost everyone knows a little astrology; however, I have found there are two popular misconceptions about astrology.

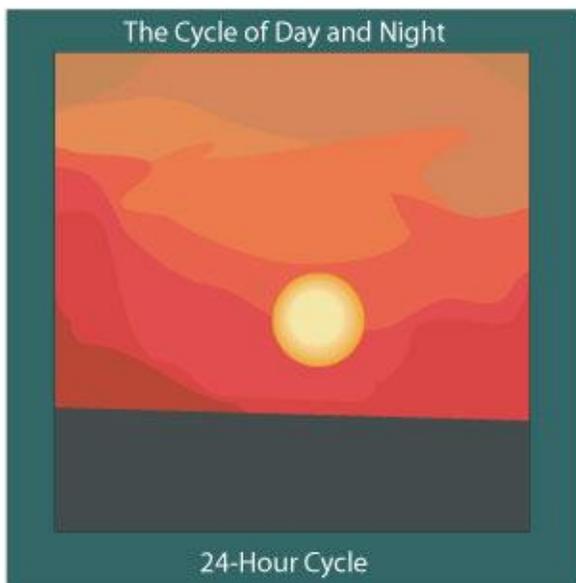
The first is that the planets out there in the heavens cause events to happen down here on earth. Professional astrologers I have known, and I have known many, do not hold with these theories of "celestial influence," that planets somehow make things happen to us. Instead, modern astrologers see the heavens and the earth as one whole entity, interpenetrating, and sharing the same space and time, which, in fact, is the case. They do not see the various planetary configurations as causing events to happen here on earth, but rather see the earth (itself a planet) and all of the other planets as interacting in the very same space, as sharing in whatever events are occurring; in other words, whatever events are taking place out there in the heavens are also happening down here on earth, neither is the cause of the other, both are happening simultaneously. The planetary configurations are just grand signatures, like writing in the sky; they are signs of events happening right here in our own lives. Both are the product of the same moment, one acted out in the heavens above and the other acted out here on the earth below.

In other words, there is only one grand "play" or moment. The great drama enacted in the sky above is also acted out (in exact detail) here on Earth, and in the same moment. Another way to say this is that the Earth is part of the cosmos and shares in that cosmic moment. Astrologers perceive that all major cosmic events (eclipses, etc.) are interactive; they represent an activity also taking place within our self and consciousness.

## How To Learn Astrology

The second misconception is that to be an astrologer, you have to somehow "believe" in astrology. Astrology is not a question of belief, any more than one "believes" in psychology. It is not a question of belief but one of use. I often find astrology useful in my life as a way of understanding who I am and what my life is about, plain and simple. I don't "believe" in astrology. I use it when I find it useful and leave it alone when I don't, just like any other tool. At any time, astrology is either useful or it is not.

In summary, astrology is a study of heavenly cycles and cosmic events as they are reflected in our earthly environment, and vice versa—a vast cosmic clock. Astrologers find the cosmic patterns revealed in the rhythmic motions of the planets useful in shedding light on the seeming helter-skelter of everyday life. Astrologers do study the writing in the heavens, but only to better live life here on the Earth.



## How To Learn Astrology

### **The Study of Cycles**

For now, we could define Astrology as the study and practice of the cycles we can find present in our life. We study astrology and cycles to get a better idea as to what is happening to us in our lives, and we practice or put to use what we have found through our study and understanding. It will do no harm to start with the dictionary definition of a cycle, although we will soon get much less formal.

The Oxford Universal Dictionary states:

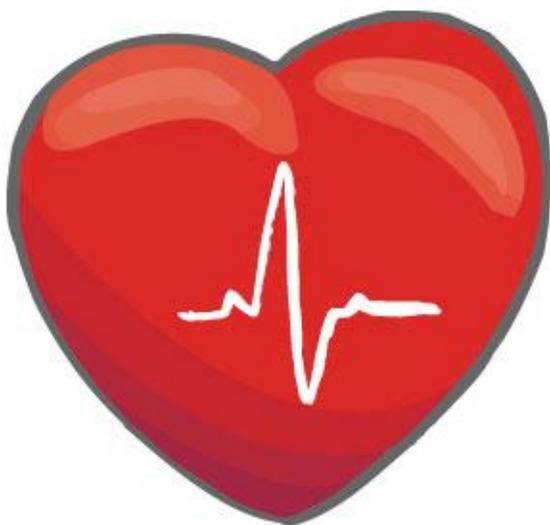
**Cycle:** A circle or orbit in the heavens; a recurrent period in a definite period of years; a period in which a certain round of events or phenomena is completed, recurring in the same order in equal succeeding periods; a long, indefinite period, an age; a round, course or period through which anything runs to its completion, etc.

Therefore, a cycle is something that happens in our life again and again, and always in roughly the same form or format. Each of us cycles through periods of feeling good or normal and feeling bad and not-so-good. These are cycles none of us seem able to avoid. We experience all kinds of cycles all of the time. The first step is to be aware of this fact.

Cycles are so important to the study of astrology that understanding what the dictionary has to say about them is only a start, and quite an abstract one at that. We must extend and deepen this understanding until we can see cycles not just as formal concepts, but as something happening to us right now—something always at work around us in our day-to-day life. The understanding of these cycles in our lives may come slowly at first, but they are not that difficult see.

## How To Learn Astrology

It can take a little time to pick up on these ideas, much less to experience them as happening in the life around us, but it is well worth our effort to do so. If we do not become aware of the cycles in our life—the ones we have always been experiencing—and learn to recognize them as they occur, our understanding of cycles remains just an abstract idea—a bunch of words. Let's go over this again.



### **Life as Cycles**

Our life is filled with cycles. There are *very* short cycles, short cycles, long cycles, and very long cycles. All cycles repeat or return on themselves—happening again. Some examples of convenient-sized cycles that we can understand and measure with our mind include the cycle of our breath, the cycle of the seasons or of the year, and the cycle of day and night. The cycle of our heart beating is almost too small and too fast for us to keep in mind. Smaller cycles yet include cellular cycles, and, of course, atomic and sub-atomic cycles.

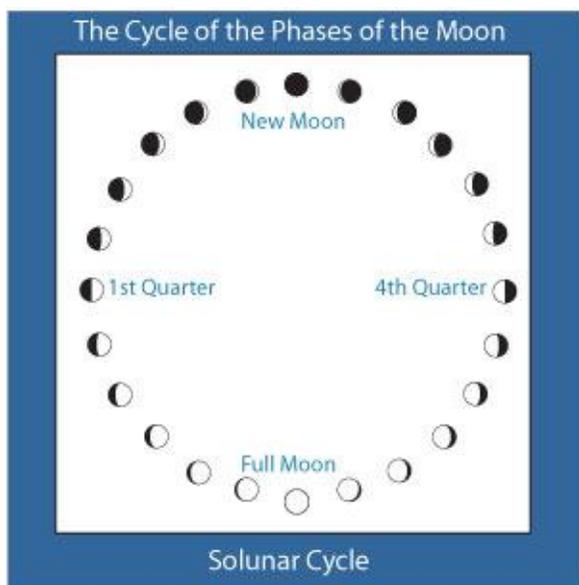
## How To Learn Astrology

These smaller cycles happen so often or so fast that they are but a blur to our mind. They fall through or beneath our awareness and make up the ground of our consciousness.

When we look for long cycles, the planets provide good examples. We live through and experience the two-year cycle of the planet Mars, the twelve-year cycle of Jupiter, and even the thirty-year cycle of Saturn; however, many people don't live through the eighty four-year cycle of Uranus, much less through the much longer cycles of Neptune and Pluto. While it is possible to grasp the meaning or import of these longer-sized cycles with our mind, it can be very hard to bring home the meaning of them—to be aware of them consciously on a day-to-day level. And then there are the cycles, such as the one of our Sun orbiting the Galactic Center, that take so many millions of years that, for our purposes, they assume the proportions of a straight line—the portion of these larger size circles or cycles that we can witness or are able to comprehend in our lifetime is so small that it appears as a straight line. We cannot even see the curve of the line, much less the return.

Thus our awareness is bounded on the one hand by the incessant hum of the smaller cycles and on the other by the long-theme straight-lined cycles. This leaves us, then, with awareness or consciousness of those cycles we CAN recognize and appreciate. At this point, it is important that you to begin to understand how our entire life is cyclic—it is all cycles, nothing else. I will explain.

## How To Learn Astrology



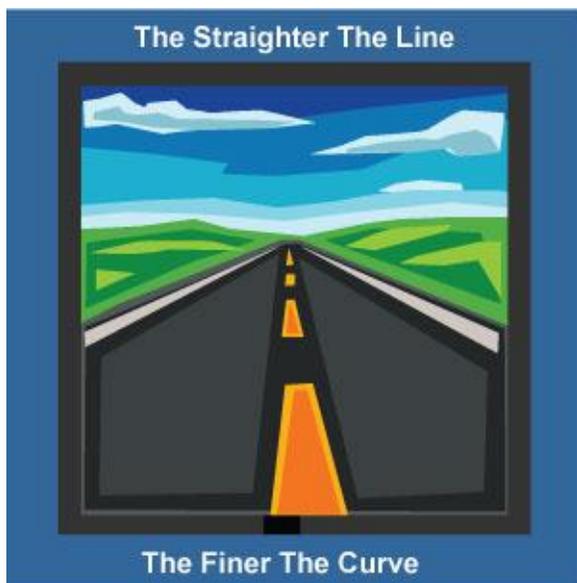
### The Tangle of Cycles

For now, let's not even try sorting out the tangle of cycles in which we are embedded, saying "This is the Mars cycle doing this, or, that is the Jupiter cycle over there doing that," and so on. It is quite enough to become aware that our moods, capabilities, attitudes, etc. come and go in a very regular manner. We can wake up minutes, hours, days, months, or even years later, and remember that we have been here before, and that we have went through a patch just like this—we may not have felt this good in years. These are cycles we are seeing at these times, even though they had been there all along.

Many people have no awareness of the cycles they are going through each day and month. They may not even recognize when and if they don't feel very good (again), or, when and if they do feel very good (again), so embedded are they in the tangle of life's cycles. This is

## How To Learn Astrology

why the first step is to develop an awareness of how you do feel, and to begin to be aware of the cycles in life.



### **The Straighter the Line**

This next concept is very difficult to grasp and realize, but I am going to put it out there anyway. You can work on it. Here it is:

All existence (our very life) is maintained or keeps going through the sum total of the endlessly repeating cycles of which it is composed. It is even more direct than that, and I am going to get very abstract for just a moment.

Our very existence is ONLY by virtue of our awareness of these cycles or circles. And, now for the hard part: Everything IS or continues to exist only by returning, repeating, and restating itself. That is: everything we know and can have any awareness of has to somehow persist or exist long enough for us to experience it. The converse is also true.

## How To Learn Astrology

That which does not re-instate or repeat itself, in other words, that from which we get no return, IS NOT for us. In fact, that which does not return for us (come to our awareness) comprises the sum total of our ignorance. We ignore it. It does not register. Our consciousness, then, that which we are aware of, is made up of the endless returns or returning of cycles. Don't panic. I am going to try and make this clear.

This is not an easy concept to grasp, but it is an essential one, and, if you can get it, it will make your study of astrology much easier. Let me rephrase:

Our consciousness—in other words, that which we are now aware of—is made up of whatever lasts (holds together) long enough for us to see and experience it. It persists, and we perceive it. Every thing we can see lasts long enough to restate itself, and these endless re-statements or returns make up our conscious life, and only that does.

When we reach 'the point of no return' in any project, we abandon that direction. When something ceases to restate itself, to return on itself, it drops from our awareness and is forgotten. Everything that is, only 'is', by having the strength to last and exist; if it loses that strength, it no longer persists.

Everything *is* only by returning. It is by the returns that we know anything. If we reach the point of no return on any subject, it is just that: the point where there is nothing coming back. It becomes like a straight line for us.

This concept is difficult, so let's drop it for now and take another approach at the same material.

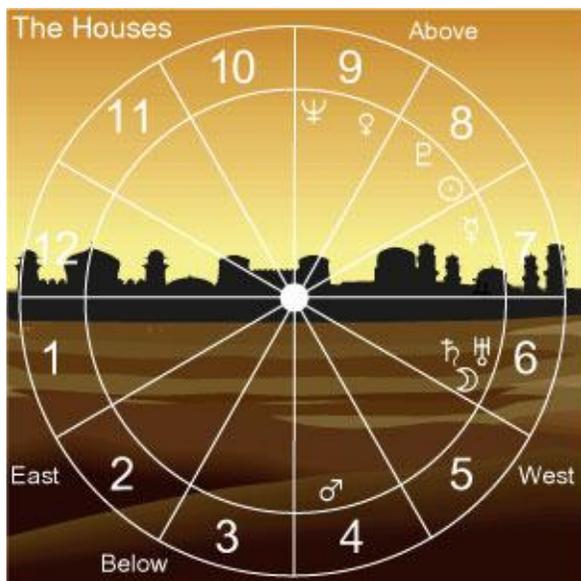
Our entire life can be viewed as a process of investment and returns, of giving and taking, and this process

## How To Learn Astrology

endlessly repeats itself and can be studied in the form of cycles.



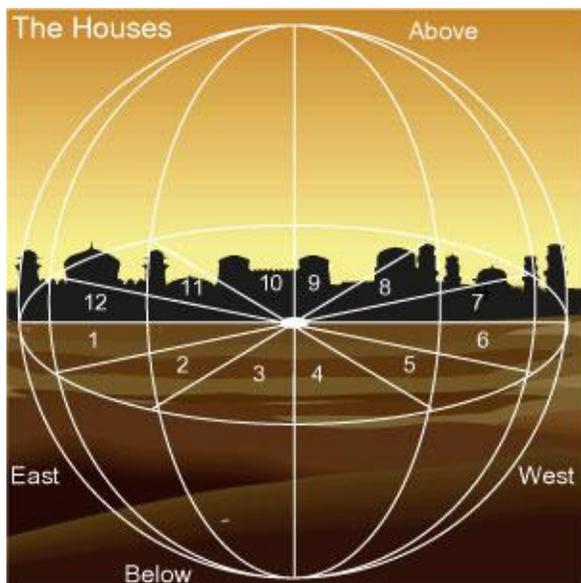
## House Systems



### What Are Houses?

First of all, houses are a part of your horoscope, of your natal birth chart. Simply put, the houses are a way to divide *the space surrounding your birthplace* into sections: the space above that place, the space below, the space to the east, to the west...and so forth. We divide that entire space into twelve sections, much as there are segments to an orange. Once we have divided that space, we look to see in what section (house) the various heavenly bodies can be found, such as where the Sun and the Moon are, where the planets are, and where the stars, or any other astronomical bodies that might interest us, are. And, since the planets are plotted in the zodiac signs, most house systems show where each particular house intersects with the band of the zodiac.

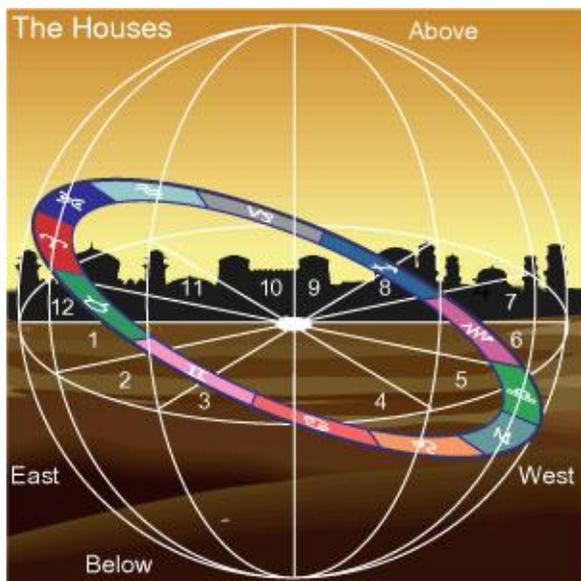
## House Systems



### **Houses Are Three Dimensional**

Although our horoscope chart is two dimensional (flat), the sections of the houses are not. They are three dimensional, just as the sections of an orange are. Imagine walking outside under the night sky, with the stars and planets twinkling around you, and then imagine dividing up all of that space, the space above and below you (on the other side of the earth) into twelve sections or segments. From where you stand, looking to the south would be the 10th House, behind you and to the north (and below you) would be the 4th House, at your left and to the east would be the First House, to your right and to the west would be the 7th House, and so on. This is what astrological houses are.

## House Systems



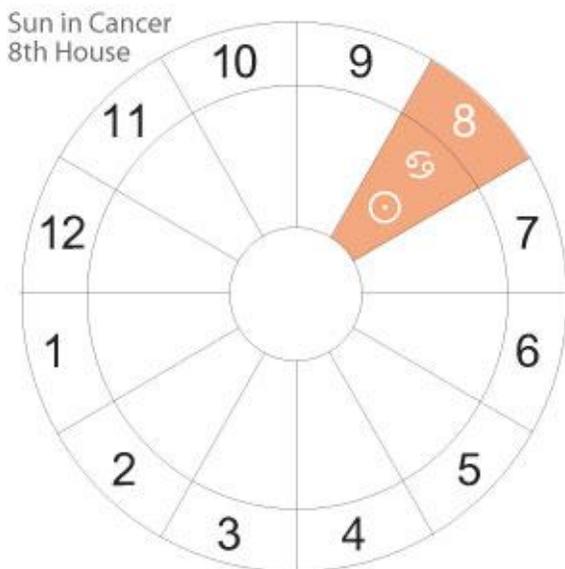
### House Cusps

House cusps are determined by taking the 3-dimensional house sections (remember the segments of an orange) and seeing where these lines intersect and cross the zodiac. Where these lines intersect the zodiac is the cusp for each house, and the zodiac sign there is said to be the "sign on the house cusp." In the diagram above, you can see the house segments, and you can also see the ring of the twelve zodiac signs. Where each segment cuts across the band of the zodiac is where a sign is on a house cusp.

Although most house systems are divided into the familiar twelve houses, there are many different kinds of house systems; that is, there are many slightly different ways of dividing up the space that surrounds us. Astrologers like to argue among themselves as to which house system is the best, and they agree to differ on this.

## House Systems

Explaining the differences between the house systems is much too complicated to jump into here, so it will have to be enough to just know that, while there are different house systems, these systems tend to agree on the main points, and thus they are more the same than different. You can feel confident using any of the major systems; at least until you get sophisticated enough to argue the merits of one over another. So much for giving you an astronomical picture of what houses are, of greater concern is WHY they are important. What do they mean?



### Why Houses Are Important

If we can say that the planets tell us what general area of life we are working with, and that whatever sign of the zodiac a particular planet or planets are in tells us something about the energy phase of that life area, then we could say that the houses tell us *where* all of this activity is taking place. Let's take a simple example: I

## House Systems

happen to have the Sun in Cancer in the 8th house. What does this mean? Let's parse this out.

The Sun is the self, the self that each of us aspires to, the self we hope to (and even can) become—whatever we look up to as our future. The zodiac sign Cancer says that this Sun (self) can be very sensitive, that we (of this sign) are way down in there, and very much given to feeling and sensing things. We all know that Cancer sun signs love their homes. And last, the eighth house is the house of analysis (criticism), of breaking things down, of finding the kernels and throwing out the chaff—getting to the heart of things. The eighth house is also the house of occult and esoteric study. Am I any of these things?

I am. I have always worked out of my home; even when I had a company with 650 employees, I stayed home as much as was humanly possible. As for sensitivity, my wife may have some other things to add, but I was sensitive enough to make my living as a musician for many years. As for being a critic, well, that's where I shine. I founded and built the All-Music Guide (as well as other entertainment guides), and today the All-Music Guide is the largest collection of music criticism on the planet. I love esoteric and occult subjects, and have studied them all my life; in fact, I hope to point out some esoteric astrological principles throughout this course.

This (above) is just one interpretation; of course, there are many, many ways to interpret "the Sun in Cancer in the 8th House" and this is what makes astrology so fascinating. Once you understand the basic principles and get in touch with your own inner energy, you will come up with interpretations that are purely "you" —for astrology is an oracle. An oracle is something that speaks to us or through us. As we learn to become astrologers, we want to, personally, get out of the way

## House Systems

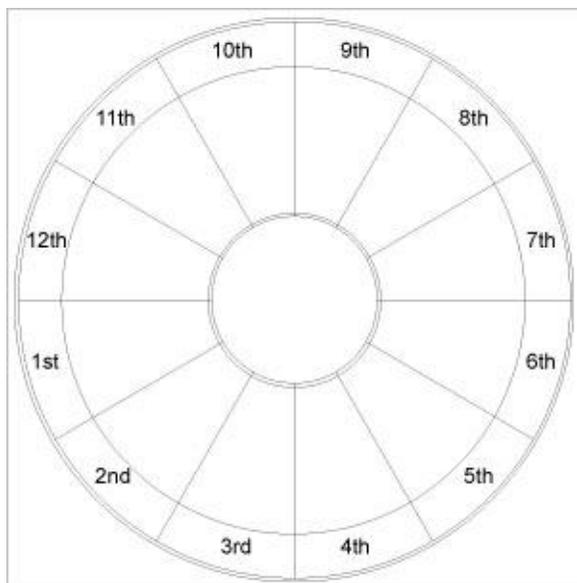
and let the long tradition of astrology speak through us. It is more fun to read what is there than to try and make astrology speak according to our own personal biases.



### The Meaning of the Twelve Houses

Each of the twelve houses has a different meaning, and each describes or points out a different area of our experience. Once we learn something about what each of these areas of experience mean, we can begin reading astrological sentences like the one given above, "Sun in Cancer in the Eighth House." And, best of all, the wheel of the twelve houses is, itself, a unified, whole cycle (as are the zodiac signs, the phases of the Moon, etc.), so that each house in the cycle is a phase, one leading to the next; therefore, when you learn about cycles and cycles' phases, you are automatically learning about the houses.

## House Systems



### ***House Keywords***

In this course, we provide a variety of interpretations of the houses. Following is a list of keywords and phrases for the twelve houses, loosely organized into different themes. These words and phrases may prove useful to you, helping you key in on what each house means.

## House Systems



### First House Keywords

FIRST HOUSE

Emergence

Surface

Appearance

Facade

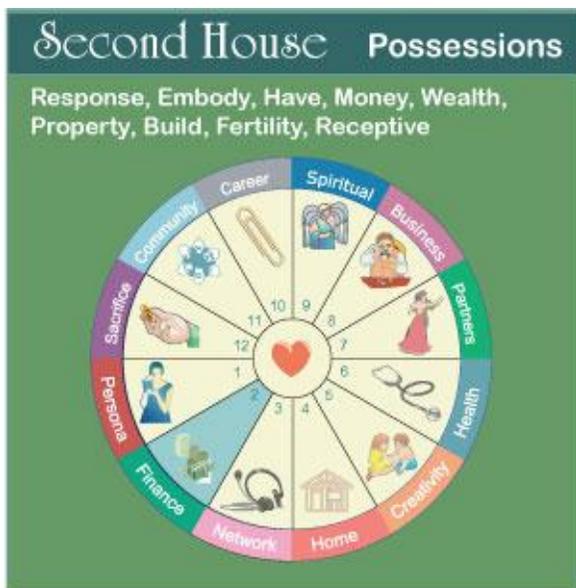
Personality

Self

Initiative

Activity

## House Systems



### Second House Keywords

SECOND HOUSE

Response

How You Respond

How you Love

How You Acquire

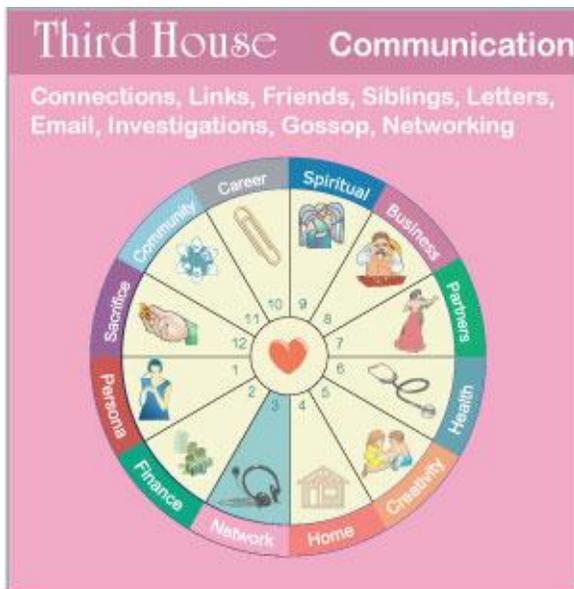
Possessions

Money

Wealth

Security

## House Systems



### Third House Keywords

THIRD HOUSE

Communication

Letters

Voice

Email

Phone

Gossip

Connections

Links

Friends

Siblings

Networking

Connecting Things Up

From Michael Erlewine

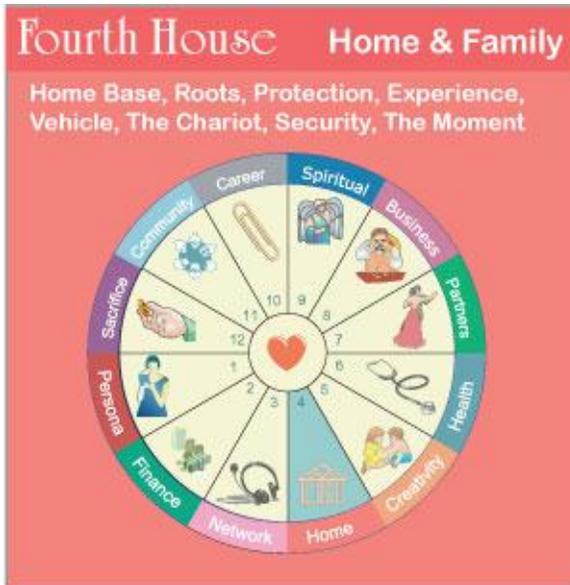
## House Systems

Exploration

Investigations

Inquiry

Short Trips



### Fourth House Keywords

FOURTH HOUSE

Experience

The Thrill of the Ride

In The Moment

Security

Base of Operations

The Chariot

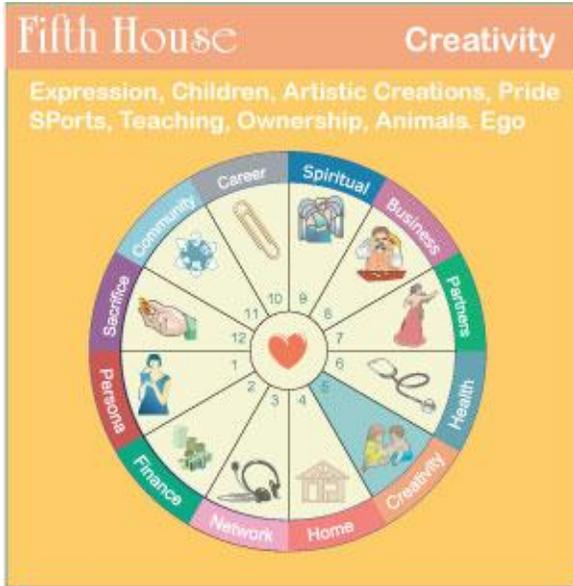
Family

Home

From Michael Erlewine

# House Systems

## Roots



### Fifth House Keywords

FIFTH HOUSE

Expression

Creativity

Sports

Teaching

Awareness

Pride

Ownership

Offspring

Children

Artistic Output

Animals

## House Systems



### Sixth House Keywords

SIXTH HOUSE

Conserving

Salvaging

Caring For

Preserving

Health

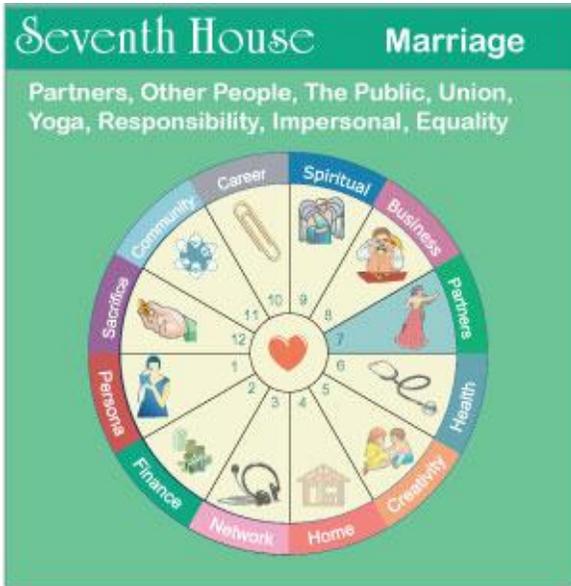
Proactive

Nutrition

Careful

Nursing

## House Systems



### Seventh House Keywords

SEVENTH HOUSE

Marriage

Union

Yoga

The Public

Other People

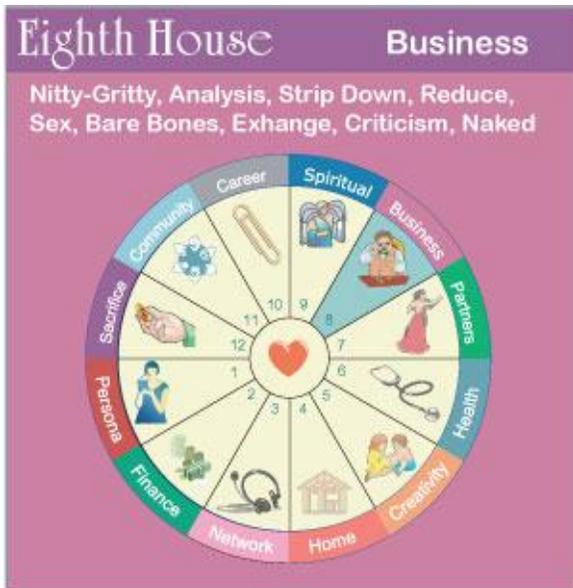
Response

Partners

Business

Responsible

## House Systems



### **Eighth House Keywords**

EIGHTH HOUSE

Business

The Nitty-Gritty

Exchange

No Nonsense

Criticism

Analysis

Pare Down

Reduce

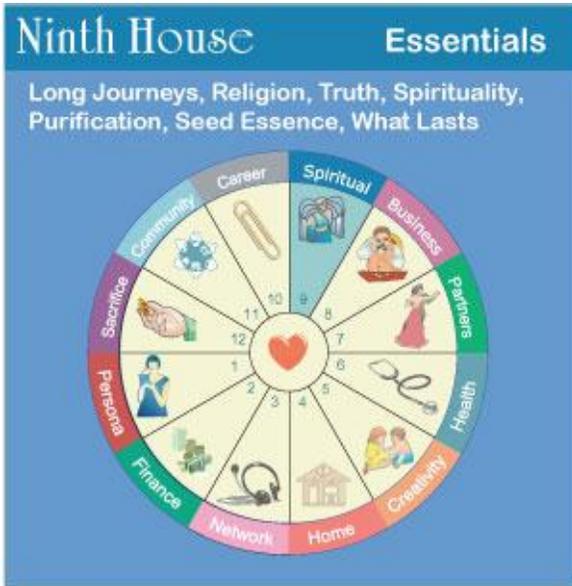
Strip Bare

Sex

Nakedness

Bare Bones

# House Systems



## Ninth House Keywords

NINTH HOUSE

Spirituality

Religion

What Lasts

Purification

Philosophy

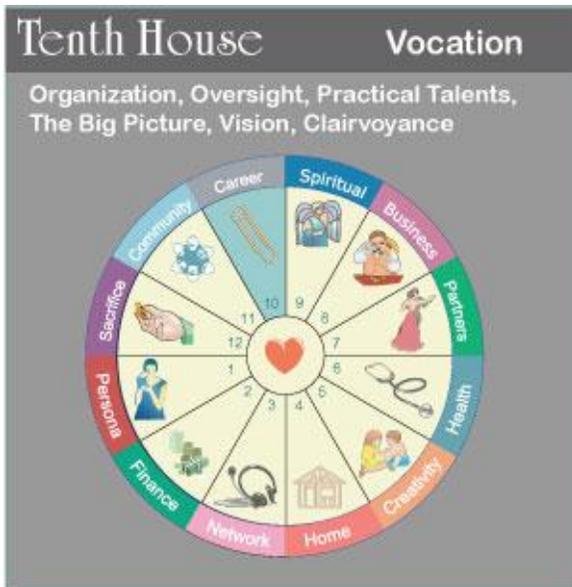
Truth

Essentials

Seed Essence

Long Journeys

## House Systems



### Tenth House Keywords

TENTH HOUSE

Vision

Clairvoyance

Big Picture

Out-of-the-Body

Vision

Realization

Management

Organization

Practical Insight

Oversight

Career

See To Do

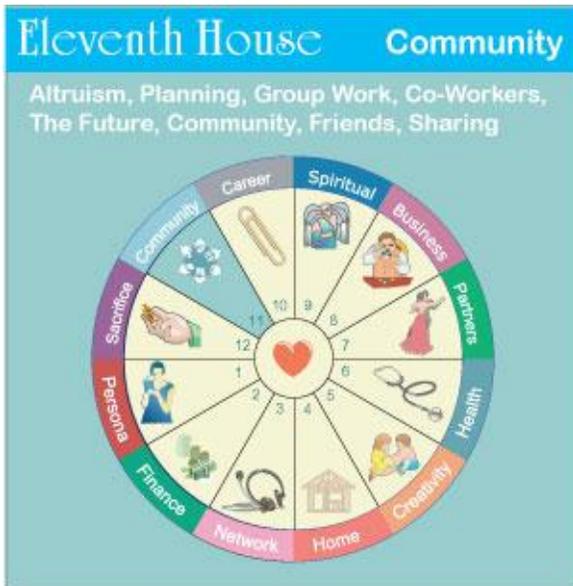
From Michael Erlewine

House Systems

Practical Talents

Vocation

Management



### Eleventh House Keywords

ELEVENTH HOUSE

Altruism

What Should Be

Future Plans

Community

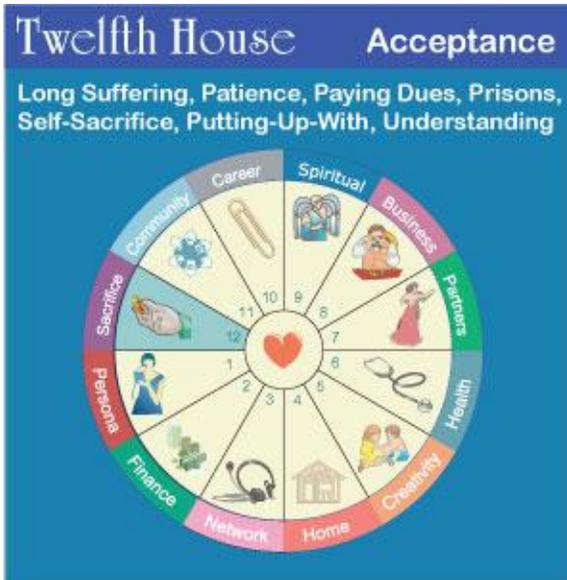
Group Work

Other People

Friends

Co-Workers

## House Systems



### Twelfth House Keywords

TWELTH HOUSE

Acceptance

Self-Sacrifice

Patience

Put-Up-With

Obstacles

Dues

Hemmed In

Prisons

## House Systems



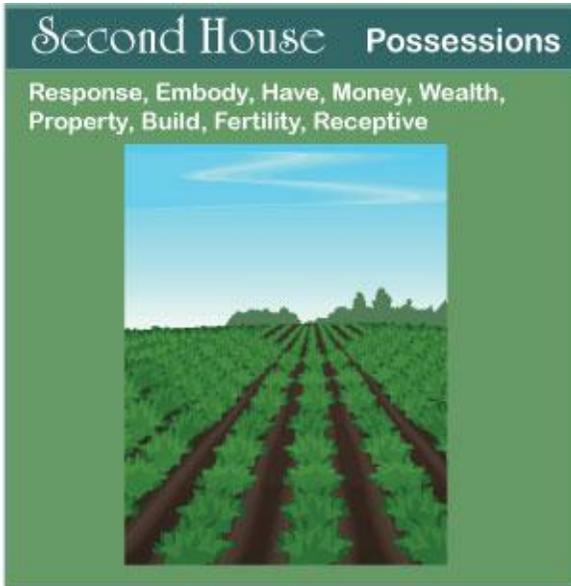
### ***Houses Interpretations***

Following is a list of interpretations for the twelve houses. These may prove useful to you, helping you key in on what each house means.

#### **First House: Interpretation**

The First House has to do with you, just who you are, as well as how you appear or come across to others—the impact you make on first meeting. It represents the sum total of what you have managed to get together in your life up to now and what you are able to put on the line for all to see—your complete package.

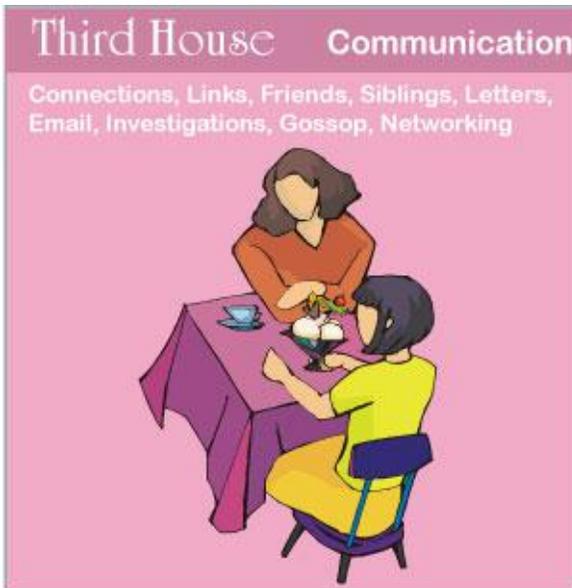
## House Systems



### **Second House: Interpretation**

The Second House has to do with money and possessions, but also with how you possess or "have" things—the way you acquire, measure, and love in life. It marks your ability (or lack thereof) to build on what you have been given and to embody your ideas and plans into something solid and real. It measures your receptivity and ability to listen, and to take things in and use them.

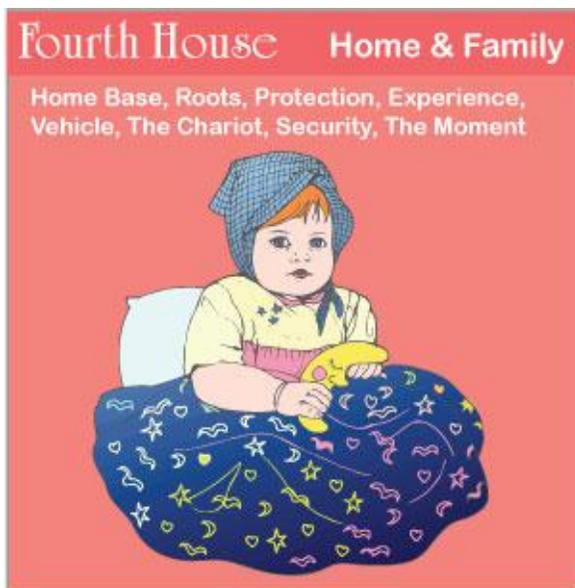
## House Systems



### **Third House: Interpretation**

The Third House is all about communications and communicating, about how you reach out, explore, and generally network with both people and things—your ability to make connections. All kinds of communication are indicated, whether written or spoken, by phone or by email, in private or in public—communicating.

## House Systems



### **Fourth House: Interpretation**

The Fourth House is about the total kind of life experience you draw around you and how you feel about life, especially when it comes to matters of home and Family—your particular security blanket.

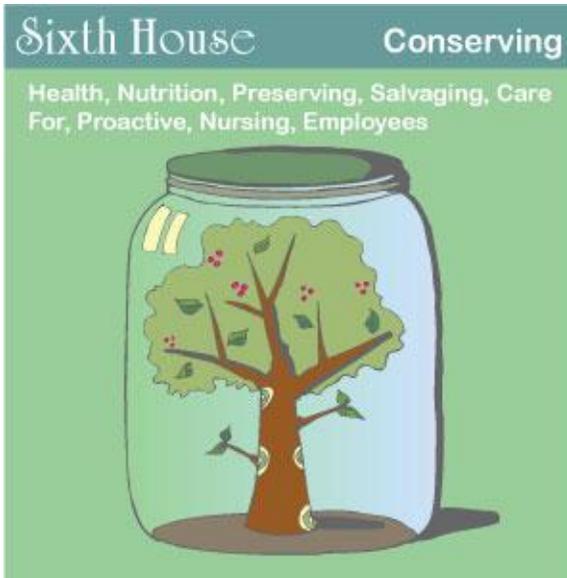
## House Systems



### **Fifth House: Interpretation**

The Fifth House tells us about how we express ourselves, how we are creative. This includes our awareness of what we have done and perhaps are proud of, that is: all forms of creativity—whatever we have managed to express and get out. I refer to anything we have created, and, of course, to our children. Also: teaching and showing others what we have learned or are aware of.

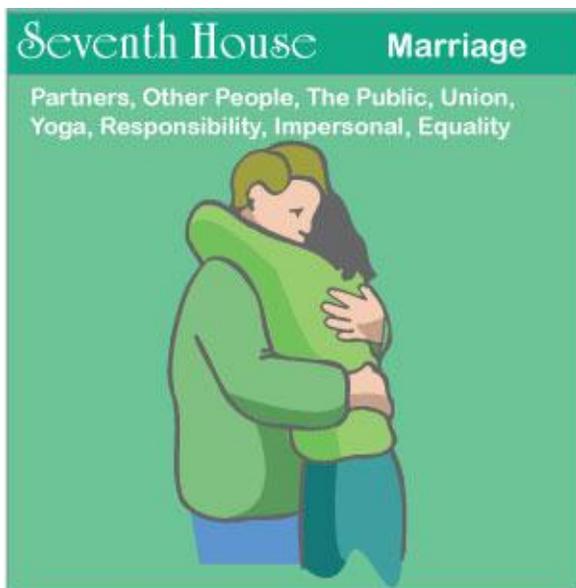
## House Systems



### **Sixth House: Interpretation**

The Sixth House is said to be the house of health—how we take care of our self—however, it is broader than that. This house also refers to how we care; not only for our own person, but also to how we care for others and also for things—for anything needing our care and attention. Detailed care and attention is indicated.

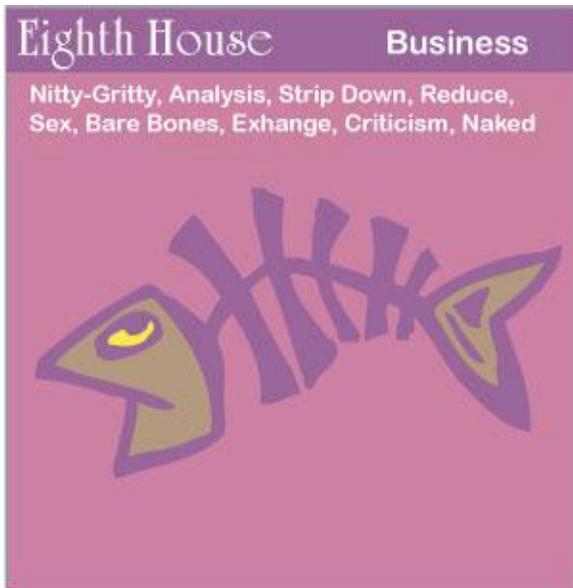
## House Systems



### **Seventh House: Interpretation**

The Seventh House is the where we get beyond our personal concerns and take an interest in others, whether that be an interest in the public in general, or an interest in a specific person with whom we bond. This is why this house has to do with partnerships, with responding to someone other than just ourselves—responsibility.

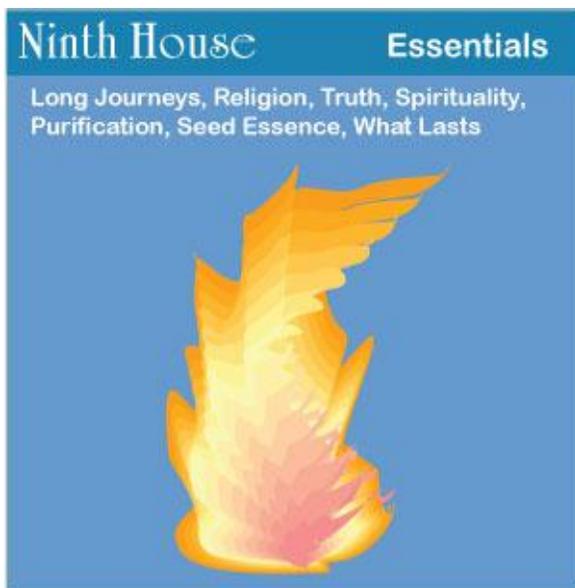
## House Systems



### **Eighth House: Interpretation**

The Eighth House has been said to refer mainly to sex, but this is too narrow of a definition. This house has more to do with how we cut through the red tape and get right down to the nitty-gritty, to where things are really at. Here is where we strip away the veneer and reach the bare facts. It has more to do with business and essential exchange than with sexuality.

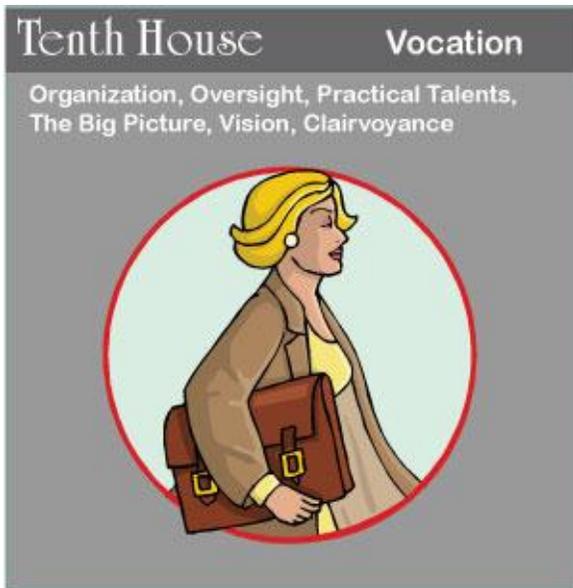
## House Systems



### **Ninth House: Interpretation**

The Ninth House refers to the ideas and concepts in life that are of the deepest importance to us, the ones that will endure or last; therefore, this house often tells us something about what kind of spirituality or religion suits us. In any case, this is where only the most essential parts of our life, those parts most meaningful to us, can be found.

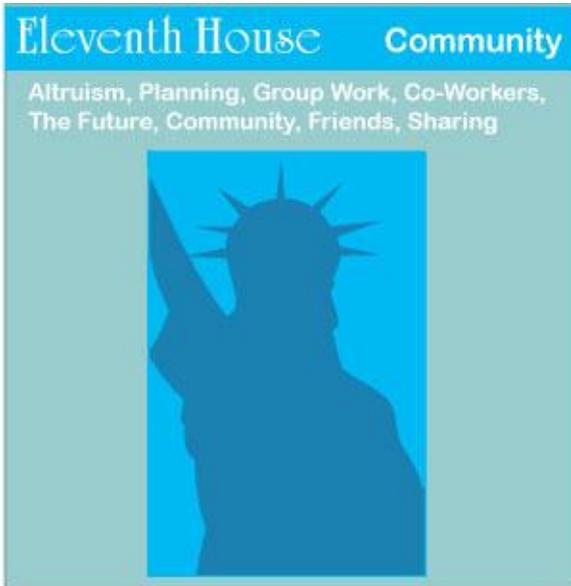
## House Systems



### **Tenth House: Interpretation**

The Tenth House has to do with our vocation or our career, and marks the area in life where we may have a natural ability to see and manage. This is where we have the natural vision to take control of and manage things; practically speaking, it is our ability to be successful.

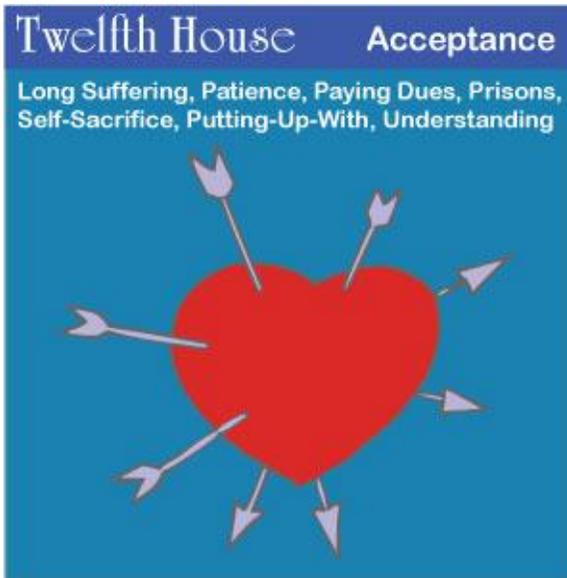
## House Systems



### **Eleventh House: Interpretation**

The Eleventh House has been called the house of friends, and it is here that we find indications of our ability to work with others and to share in a larger vision, a vision of a community or nation—the working together for a cause greater than our own personal self-interest.

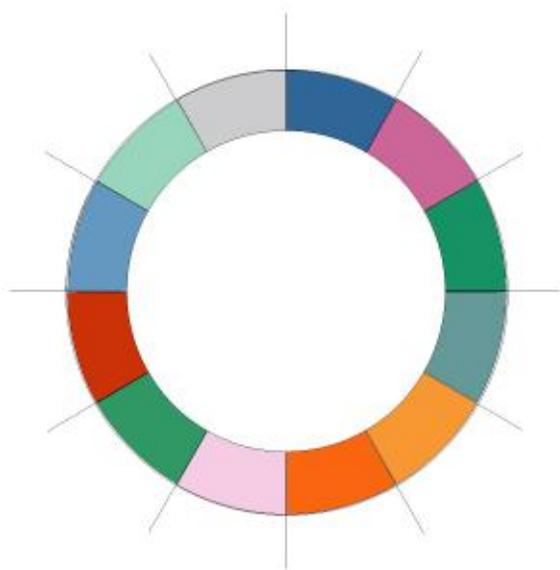
## House Systems



### **Twelfth House: Interpretation**

The Twelfth House marks where we may be required to have patience and acceptance, perhaps sacrificing our own personal needs in order to move forward a cause greater than our self. This is where and how we find greater acceptance, and the means to embrace fully whatever life presents to us.

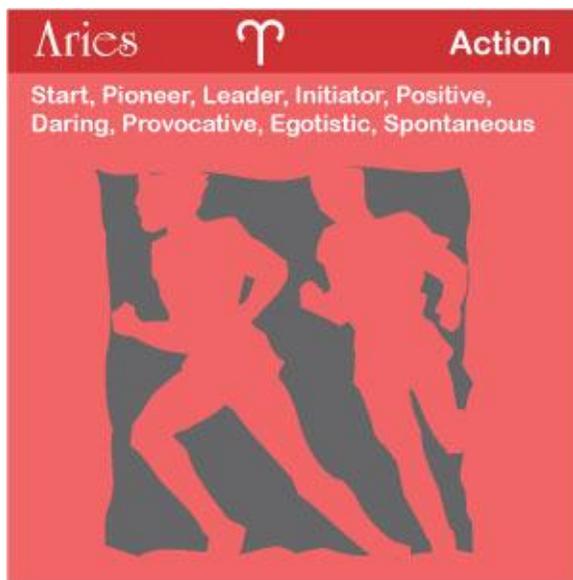
## The Zodiac Signs



### ***Signs Interpretations***

We have also included a number of sections on the interpretation of twelve zodiac signs; you can, therefore, shop around for one that best suits you. Here are some straight-forward and brief descriptions.

## The Zodiac Signs

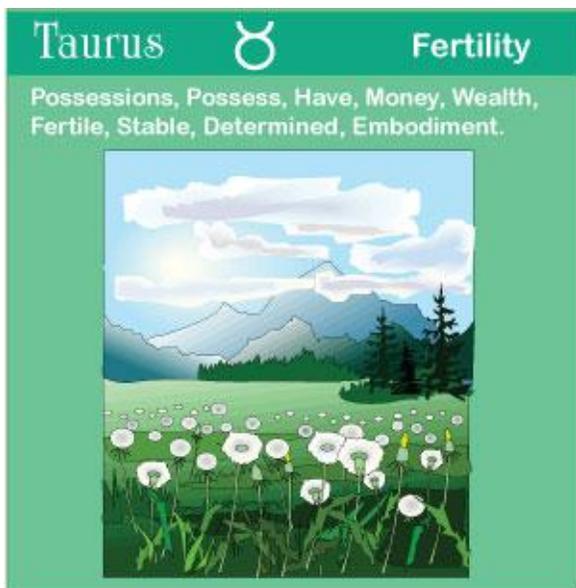


### **Aries**

The sign Aries is the prime initiator in the zodiac, always jumping right in, starting things, daring to act and be—making a positive statement or move.

Quote: "I am"

## The Zodiac Signs

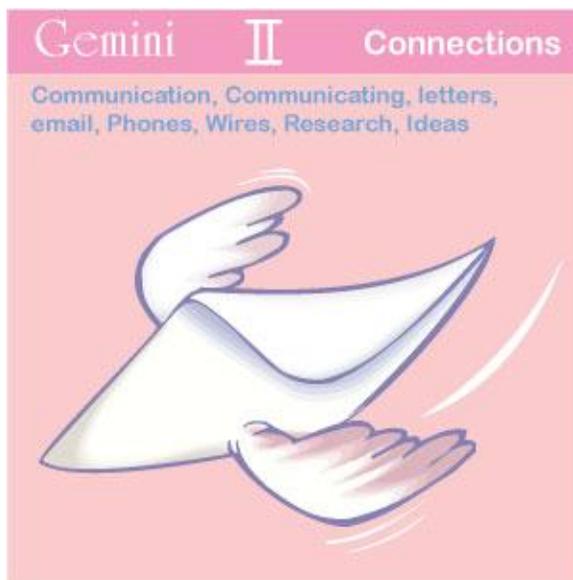


### **Taurus**

The sign Taurus receives or possesses, and thus is connected to "possessions"—to money, goods, and property—what-have-you. Responds to any action or impulse, building it into something actual or solid, and thus: Responsibility, the ability to respond.

Quote: "I Have"

## The Zodiac Signs

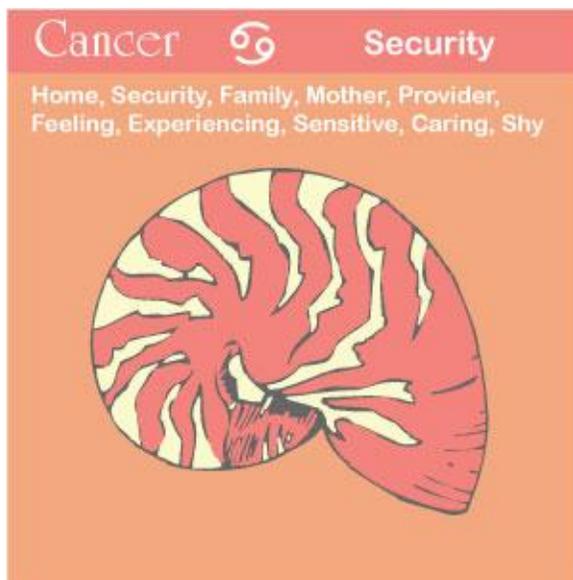


### **Gemini**

The sign Gemini indicates communication and communicating, connections of all kinds, as well as relationships of short duration; for example: conversations, emails, letters, etc. It rules short trips.

Quote: "I Communicate"

## The Zodiac Signs

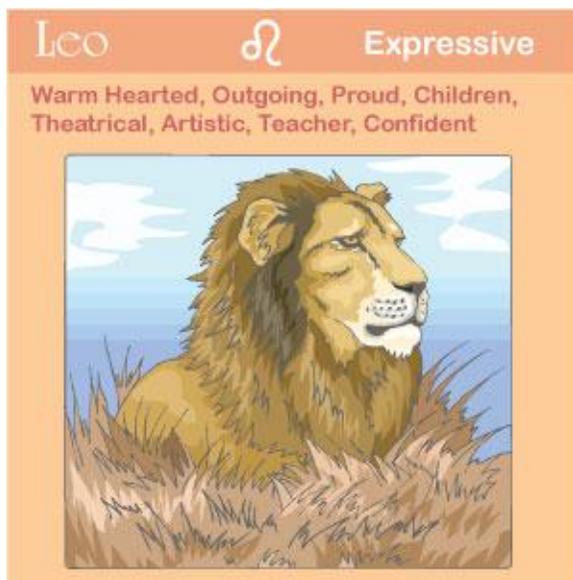


### **Cancer**

The sign Cancer rules home and family, and all matters of feeling secure. "Feeling" is of key importance here, since this sign experiences and feels life deeply.

Quote: "I Feel"

## The Zodiac Signs

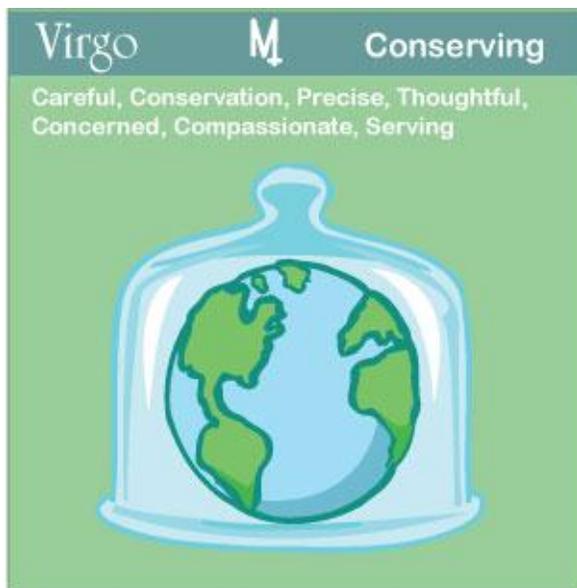


### **Leo**

The sign Leo rules awareness or knowing, a waking up to the experience of life and telling others about it—being proud of it. Leo is all about creativity and self-expression, about getting things out. Rules children.

Quote: "I Know"

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Virgo**

The sign Virgo is the caretaker of all people and things—large and small—whatever needs looking after, particularly anything having to do with health and well being. Virgo always makes the best out of any situation, and insists on looking after the details.

Quote: "I Care"

## The Zodiac Signs

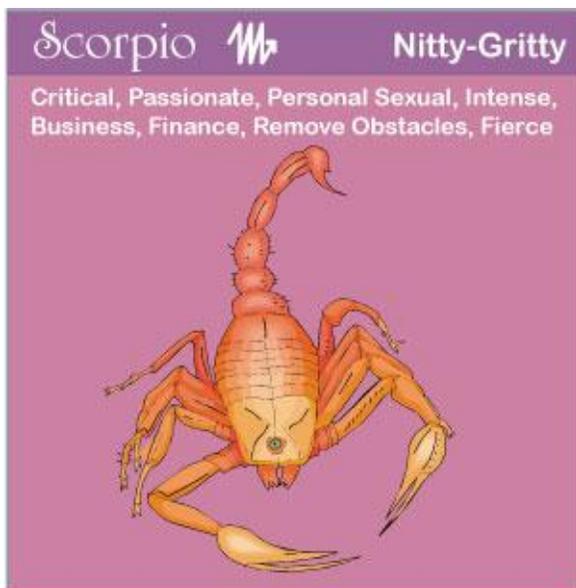


### **Libra**

The sign Libra has to do with partnerships and with the public; it has to do with everything connected to leaving the single, the personal, and the private behind and assuming a role that is much more social; becoming a public figure, for instance, or taking a partner. Objectivity.

Quote: "I Do"

## The Zodiac Signs

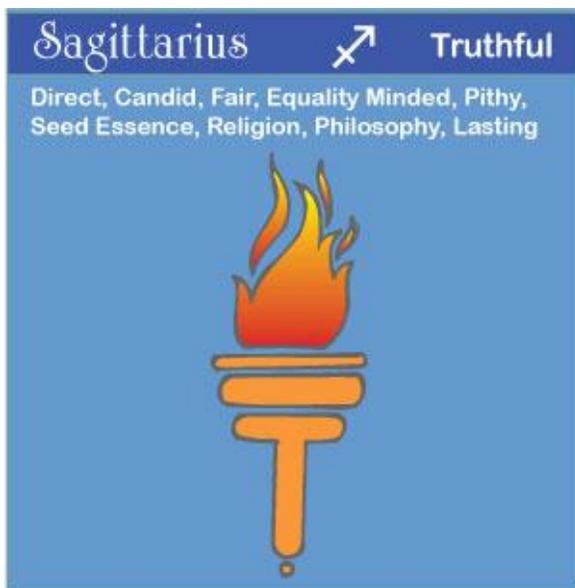


### **Scorpio**

The sign Scorpio is associated with all things sexual, all that is secretly private, but as equally with all matters of a business nature, such as the cutting through of red-tape, getting rid of excess and getting right down to the nitty-gritty.

Quote: "I Cut Back"

## The Zodiac Signs

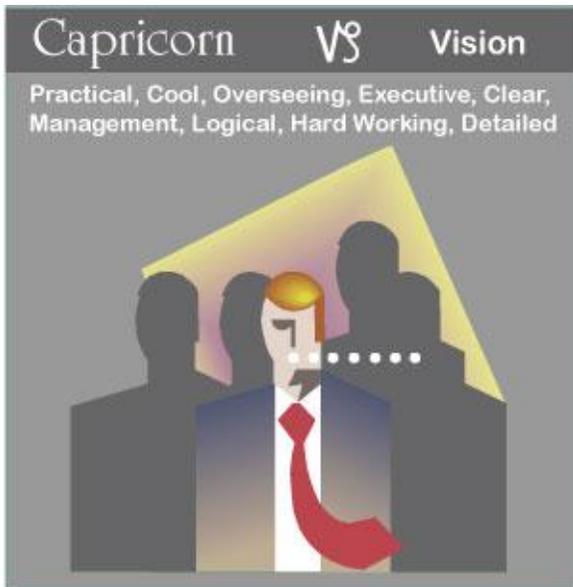


### **Sagittarius**

The sign Sagittarius has to do with truth and honesty, and with the reduction of everything to what is essential and most lasting; thus, with spiritual matters and religion—the seed essence.

Quote: "I Save"

## The Zodiac Signs

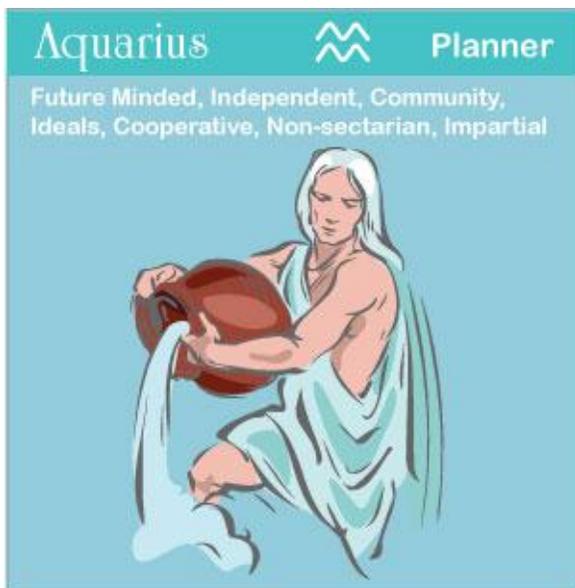


### Capricorn

The sign Capricorn indicates where we have a natural practical sense and can see-to-do, and thus its connection to vocation, that area of life we can manage and make work.

Quote: "I Manage"

## The Zodiac Signs

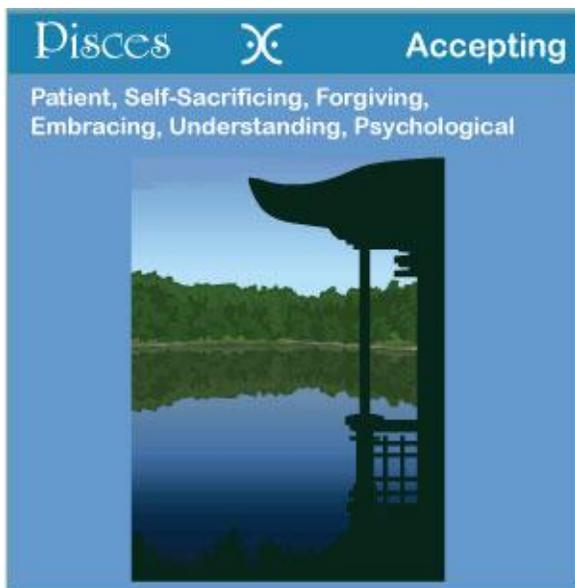


### **Aquarius**

The sign Aquarius has to do with community and altruistic efforts, putting our own personal concerns aside and pitching in on projects and plans of a more public or global nature—working with others on a common goal.

Quote: "I Plan"

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Pisces**

The sign Pisces indicates those areas of life where we are most understanding; where we are most accepting and willing to give of ourselves; where we are willing to sacrifice for the sake of making progress.

Quote: "I Accept"

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Zodiac: Keywords**

We have a number of sections on the interpretation of twelve zodiac signs included in this course, so you can shop around for one that best suits you. Here is a version with keywords and phrases, organized by various themes.

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Aries**

Pioneer

Leader

To Dare

Starter

Initiator

Impulsive

Spontaneous

Rash

Rude

Provocative

Positive

Visible

Egotistic

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Taurus**

Possesses

Has

Responds

Acquires

Money

Property

Wealth

Fertile

Field

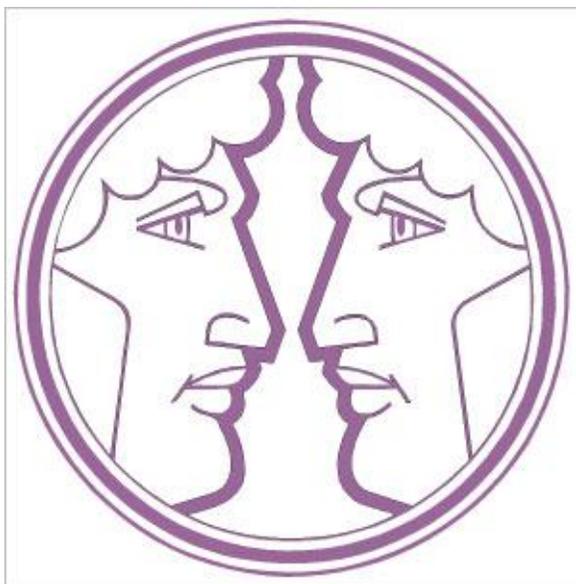
Fallow

Womb

Stable

Determined

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Gemini**

Connecting

Wires

Connections

Communicating

Speech

Letters

Email

Phones

Conversations

Gossip

Mental

Ideas

Thoughts

## The Zodiac Signs

Thinking

Study

Inquiry

Curious

Research

Science

Searching



**Cancer**

Mother

Provider

Caregiver

Mother Hen

Security

Home

## The Zodiac Signs

Family

Experiencing

Sensitivity

Feeling

Emotions

Shy



### **Leo**

Expressive

Outgoing

Artistic

Theatrical

Warm-Hearted

Children

Teacher

## The Zodiac Signs

Prideful

Confident

Sports

Physical

Aggressive



### **Virgo**

Conserving

Careful

Conservation

Self-Analytical

Precise

Details

Thoughtful

Compassionate

## The Zodiac Signs

Caring

Concern/Worry

Fussing

Serving Others



### **Libra**

Responsive

Responsible

Partners

Marriage

Social

Public Face

Impersonal

Equality Based

Fair

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Scorpio**

Intense

Passionate

Personal

Sexual

Fierce

Business

No Red Tape

Cut to the Quick

Nitty-Gritty

Removing Obstacles

Getting Rid of Excess

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Sagittarius**

Direct

Candid

Truthful

Harsh

Pith

Seed Essence

Religion

Spirituality

Philosophy

Lasting Virtues

Fair

Equality Minded

Even-handedness

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Capricorn**

Practical Sense

Clear-Headed

Cool

Appraising

Management

Overseeing

Executive

Business

Cool

Logical

Detailed

Hard Working

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Aquarius**

Community Minded

Altruistic

Non-Sectarian

Impartial

Group Work

Co-op

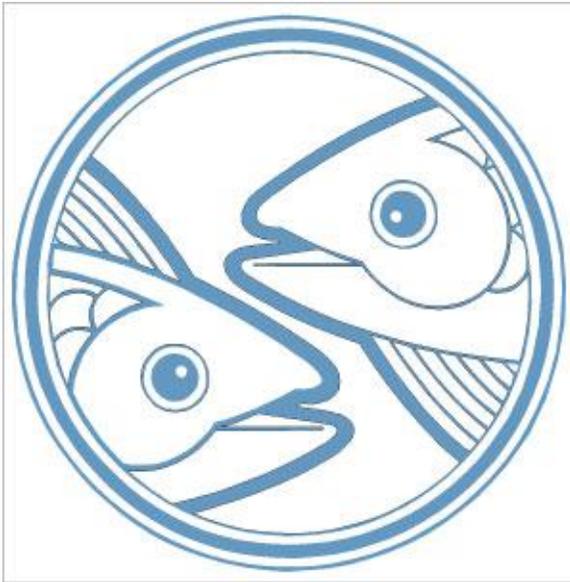
Future Minded

Planner

World View

Independent

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Pisces**

Psychological

Deep

Understanding

Patience

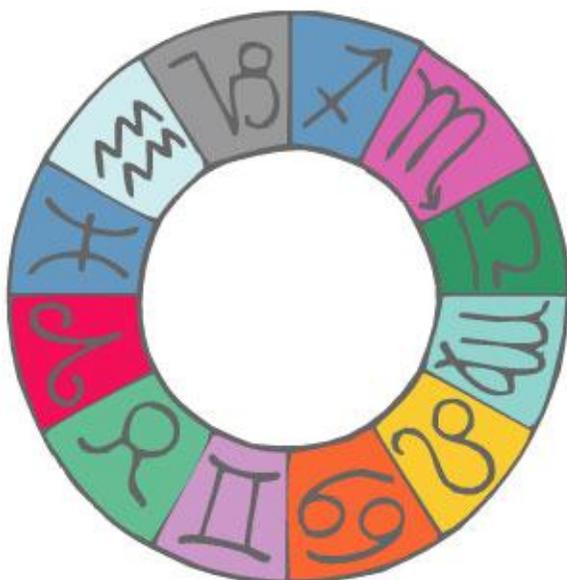
Long Suffering

Self-Sacrificing

Accepting

Forgiving

## The Zodiac Signs



### ***Cycles and Signs***

The twelve signs of the Zodiac form a wheel, each sign being an equal 30 degrees, and one sign following upon another. These are the signs of the zodiac upon which most of modern (and ancient) astrology is based. Most of us understand something when a friend calls out to us something like "No wonder, she's a Scorpio!" or "Watch out for him; he's got the Moon in Aries!" I am sure we all have a different take on these exclamations, but we get the drift. So this much we likely know, and we will get more into what such zodiac talk means, but before that, it may help the process to understand where these twelve signs came from. What is the Zodiac?

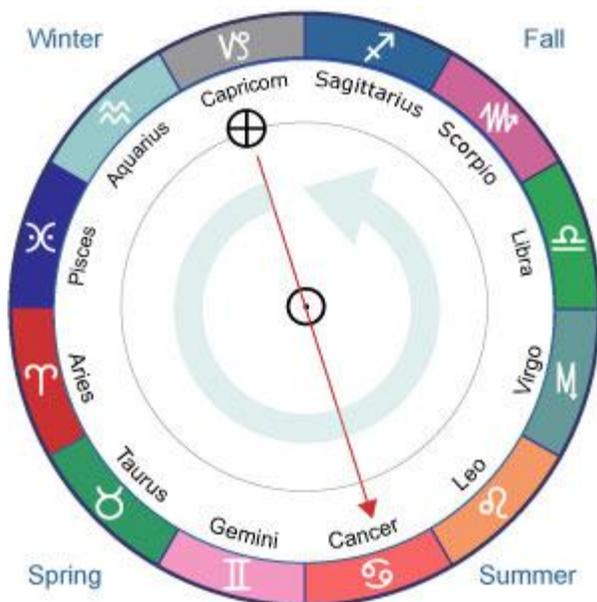
## The Zodiac Signs



### **What Is the Zodiac?**

This is simple. The zodiac is nothing more than the path our Earth takes around the sun in the course of one year's orbit. This annual orbital path takes the earth through a sky filled with stars and the constellations of stars. The particular set, or band, of constellations the earth passes through, is the one of the twelve familiar constellations and signs of the zodiac, thus the term: the band of the zodiac.

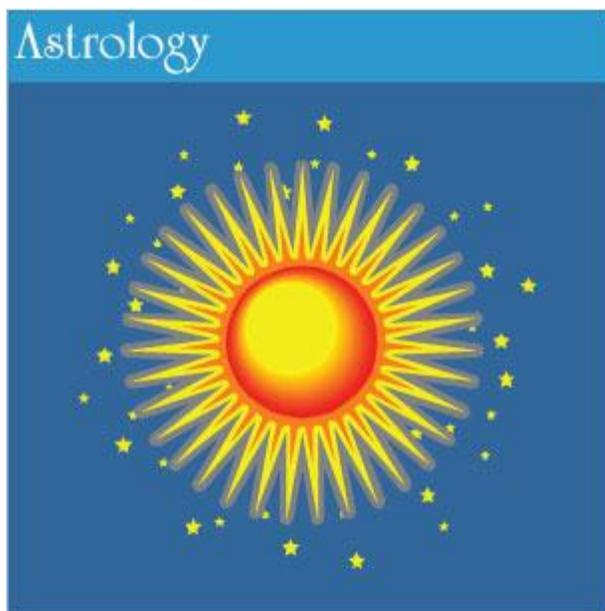
## The Zodiac Signs



### What's Your Sun Sign?

We all know that our Sun Sign is the zodiac sign for our birthday. I was born July 18th, so I am the zodiac sign Cancer. My sun sign is Cancer. And all that this means is that on the day of my birth, if one walked out and looked at the Sun, it would be in the Tropical sign Cancer. Note that I did not say it was in the constellation Cancer, but we will get to that distinction down the road a piece. For now, it is important that we understand that whatever sign the Sun was in on our birthday is our Sun Sign—the blurb we read in the newspapers.

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Different Sun Signs**

So, what we are saying here is that the Sun Sign astrology we all read about in the newspapers and that folks talk about amounts to nothing more than a difference in birthdays—the earth was in a different part of its annual orbit. This is what separates you from me, and, if this seems like a small difference, it may just be all the difference in the world. After all, human beings are mostly similar. If some alien race came from outer space and sorted us out, the fact that I am a Cancer sun sign and you are a Libra one is probably not even going to register on their radar screen. But for us humans, these little differences can mean a lot. Again: this may be all the difference in the world.

## The Zodiac Signs



### Learning the Signs

Most of you reading this probably already know what most of the signs mean, just from exposure to sun sign astrology, and by picking up on the way the zodiac signs are used in the day-to-day astrological jargon you hear about town. We all know that sun sign Cancer is a homebody, but I would be willing to bet that few of you know *why* the sun sign Cancer is a homebody, or where in the world that notion came from. What I propose here, in addition to giving you all of the traditional phrases and keywords (which is the way many people learn astrology), is to also point out how these keywords and concepts fit together—and where they came from. You can decide what is the most useful.

## The Zodiac Signs



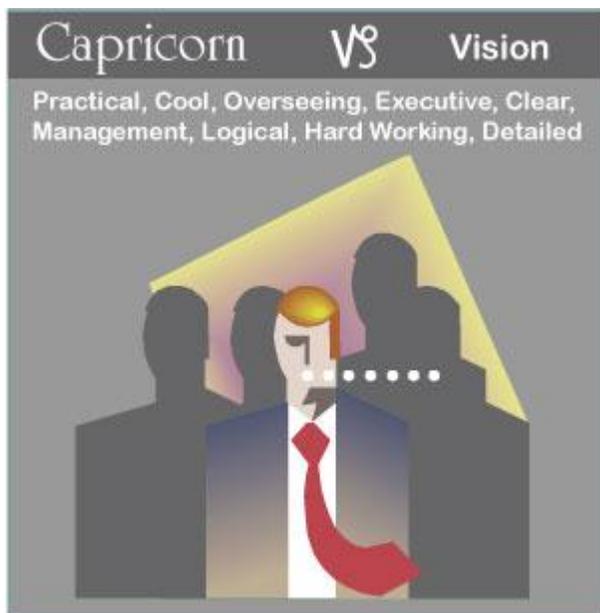
### ***Zodiac Cycles***

Perhaps the best way to learn about the cycle of the twelve zodiac signs is in our own day-to-day life. The phases are all there and easy to spot. Why try to memorize hundreds of keywords when a little observation will do the work for you and be a lot more fun? This is how I learned.

One thing we can't avoid is the ups and downs of our daily life. Just as we take the cycle of our breath with us wherever we go, so, too, do we take our internal cycles with us, so let's make use of them.

In any given period of time, in a few days or a few weeks, we have plenty of ups and downs. One day we are feeling up, all is going well, and a couple of days later we are down, and nothing seems to be going right. These are the cycles we live with, and they can be understood using the twelve phases of the zodiac signs.

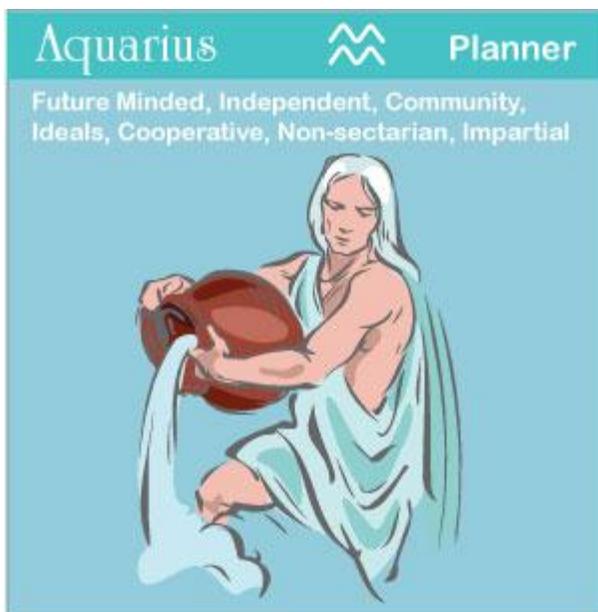
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Capricorn**

The times when we are really up and are able to see our life in perspective have been called our out-of-the-body experience times, or times of vision; these represent the Capricorn phase of our experience, the times when we can see what is going on and when we know just how to handle what needs our attention. When we are up and seeing life clearly it is easy to forget that we may not always feel like this. These out-of-the-body experiences are clairvoyant times, times when we can just look around at our life and make solid plans. We can see what to do—that is the experience of Capricorn.

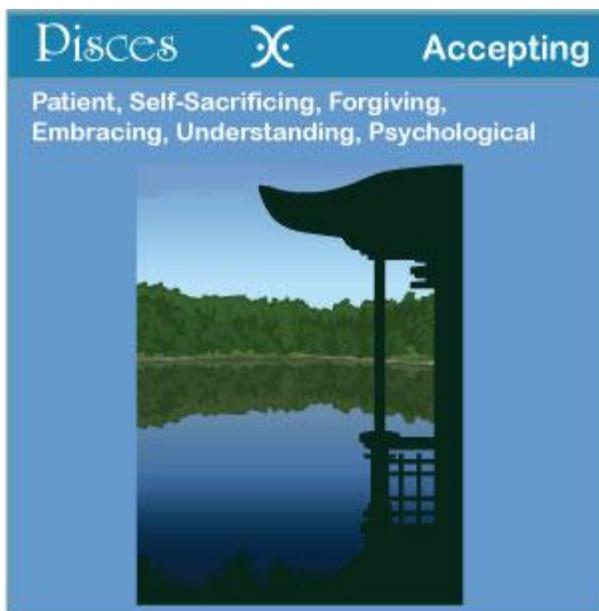
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Aquarius**

The Aquarius phase represents our response to having had some really clear insight, and this happens to each of us. We are inspired and can see just what to do, and we want to get about doing it before we forget what we saw so clearly, before our inspiration fades. Aquarius wants to make broad plans and help carry them out. And, everyone is welcome to pitch in, because getting the job done is more important than trying to own it. Aquarians are community-oriented because they can use the help, and also because they see what needs to be done as being a group project. They are very future-oriented because there is so much to do, and they are always in the planning stage. Their devotion to the purity of the ideas they carry makes them very concentrated—independent—and not easily persuaded.

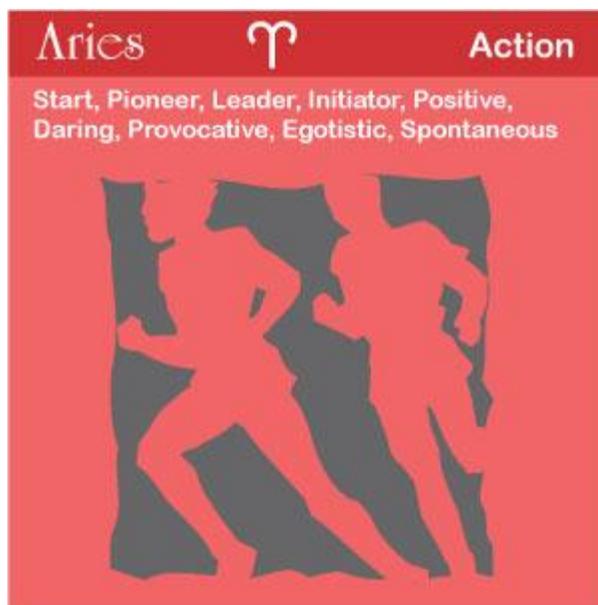
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Pisces**

The Pisces phase starts when our newly-inspired plans run into the inevitable series of obstacles that are in our path, usually the remains of our own old habits—the way we were before our inspiration. This is just the last thing we want to deal with, and these obstructions threaten to derail all of our newly-made plans. We can be torn between just barging through all of these hang-ups or patiently taking care of these interruptions one at a time. Of course, we should patiently work through our own messes, and then move on; we should accept what confronts us, if only for the sake of trying to move on with our own new plans. This is the experience in the Pisces phase—acceptance, forgiveness, and self-sacrifice as the means to forward motion.

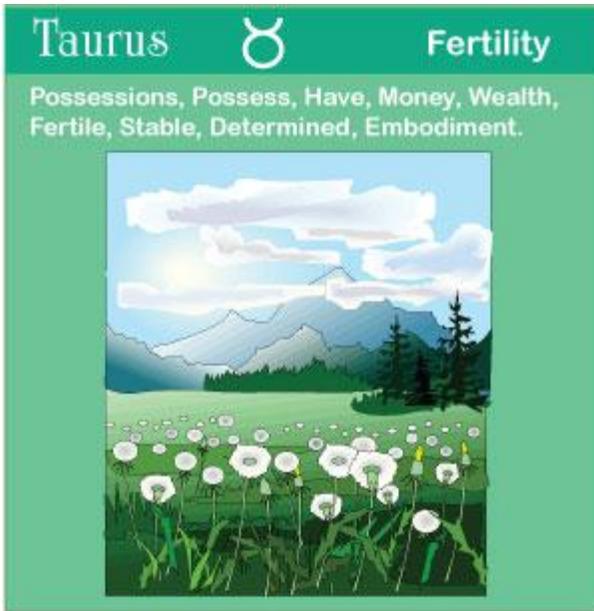
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Aries Phase**

The result of all the Pisces sacrifice and acceptance in dealing with whatever rises up to slow us down is what we manage to bring across through to this next phase—a new start. Aries represents the physical or practical result of our initial impulse or idea, what remains after we have paid whatever dues are required in Pisces. This is what we actually manage to get across. However small this step may be, it rises beyond the past (or on top of it) and marks an advance beyond the planning stage and a movement into the practical world. It entails some kind of accomplishment, something that can be seen for our work. Aries always makes a statement and is the turning point, a moving from the idea or plan into the world of action. Something appears.

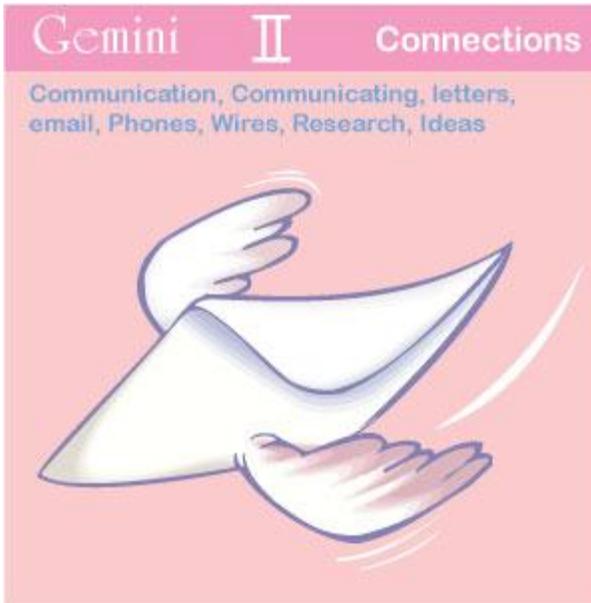
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Taurus Phase**

In the Aries phase, something new or fresh is brought through and into the world. Something appears that was not there before. The Taurus phase is always the practical (and exact) response to whatever it is that has just appeared. Taurus reacts, and draws around the Aries impulse a reaction or a body. Every new impulse brings a response. Taurus embodies, has, and possesses. It is the field in which the impulse will grow—that which will give it nourishment.

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Gemini**

When the reactive, bodybuilding forces of the Taurus phase have done their job, and we have reacted or responded to whatever Aries impulse made an impact, then the Gemini phase has to do with completing the form that has emerged, of getting into the fine points and making all of the final connections. We explore this new vehicle we are building, extending into the last detail. When all of our energy and effort is exhausted, we have reached the limit, and that is the sign Cancer.

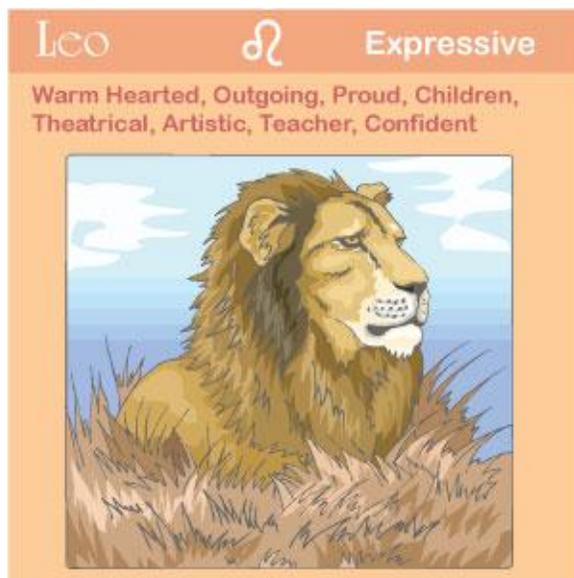
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Cancer**

Here, whatever vehicle we have created from our original impulse (back in Capricorn) is now complete. We have reached the limit, or the living end, of the experience. This is it. There is no more to come and it is downhill from here. This is the finished experience, or vehicle, and the tarot card for the sign Cancer is "The Chariot." Here you experience and feel (read: live) whatever you have created: good, bad, or in-between. You are in middle of the experience—inside-looking-out. It is your home for the moment.

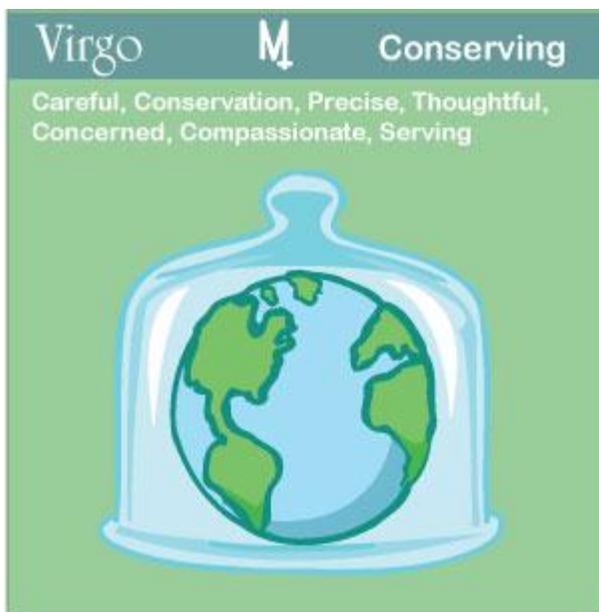
## The Zodiac Signs



### Leo

Leo marks the first sign of the experience breaking up, and it brings the dawn of awareness as to what this particular experience in Cancer was all about. The thick of the experience is starting to pass and with that the energy bound up in it is releasing, and is free to become aware of itself. Leo marks the advent of the awareness we have just been through something as well as an awareness of just what it was we went through. It is connected to a sense of ownership and pride, for we gradually realize just what has happened and who we are. This awareness is typically very energetic or enthusiastic—expressive—and Leos love to tell and express to others (perhaps teach) what they have done.

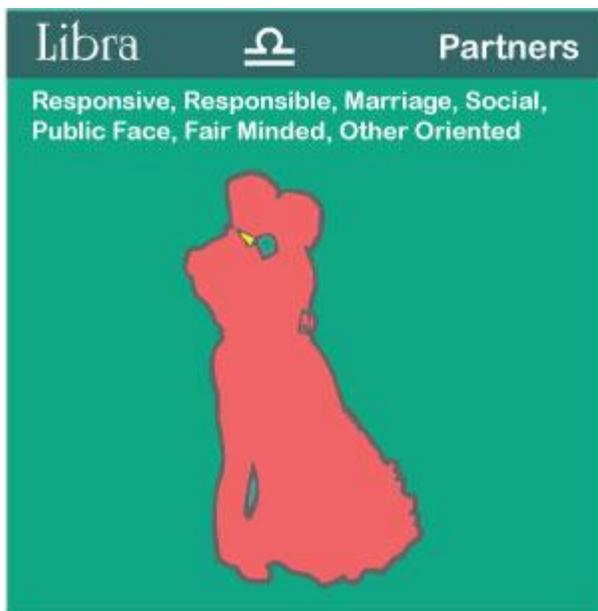
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Virgo**

In Virgo, the first flush of self-awareness that we saw in Leo has faded and fallen back into more of a maintenance pattern, with less enthusiasm and involving more a taking care of day-to-day tasks. The rush is over, and with the passing of that swell of energy it is clear that we won't have that level of oomph forever. The party is beginning to be over, and the mind turns more to conserving what we have and splurging less. We try to save some of what is already fading. We salvage and conserve what we can. This is Virgo.

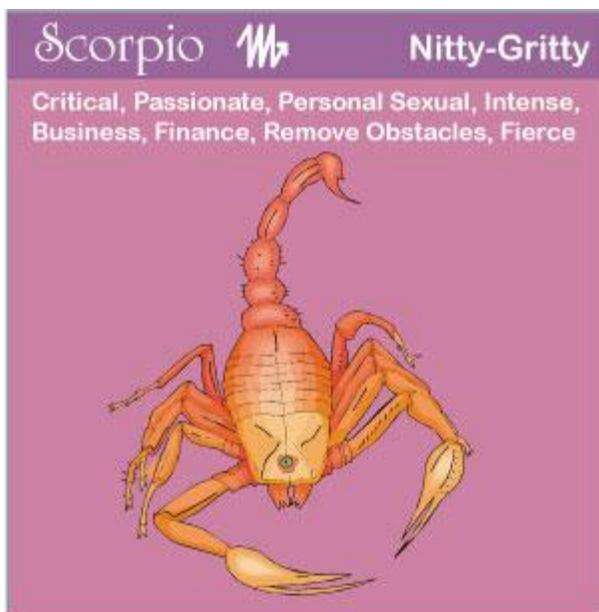
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Libra**

Libra marks the transition from a purely personal-based point of view (my, mine) to something a little broader than our personal concerns, which, as we saw in Virgo, were kind of drying up in any case. The experience we had at Cancer, whatever it was, is now over, and whatever we got out of it (hopefully, ourselves) has dwindled and died away during Virgo. It should be clear that it will not be getting any stronger. Libra marks a turning point, a point where we begin to respond to our precious experience and personal issues much more impartially, since we cannot get back into the driver's seat where we once were. We are out. Libra marks our passing over into a more cooperative state of mind: sharing with others, partnering, and working in a more collective manner.

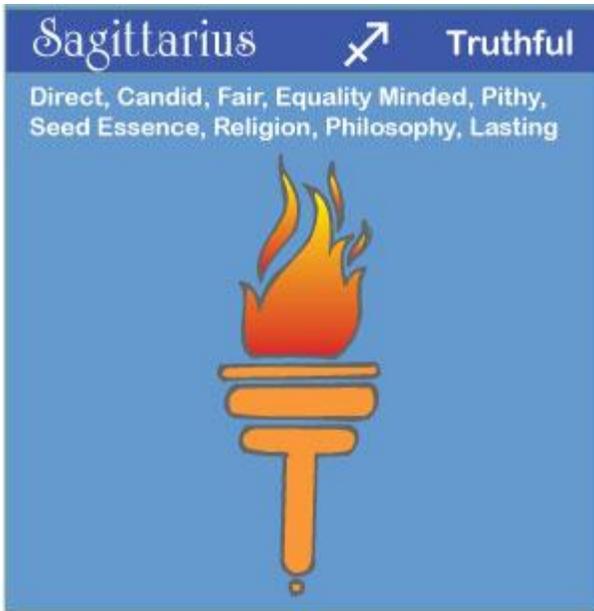
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Scorpio**

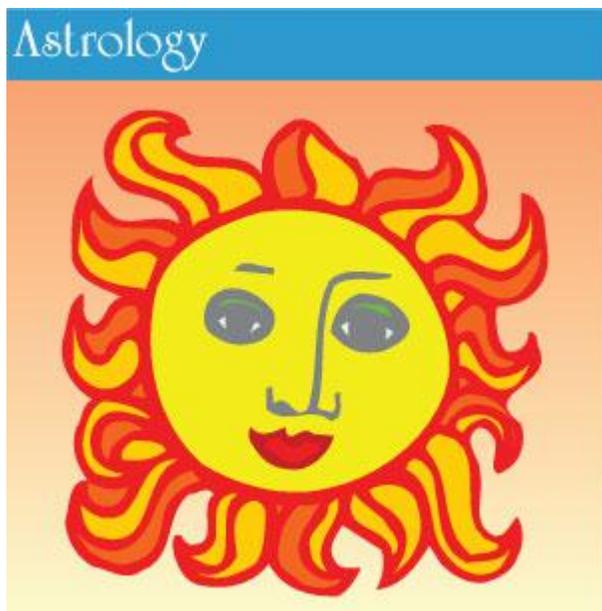
By the time the Scorpio phase of a cycle is reached, we are quite reflective, and personal ties and issues have pretty much dried up. They have reached the point of no return. In Scorpio, we can see, clearly, which remains of our past are worth hanging on to and which have little value and should be jettisoned. Traveling light is important here, and our analytical faculties are at their strongest. Scorpio is an expert at making the tough calls, at separating the wheat from the chaff, and, at more-or-less any business related matter. Scorpio strips the carcass of our past bare, cutting right to the chase—to the nitty-gritty.

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Sagittarius**

Sagittarius marks the live-long end of the cycle, and a point where nothing remains of value from our past experience other than what we have learned from it, the seed essence. As the bard wrote "You must leave now; take what you need, what you think will last." Here everything is reduced to the bare truth, that which will serve to ignite or fuel the next round or cycle—the pith essence. Thus, Sagittarius has to do with what lasts or remains, and therefore, with matters of religion and core spirituality.



### **The Familiar Sun Signs**

Sun sign astrology is what we read in the newspapers, on bubble-gum wrappers and can find in all kinds of other places. Is it legit? Who can say, these days? I am told that most of the newspaper astrology written today is not written by astrologers, but is just hired out to freelance writers. This was not always the case. The great 20th-century astrologer, Charles A. Jayne, who was one of my best friends, wrote an astrology column for years in the New York Daily News, and you can be sure what he wrote made sense and was based on the actual astrological work that he did; I know, because he told me so. He was proud to be able to bring solid astrology to so many people.

What's your sign? We hear it all the time. Is this real astrology? The answer is: you bet it is, but there is also much more to astrology than just knowing your sun sign. Still, this is a good place to start, because we all know a

## The Zodiac Signs

little about our “sign” or we would not be looking at this course.

Sun Sign Months			
♈	Aries	March 21	to April 19
♉	Taurus	April 20	to May 20
♊	Gemini	May 21	to June 21
♋	Cancer	June 22	to July 22
♌	Leo	July 23	to August 22
♍	Virgo	August 23	to September 22
♎	Libra	September 23	to October 23
♏	Scorpio	October 24	to November 22
♐	Sagittarius	November 23	to December 21
♑	Capricorn	December 22	to January 19
♒	Aquarius	January 20	to February 18
♓	Pisces	February 19	to March 20

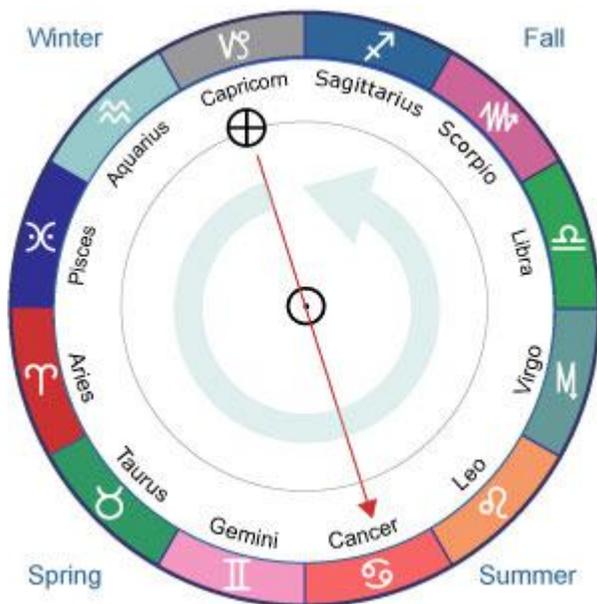
### Sun Sign Dates

When we say "sign," we mean, of course, our sun sign, which amounts to announcing the time of the year you were born. A particular sun sign points to where the sun was at in the zodiac on the day of your birth. Perhaps we should say the month of your birth, since each sun sign lasts about one month, although these months do not match up with our calendar months; they overlap. The list is above.

You can use this list to see what sign you were born under. If you were born BETWEEN the dates listed above, then you can be certain you were born in that sign; however, if your birthday is on one of the crossover dates (any date listed above), then you are said to be "on the cusp" or edge of one sign and another

## The Zodiac Signs

and you may not know for sure which of these two signs you are UNTIL you have a chart calculated. I am sure that, by now, most of you know which one of the twelve signs you were born under. If not, find the time of your birth and have an accurate chart (your horoscope) drawn up.



### Visualizing Your Sun Sign

Knowing your Sun Sign is pretty much knowing where the Sun was in the zodiac—relative to the course of the earth's travel around the Sun—at your birth. Our Earth travels in its orbit around the sun at 67,000 miles an hour; none of us, therefore, are exactly standing still. Let's look at an example:

I was born in the middle of July, which makes me the sun sign "Cancer," the Crab. As you can see in the diagram, we have the yearly circle (or cycle) of the zodiac, with all twelve signs laid out in the seasons to

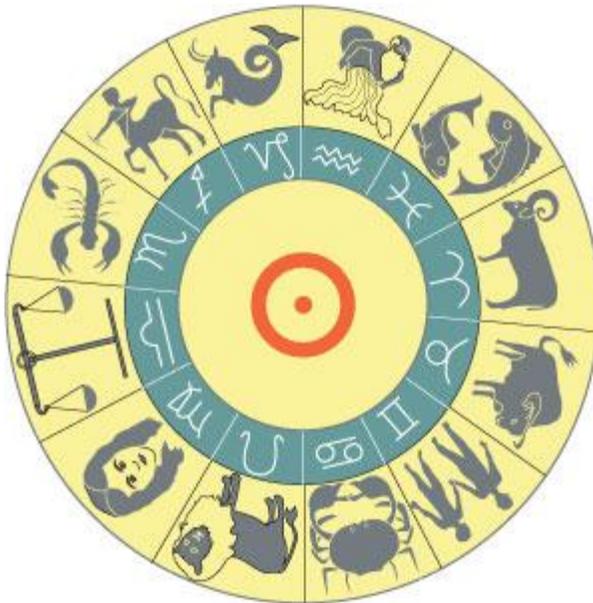
## The Zodiac Signs

which they belong. In the center of the diagram is the Sun, whose symbol is a circle with a dot in the center. Around that, and farther out, you can see a thin circle representing the orbit of the earth. On that orbit is the Earth, whose symbol is a circle with a cross in it.

The Earth in this diagram is, as we see, in the zodiac sign Capricorn, and moving in a counter-clockwise direction. From the earth, if we look at the sun, we can see that the sun is in the zodiac sign Cancer. In other words, from where we stand on Earth (and where Earth is in the zodiac), at any point during the year, the sun is always in the sign opposite. We see the sun in the opposite sign from where we stand. For example, if you are a sun-sign Virgo, then the earth was in the zodiac sign Pisces at the time of your birth, and so on.

You should be able to locate your sun sign on this chart; now, look across to the opposite sign and imagine standing on the earth, there, and looking at the sun in your birth sun sign. This is, as we know, how sun-sign astrology works. But does it really work?

## The Zodiac Signs

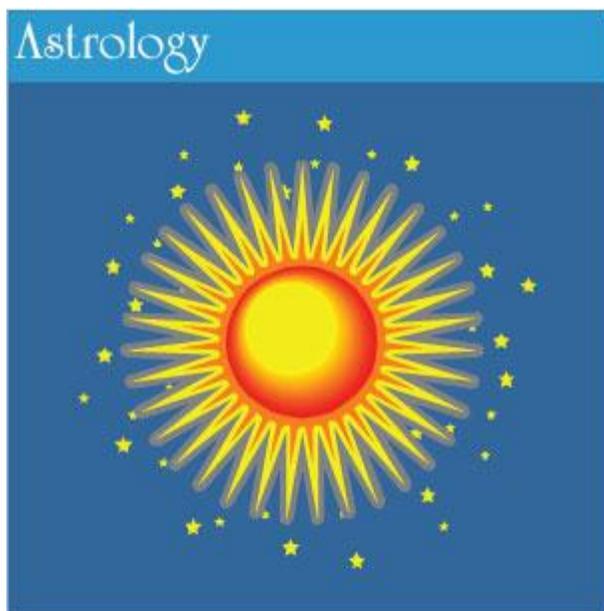


### **Sun Sign Astrology Works**

There is no question that sun-sign astrology, the most popular type of astrology used here in the West, is useful, and does provide us with legitimate although limited astrological information. After all, the Sun and the Moon, called "The Lights" by astrologers for centuries, are the two most important bodies in astrology; in fact, one of the next questions often asked after someone learns your sun sign, is: What's your Moon sign? We will get to that later.

So, what can we do knowing only someone's Sun Sign? Before we answer that, it might help to know what the Sun stands for, astrologically. What is the meaning of the Sun in astrology?

## The Zodiac Signs

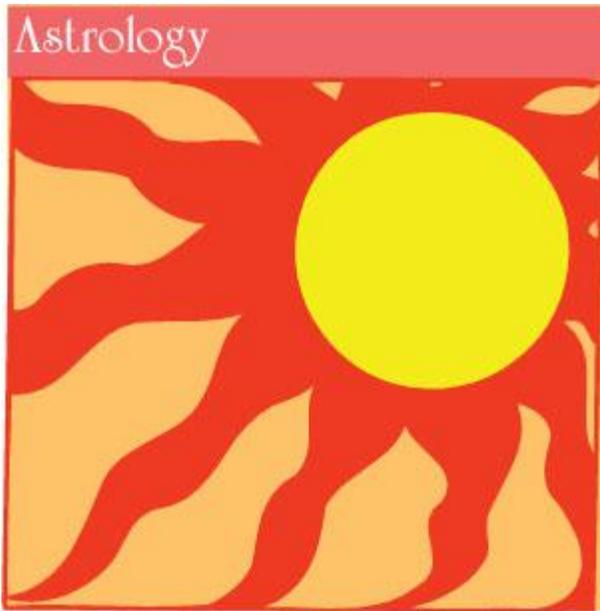


### **The Sun**

The Sun is the single most important body for astrologers, at least in the West. It might interest you to know that in Asia, and also in the East, the Moon is the most important body used by astrologers. In Asia, people don't celebrate your birthday (Sun), but they do want to know what day of the lunar phase you were born in. This difference tells a lot about the differences between these two types of societies, East and West, and we will study this in more detail later on.

In the astrology of both the East and the West, however, the Sun is a fiery body that can easily burn us, so it is always representative of some distance.

## The Zodiac Signs



### **The Sun is the Self**

The Sun is said to represent "The Self," but a self usually seen—and better viewed, as mentioned above—at some distance. It is the self we may want to be, or who we can become, in time. It is that idea of our self we look up to when we are young, who we try to become as adults, and what we probably look back upon as we get older. It shines in the center of all our lives.

By "center of our lives," I mean that we see the Sun shining bright as our future self when we are young; we look up to it in youth. We somehow seem to merge with it in our prime, and it is still the center of what we remember and know ourselves to be as we grow older. In other words, the Sun shines! And the Sun is shining not just up in the sky out there, but astrologically, in here—within us. It is the Sun. Nothing compares to it.

## The Zodiac Signs

It represents who we want to become, what we will become, and the essence of all we have ever done and who we ever hope to be. It should not be too hard to locate the Sun within our life, for it is shining right now, as it has always shone, and, as it will continue to shine, virtually forever. It is what shines for each of us in our mind's consciousness. And, we all share the same Sun, although each of us has our own personal take on it. That is what makes different sun signs "different."

The Sun is the center of our solar system and thus of our life. All warmth and life, as we know it, comes from the Sun. Earth endlessly circles this sun, and each year marks a cycle or a circle through all twelve zodiac signs, one after the other. And, while the Sun is something we all share in common, the fact that it moves through the twelve signs, a month at a time, provides for the difference between us. From the Sun's perspective, this is all the difference in the world, however small it may actually be.

In other words, we have a lot in common with each other, but there are also precious differences. My being born in the zodiac sign Cancer and you being a Scorpio are just two different phases (call them zodiac signs) in the yearly cycle, and these differences are the same differences that are between the different sun signs.

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Rote Memorization**

We all know that the zodiac sign Cancer is a homebody, and that Gemini love to talk, but how did they get these attributes? Where did these attributes come from? There are different levels of answers to that question. On the surface, the popular way to learn about the different sun signs is good old-fashioned rote memory. You memorize or otherwise learn what each sign means. Some of you are probably already pretty much up to speed on this way of learning.

Rote memorization is fine, but one of its disadvantages is that you are dependent on whatever source you use to learn about the signs, whether a book, a teacher, or just gradual familiarization. It works, but it is very difficult to generate new meanings on your own, and difficult to figure out whether some idea or object belongs to this sign or to that sign or to both.

## The Zodiac Signs

The fact is, the attributes of each sign are not random, and they are not something you only have to memorize. These signs are linked one to another in meaning, just as they are linked one to another in the heavens. In other words, each sign leads to the next sign, and the following sign is the continuation of the previous sign—it is one continuous process.

Over the years, I have discovered that it is much easier for students to take the time to understand how the signs came to be and how they work, than to simply try and memorize all of the keywords and what-not. It also takes less time. Best of all, once you learn the history and meaning behind the signs—and once you understand how the circle of the signs works—you can generate your own keywords and, from then on, not have to memorize anything.

So, I will give you the choice here of memorizing the keywords or of learning how the cycle of the signs actually works. Those of you who would like to study lists of attributes for each sign can check out that section, while those of you who want to learn how these attributes are generated can do that. Probably looking at both won't hurt.

### **Zodiac Correspondences: Part 1**

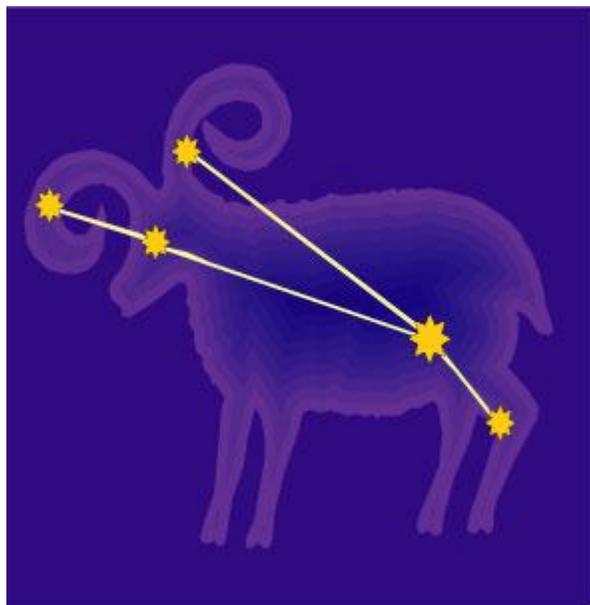
As we study astrology or any of the divinatory arts, we discover analogies here and there, sometimes whole sets of them. These have been termed "correspondences," and they go way back in time. The signs of the zodiac have a great number of correspondences. For example, the zodiac sign Cancer is said to correspond with the emerald, a precious gem,

## The Zodiac Signs

and also with amber. I doubt that anyone knows when or how this came to be, but it is part of astrological lore and tradition.

There are a great number of correspondences associated with the familiar twelve signs of the zodiac. Presented here are one hundred of them, although there are, no doubt, many more. Correspondences have more than just a passing interest to most of us. As we put the pieces of astrology together, our mind will flash on various correspondences, and these will suddenly make perfect sense to us. These flashes can light up our mental sky and help to make the whole realm of astrology more visible.

Everything is connected, and we each connect with everything a little differently; therefore, one person's correspondences may mean little or nothing to someone else. Take a stroll through these sets of correspondences and see if any lights go on.



## The Zodiac Signs

### **Aries**

Gender	Masculine
Positive/Negative	Positive
Month	March
Day of Week	Tuesday
Phrase	I Am
Keyword	Action, Self-Assertion
Tendency	Impulsiveness
12 Phases	Starting
Critical Degrees	1, 13, 26
House	First
Quadruplicities	Cardinal
Quadruplicities	Acute
Triplicities	Fire: Fire of Fire
Triplicities	Intellectual
Triplicities	Spring
Triplicities	Intellectual
Triplicities	Inspirational
Number	9
Color	Flaming and Somewhat
Discordant Hues (red)	
King's Color Scale	Scarlet
Perfume	Dragon's Blood
Animals	Ram, Owl
Plants	Tiger Lily, Geranium
Gems	Diamond, Ruby

## The Zodiac Signs

Metal	Steel, Iron
Mineral Salts	Potassium Phosphate
Music Key	D-Flat
Musical Tone	Do
Nature Spirits	Salamanders
Four Animal Types	Walking
Bestial/Bi-Corporal	Quadrupedian (Bestial)
Ruminant Signs	Ruminant Sign
Ascension	Short Ascension
Nocturnal/Diurnal	Diurnal
Ascending/Descending	Descending
Aestival/Hyemal	Aestival (summer)
Tropical Equinoctial	Equinoctial
Temperaments	Choleric
Body Part	Head, Face
Disease	Apoplexy
Apostle	Matthias
Evangelist	Mark
4 Consecrated Beings	Lion
Infernal River	Phlegethon
Hindu Deities	Shiva
40 Buddhist Meditations	Bloody Corpse
4 Divisions Pranava Vada	Self
Greek Deities	Athena
Egyptian Deities	Isis

## The Zodiac Signs

Roman Deities	Mars, Minerva
Ruling Planet	Mars
Detriment	Venus
Exalted	Sun
Fall	Saturn
Lineal figure	Puer
Path on the Tree of Life	15, joins 2-6
Path Title	Constituting Intelligence
Qliphotic Name	Da'Airiron (The Flock)
Sephirotic Number	120
Hebrew Letter	He (window)
12 Tribes of Israel	Dan
12 Prophets	Malachi
Jewish Calendar	Ayar
Order of Blessed Spirits	Seraphim
Angel	Malchidial
Elemental Ruler	Seraph
Four Angels	Michael
Hierarchy	Xeophim
Alice Bailey	Father of Spiritual Triad
Realm	The World
12 Degrees of the Damned	False Gods
Magical Powers	Consecrating things
Magical Weapons	Horns, Energy, The Burin
Legendary Order of Beings	Mania, Erinyes

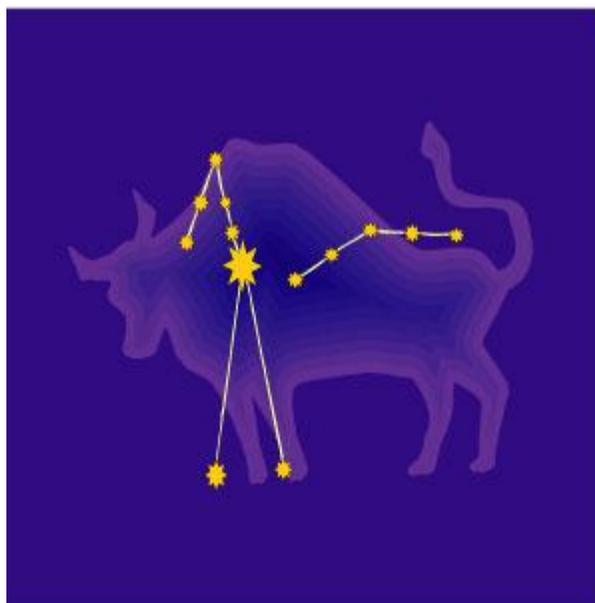
## The Zodiac Signs

Vegetable Drugs	All the Cerebral Excitants
Tarot Trump	IV, the Emperor
Tarot Design equivalent symbols.	A flame-clad god, bearing
Tarot Trump Title Among the Mighty	Sun of the Morning, Chief
Fortunate/Unfortunate	Fortunate
Commanding/Obeying Commanding	Northern or
Affinities	Gemini, Leo, Sagittarius
Barren/Fruitful	Barren (by some authorities)
Bitter/Sweet	Bitter
Whole/Broken	N/A
Hot/Cold	Hot
Conceptive	N/A
Crooked	N/A
Dry/Moist	Dry
Hoarse/Mute	Vocal
Violent Signs	Violent
Vital Signs	Vital
Voice Signs	N/A
Whole Signs	N/A
Boreal Signs	Boreal
Changeable (East Side of Chart)	N/A
Changeable (West Side of Chart)	N/A
Brutish	N/A

## The Zodiac Signs

Beholding Signs	Aries and Virgo
Imperfect Signs	N/A
Initiating Signs	Initiating Sign

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Taurus**

Quadruplicities	Fixed
Quadruplicities	Grave
Triplicities	Earth: Air of Earth
Gender	Feminine
Alice Bailey	Power of Spiritual Triad
Fortunate/Unfortunate	Unfortunate
Commanding/Obeying Commanding	Northern or
Ascension	Short Ascension
Nocturnal/Diurnal	Nocturnal
Bestial/Bi-Corporal	Quadrupedian (Bestial)
Temperaments	Melancholy
Ruling Planet	Venus

## The Zodiac Signs

Detriment	Mars
Exalted	Moon
Fall	Part of Fortune
House	Second
Critical Degrees	9, 21
Keyword	Stability, Harmony
Tendency	Persistence
Phrase	I Have
Affinities	Cancer, Virgo, Capricorn, Pisces
Day of Week	Friday
Month	April
Number	6
Color	Pastel shades of blue
King's Color Scale	Red-Orange
Music Key	E-Flat
Musical Tone	La
Perfume	Storax
Body Part	Throat, Neck
Disease	Indigestion
Vegetable Drugs	Sugar
Animals	Bull
Plants	Mallow
Gems	Sapphire, turquoise, Topaz
Metal	Copper
Mineral Salts	Sodium Sulfate

## The Zodiac Signs

Tarot Trump	V, the Hierophant
Tarot Design	Between the pillars sits an ancient
Tarot Trump Title	Magus of the Eternal
Path on the Tree of Life	#16, joins 2-4
Path Title	Triumphal or Eternal One
Hindu Deities	Shiva (Sacred Bull)
40 Buddhist Meditations	Beaten and Scattered Corpse
4 Divisions Pranava Vada	Not-Self
Greek Deities	Here
Egyptian Deities	Osiris
Roman Deities	Venus
Qliphotic Name	Admiron
Sephirotic Number	136
Hebrew Letter	Vau (nail)
12 Tribes of Israel	Israel, Ruben
12 Prophets	Haggai
Jewish Calendar	Sivah
Order of Blessed Spirits	Cherubim
Angel	Asmodel
Elemental Ruler	Ariel
Four Angels	Uriel
Hierarchy	Teraphim
Realm	Of God
Magical Powers	Secrets of Physical Strength

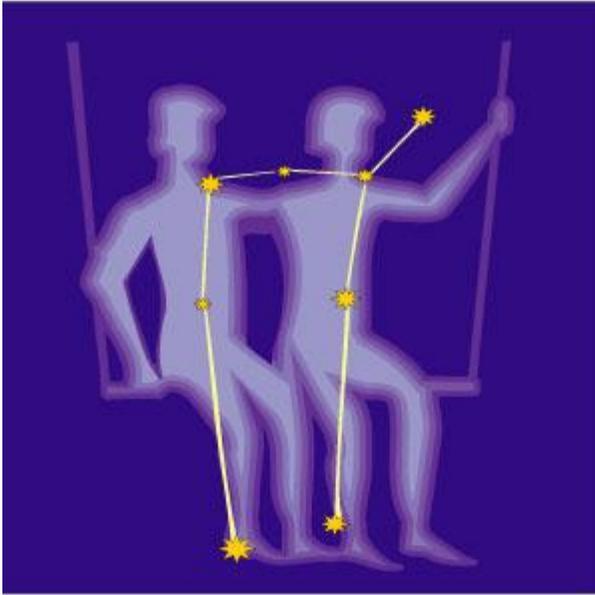
## The Zodiac Signs

Magical Weapons	The Labor of Preparation
Legendary Order of Beings	Gorgons, Minotaurs
Lineal figure	Amissio
Nature Spirits	Gnomes
Apostle	Thaddeus
Evangelist	Luke
4 Consecrated Beings	Bull
12 Degrees of the Damned	Lying Spirits
Infernal River	Acheron
Four Animal Types	Creeping
Triplicities	Intellectual
Triplicities	Spring
Triplicities	Intellectual
Triplicities	Practical
Ascending/Descending	Descending
Barren/Fruitful	Moderately Fruitful
Bitter/Sweet	N/A
Whole/Broken	N/A
Hot/Cold	Cold
Conceptive	Conceptive
Crooked	Crooked
Positive/Negative	Negative
Dry/Moist	Dry
Aestival/Hyemal	Aestival (summer)
Hoarse/Mute	Vocal

## The Zodiac Signs

Violent Signs	N/A
Vital Signs	N/A
Voice Signs	N/A
Whole Signs	Whole Sign
Tropical Equinoctial	N/A
Boreal Signs	Boreal
Changeable (East Side of Chart)	Hot
Changeable (West Side of Chart)	Cold
Brutish	N/A
Beholding Signs	Taurus and Leo
Imperfect Signs	N/A
Initiating Signs	N/A
Ruminant Signs	Ruminant Sign
12 Phases	Embodying

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Gemini**

Quadruplicities	Mutable
Quadruplicities	Common or Flexed
Triplicities	Air: Water of Air
Gender	Masculine
Alice Bailey	Mind of Spiritual Triad
Fortunate/Unfortunate	Fortunate
Commanding/Obeying Commanding	Northern or
Ascension	Short Ascension
Nocturnal/Diurnal	Diurnal
Bestial/Bi-Corporal	Bi-corporal (Human)
Temperaments	Sanguine
Ruling Planet	Mercury

## The Zodiac Signs

Detriment	Jupiter
Exalted	North Lunar Node
Fall	South Lunar Node
House	Third
Critical Degrees	4, 17
Keyword	Versatility
Tendency	Diffusion
Phrase	I Think
Affinities	Aries, Leo, Libra, Aquarius
Day of Week	Wednesday
Month	May
Number	5
Color	Monotonous tones of blue and silver gray
King's Color Scale	Orange
Music Key	F-Sharp
Musical Tone	Mi
Perfume	Wormwood
Body Part	Shoulders, Lungs, Hands, Arms,
Nervous System	
Disease	Phthisis, Pneumonia
Vegetable Drugs	Ergot and Exbolics
Animals	Magpie, Hybrids
Plants	Hybrids, Orchids
Gems	Emerald (Alexandrite), Tourmaline, Iceland Spar

## The Zodiac Signs

Metal	Mercury (Quicksilver)
Mineral Salts	Potassium Chloride
Tarot Trump	VI, The Lovers
Tarot Design Sign of Osiris risen	A prophet young and in the
Tarot Trump Title	The Children of the Voice, Oracle of the Mighty Waters
Path on the Tree of Life	#17, joins 3-6
Path Title	Disposing One
Hindu Deities	Various twin and hybrid deities
40 Buddhist Meditations	White
4 Divisions Pranava Vada	Relation
Greek Deities	Castor and Pullux, Apollo the Diviner
Egyptian Deities	Twin Merti
Roman Deities	Castor and Pullux (Janus)
Qliphotic Name	Tzalalimiron (Clangers)
Sephirotic Number	153
Hebrew Letter	Zain (sword)
12 Tribes of Israel	Judah
12 Prophets	Zachariah
Jewish Calendar	Tamooz
Order of Blessed Spirits	Thrones
Angel	Ambriel
Elemental Ruler	Cherub
Four Angels	Raphael

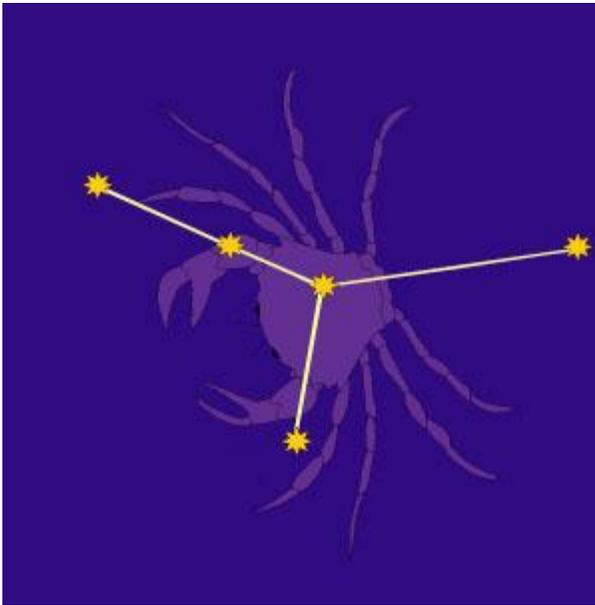
## The Zodiac Signs

Hierarchy	Seraphim
Realm	World
Magical Powers	Power of being in tow or more places at once, Prophecy
Magical Weapons	The Tripod
Legendary Order of Beings	Ominous Appearances, Banshees
Lineal figure	Albus
Nature Spirits	Sylphs
Apostle	Simon
Evangelist	John
4 Consecrated Beings	Man
12 Degrees of the Damned	Vessels of Iniquity
Infernal River	Cocytus
Four Animal Types	Flying
Triplicities	Intellectual
Triplicities	Spring
Triplicities	Intellectual
Triplicities	Mental
Ascending/Descending	Descending
Barren/Fruitful	Barren
Bitter/Sweet	Sweet
Whole/Broken	Whole
Hot/Cold	Hot
Conceptive	N/A
Crooked	N/A

## The Zodiac Signs

Positive/Negative	Positive
Dry/Moist	Moist
Aestival/Hyemal	Aestival (summer)
Hoarse/Mute	Vocal
Violent Signs	N/A
Vital Signs	N/A
Voice Signs	Voice
Whole Signs	Whole Sign
Tropical Equinoctial	N/A
Boreal Signs	Boreal
Changeable (East Side of Chart)	Hot and Dry
Changeable (West Side of Chart)	Cold and Moist
Brutish	N/A
Beholding Signs	Gemini and Cancer
Imperfect Signs	N/A
Initiating Signs	N/A
Ruminant Signs	N/A
12 Phases	Connecting

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Cancer**

Quadruplicities	Cardinal
Quadruplicities	Acute
Triplicities	Water: Fire of Water
Gender	Feminine
Alice Bailey	Father of Spiritual Triad
Fortunate/Unfortunate	Unfortunate
Commanding/Obeying Commanding	Northern or
Ascension	Long Ascension
Nocturnal/Diurnal	Nocturnal
Bestial/Bi-Corporal	Reptilian
Temperaments	Phlegmatic
Ruling Planet	Moon

## The Zodiac Signs

Detriment	Saturn
Exalted	Jupiter
Fall	Mars
House	Fourth
Critical Degrees	1, 13, 26
Keyword	Tenacity, Fertility
Tendency	Patriotism
Phrase	I Feel
Affinities Leo	Virgo, Scorpio, Pisces, Taurus,
Day of Week	Monday
Month	June
Number	2, 7
Color	Iridescent hues, opalescent tints
King's Color Scale	Amber
Music Key	A-Flat
Musical Tone	Si
Perfume	Onycha
Body Part	Breast, Stomach
Disease	Rheumatism
Vegetable Drugs	Watercress
Animals	Crab, Turtle, Sphinx, Scarab
Plants	Lotus
Gems	Emerald, Amber
Metal	Silver
Mineral Salts	Calcium Chloride

## The Zodiac Signs

Tarot Trump	VII, The Chariot
Tarot Design	A young and holy king, under the starry canopy
Tarot Trump Title	Child of the Powers of the Waters, Lord of the Triumph of Light
Path on the Tree of Life	#18, joins 3-5
Path Title	Intelligence of the House of Influence
Hindu Deities	None
40 Buddhist Meditations	Worm-eaten Corpse
4 Divisions Pranava Vada	Summation
Greek Deities	Apollo the Charioteer
Egyptian Deities	Hormakhu
Roman Deities	Mercury
Qliphotic Name	Shichiron (black)
Sephirotic Number	171
Hebrew Letter	Cheth (fence)
12 Tribes of Israel	Manasseh
12 Prophets	Amos
Jewish Calendar	Ab
Order of Blessed Spirits	Dominations
Angel	Muriel
Elemental Ruler	Tharsis
Four Angels	Gabriel
Hierarchy	Cherubim
Realm	Of Virgin

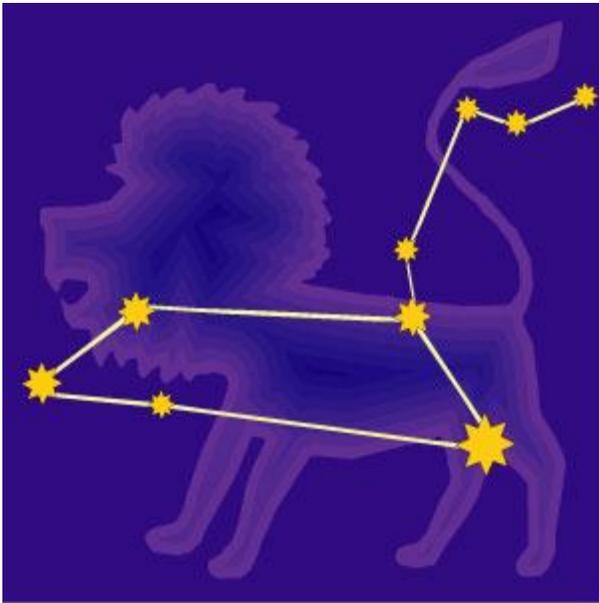
## The Zodiac Signs

Magical Powers	Casting Enchantments
Magical Weapons	The Furnace
Legendary Order of Beings	Vampires
Lineal figure	Populus Via
Nature Spirits	Undines, Sprites
Apostle	John
Evangelist	Matthew
4 Consecrated Beings	Eagle
12 Degrees of the Damned Wickedness	Revengers of
Infernal River	Styx
Four Animal Types	Swimming
Triplicities	Maternal
Triplicities	Summer
Triplicities	Maternal
Triplicities	Emotional
Ascending/Descending	Ascending
Barren/Fruitful	Fruitful
Bitter/Sweet	N/A
Whole/Broken	N/A
Hot/Cold	Cold
Conceptive	N/A
Crooked	N/A
Positive/Negative	Negative
Dry/Moist	Moist
Aestival/Hyemal	Aestival (summer)

## The Zodiac Signs

Hoarse/Mute	Hoarse/Mute
Violent Signs	N/A
Vital Signs	N/A
Voice Signs	N/A
Whole Signs	N/A
Tropical Equinoctial	Tropical
Boreal Signs	Boreal
Changeable (East Side of Chart)	N/A
Changeable (West Side of Chart)	N/A
Brutish	N/A
Beholding Signs	Gemini and Cancer
Imperfect Signs	N/A
Initiating Signs	Initiating Sign
Ruminant Signs	N/A
12 Phases	Experiencing

## The Zodiac Signs



### Leo

Quadruplicities	Fixed
Quadruplicities	Grave
Triplicities	Fire: Air of Fire
Gender	Masculine
Alice Bailey	Power of Spiritual Triad
Fortunate/Unfortunate	Fortunate
Commanding/Obeying Commanding	Northern or
Ascension	Long Ascension
Nocturnal/Diurnal	Diurnal
Bestial/Bi-Corporal	Quadrupedian (Bestial)
Temperaments	Choleric
Ruling Planet	Sun

## The Zodiac Signs

Detriment	Saturn
Exalted	Neptune
Fall	Uranus
House	Fifth
Critical Degrees	9, 21
Keyword	Power, Affection
Tendency	Leadership
Phrase	I Will
Affinities	Aries, Libra, Gemini, Sagittarius
Day of Week	Sunday
Month	July
Number	1, 4
Color	Full spectromatic tones of orange
King's Color Scale	Gold (greenish yellow)
Music Key	B-Flat
Musical Tone	Re
Perfume	Olibanum
Body Part	Heart
Disease	Syncope, etc. Heart-related
Vegetable Drugs	All Ccaminatives and tonics
Animals	Lion
Plants	Sunflower
Gems	Diamond, Cat' Eye
Metal	Gold
Mineral Salts	Magnesium Phosphate

## The Zodiac Signs

Tarot Trump	XI, Strength
Tarot Design	A smiling woman holds open the jaws of a fierce and powerful lion
Tarot Trump Title	Daughter of the Flaming Sword
Path on the Tree of Life	#19, joins 4-5
Path Title	Intelligence of All the Activities of the Spiritual Being
Hindu Deities	Vishnu (Narashingh Avatar)
40 Buddhist Meditations	Gnawed by wild-beast corpse
4 Divisions Pranava Vada	Self
Greek Deities	Demeter
Egyptian Deities	Horus
Roman Deities	Venus
Qliphotic Name	Shalehbiron (flaming)
Sephirotic Number	190
Hebrew Letter	Teth (serpent)
12 Tribes of Israel	Asher
12 Prophets	Hosea
Jewish Calendar	Elool
Order of Blessed Spirits	Powers
Angel	Verchiel
Elemental Ruler	Seraph
Four Angels	Michael
Hierarchy	Lords of the Flame

## The Zodiac Signs

Realm	Spirit
Magical Powers	Power of training wild beasts
Magical Weapons	Discipline (preliminary)
Legendary Order of Beings	Dorros, Dragons
Lineal figure	Fortuna Manor, Fortuna Minor
Nature Spirits	Salamanders
Apostle	Peter
Evangelist	Mark
4 Consecrated Beings	Lion
12 Degrees of the Damned	Jugglers
Infernal River	Phlegethon
Four Animal Types	Walking
Triplicities	Maternal
Triplicities	Summer
Triplicities	Maternal
Triplicities	Inspirational
Ascending/Descending	Ascending
Barren/Fruitful	Barren
Bitter/Sweet	Bitter
Whole/Broken	Broken
Hot/Cold	Hot
Conceptive	Conceptive
Crooked	N/A
Positive/Negative	Positive
Dry/Moist	Dry

## The Zodiac Signs

Aestival/Hyemal	Aestival (summer)
Hoarse/Mute	Vocal
Violent Signs	N/A
Vital Signs	Vital
Voice Signs	N/A
Whole Signs	Whole Sign
Tropical Equinoctial	N/A
Boreal Signs	Boreal
Changeable (East Side of Chart)	Hot and Dry
Changeable (West Side of Chart)	Hot and Moist
Brutish	Brutish
Beholding Signs	Taurus and Leo
Imperfect Signs	Imperfect Sign
Initiating Signs	N/A
Ruminant Signs	N/A
12 Phases	Awareness

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Virgo**

Quadruplicities	Mutable
Quadruplicities	Common or Flexed
Triplicities	Earth: Water of Earth
Gender	Feminine
Alice Bailey	Mind of Spiritual Triad
Fortunate/Unfortunate	Unfortunate
Commanding/Obeying Commanding	Northern or
Ascension	Long Ascension
Nocturnal/Diurnal	Nocturnal
Bestial/Bi-Corporal	Bi-corporal (Human)
Temperaments	Melancholic
Ruling Planet	Mercury

## The Zodiac Signs

Detriment	Jupiter
Exalted	Mercury
Fall	Uranus
House	Sixth
Critical Degrees	4, 17
Keyword	Discrimination
Tendency	Impulsiveness
Phrase	I Analyze
Affinities Cancer	Taurus, Capricorn, Scorpio,
Day of Week	Wednesday
Month	August
Number	5
Color	Dark, indefinite colors of gray-blue
King's Color Scale	green-yellowish
Music Key	C
Musical Tone	Mi
Perfume	White sandalwood, Narcissus
Body Part	Solar Plexus, Bowels
Disease	Spinal Weakness, Paralysis
Vegetable Drugs	All Anaphrodisiacs
Animals	All virgin and anchoritic animals
Plants	Snowdrop, Lily, Narcissus
Gems	Jade (peridot)
Metal	Quicksilver

## The Zodiac Signs

Mineral Salts	Potassium Sulphate
Tarot Trump	IX, The Hermit
Tarot Design	Wrapped in a cloak and cowl, an ancient Walketh bearing a lamp and staff
Tarot Trump Title of the Voice of Power	Prophet of the Eternal Magus
Path on the Tree of Life	#20, joins 4-6
Path Title	Intelligence of the Will
Hindu Deities	The Gopi Girls, Lord of Yoga
40 Buddhist Meditations	Bloated Corpse
4 Divisions Pranava Vada	Not-Self
Greek Deities	Attis
Egyptian Deities	Heru-Pa-Kraath
Roman Deities	Attis, Ceres, Adonis
Qliphotic Name	Tzaphiriron
Sephirothic Number	210
Hebrew Letter	Yod (hand)
12 Tribes of Israel	Simeon
12 Prophets	Micha
Jewish Calendar	Tishree
Order of Blessed Spirits	Virtues
Angel	Hamaleil
Elemental Ruler	Ariel
Four Angels	Uriel
Hierarchy	Lords of Wisdom
Realm	World of Divine spirit

## The Zodiac Signs

Magical Powers	Invisibility, Parthenogenesis
Magical Weapons	Lamp and Wand (virile force reserved)
Legendary Order of Beings	Mermaids, Banshees
Lineal figure	Conjunctio
Nature Spirits	Gnomes
Apostle	Andrew
Evangelist	Luke
4 Consecrated Beings	Bull
12 Degrees of the Damned	Airy Powers
Infernal River	Acheron
Four Animal Types	Creeping
Triplicities	Maternal
Triplicities	Summer
Triplicities	Maternal
Triplicities	Practical
Ascending/Descending	Ascending
Barren/Fruitful	N/A
Bitter/Sweet	N/A
Whole/Broken	N/A
Hot/Cold	Cold
Conceptive	N/A
Crooked	N/A
Positive/Negative	Negative
Dry/Moist	Dry
Aestival/Hyemal	Aestival (summer)

## The Zodiac Signs

Hoarse/Mute	Vocal
Violent Signs	N/A
Vital Signs	N/A
Voice Signs	Voice (last part)
Whole Signs	N/A
Tropical Equinoctial	N/A
Boreal Signs	Boreal
Changeable (East Side of Chart)	Warmish Cold
Changeable (West Side of Chart)	Moist
Brutish	N/A
Beholding Signs	Aries and Virgo
Imperfect Signs	N/A
Initiating Signs	N/A
Ruminant Signs	N/A
12 Phases	Conservation

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Libra**

Quadruplicities

Cardinal

Quadruplicities

Acute

Triplicities

Air: Fire of Air

Gender

Masculine

Alice Bailey

Father of Spiritual Triad

Fortunate/Unfortunate

Fortunate

Commanding/Obeying

Southern or Obeying

Ascension

Long Ascension

Nocturnal/Diurnal

Diurnal

Bestial/Bi-Corporal

Humane

Temperaments

Sanguine

Ruling Planet

Venus

## The Zodiac Signs

Detriment	Mars
Exalted	Saturn
Fall	Sun
House	Seventh
Critical Degrees	1, 13, 26
Keyword	Balance, Partnership
Tendency	Justice
Phrase	I Weigh
Affinities Sagittarius	Aquarius, Leo, Gemini,
Day of Week	Friday
Month	September
Number	6
Color turquoise	Clouded art tints, crimson and
King's Color Scale	Emerald Green
Music Key	D
Musical Tone	La
Perfume	Galbanum
Body Part	Kidney, Loins
Disease	Kidney Disorders
Vegetable Drugs	Tobacco
Animals	Elephant
Plants	Aloe
Gems	Opal, Emerald
Metal	Copper

## The Zodiac Signs

Mineral Salts	Sodium Phosphate
Tarot Trump	VIII, Justice
Tarot Design	A conventional figure of justice, with scales and balances
Tarot Trump Title	Daughter of the Lords of Truth, Ruler of the Balance
Path on the Tree of Life	#22, joins 5-6
Path Title	Faithful Intelligence
Hindu Deities	Yama
40 Buddhist Meditations	Hacked in Pieces Corpse
4 Divisions Pranava Vada	Relation
Greek Deities	Themis, Minos, Aeacus and Rhadamanthus
Egyptian Deities	Maat
Roman Deities	Vulcan
Qliphotic Name	A'Abiriron (Clayey)
Sephirothic Number	253
Hebrew Letter	Lamed (ox goad)
12 Tribes of Israel	Issachar
12 Prophets	Jonah
Jewish Calendar	Hesvan
Order of Blessed Spirits	Principalities
Angel	Zuriel
Elemental Ruler	Cherub
Four Angels	Raphael
Hierarchy	Lords of Individuality

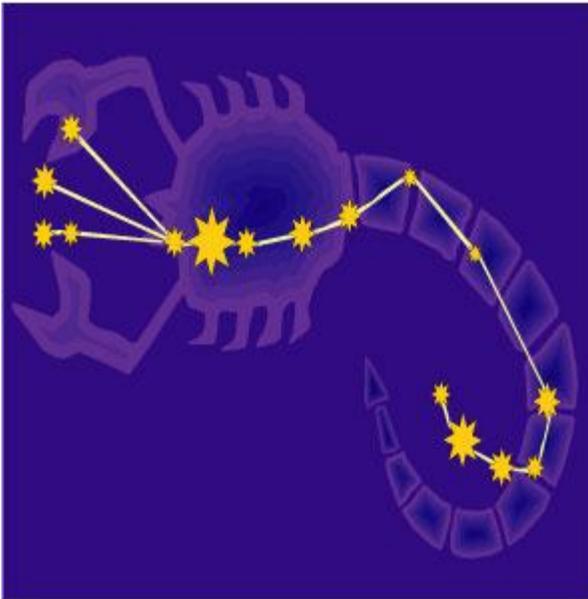
## The Zodiac Signs

Realm	World of the Lords of Spirit
Magical Powers	Works of Justice, Equilibrium
Magical Weapons	Cross of Equilibrium
Legendary Order of Beings	Fairies, Harpies
Lineal figure	Puella
Nature Spirits	Sylphs
Apostle	Bartholomew
Evangelist	John
4 Consecrated Beings	Man
12 Degrees of the Damned Evil	Furies, the Sowers of
Infernal River	Cocytus
Four Animal Types	Flying
Triplicities	Reproductive
Triplicities	Autumn
Triplicities	Maternal
Triplicities	Mental
Ascending/Descending	Ascending
Barren/Fruitful	Moderately Fruitful
Bitter/Sweet	Sweet
Whole/Broken	Whole
Hot/Cold	Hot
Conceptive	N/A
Crooked	N/A
Positive/Negative	Positive
Dry/Moist	Moist

## The Zodiac Signs

Aestival/Hyemal	Hiemal (winter)
Hoarse/Mute	Vocal
Violent Signs	Violent
Vital Signs	N/A
Voice Signs	Voice
Whole Signs	N/A
Tropical Equinoctial	Equinoctial
Boreal Signs	N/A
Changeable (East Side of Chart)	N/A
Changeable (West Side of Chart)	N/A
Brutish	N/A
Beholding Signs	Libra and Pisces
Imperfect Signs	N/A
Initiating Signs	Initiating Sign
Ruminant Signs	N/A
12 Phases	Objectifying

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Scorpio**

Quadruplicities	Fixed
Quadruplicities	Grave
Triplicities	Water: Air of Water
Gender	Feminine
Alice Bailey	Power of Spiritual Triad
Fortunate/Unfortunate	Unfortunate
Commanding/Obeying	Southern or Obeying
Ascension	Long Ascension
Nocturnal/Diurnal	Nocturnal
Bestial/Bi-Corporal	Imperfect
Temperaments	Phlegmatic
Ruling Planet	Mars

## The Zodiac Signs

Detriment	Venus
Exalted	Part of Fortune
Fall	Moon
House	Eighth
Critical Degrees	9, 21
Keyword	Emotional Drive, Discord
Tendency	Investigation
Phrase	I Desire
Affinities	Cancer, Virgo, Capricorn, Pisces
Day of Week	Tuesday
Month	October
Number	9
Color	Rich, full hues, of green
King's Color Scale	green-blue
Music Key	E
Musical Tone	Do
Perfume	Siamese Benzoin, Opoponax
Body Part	Genitals
Disease	Cancer
Vegetable Drugs	None
Animals	Scorpion, Beetle, Lobster,
Crayfish, Wolf	
Plants	Cactus
Gems	Topaz, Machite (snakestone)
Metal	Iron
Mineral Salts	Calcium Sulphate

## The Zodiac Signs

Tarot Trump	XIII, Death
Tarot Design	A skeleton with a scythe, mowing men, the scythe handle is a Tau
Tarot Trump Title	Child of the Great Transformers, Lord of the Gates of Death
Path on the Tree of Life	#24, joins 6-7
Path Title	Imaginative Intelligence
Hindu Deities	Kundalini
40 Buddhist Meditations	Skeleton Corpse
4 Divisions Pranava Vada	Summation
Greek Deities	Ares
Egyptian Deities	Hammemit
Roman Deities	Mars
Qliphotic Name	Necheshthiron (brazen)
Sephirotic Number	300
Hebrew Letter	Nun (fish)
12 Tribes of Israel	Benjamin
12 Prophets	Obadiah
Jewish Calendar	Kislev
Order of Blessed Spirits	Archangels
Angel	Barbiel
Elemental Ruler	Tharsis
Four Angels	Gabriel
Hierarchy	Lords of Form
Realm	Region of Abstract Thought
Magical Powers	Necromancy

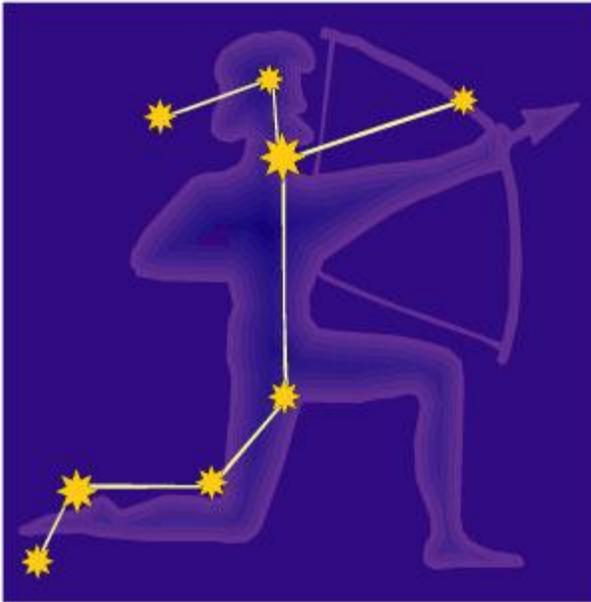
## The Zodiac Signs

Magical Weapons	Pain in the Obligation
Legendary Order of Beings Witches	Lamaie, Stryges,
Lineal figure	Rubeus
Nature Spirits	Undines, Sprites
Apostle	Philip
Evangelist	Matthew
4 Consecrated Beings	Eagle
12 Degrees of the Damned	Sifters or Triers
Infernal River	Styx
Four Animal Types	Swimming
Triplicities	Reproductive
Triplicities	Autumn
Triplicities	Reproductive
Triplicities	Emotional
Ascending/Descending	Ascending
Barren/Fruitful	Fruitful
Bitter/Sweet	N/A
Whole/Broken	Broken
Hot/Cold	Cold
Conceptive	Conceptive
Crooked	N/A
Positive/Negative	Negative
Dry/Moist	Moist
Aestival/Hyemal	Hiemal (winter)
Hoarse/Mute	Hoarse/Mute

## The Zodiac Signs

Violent Signs	Violent
Vital Signs	N/A
Voice Signs	N/A
Whole Signs	Whole Sign
Tropical Equinoctial	N/A
Boreal Signs	N/A
Changeable (East Side of Chart)	N/A
Changeable (West Side of Chart)	N/A
Brutish	N/A
Beholding Signs	Scorpio and Aquarius
Imperfect Signs	Imperfect Sign
Initiating Signs	N/A
Ruminant Signs	N/A
12 Phases	Analyzing

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Sagittarius**

Quadruplicities	Mutable
Quadruplicities	Common or Flexed
Triplicities	Fire: Water of Fire
Gender	Masculine
Alice Bailey	Mind of Spiritual Triad
Fortunate/Unfortunate	Fortunate
Commanding/Obeying	Southern or Obeying
Ascension	Long Ascension
Nocturnal/Diurnal	Diurnal
Bestial/Bi-Corporal	Bi-corporal (Human)
Temperaments	Choleric
Ruling Planet	Jupiter

## The Zodiac Signs

Detriment	mercury
Exalted	South Lunar Node
Fall	North Lunar Node
House	Ninth
Critical Degrees	4, 17
Keyword	Foresight, Aspiration
Tendency	Honesty
Phrase	I See
Affinities	Aries, Leo, Libra, Aquarius
Day of Week	Thursday
Month	November
Number	3
Color	Rich hues of purple
King's Color Scale	Blue
Music Key	F
Musical Tone	Sol
Perfume	Lign-Aloes
Body Part	thighs
Disease	Apoplexy, Thrombosis
Vegetable Drugs	None
Animals	Centaur, Horse, Hippogriff, Dog
Plants	Rush
Gems	Turquoise, Jacinth
Metal	Tin
Mineral Salts	Silica

## The Zodiac Signs

Tarot Trump	XIV, Temperance
Tarot Design	Figure of Diana Huntress
Tarot Trump Title	Daughter of the Reconcilers,
Bringer Forth of Life	
Path on the Tree of Life	#25, joins 6-9
Path Title	Intelligence of Probation or
Tentative One	
Hindu Deities	Vishnu (horse avatar)
40 Buddhist Meditations	Limited Aperture
4 Divisions Pranava Vada	Self
Greek Deities	Apollo, Artemis
Egyptian Deities	Nephtys
Roman Deities	Diana, as archer
Qliphotic Name	Necheshiron (Snakey)
Sephirotic Number	325
Hebrew Letter	Samekh (prop)
12 Tribes of Israel	Naphthalin
12 Prophets	Zephaniah
Jewish Calendar	Tebet
Order of Blessed Spirits	Angles
Angel	Adnachiel
Elemental Ruler	Seraph
Four Angels	Michael
Hierarchy	Lords of Mind
Realm	Region of Concrete Thought
Magical Powers	Transmutations

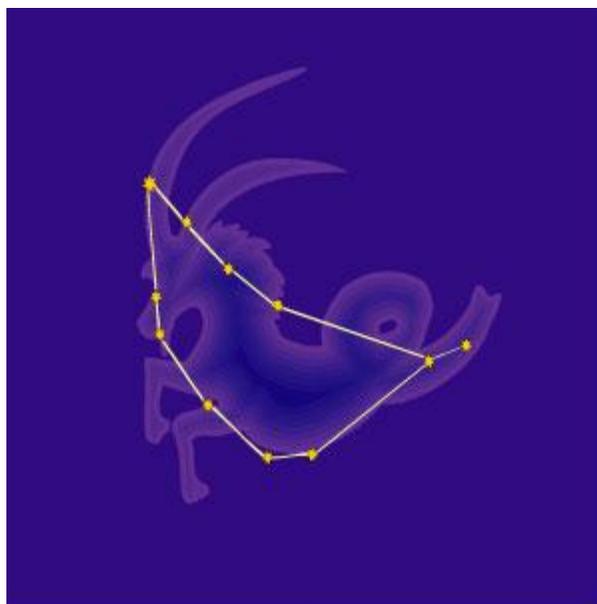
## The Zodiac Signs

Magical Weapons	Arrow (swift)
Legendary Order of Beings	Centaur
Lineal figure	Acquisitio
Nature Spirits	Salamanders
Apostle	James, the Elder
Evangelist	Mark
4 Consecrated Beings	Lion
12 Degrees of the Damned	Tempters or Ensarers
Infernal River	Phlegethon
Four Animal Types	Walking
Triplicities	Reproductive
Triplicities	Autumn
Triplicities	Reproductive
Triplicities	Inspirational
Ascending/Descending	Ascending
Barren/Fruitful	Mildly Barren
Bitter/Sweet	Bitter
Whole/Broken	N/A
Hot/Cold	Hot
Conceptive	N/A
Crooked	N/A
Positive/Negative	Positive
Dry/Moist	Dry
Aestival/Hyemal	Hiemal (winter)
Hoarse/Mute	Vocal

## The Zodiac Signs

Violent Signs	N/A
Vital Signs	Vital
Voice Signs	N/A
Whole Signs	Whole Sign
Tropical Equinoctial	N/A
Boreal Signs	N/A
Changeable (East Side of Chart)	Cold and Moist
Changeable (West Side of Chart)	Hot and Dry
Brutish	Brutish (last half only)
Beholding Signs	Sagittarius and Capricorn
Imperfect Signs	N/A
Initiating Signs	N/A
Ruminant Signs	N/A
12 Phases	Encapsulating

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Capricorn**

Quadruplicities	Cardinal
Quadruplicities	Acute
Triplicities	Earth: Fire of Earth
Gender	Feminine
Alice Bailey	Father of Spiritual Triad
Fortunate/Unfortunate	Unfortunate
Commanding/Obeying	Southern or Obeying
Ascension	Short Ascension
Nocturnal/Diurnal	Nocturnal
Bestial/Bi-Corporal	Quadrupedian (Bestial)
Temperaments	Melancholic
Ruling Planet	Saturn

## The Zodiac Signs

Detriment	Moon
Exalted	Mars
Fall	Jupiter
House	Tenth
Critical Degrees	1, 13, 26
Keyword	Ambition
Tendency	Caution
Phrase	I Use
Affinities	Taurus, Virgo, Pisces
Day of Week	Saturday
Month	December
Number	3, 8
Color	Lifeless flat values of black, dark green, and brown
King's Color Scale	Indigo
Music Key	G
Musical Tone	Fa
Perfume	Musk, Civet
Body Part	Knees
Disease	Arthritis
Vegetable Drugs	Orchis Root, Thistle
Animals	Goat, Ass
Plants	Indian Hemp, Orchis root, Thistle
Gems	White Onyx, Black Diamond
Metal	Lead
Mineral Salts	Calcium Phosphate

## The Zodiac Signs

Tarot Trump	XV, The Devil
Tarot Design	The figure of Pan or Priapus
Tarot Trump Title	Lord of the Gates of Matter, Child of the Forces of Time
Path on the Tree of Life	#26, joins 6-8
Path Title	Renovating Intelligence
Hindu Deities	Lingam, Yoni.
40 Buddhist Meditations	Putrid Corpse
4 Divisions Pranava Vada	Not-Self
Greek Deities	Pan, Priapus
Egyptian Deities	Set
Roman Deities	Pan, Vesta
Qliphotic Name	Dagagiron (fish)
Sephirotic Number	351
Hebrew Letter	Ayin (eye)
12 Tribes of Israel	Gad
12 Prophets	Nahum
Jewish Calendar	Shebat
Order of Blessed Spirits	Innocents
Angel	Hanael
Elemental Ruler	Ariel
Four Angels	Uriel
Hierarchy	Archangels
Realm	Desire World
Magical Powers Evil Eye	So-called witches Sabbath,

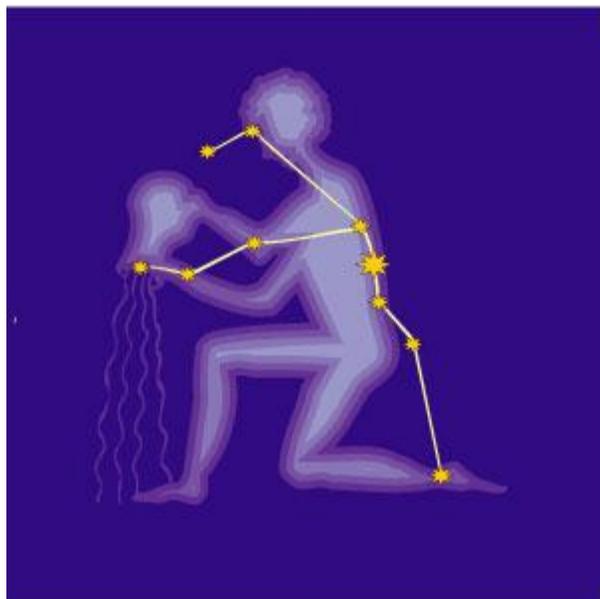
## The Zodiac Signs

Magical Weapons	Secret Force, Lamp
Legendary Order of Beings Demons	Satyrs and fauns, Panic
Lineal figure	Cancer
Nature Spirits	Gnomes
Apostle	Thomas
Evangelist	Luke
4 Consecrated Beings	Bull
12 Degrees of the Damned	Witches
Infernal River	Acheron
Four Animal Types	Creeping
Triplicities	Serving
Triplicities	Winter
Triplicities	Serving
Triplicities	Practical
Ascending/Descending	Descending
Barren/Fruitful	Moderately Fruitful
Bitter/Sweet	N/A
Whole/Broken	N/A
Hot/Cold	Cold
Conceptive	N/A
Crooked	Crooked
Positive/Negative	Negative
Dry/Moist	Dry
Aestival/Hyemal	Hiemal (winter)
Hoarse/Mute	Vocal

## The Zodiac Signs

Violent Signs	Violent
Vital Signs	N/A
Voice Signs	N/A
Whole Signs	N/A
Tropical Equinoctial	Tropical
Boreal Signs	N/A
Changeable (East Side of Chart)	Cold and Dry
Changeable (West Side of Chart)	Cold and Moist
Brutish	N/A
Beholding Signs	Sagittarius and Capricorn
Imperfect Signs	N/A
Initiating Signs	Initiating Sign
Ruminant Signs	Ruminant Sign
12 Phases	The Vision

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Aquarius**

Quadruplicities	Fixed
Quadruplicities	Grave
Triplicities	Air: Air of Air
Gender	Masculine
Alice Bailey	Power of Spiritual Triad
Fortunate/Unfortunate	Fortunate
Commanding/Obeying	Southern or Obeying
Ascension	Short Ascension
Nocturnal/Diurnal	Diurnal
Bestial/Bi-Corporal	Bi-corporal (Human)
Temperaments	Sanguine
Ruling Planet	Uranus (Saturn)

## The Zodiac Signs

Detriment	Sun
Exalted	Uranus
Fall	Neptune
House	Eleventh
Critical Degrees	9, 21
Keyword	Forward, Altruism
Tendency	Progress
Phrase	I Know
Affinities	Aries, Sagittarius, Libra, Gemini
Day of Week	Sunday
Month	January
Number	4, 8
Color	Electric colors
King's Color Scale	Violet
Music Key	A
Musical Tone	Fa
Perfume	Galbanum
Body Part	Ankles
Disease	Cystitis
Vegetable Drugs	All diuretics
Animals	Man or Eagle, Peacock
Plants	Olive, Coconut
Gems	Sapphire, Artificial Glass
Metal	Radium, Uranium
Mineral Salts	Sodium Chloride

## The Zodiac Signs

Tarot Trump	XVII, The Star
Tarot Design	Figure of a water nymph disporting herself.
Tarot Trump Title	Daughter of the Firmament, Dweller Between the Waters
Path on the Tree of Life	28, joins 7-9
Path Title	Natural Intelligence
Hindu Deities	None
40 Buddhist Meditations	Purple Corpse
4 Divisions Pranava Vada	Relation
Greek Deities	Athena, Ganymede
Egyptian Deities	Nuit
Roman Deities	Juno
Qliphotic Name	Bahimiron (bestial)
Sephirotic Number	406
Hebrew Letter	Tzaddi (fish hook)
12 Tribes of Israel	Zabulon
12 Prophets	Habakkuk
Jewish Calendar	Adar, leap year Niadar
Order of Blessed Spirits	Martyrs
Angel	Babriel
Elemental Ruler	Cherub
Four Angels	Raphael
Hierarchy	Angels
Realm	Etheric region
Magical Powers	Astrology

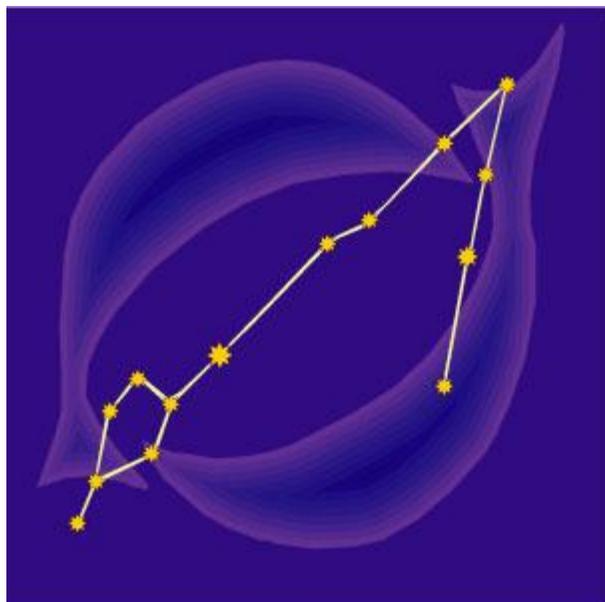
## The Zodiac Signs

Magical Weapons	Censor or Aspergillus
Legendary Order of Beings	Water Nymphs, Sirens, Lorelei, Mermaids
Lineal figure	Tristitia
Nature Spirits	Sylphs
Apostle	Matthew
Evangelist	John
4 Consecrated Beings	Man
12 Degrees of the Damned	Apostates
Infernal River	Cocytus
Four Animal Types	Flying
Triplicities	Serving
Triplicities	Winter
Triplicities	Serving
Triplicities	Mental
Ascending/Descending	Descending
Barren/Fruitful	Mildly Barren
Bitter/Sweet	Sweet
Whole/Broken	Whole
Hot/Cold	Hot
Conceptive	Conceptive
Crooked	N/A
Positive/Negative	Positive
Dry/Moist	Moist
Aestival/Hyemal	Hiemal (winter)
Hoarse/Mute	Vocal

## The Zodiac Signs

Violent Signs	Violent
Vital Signs	N/A
Voice Signs	Voice (sometimes included)
Whole Signs	Whole Sign
Tropical Equinoctial	N/A
Boreal Signs	N/A
Changeable (East Side of Chart)	N/A
Changeable (West Side of Chart)	N/A
Brutish	N/A
Beholding Signs	Scorpio and Aquarius
Imperfect Signs	N/A
Initiating Signs	N/A
Ruminant Signs	N/A
12 Phases	Planning

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Pisces**

Quadruplicities	Mutable
Quadruplicities	Common or Flexed
Triplicities	Water: Water of Water
Gender	Feminine
Alice Bailey	Mind of Spiritual Triad
Fortunate/Unfortunate	Unfortunate
Commanding/Obeying	Southern or Obeying
Ascension	Short Ascension
Nocturnal/Diurnal	Nocturnal
Bestial/Bi-Corporal	Bi-corporal (Human)
Temperaments	Phlegmatic
Ruling Planet	Neptune, Jupiter

## The Zodiac Signs

Detriment	Mercury
Exalted	Venus
Fall	Mercury
House	Twelfth
Critical Degrees	4, 17
Keyword	Sympathy
Tendency	Idealism
Phrase	I believe
Affinities Capricorn	Cancer, Scorpio, Taurus,
Day of Week	Monday
Month	February
Number	7, 3
Color ocean	Deep values of white, all tints
King's Color Scale	Ultra-violet
Music Key	G
Musical Tone	So
Perfume	Ambergris
Body Part	Feet
Disease	Gout
Vegetable Drugs	All narcotics
Animals	Fish, Dolphin, Crayfish, Beetle
Plants	Unicellular Organisms, Opium
Gems	Amethyst, Pearl
Metal	Artificial metals, Tin

## The Zodiac Signs

Mineral Salts	Ferrum Phosphate
Tarot Trump	XVIII, The Moon
Tarot Design	A Waning Moon
Tarot Trump Title	Ruler of Flux and reflux, Child of the Sons of the Mighty
Path on the Tree of Life	#29, joins 7-10
Path Title	Corporeal Intelligence
Hindu Deities	Vishnu, Matsya Avatar
40 Buddhist Meditations	Conduct
4 Divisions Pranava Vada	Summation
Greek Deities	Poseidon
Egyptian Deities	Anubis
Roman Deities	Neptune
Qliphotic Name	Nashimoron (malignant women)
Sephirotic Number	435
Hebrew Letter	Qoph (back of head)
12 Tribes of Israel	Ephraim
12 Prophets	Joel
Jewish Calendar	Nisar
Order of Blessed Spirits	Confessors
Angel	Machidial
Elemental Ruler	Tharsis
Four Angels	Gabriel
Hierarchy	Humanity
Realm	Chemical Region

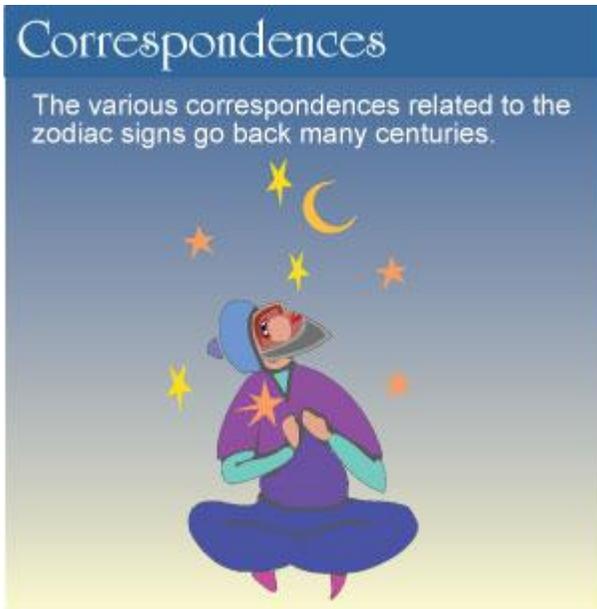
## The Zodiac Signs

Magical Powers Illusions	Bewitchments, Casting
Magical Weapons Magical Mirror	Twilight of the Place,
Legendary Order of Beings	Phantoms, Werewolves
Lineal figure	Laetitia
Nature Spirits	Undines, Sprites
Apostle	James, the Younger
Evangelist	Matthew
4 Consecrated Beings	Eagle
12 Degrees of the Damned	Infidels
Infernal River	Styx
Four Animal Types	Swimming
Triplicities	Serving
Triplicities	Winter
Triplicities	Serving
Triplicities	Emotional
Ascending/Descending	Descending
Barren/Fruitful	N/A
Bitter/Sweet	N/A
Whole/Broken	Broken
Hot/Cold	Cold
Conceptive	N/A
Crooked	Crooked
Positive/Negative	Negative
Dry/Moist	Moist

## The Zodiac Signs

Aestival/Hyemal	Hiemal (winter)
Hoarse/Mute	Hoarse/Mute
Violent Signs	N/A
Vital Signs	N/A
Voice Signs	N/A
Whole Signs	N/A
Tropical Equinoctial	N/A
Boreal Signs	N/A
Changeable (East Side of Chart)	N/A
Changeable (West Side of Chart)	N/A
Brutish	N/A
Beholding Signs	Libra and Pisces
Imperfect Signs	Imperfect Sign
Initiating Signs	N/A
Ruminant Signs	N/A
12 Phases	Sacrificing

## The Zodiac Signs



### Zodiac Correspondences: Part 2

#### Gender

Aries: Masculine

Taurus: Feminine

Gemini: Masculine

Cancer: Feminine

Leo: Masculine

Virgo: Feminine

Libra: Masculine

Scorpio: Feminine

Sagittarius: Masculine

Capricorn: Feminine

Aquarius: Masculine

## The Zodiac Signs

Pisces: Feminine



### **Positive/Negative**

Aries: Positive

Taurus: Negative

Gemini: Positive

Cancer: Negative

Leo: Positive

Virgo: Negative

Libra: Positive

Scorpio: Negative

Sagittarius: Positive

Capricorn: Negative

Aquarius: Positive

## The Zodiac Signs

Pisces: Negative



### **Month**

Aries: March

Taurus: April

Gemini: May

Cancer: June

Leo: July

Virgo: August

Libra: September

Scorpio: October

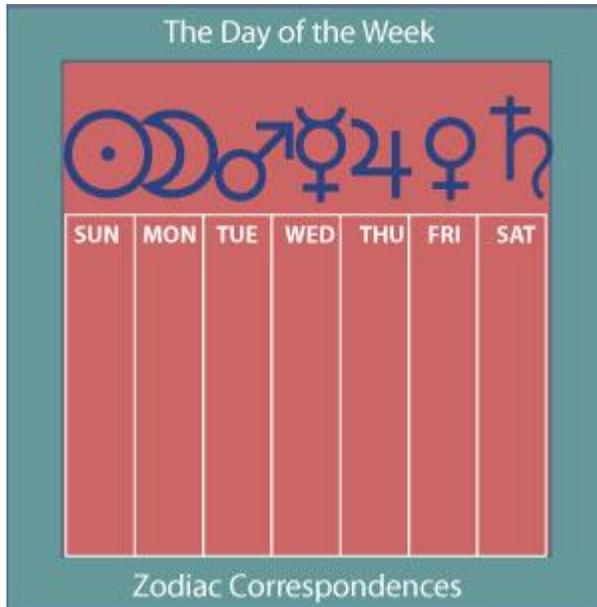
Sagittarius: November

Capricorn: December

Aquarius: January

## The Zodiac Signs

Pisces: February



### Day of Week

Aries: Tuesday

Taurus: Friday

Gemini: Wednesday

Cancer: Monday

Leo: Sunday

Virgo: Wednesday

Libra: Friday

Scorpio: Tuesday

Sagittarius: Thursday

Capricorn: Saturday

Aquarius: Sunday

## The Zodiac Signs

Pisces: Monday



### Phrase

Aries: I Am

Taurus: I Have

Gemini: I Think

Cancer: I Feel

Leo: I Will

Virgo: I Analyze

Libra: I Weigh

Scorpio: I Desire

Sagittarius: I See

Capricorn: I Use

Aquarius: I Know

## The Zodiac Signs

Pisces: I Believe



### **Keyword**

Aries: Action, Self-Assertion

Taurus: Stability, Harmony

Gemini: Versatility

Cancer: Tenacity, Fertility

Leo: Power, Affection

Virgo: Discrimination

Libra: Balance, Partnership

Scorpio: Emotional Drive, Discord

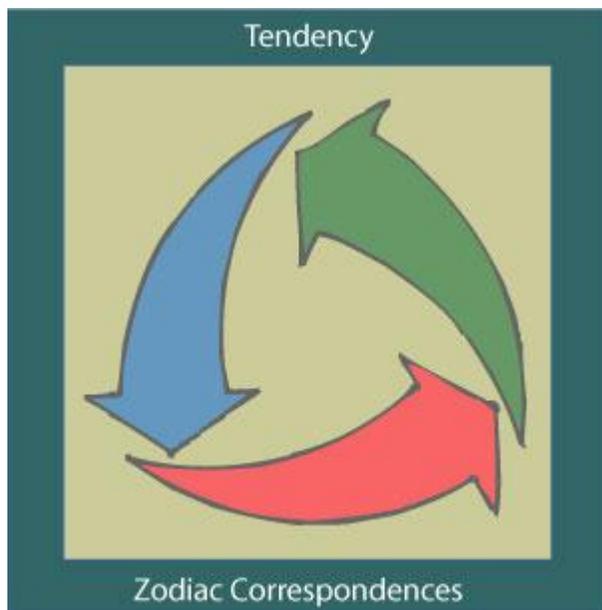
Sagittarius: Foresight, Aspiration

Capricorn: Ambition

Aquarius: Forward, Altruism

## The Zodiac Signs

Pisces: Sympathy



### **Tendency**

Aries: Impulsiveness

Taurus: Persistence

Gemini: Diffusion

Cancer: Patriotism

Leo: Leadership

Virgo: Impulsiveness

Libra: Justice

Scorpio: Investigation

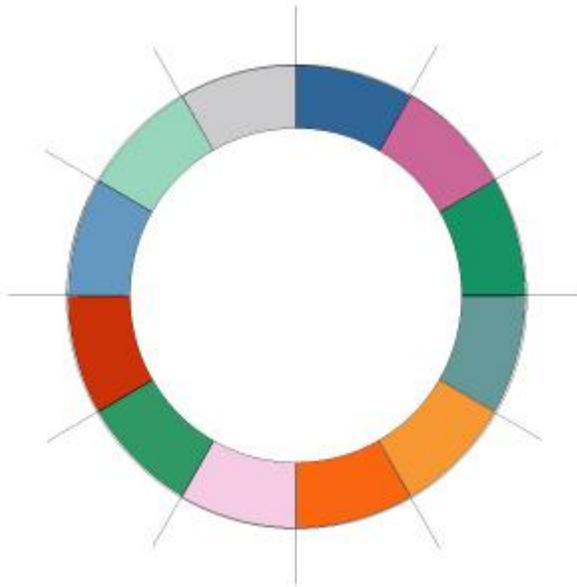
Sagittarius: Honesty

Capricorn: Caution

Aquarius: Progress

## The Zodiac Signs

Pisces: Idealism



### **12 Phases**

Aries: Starting

Taurus: Embodying

Gemini: Connecting

Cancer: Experiencing

Leo: Awareness

Virgo: Conservation

Libra: Objectifying

Scorpio: Analyzing

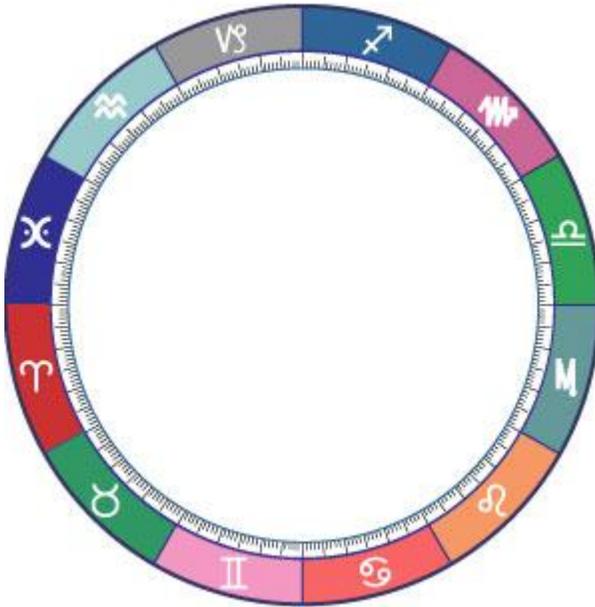
Sagittarius: Encapsulating

Capricorn: The Vision

Aquarius: Planning

## The Zodiac Signs

Pisces: Sacrificing



### Critical Degrees

Aries: 1, 13, 26

Taurus: 9, 21

Gemini: 4, 17

Cancer: 1, 13, 26

Leo: 9, 21

Virgo: 4, 17

Libra: 1, 13, 26

Scorpio: 9, 21

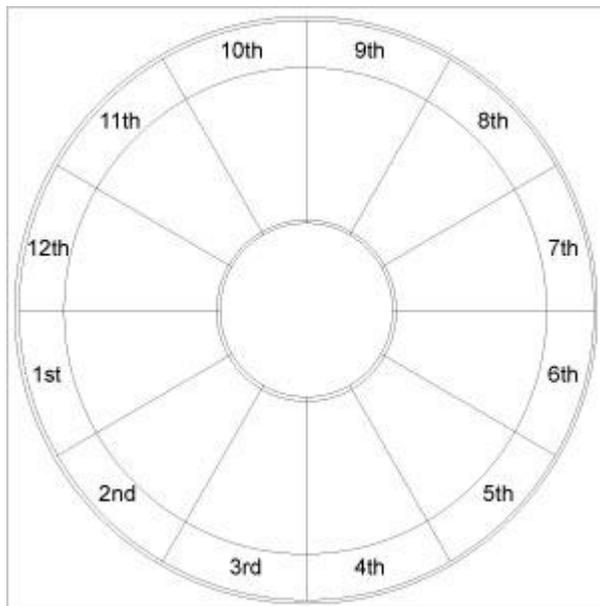
Sagittarius: 4, 17

Capricorn: 1, 13, 26

Aquarius: 9, 21

## The Zodiac Signs

Pisces: 4, 17



### House

Aries: First

Taurus: Second

Gemini: Third

Cancer: Fourth

Leo: Fifth

Virgo: Sixth

Libra: Seventh

Scorpio: Eighth

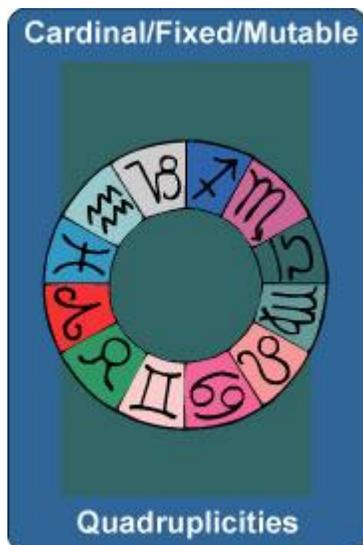
Sagittarius: Ninth

Capricorn: Tenth

Aquarius: Eleventh

## The Zodiac Signs

Pisces: Twelfth



### Quadruplicities

Aries: Cardinal

Taurus: Fixed

Gemini: Mutable

Cancer: Cardinal

Leo: Fixed

Virgo: Mutable

Libra: Cardinal

Scorpio: Fixed

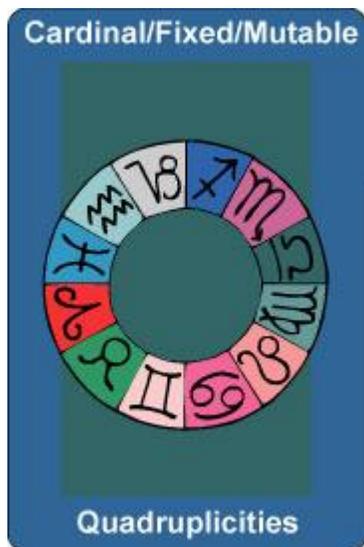
Sagittarius: Mutable

Capricorn: Cardinal

Aquarius: Fixed

Pisces: Mutable

## The Zodiac Signs



### Quadruplicity

- Aries: Acute
- Taurus: Grave
- Gemini: Common or Flexed
- Cancer: Acute
- Leo: Grave
- Virgo: Common or Flexed
- Libra: Acute
- Scorpio: Grave
- Sagittarius: Common or Flexed
- Capricorn: Acute
- Aquarius: Grave
- Pisces: Common or Flexed

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Triplicities**

- Aries: Fire: Fire of Fire  
Taurus: Earth: Air of Earth  
Gemini: Air: Water of Air  
Cancer: Water: Fire of Water  
Leo: Fire: Air of Fire  
Virgo: Earth: Water of Earth  
Libra: Air: Fire of Air  
Scorpio: Water: Air of Water  
Sagittarius: Fire: Water of Fire  
Capricorn: Earth: Fire of Earth  
Aquarius: Air: Air of Air  
Pisces: Water: Water of Water

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Triplicities 2**

Aries: Intellectual

Taurus: Intellectual

Gemini: Intellectual

Cancer: Maternal

Leo: Maternal

Virgo: Maternal

Libra: Reproductive

Scorpio: Reproductive

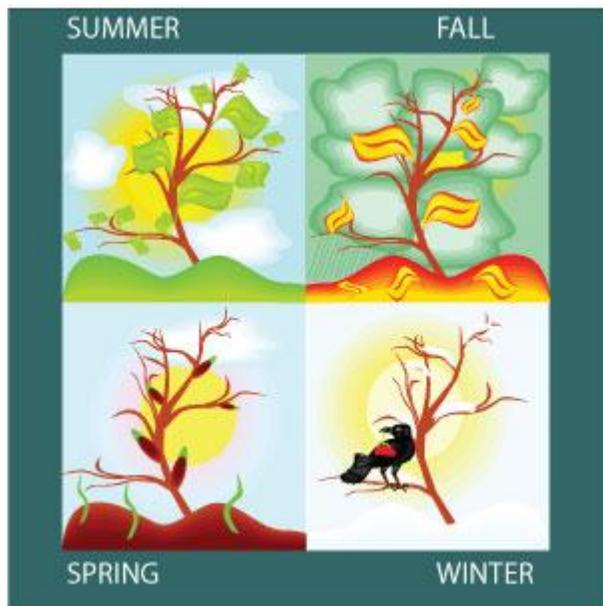
Sagittarius: Reproductive

Capricorn: Serving

Aquarius: Serving

Pisces: Serving

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Triplicities 3**

Aries: Spring

Taurus: Spring

Gemini: Spring

Cancer: Summer

Leo: Summer

Virgo: Summer

Libra: Autumn

Scorpio: Autumn

Sagittarius: Autumn

Capricorn: Winter

Aquarius: Winter

## The Zodiac Signs

Pisces: Winter



### **Triplicities 4**

Aries: Intellectual

Taurus: Intellectual

Gemini: Intellectual

Cancer: Maternal

Leo: Maternal

Virgo: Maternal

Libra: Maternal

Scorpio: Reproductive

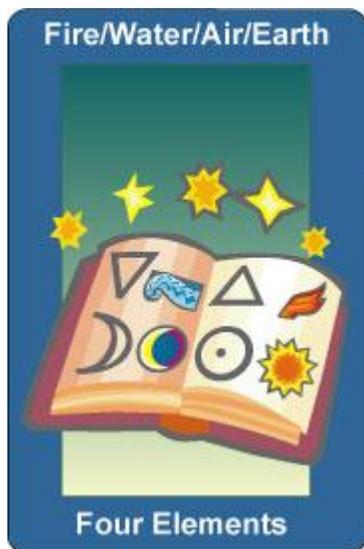
Sagittarius: Reproductive

Capricorn: Serving

Aquarius: Serving

Pisces: Serving

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Triplicities 5**

Aries: Inspirational

Taurus: Practical

Gemini: Mental

Cancer: Emotional

Leo: Inspirational

Virgo: Practical

Libra: Mental

Scorpio: Emotional

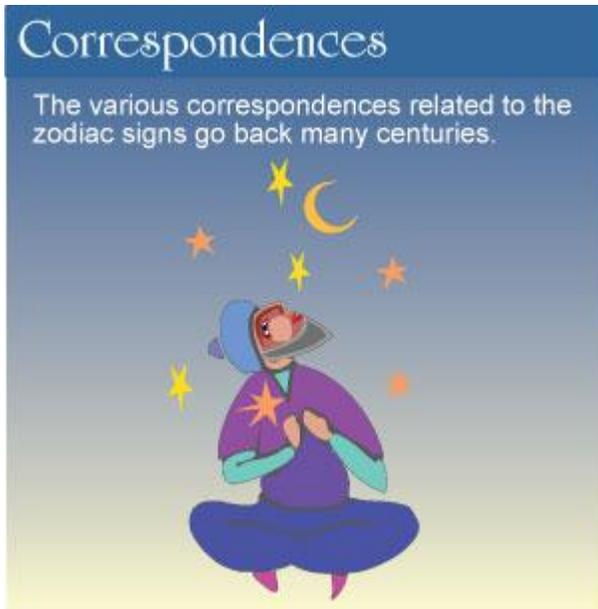
Sagittarius: Inspirational

Capricorn: Practical

Aquarius: Mental

Pisces: Emotional

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Zodiac Correspondences: Part 3**

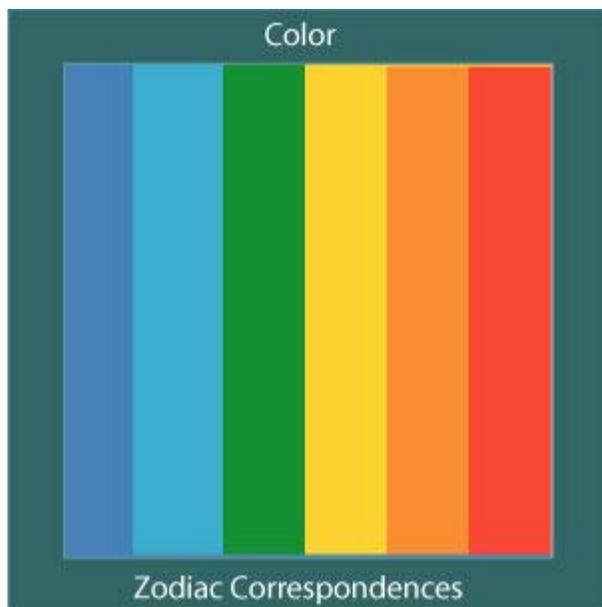
## The Zodiac Signs

Number		
8	1	6
3	5	7
4	9	2
Zodiac Correspondences		

### **Number**

Aries:	9
Taurus:	6
Gemini:	5
Cancer:	2, 7
Leo:	1, 4
Virgo:	5
Libra:	6
Scorpio:	9
Sagittarius:	3
Capricorn:	3, 8
Aquarius:	4, 8
Pisces:	7, 3

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Color**

Aries: Flaming and Somewhat Discordant Hues (red)

Taurus: Pastel shades of blue

Gemini: Monotonous tones of blue and silver gray

Cancer: Iridescent hues, opalescent tints

Leo: Full spectromatic tones of orange

Virgo: Dark, indefinite colors of gray-blue

Libra: Clouded art tints, crimson and turquoise

Scorpio: Rich, full hues, of green

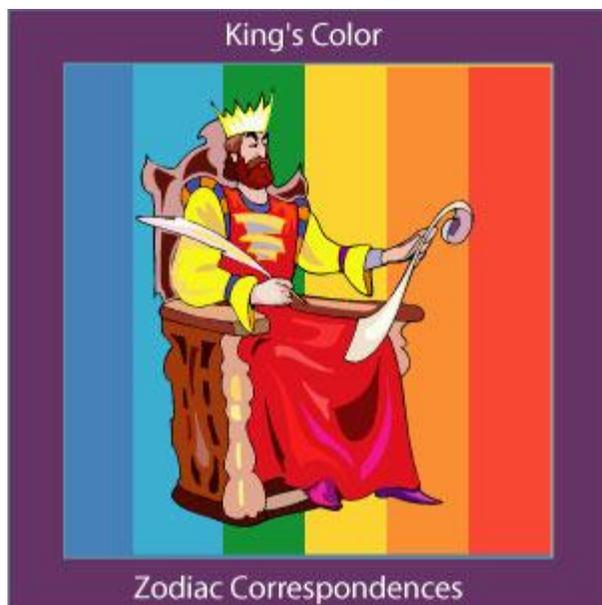
Sagittarius: Rich hues of purple

Capricorn: Lifeless flat values of black, dark green, and brown

Aquarius: Electric colors

Pisces: Deep values of white, all tints ocean

## The Zodiac Signs



### King's Color Scale 6

- Aries: Scarlet
- Taurus: Red-Orange
- Gemini: Orange
- Cancer: Amber
- Leo: Gold (greenish yellow)
- Virgo: Green-yellowish
- Libra: Emerald Green
- Scorpio: Green-blue
- Sagittarius: Blue
- Capricorn: Indigo
- Aquarius: Violet
- Pisces: Ultra-violet

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Perfume**

Aries: Dragon's Blood

Taurus: Storax

Gemini: Wormwood

Cancer: Onycha

Leo: Olibanum

Virgo: White Sandalwood, Narcissus

Libra: Galbanum

Scorpio: Siamese Benzoin, Opoponax

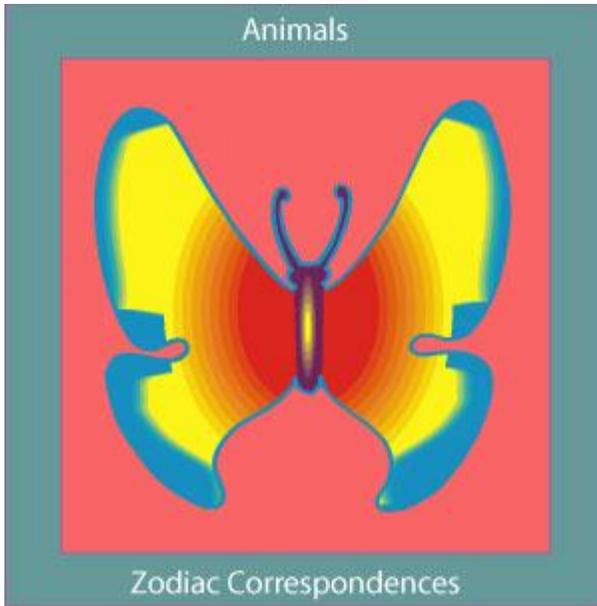
Sagittarius: Lign-Aloes

Capricorn: Musk, Civet

Aquarius: Galbanum

Pisces: Ambergris

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Animals**

Aries: Ram, Owl

Taurus: Bull

Gemini: Magpie, Hybrids

Cancer: Crab, Turtle, Sphinx, Scarab

Leo: Lion

Virgo: All virgin and anchoritic animals

Libra: Elephant

Scorpio: Scorpion, Beetle, Lobster, Crayfish, Wolf

Sagittarius: Centaur, Horse, Hippogriff, Dog

Capricorn: Goat, Ass

Aquarius: Man or Eagle, Peacock

Pisces: Fish, Dolphin, Crayfish, Beetle

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Plants**

Aries: Tiger Lily, Geranium

Taurus: Mallow

Gemini: Hybrids, Orchids

Cancer: Lotus

Leo: Sunflower

Virgo: Snowdrop, Lily, Narcissus

Libra: Aloe

Scorpio: Cactus

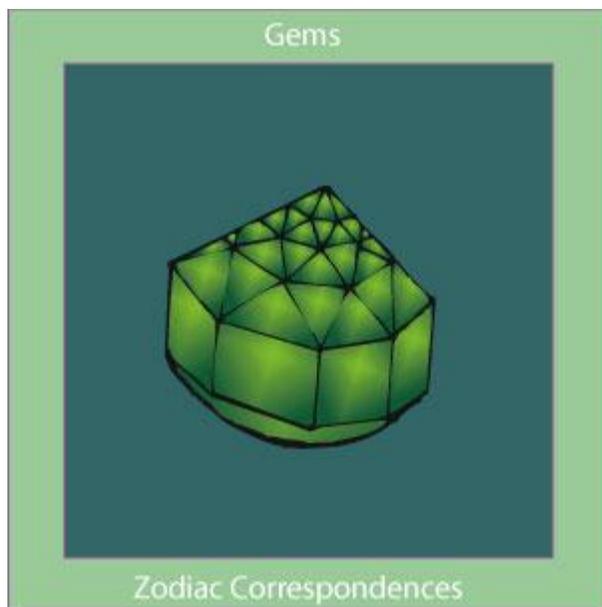
Sagittarius: Rush

Capricorn: Indian Hemp, Orchis root, Thistle

Aquarius: Olive, Coconut

Pisces: Unicellular Organisms, Opium

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Gems**

Aries: Diamond, Ruby

Taurus: Sapphire, turquoise, Topaz

Gemini: Emerald (Alexandrite), Tourmaline, Iceland Spar

Cancer: Emerald, Amber

Leo: Diamond, Cat's Eye

Virgo: Jade (peridot)

Libra: Opal, Emerald

Scorpio: Topaz, Machite (snakestone)

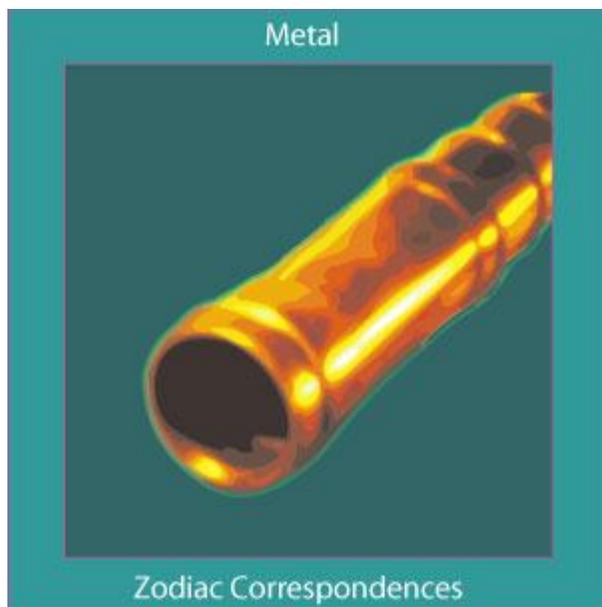
Sagittarius: Turquoise, Jacinth

Capricorn: White Onyx, Black Diamond

Aquarius: Sapphire, Artificial Glass

Pisces: Amethyst, Pearl

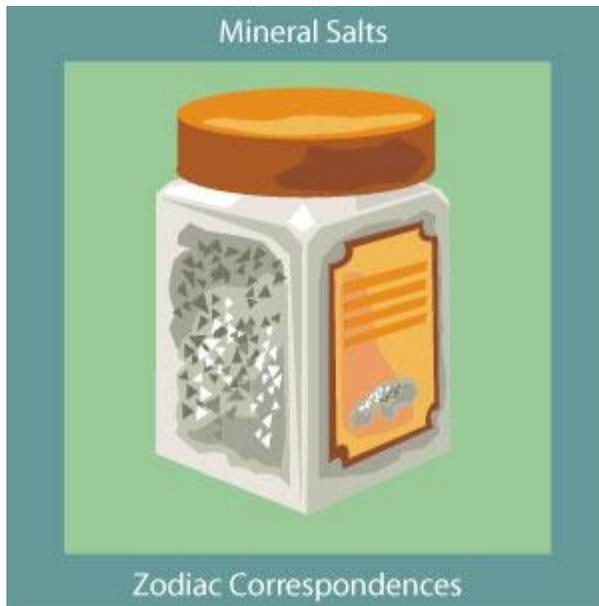
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Metal**

- Aries: Steel, Iron  
Taurus: Copper  
Gemini: Mercury (Quicksilver)  
Cancer: Silver  
Leo: Gold  
Virgo: Quicksilver  
Libra: Copper  
Scorpio: Iron  
Sagittarius: Tin  
Capricorn: Lead  
Aquarius: Radium, Uranium  
Pisces: Artificial metals, Tin

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Mineral Salts**

Aries:	Potassium Phosphate
Taurus:	Sodium Sulfate
Gemini:	Potassium Chloride
Cancer:	Calcium Chloride
Leo:	Magnesium Phosphate
Virgo:	Potassium Sulfate
Libra:	Sodium Phosphate
Scorpio:	Calcium Sulfate
Sagittarius:	Silica
Capricorn:	Calcium Phosphate
Aquarius:	Sodium Chloride
Pisces:	Ferrous Phosphate

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Music Key**

Aries: D-Flat

Taurus: E-Flat

Gemini: F-Sharp

Cancer: A-Flat

Leo: B-Flat

Virgo: C

Libra: D

Scorpio: E

Sagittarius: F

Capricorn: G

Aquarius: A

Pisces: G

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Musical Tone**

Aries: Do

Taurus: La

Gemini: Mi

Cancer: Ti

Leo: Re

Virgo: Mi

Libra: La

Scorpio: Do

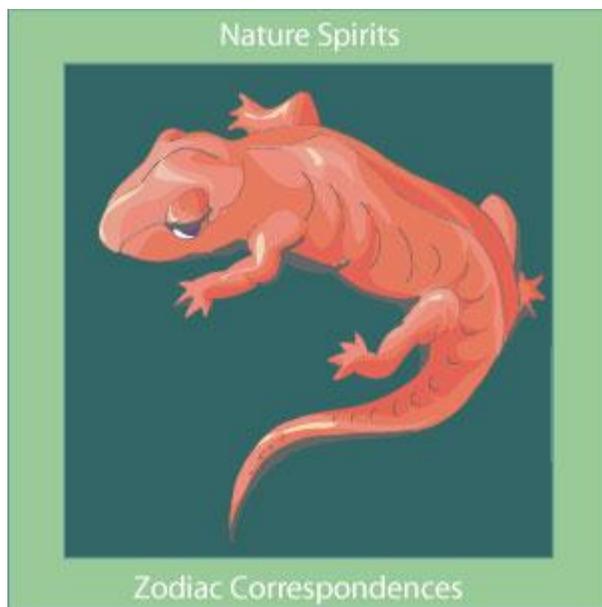
Sagittarius: Sol

Capricorn: Fa

Aquarius: Fa

Pisces: Sol

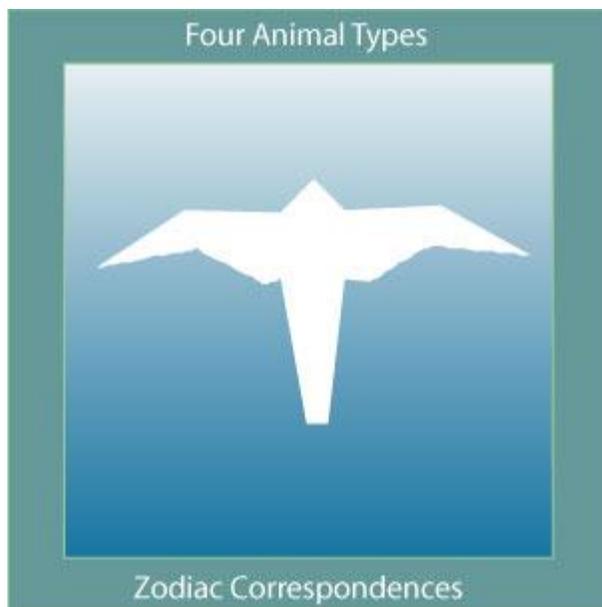
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Nature Spirits**

- Aries: Salamanders  
Taurus: Gnomes  
Gemini: Sylphs  
Cancer: Undines, Sprites  
Leo: Salamanders  
Virgo: Gnomes  
Libra: Sylphs  
Scorpio: Undines, Sprites  
Sagittarius: Salamanders  
Capricorn: Gnomes  
Aquarius: Sylphs  
Pisces: Undines, Sprites

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Four Animal Types**

- Aries: Walking
- Taurus: Creeping
- Gemini: Flying
- Cancer: Swimming
- Leo: Walking
- Virgo: Creeping
- Libra: Flying
- Scorpio: Swimming
- Sagittarius: Walking
- Capricorn: Creeping
- Aquarius: Flying
- Pisces: Swimming

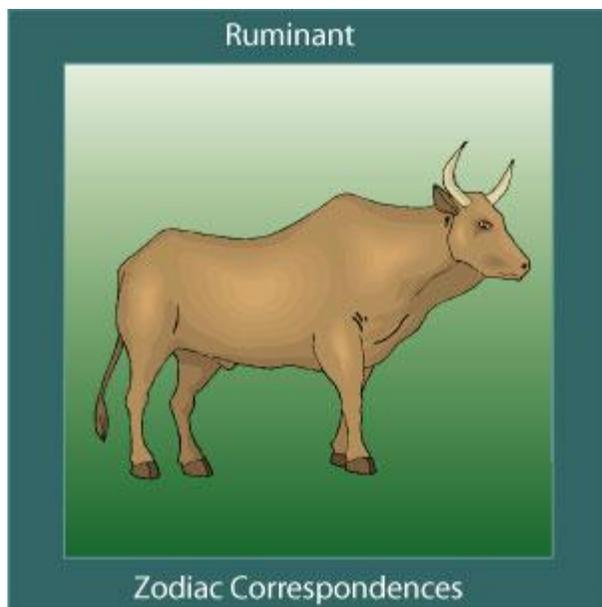
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Bestial/Bi-Corporal**

- Aries: Quadrupedian (Bestial)  
Taurus: Quadrupedian (Bestial)  
Gemini: Bi-corporal (Human)  
Cancer: Reptilian  
Leo: Quadrupedian (Bestial)  
Virgo: Bi-corporal (Human)  
Libra: Humane  
Scorpio: Imperfect  
Sagittarius: Bi-corporal (Human)  
Capricorn: Quadrupedian (Bestial)  
Aquarius: Bi-corporal (Human)  
Pisces: Bi-corporal (Human)

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Ruminant Signs**

Aries: Ruminant Sign

Taurus: Ruminant Sign

Gemini: N/A

Cancer: N/A

Leo: N/A

Virgo: N/A

Libra: N/A

Scorpio: N/A

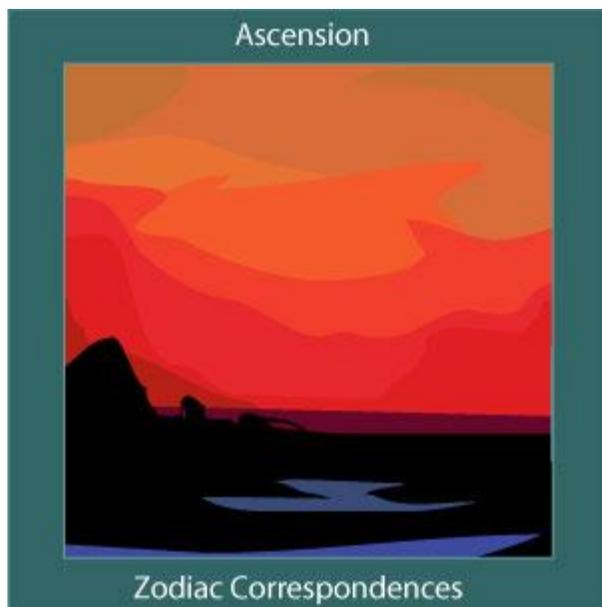
Sagittarius: N/A

Capricorn: Ruminant Sign

Aquarius: N/A

Pisces: N/A

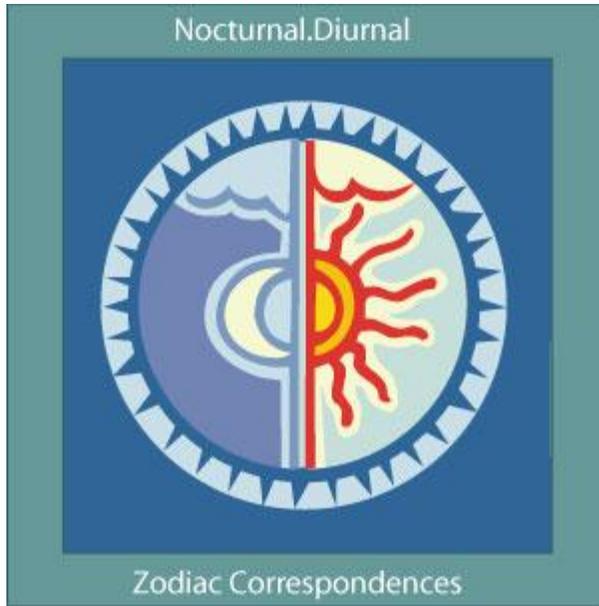
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Ascension**

- Aries: Short Ascension
- Taurus: Short Ascension
- Gemini: Short Ascension
- Cancer: Long Ascension
- Leo: Long Ascension
- Virgo: Long Ascension
- Libra: Long Ascension
- Scorpio: Long Ascension
- Sagittarius: Long Ascension
- Capricorn: Short Ascension
- Aquarius: Short Ascension
- Pisces: Short Ascension

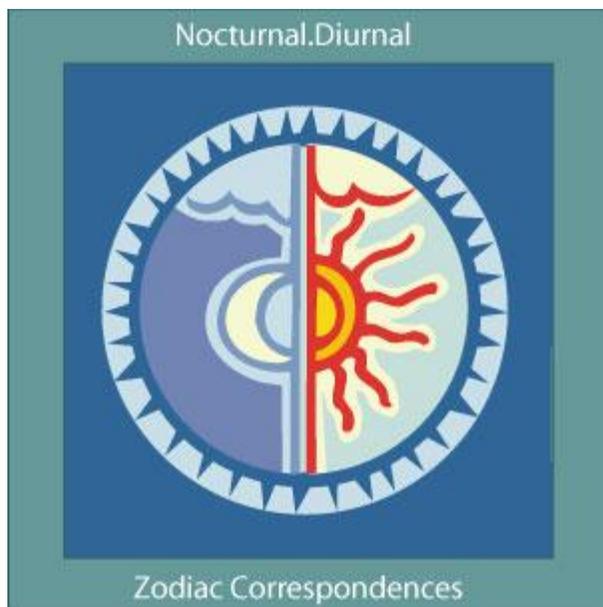
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Nocturnal/Diurnal**

Aries:	Diurnal
Taurus:	Nocturnal
Gemini:	Diurnal
Cancer:	Nocturnal
Leo:	Diurnal
Virgo:	Nocturnal
Libra:	Diurnal
Scorpio:	Nocturnal
Sagittarius:	Diurnal
Capricorn:	Nocturnal
Aquarius:	Diurnal
Pisces:	Nocturnal

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Ascending/Descending**

Aries: Descending

Taurus: Descending

Gemini: Descending

Cancer: Ascending

Leo: Ascending

Virgo: Ascending

Libra: Ascending

Scorpio: Ascending

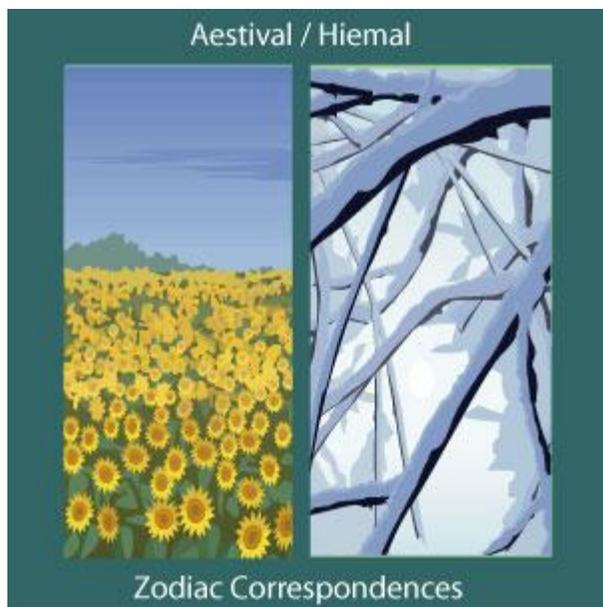
Sagittarius: Ascending

Capricorn: Descending

Aquarius: Descending

Pisces: Descending

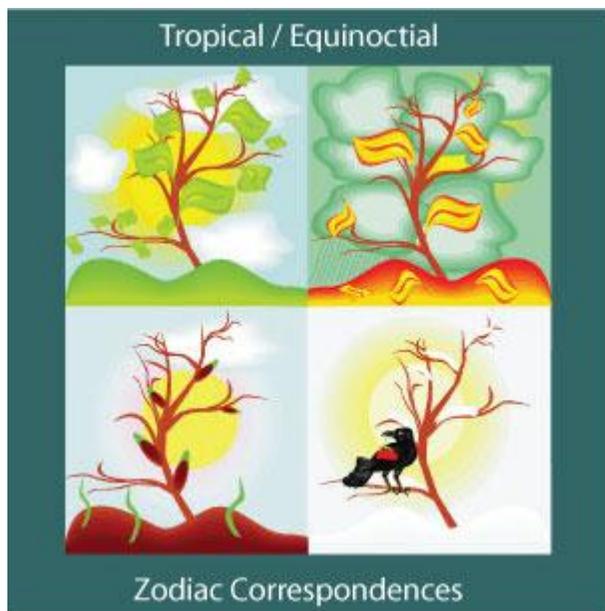
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Aestival/Hiemal**

- Aries: Aestival (summer)  
Taurus: Aestival (summer)  
Gemini: Aestival (summer)  
Cancer: Aestival (summer)  
Leo: Aestival (summer)  
Virgo: Aestival (summer)  
Libra: Hiemal (winter)  
Scorpio: Hiemal (winter)  
Sagittarius: Hiemal (winter)  
Capricorn: Hiemal (winter)  
Aquarius: Hiemal (winter)  
Pisces: Hiemal (winter)

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Tropical Equinoctial**

Aries: Equinoctial

Taurus: N/A

Gemini: N/A

Cancer: Tropical

Leo: N/A

Virgo: N/A

Libra: Equinoctial

Scorpio: N/A

Sagittarius: N/A

Capricorn: Tropical

Aquarius: N/A

Pisces: N/A

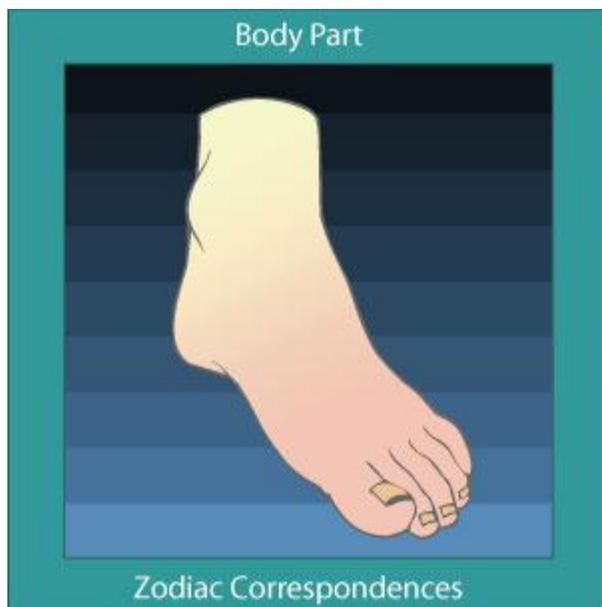
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Temperaments**

Aries:	Choleric
Taurus:	Melancholy
Gemini:	Sanguine
Cancer:	Phlegmatic
Leo:	Choleric
Virgo:	Melancholic
Libra:	Sanguine
Scorpio:	Phlegmatic
Sagittarius:	Choleric
Capricorn:	Melancholic
Aquarius:	Sanguine
Pisces:	Phlegmatic

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Body Part**

Aries: Head, Face

Taurus: Throat, Neck

Gemini: Shoulders, Lungs, Hands, Arms, Nervous System

Cancer: Breast, Stomach

Leo: Heart

Virgo: Solar Plexus, Bowels

Libra: Kidney, Loins

Scorpio: Genitals

Sagittarius: Thighs

Capricorn: Knees

Aquarius: Ankles

Pisces: Feet

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Disease**

Aries: Apoplexy

Taurus: Indigestion

Gemini: Phthisis, Pneumonia

Cancer: Rheumatism

Leo: Syncope, etc. Heart-related

Virgo: Spinal Weakness, Paralysis

Libra: Kidney Disorders

Scorpio: Cancer:

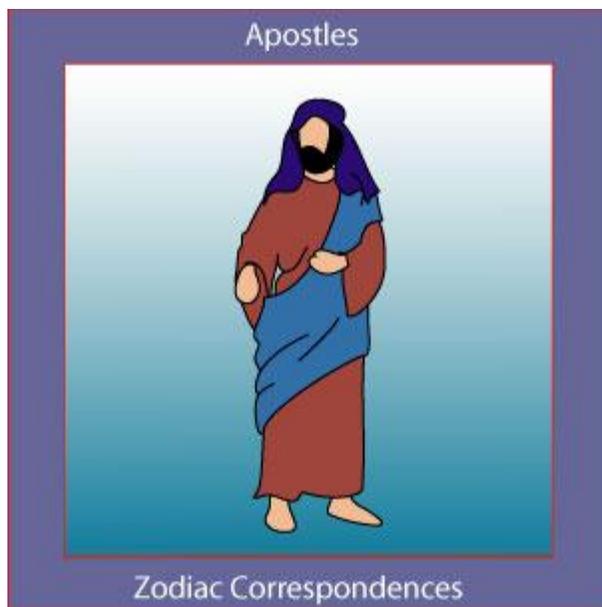
Sagittarius: Apoplexy, Thrombosis

Capricorn: Arthritis

Aquarius: Cystitis

Pisces: Gout

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Apostle**

Aries: Matthias

Taurus: Thaddeus

Gemini: Simon

Cancer: John

Leo: Peter

Virgo: Andrew

Libra: Bartholomew

Scorpio: Philip

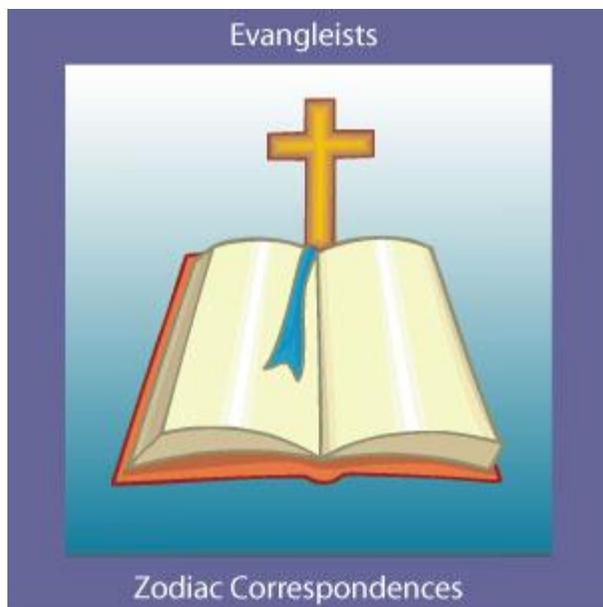
Sagittarius: James, the Elder

Capricorn: Thomas

Aquarius: Matthew

Pisces: James, the Younger

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Evangelist**

Aries:	Mark
Taurus:	Luke
Gemini:	John
Cancer:	Matthew
Leo:	Mark
Virgo:	Luke
Libra:	John
Scorpio:	Matthew
Sagittarius:	Mark
Capricorn:	Luke
Aquarius:	John
Pisces:	Matthew

## The Zodiac Signs



### 4 Consecrated Beings

Aries: Lion

Taurus: Bull

Gemini: Man

Cancer: Eagle

Leo: Lion

Virgo: Bull

Libra: Man

Scorpio: Eagle

Sagittarius: Lion

Capricorn: Bull

Aquarius: Man

Pisces: Eagle

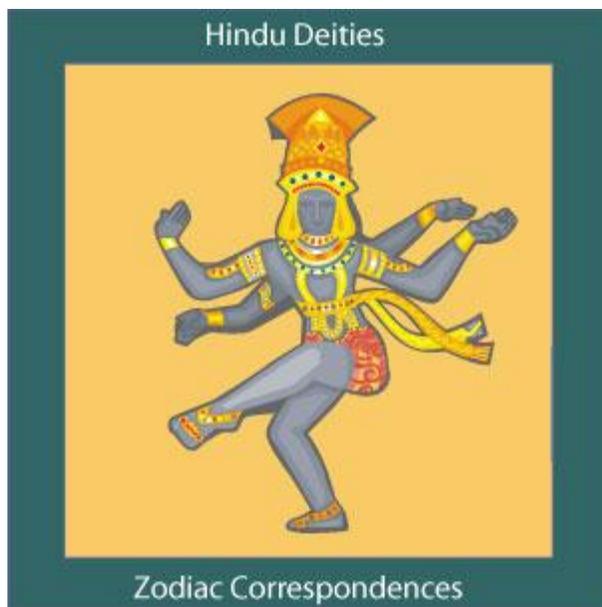
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Infernal River**

Aries:	Phlegethon
Taurus:	Acheron
Gemini:	Cocytus
Cancer:	Styx
Leo:	Phlegethon
Virgo:	Acheron
Libra:	Cocytus
Scorpio:	Styx
Sagittarius:	Phlegethon
Capricorn:	Acheron
Aquarius:	Cocytus
Pisces:	Styx

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Hindu Deities**

Aries: Shiva

Taurus: Shiva (Sacred Bull)

Gemini: Various twin and hybrid deities

Cancer: None

Leo: Vishnu (Narashingh Avatar)

Virgo: The Gopi Girls, Lord of Yoga

Libra: Yama

Scorpio: Kundalini

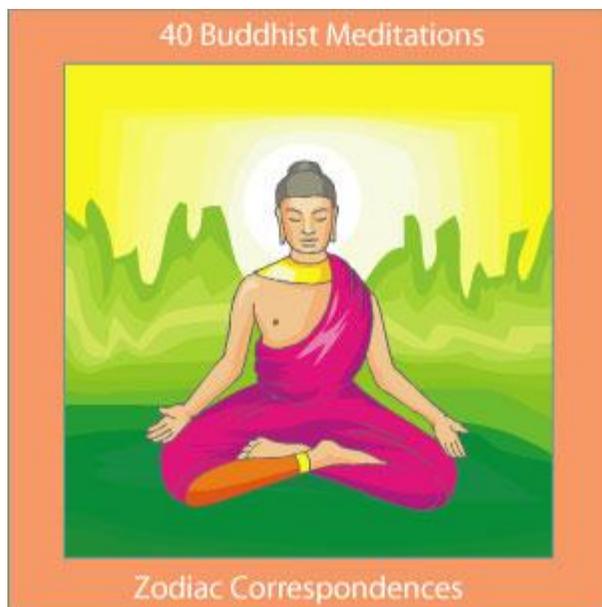
Sagittarius: Vishnu (horse avatar)

Capricorn: Lingam, Yoni.

Aquarius: None

Pisces: Vishnu, Matsya Avatar

## The Zodiac Signs



### **40 Buddhist Meditations**

- Aries: Bloody Corpse  
Taurus: Beaten and Scattered Corpse  
Gemini: White  
Cancer: Worm-eaten Corpse  
Leo: Gnawed by wild-beast corpse  
Virgo: Bloated Corpse  
Libra: Hacked in Pieces Corpse  
Scorpio: Skeleton Corpse  
Sagittarius: Limited Aperture  
Capricorn: Putrid Corpse  
Aquarius: Purple Corpse  
Pisces: Conduct

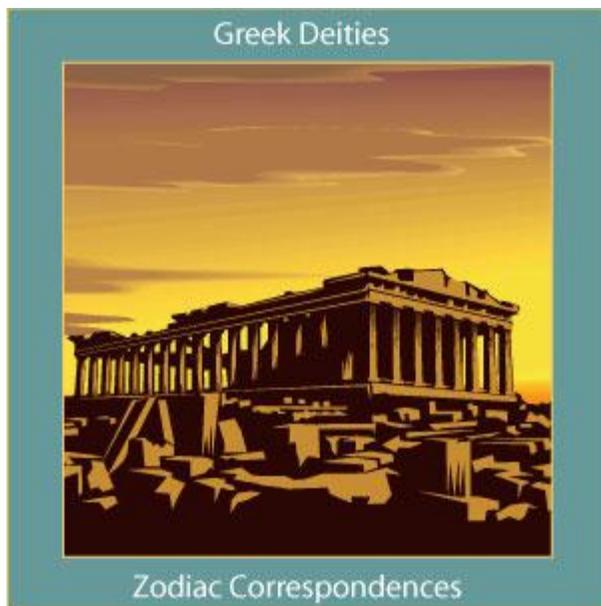
## The Zodiac Signs



### **4 Divisions Pranava Vada**

Aries:	Self
Taurus:	Not-Self
Gemini:	Relation
Cancer:	Summation
Leo:	Self
Virgo:	Not-Self
Libra:	Relation
Scorpio:	Summation
Sagittarius:	Self
Capricorn:	Not-Self
Aquarius:	Relation
Pisces:	Summation

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Greek Deities**

Aries: Athena

Taurus: Here

Gemini: Castor and Pullux, Apollo the Diviner

Cancer: Apollos the Charioteer

Leo: Demeter

Virgo: Attis

Libra: Themis, Minos, Aeacus and Rhadamanthus

Scorpio: Ares

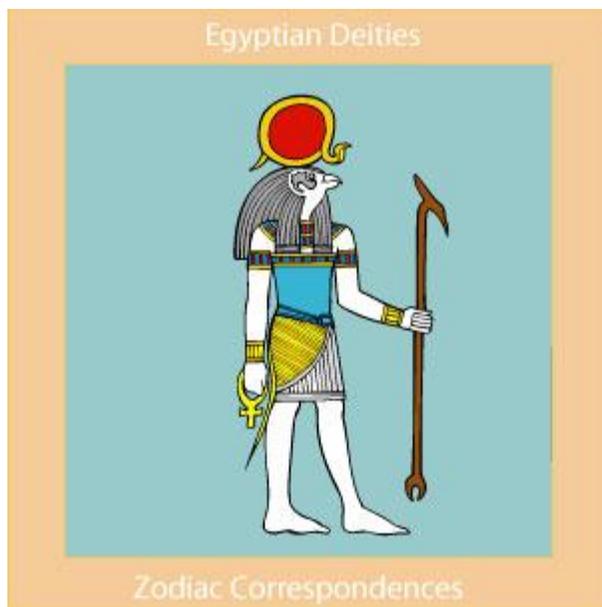
Sagittarius: Apollo, Artemis

Capricorn: Pan, Priapus

Aquarius: Athena, Ganymede

Pisces: Poseidon

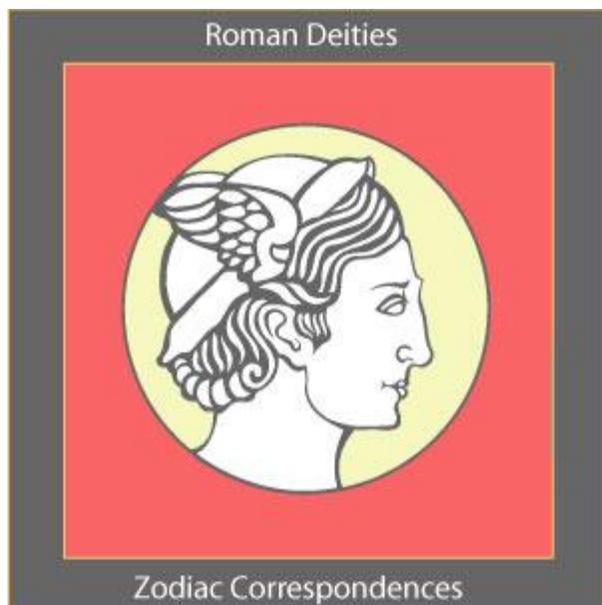
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Egyptian Deities**

- Aries: Isis  
Taurus: Osiris  
Gemini: Twin Merti  
Cancer: Hormakhu  
Leo: Horus  
Virgo: Heru-Pa-Kraath  
Libra: Maat  
Scorpio: Hammemit  
Sagittarius: Nephthys  
Capricorn: Set  
Aquarius: Nuit  
Pisces: Anubis

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Roman Deities**

Aries: Mars, Minerva

Taurus: Venus

Gemini: Castor and Pullux (Janus)

Cancer: Mercury

Leo: Venus

Virgo: Attis, Ceres, Adonis

Libra: Vulcan

Scorpio: Mars

Sagittarius: Diana, as archer

Capricorn: Pan, Vesta

Aquarius: Juno

Pisces: Neptune

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Ruling Planet**

Aries: Mars

Taurus: Venus

Gemini: Mercury

Cancer: Moon

Leo: Sun

Virgo: Mercury

Libra: Venus

Scorpio: Mars

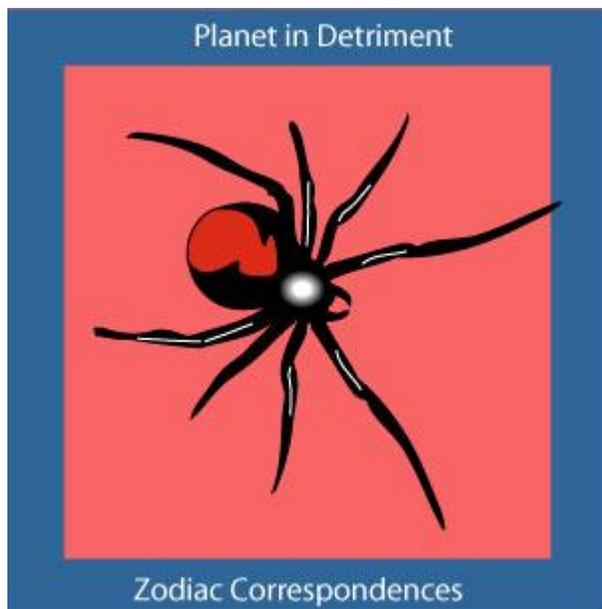
Sagittarius: Jupiter

Capricorn: Saturn

Aquarius: Uranus (Saturn)

Pisces: Neptune, Jupiter

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Detriment**

Aries: Venus

Taurus: Mars

Gemini: Jupiter

Cancer: Saturn

Leo: Saturn

Virgo: Jupiter

Libra: Mars

Scorpio: Venus

Sagittarius: Mercury

Capricorn: Moon

Aquarius: Sun

Pisces: Mercury

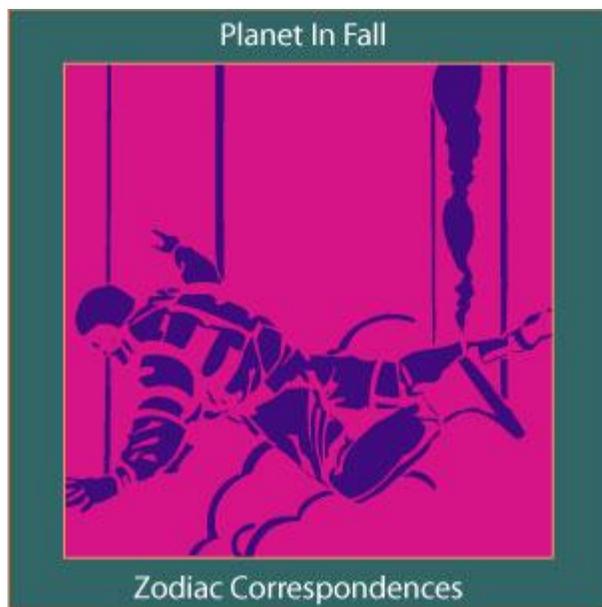
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Exalted**

Aries:	Sun
Taurus:	Moon
Gemini:	North Lunar Node
Cancer:	Jupiter
Leo:	Neptune
Virgo:	Mercury
Libra:	Saturn
Scorpio:	Part of Fortune
Sagittarius:	South Lunar Node
Capricorn:	Mars
Aquarius:	Uranus
Pisces:	Venus

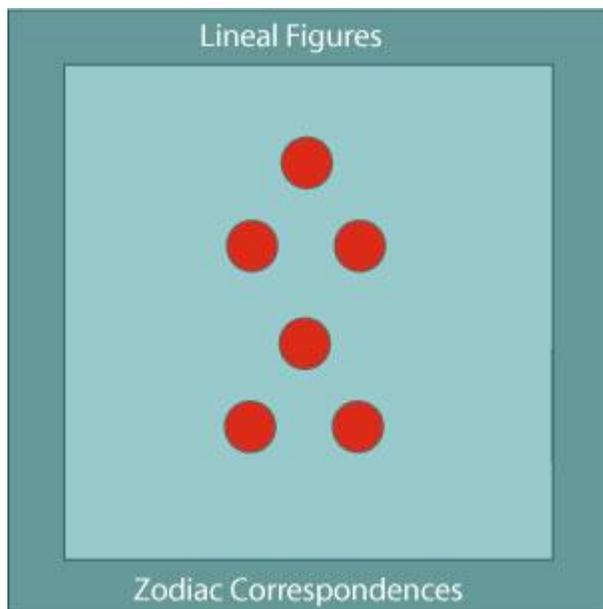
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Fall**

Aries:	Saturn
Taurus:	Part of Fortune
Gemini:	South Lunar Node
Cancer:	Mars
Leo:	Uranus
Virgo:	Uranus
Libra:	Sun
Scorpio:	Moon
Sagittarius:	North Lunar Node
Capricorn:	Jupiter
Aquarius:	Neptune
Pisces:	Mercury

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Lineal figure**

Aries: Puer

Taurus: Amissio

Gemini: Albus

Cancer: Populus Via

Leo: Fortuna Manor, Fortuna Minor

Virgo: Conjunctio

Libra: Puella

Scorpio: Rubeus

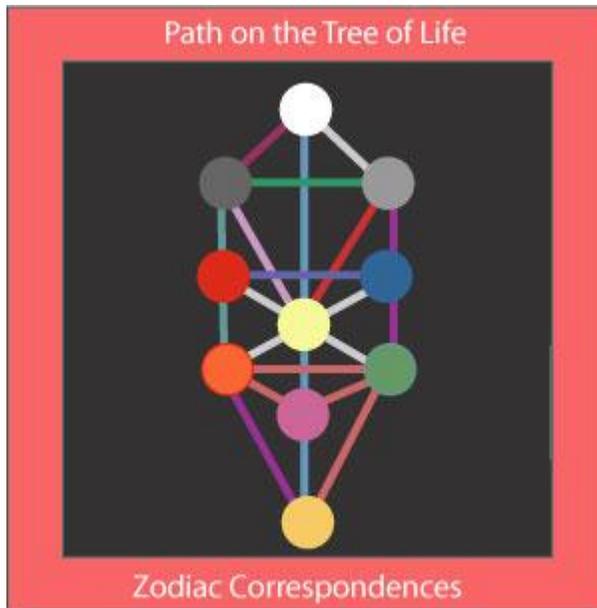
Sagittarius: Acquisitio

Capricorn: Carcer

Aquarius: Tristitia

Pisces: Laetitia

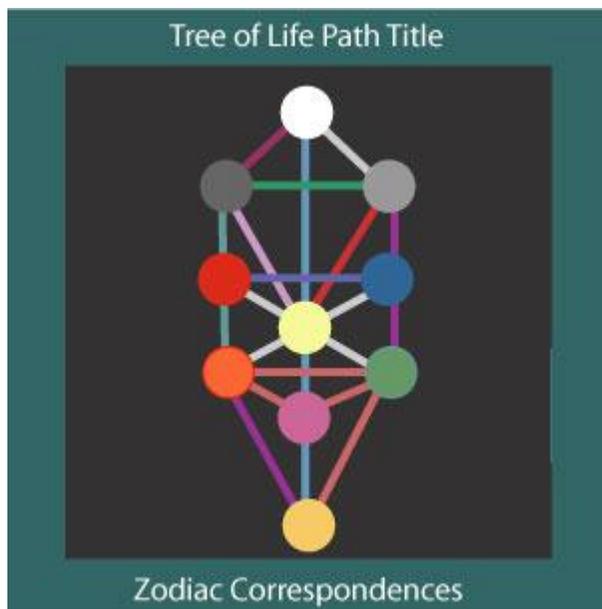
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Path on the Tree of Life**

- Aries: 15, joins 2-6
- Taurus: #16, joins 2-4
- Gemini: #17, joins 3-6
- Cancer: #18, joins 3-5
- Leo: #19, joins 4-5
- Virgo: #20, joins 4-6
- Libra: #22, joins 5-6
- Scorpio: #24, joins 6-7
- Sagittarius: #25, joins 6-9
- Capricorn: #26, joins 6-8
- Aquarius: 28, joins 7-9
- Pisces: #29, joins 7-10

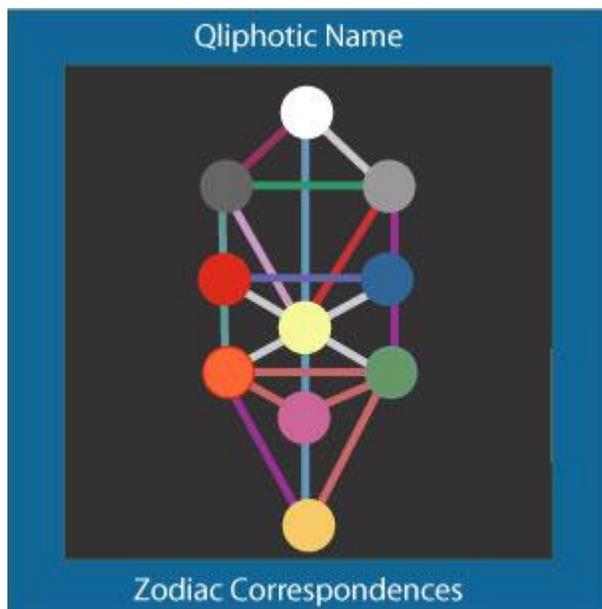
## The Zodiac Signs



### Path Title

- Aries     Constituting Intelligence
- Taurus:    Triumphal or Eternal One
- Gemini:    Disposing One
- Cancer:    Intelligence of the House of Influence
- Leo:        Intelligence of All the Activities of the Spiritual Being
- Virgo:     Intelligence of the Will
- Libra:     Faithful Intelligence
- Scorpio:   Imaginative Intelligence
- Sagittarius: Intelligence of Probation or Tentative One
- Capricorn: Renovating Intelligence
- Aquarius:   Natural Intelligence
- Pisces:    Corporeal Intelligence

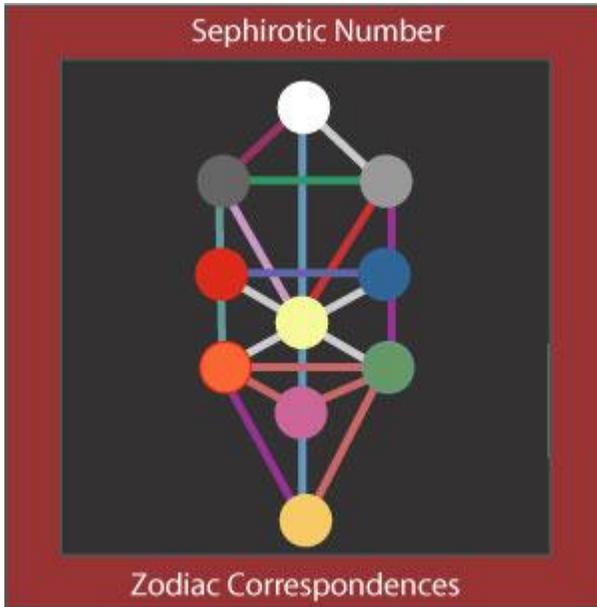
## The Zodiac Signs



### Qliphotic Name

- Aries: Da'Airiron (The Flock)  
Taurus: Admiron  
Gemini: Tzalalimiron (Clangers)  
Cancer: Shichiron (black)  
Leo: Shalehbirion (flaming)  
Virgo: Tzaphiron  
Libra: A'Abiron (Clayey)  
Scorpio: Necheshtiron (brazen)  
Sagittarius: Necheshiron (Snakey)  
Capricorn: Dagagiron (fish)  
Aquarius: Bahimiron (bestial)  
Pisces: Nashimoron (malignant women)

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Sephirothic Number**

Aries:	120
Taurus:	136
Gemini:	153
Cancer:	171
Leo:	190
Virgo:	210
Libra:	253
Scorpio:	300
Sagittarius:	325
Capricorn:	351
Aquarius:	406
Pisces:	435

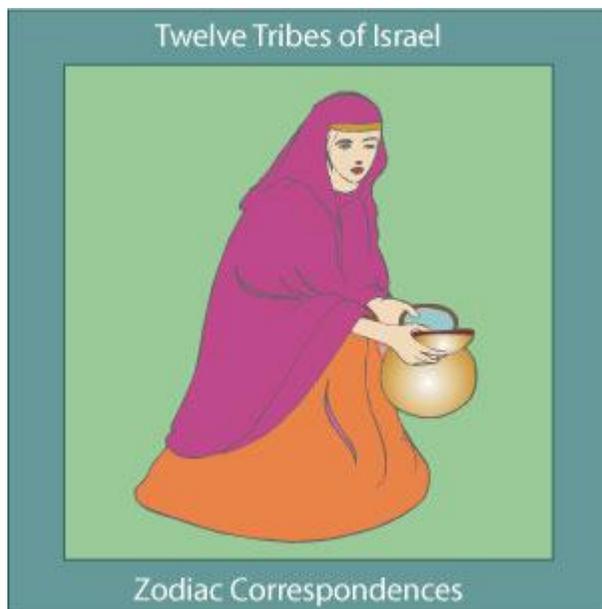
## The Zodiac Signs



### Hebrew Letter

- Aries: He (window)  
Taurus: Vau (nail)  
Gemini: Zain (sword)  
Cancer: Cheth (fence)  
Leo: Teth (serpent)  
Virgo: Yod (hand)  
Libra: Lamed (ox goad)  
Scorpio: Nun (fish)  
Sagittarius: Samekh (prop)  
Capricorn: Ayin (eye)  
Aquarius: Tzaddi (fish hook)  
Pisces: Qoph (back of head)

## The Zodiac Signs



### **12 Tribes of Israel**

Aries	Dan
Taurus:	Israel, Ruben
Gemini:	Judah
Cancer:	Manasseh
Leo:	Asher
Virgo:	Simeon
Libra:	Issachar
Scorpio:	Benjamin
Sagittarius:	Naphthalin
Capricorn:	Gad
Aquarius:	Zabulon
Pisces:	Ephraim

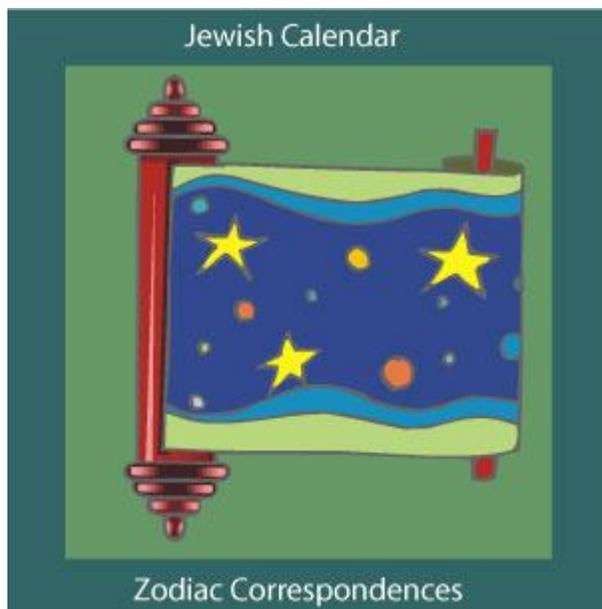
## The Zodiac Signs



### 12 Prophets

Aries:	Malachi
Taurus:	Haggai
Gemini:	Zachariah
Cancer:	Amos
Leo:	Hosea
Virgo:	Micah
Libra:	Jonah
Scorpio:	Obadiah
Sagittarius:	Zephaniah
Capricorn:	Nahum
Aquarius:	Habakkuk
Pisces:	Joel

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Jewish Calendar**

Aries: Ayar

Taurus: Sivah

Gemini: Tamooz

Cancer: Ab

Leo: Elool

Virgo: Tishree

Libra: Hesvan

Scorpio: Kislev

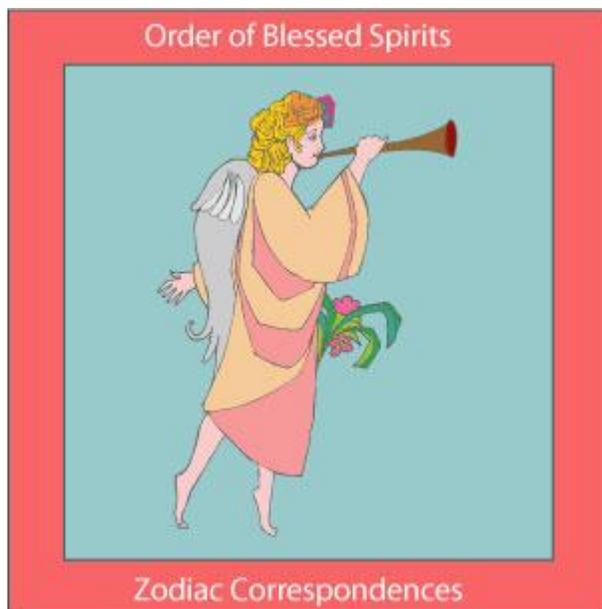
Sagittarius: Tebet

Capricorn: Shebat

Aquarius: Adar, leap year Niadar

Pisces: Nisar

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Order of Blessed Spirits**

Aries:	Seraphim
Taurus:	Cherubim
Gemini:	Thrones
Cancer:	Dominations
Leo:	Powers
Virgo:	Virtues
Libra:	Principalities
Scorpio:	Archangels
Sagittarius:	Angels
Capricorn:	Innocents
Aquarius:	Martyrs
Pisces:	Confessors

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Angel**

Aries: Malchidial

Taurus: Asmodel

Gemini: Ambriel

Cancer: Muriel

Leo: Verchiel

Virgo: Hamaleil

Libra: Zuriel

Scorpio: Barbiel

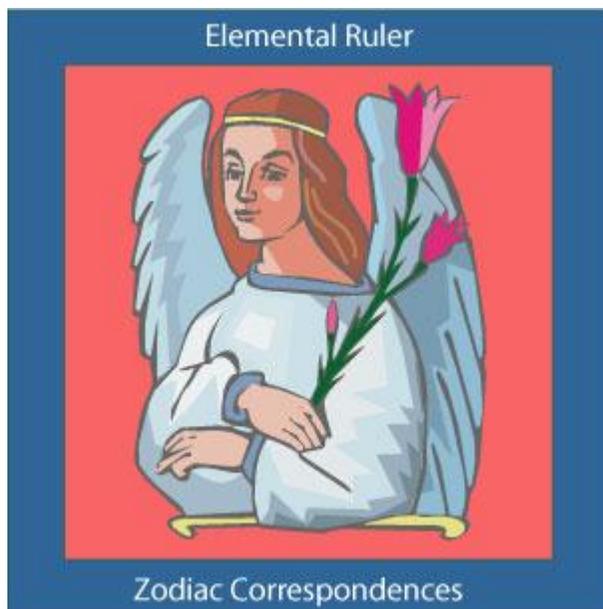
Sagittarius: Adnachiel

Capricorn: Hanael

Aquarius: Babriel

Pisces: Machidial

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Elemental Ruler**

- Aries: Seraph  
Taurus: Ariel  
Gemini: Cherub  
Cancer: Tharsis  
Leo: Seraph  
Virgo: Ariel  
Libra: Cherub  
Scorpio: Tharsis  
Sagittarius: Seraph  
Capricorn: Ariel  
Aquarius: Cherub  
Pisces: Tharsis

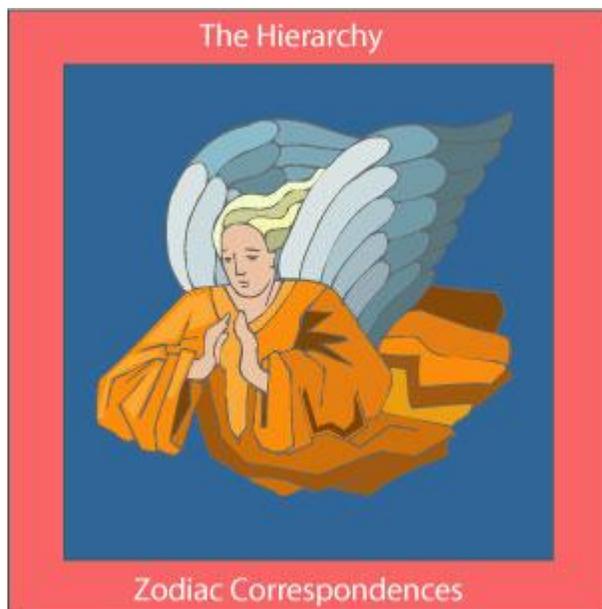
## The Zodiac Signs



### Four Angels

Aries:	Michael
Taurus:	Uriel
Gemini:	Raphael
Cancer:	Gabriel
Leo:	Michael
Virgo:	Uriel
Libra:	Raphael
Scorpio:	Gabriel
Sagittarius:	Michael
Capricorn:	Uriel
Aquarius:	Raphael
Pisces:	Gabriel

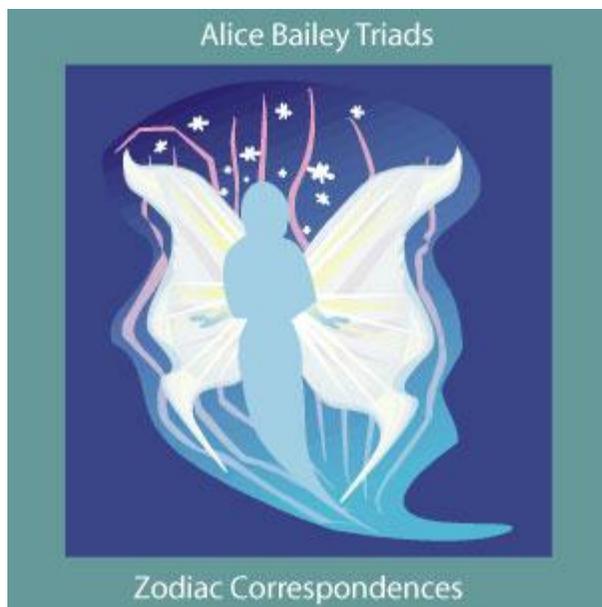
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Hierarchy**

Aries:	Xeophim
Taurus:	Teraphim
Gemini:	Seraphim
Cancer:	Cherubim
Leo:	Lords of the Flame
Virgo:	Lords of Wisdom
Libra:	Lords of Individuality
Scorpio:	Lords of Form
Sagittarius:	Lords of Mind
Capricorn:	Archangels
Aquarius:	Angels
Pisces:	Humanity

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Alice Bailey**

Aries: Father of Spiritual Triad

Taurus: Power of Spiritual Triad

Gemini: Mind of Spiritual Triad

Cancer: Father of Spiritual Triad

Leo: Power of Spiritual Triad

Virgo: Mind of Spiritual Triad

Libra: Father of Spiritual Triad

Scorpio: Power of Spiritual Triad

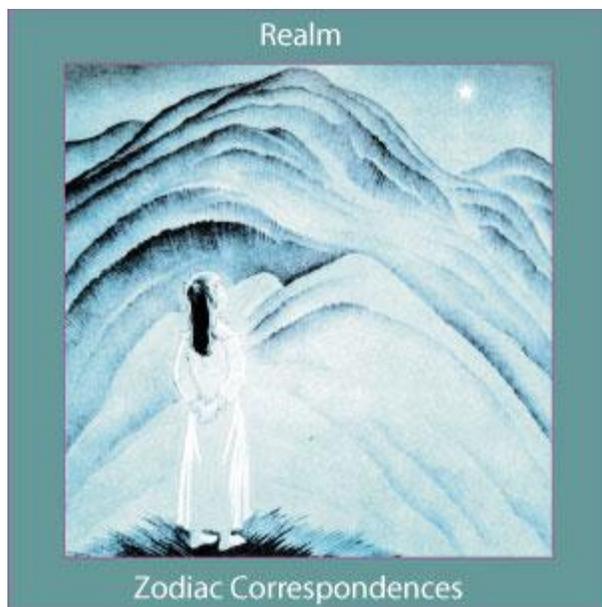
Sagittarius: Mind of Spiritual Triad

Capricorn: Father of Spiritual Triad

Aquarius: Power of Spiritual Triad

Pisces: Mind of Spiritual Triad

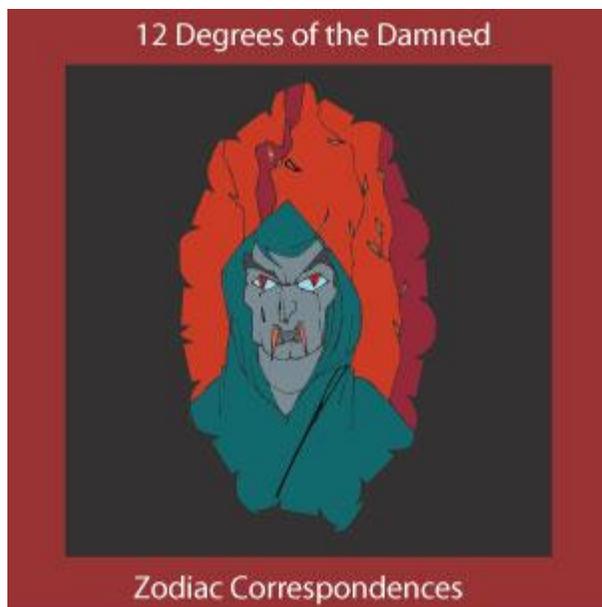
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Realm**

- Aries: The World  
Taurus: Of God  
Gemini: World  
Cancer: Of Virgin  
Leo: Spirit  
Virgo: World of Divine spirit  
Libra: World of the Lords of Spirit  
Scorpio: Region of Abstract Thought  
Sagittarius: Region of Concrete Thought  
Capricorn: Desire World  
Aquarius: Etheric region  
Pisces: Chemical Region

## The Zodiac Signs



### **12 Degrees of the Damned**

- Aries: False Gods
- Taurus: Lying Spirits
- Gemini: Vessels of Iniquity
- Cancer: Revengers of Wickedness
- Leo: Jugglers
- Virgo: Airy Powers
- Libra: Furies, the Sowers of Evil
- Scorpio: Sifters or Trier's
- Sagittarius: Tempters or Ensnarers
- Capricorn: Witches
- Aquarius: Apostates
- Pisces: Infidels

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Magical Powers**

Aries: Consecrating things

Taurus: Secrets of Physical Strength

Gemini: Power of being in two or more places at once, Prophecy

Cancer: Casting Enchantments

Leo: Power of training wild beasts

Virgo: Invisibility, Parthenogenesis

Libra: Works of Justice, Equilibrium

Scorpio: Necromancy

Sagittarius: Transmutations

Capricorn: So-called Witches Sabbath, Evil Eye

Aquarius: Astrology

Pisces: Bewitchments, Casting Illusions

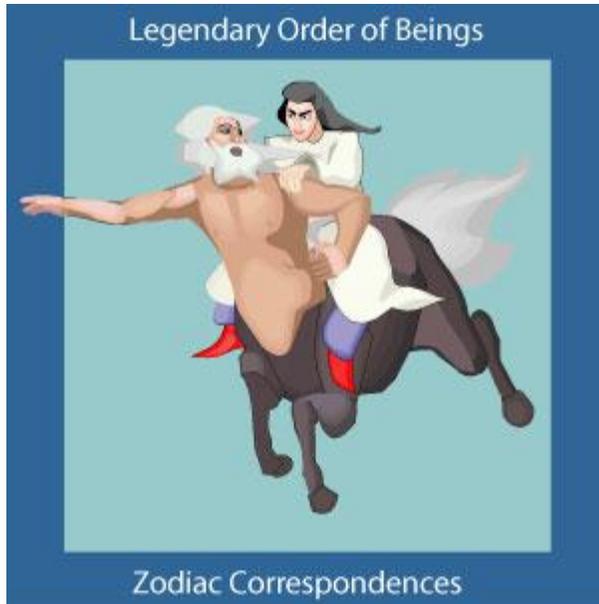
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Magical Weapons**

- Aries:     Horns, Energy, The Burin  
Taurus:    The Labor of Preparation  
Gemini:    The Tripod  
Cancer:     The Furnace  
Leo:        Discipline (preliminary)  
Virgo:      Lamp and Wand (virile force reserved)  
Libra:      Cross of Equilibrium  
Scorpio:    Pain in the Obligation  
Sagittarius: Arrow (swift)  
Capricorn:  Secret Force, Lamp  
Aquarius:   Censor or Aspergillus  
Pisces:     Twilight of the Place, Magical Mirror

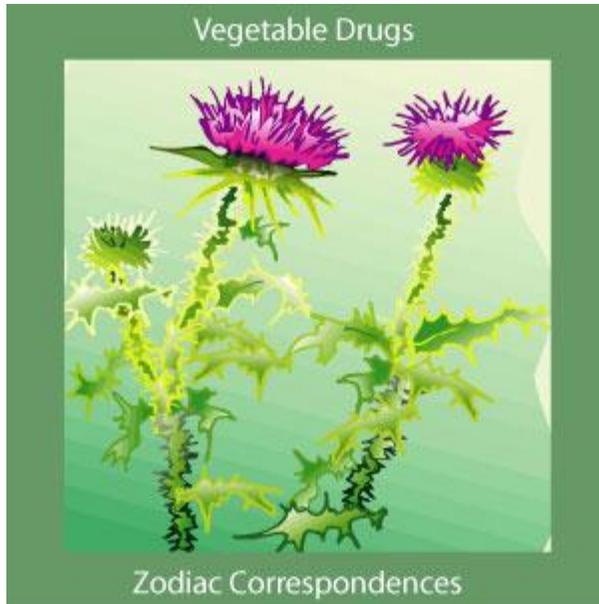
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Legendary Order of Beings**

- Aries: Mania, Erinyes  
Taurus: Gorgons, Minotaurs  
Gemini: Ominous Appearances, Banshees  
Cancer: Vampires  
Leo: Dorros, Dragons  
Virgo: Mermaids, Banshees  
Libra: Fairies, Harpies  
Scorpio: Lamaie, Stryges, Witches  
Sagittarius: Centaurs  
Capricorn: Satyrs and fauns, Panic Demons  
Aquarius: Water Nymphs, Sirens, Lorelei, Mermaids  
Pisces: Phantoms, Werewolves

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Vegetable Drugs**

- Aries: All the Cerebral Excitants  
Taurus: Sugar  
Gemini: Ergot and Exbolics  
Cancer: Watercress  
Leo: All Carminatives and tonics  
Virgo: All Anaphrodisiacs  
Libra: Tobacco  
Scorpio: None  
Sagittarius: None  
Capricorn: Orchis Root, Thistle  
Aquarius: All diuretics  
Pisces: All narcotics

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Tarot Trump**

- Aries: IV, the Emperor  
Taurus: V, the Hierophant  
Gemini: VI, The Lovers  
Cancer: VII, The Chariot  
Leo: XI, Strength  
Virgo: IX, The Hermit  
Libra: VIII, Justice  
Scorpio: XIII, Death  
Sagittarius: XIV, Temperance  
Capricorn: XV, The Devil  
Aquarius: XVII, The Star  
Pisces: XVIII, The Moon

## The Zodiac Signs



### Tarot Design

Aries: A flame-clad god, bearing equivalent symbols.

Taurus: Between the pillars sits an ancient

Gemini: A prophet young and in the sign of Osiris risen

Cancer: A young and holy king, under the starry canopy

Leo: A smiling woman holds open the jaws of a fierce and powerful lion

Virgo: Wrapped in a cloak and cowl, an ancient walker bearing a lamp and staff

Libra: A conventional figure of justice, with scales and balances

Scorpio: A skeleton with a scythe mowing men, the scythe handle is a Tau

## The Zodiac Signs

Sagittarius: Figure of Diana Huntress

Capricorn: The figure of Pan or Priapus

Aquarius: Figure of a water nymph disporting herself.

Pisces: A Waning Moon

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Tarot Trump Title**

Aries: Sun of the Morning, Chief Among the Mighty

Taurus: Magus of the Eternal

Gemini: The Children of the Voice, Oracle of the Mighty Waters

Cancer: Child of the Powers of the Waters, Lord of the Triumph of Light

Leo: Daughter of the Flaming Sword

Virgo: Prophet of the Eternal Magus of the Voice of Power

Libra: Daughter of the Lords of Truth, Ruler of the Balance

Scorpio: Child of the Great Transformers, Lord of the Gates of Death

## The Zodiac Signs

Sagittarius: Daughter of the Reconcilers, Bringer Forth of Life

Capricorn: Lord of the Gates of Matter, Child of the Forces of Time

Aquarius: Daughter of the Firmament, Dweller Between the Waters

Pisces: Ruler of Flux and reflux, Child of the Sons of the Mighty

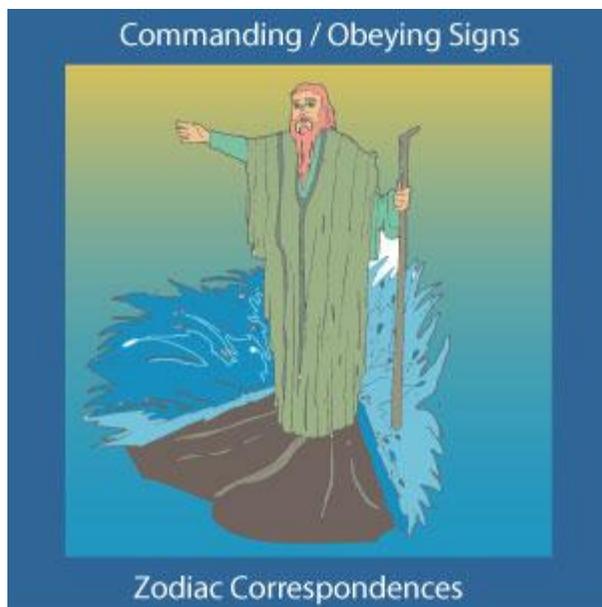
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Fortunate/Unfortunate**

Aries:	Fortunate
Taurus:	Unfortunate
Gemini:	Fortunate
Cancer:	Unfortunate
Leo:	Fortunate
Virgo:	Unfortunate
Libra:	Fortunate
Scorpio:	Unfortunate
Sagittarius:	Fortunate
Capricorn:	Unfortunate
Aquarius:	Fortunate
Pisces:	Unfortunate

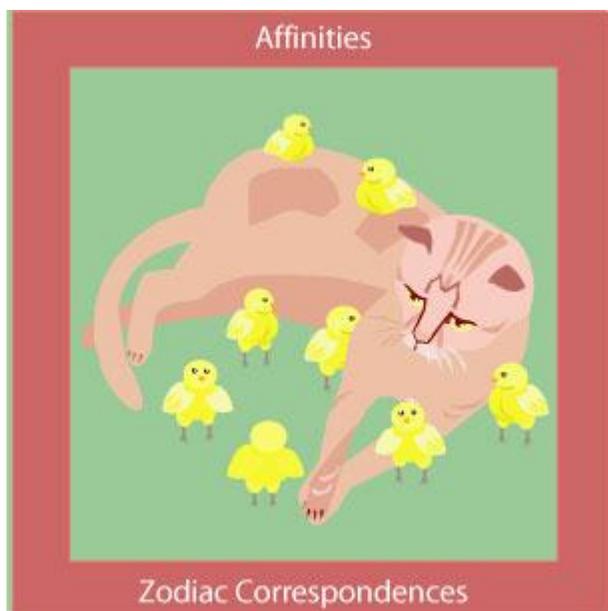
## The Zodiac Signs



### **Commanding/Obeying 4**

- Aries: Northern or Commanding
- Taurus: Northern or Commanding
- Gemini: Northern or Commanding
- Cancer: Northern or Commanding
- Leo: Northern or Commanding
- Virgo: Northern or Commanding
- Libra: Southern or Obeying
- Scorpio: Southern or Obeying
- Sagittarius: Southern or Obeying
- Capricorn: Southern or Obeying
- Aquarius: Southern or Obeying
- Pisces: Southern or Obeying

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Affinities**

Aries: Gemini, Leo, Sagittarius

Taurus: Cancer, Virgo, Capricorn, Pisces

Gemini: Aries, Leo, Libra, Aquarius

Cancer: Virgo, Scorpio, Pisces, Taurus, Leo

Leo: Aries, Libra, Gemini, Sagittarius

Virgo: Taurus, Capricorn, Scorpio, Cancer

Libra: Aquarius, Leo, Gemini, Sagittarius

Scorpio: Cancer, Virgo, Capricorn, Pisces

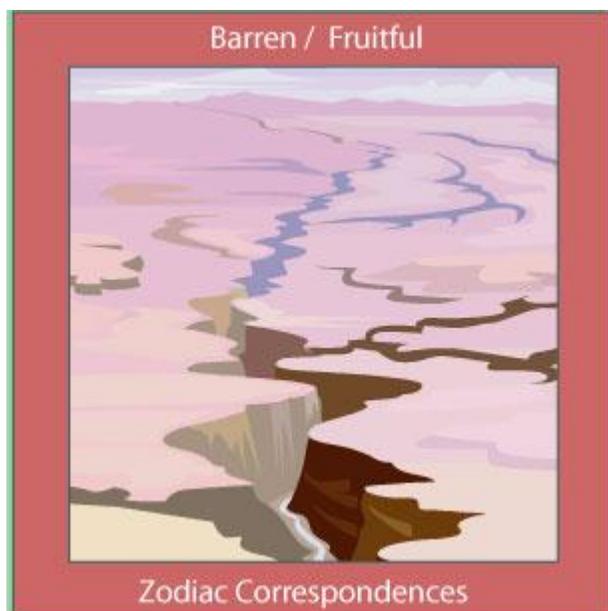
Sagittarius: Aries, Leo, Libra, Aquarius

Capricorn: Taurus, Virgo, Pisces

Aquarius: Aries, Sagittarius, Libra, Gemini

Pisces: Cancer, Scorpio, Taurus, Capricorn

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Barren/Fruitful**

Aries: Barren (by some authorities)

Taurus: Moderately Fruitful

Gemini: Barren

Cancer: Fruitful

Leo: Barren

Virgo: N/A

Libra: Moderately Fruitful

Scorpio: Fruitful

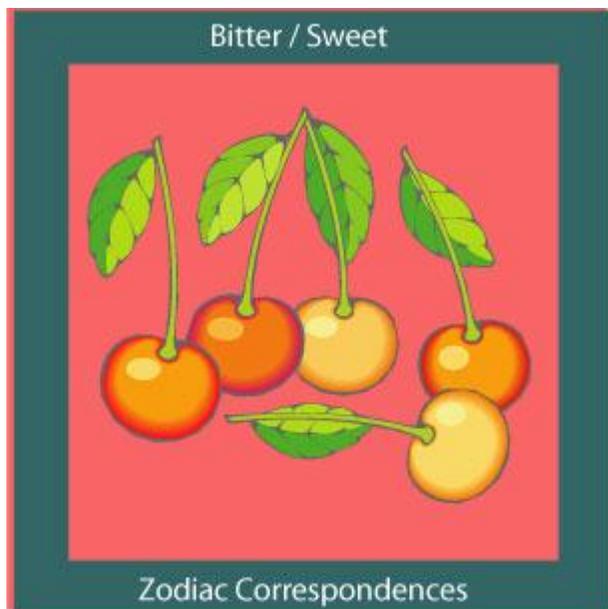
Sagittarius: Mildly Barren

Capricorn: Moderately Fruitful

Aquarius: Mildly Barren

Pisces: N/A

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Bitter/Sweet**

Aries: Bitter

Taurus: N/A

Gemini: Sweet

Cancer: N/A

Leo: Bitter

Virgo: N/A

Libra: Sweet

Scorpio: N/A

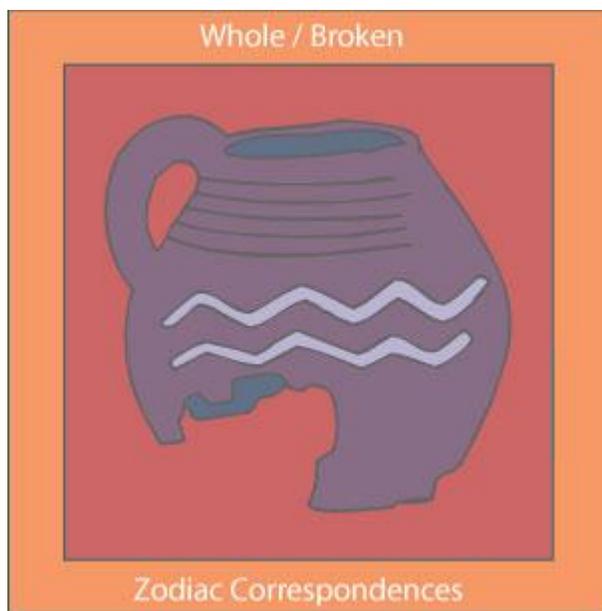
Sagittarius: Bitter

Capricorn: N/A

Aquarius: Sweet

Pisces: N/A

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Whole/Broken**

Aries:	N/A
Taurus:	N/A
Gemini:	Whole
Cancer:	N/A
Leo:	Broken
Virgo:	N/A
Libra:	Whole
Scorpio:	Broken
Sagittarius:	N/A
Capricorn:	N/A
Aquarius:	Whole
Pisces:	Broken

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Hot/Cold**

Aries:	Hot
Taurus:	Cold
Gemini:	Hot
Cancer:	Cold
Leo:	Hot
Virgo:	Cold
Libra:	Hot
Scorpio:	Cold
Sagittarius:	Hot
Capricorn:	Cold
Aquarius:	Hot
Pisces:	Cold

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Conceptive**

Aries: N/A

Taurus: Conceptive

Gemini: N/A

Cancer: N/A

Leo: Conceptive

Virgo: N/A

Libra: N/A

Scorpio: Conceptive

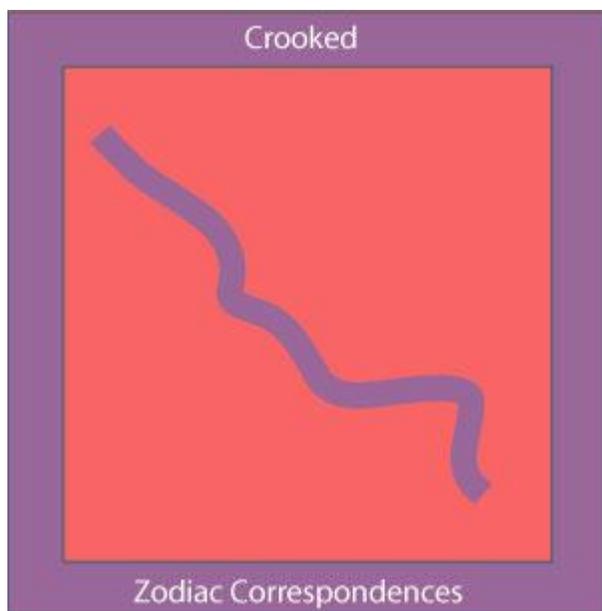
Sagittarius: N/A

Capricorn: N/A

Aquarius: Conceptive

Pisces: N/A

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Crooked**

Aries: N/A

Taurus: Crooked

Gemini: N/A

Cancer: N/A

Leo: N/A

Virgo: N/A

Libra: N/A

Scorpio: N/A

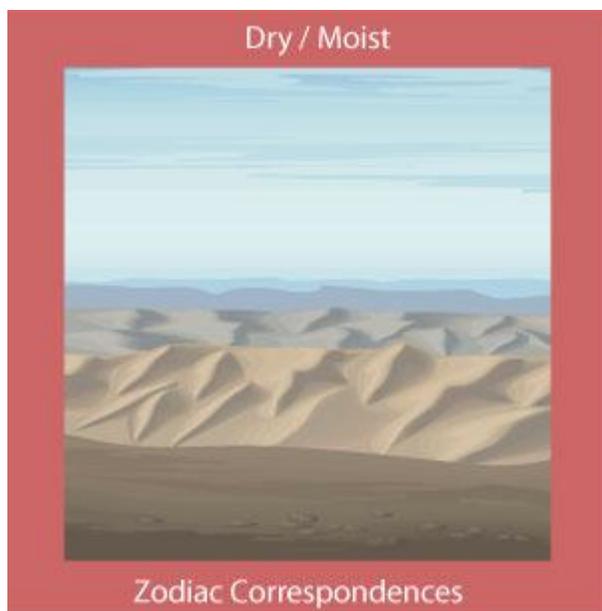
Sagittarius: N/A

Capricorn: Crooked

Aquarius: N/A

Pisces: Crooked

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Dry/Moist**

Aries: Dry

Taurus: Dry

Gemini: Moist

Cancer: Moist

Leo: Dry

Virgo: Dry

Libra: Moist

Scorpio: Moist

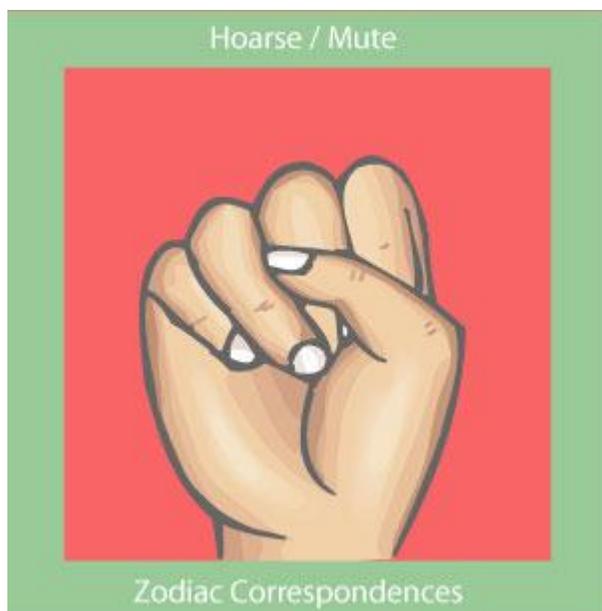
Sagittarius: Dry

Capricorn: Dry

Aquarius: Moist

Pisces: Moist

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Hoarse/Mute**

- Aries: Vocal
- Taurus: Vocal
- Gemini: Vocal
- Cancer: Hoarse/Mute
- Leo: Vocal
- Virgo: Vocal
- Libra: Vocal
- Scorpio: Hoarse/Mute
- Sagittarius: Vocal
- Capricorn: Vocal
- Aquarius: Vocal
- Pisces: Hoarse/Mute

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Violent Signs**

Aries: Violent

Taurus: N/A

Gemini: N/A

Cancer: N/A

Leo: N/A

Virgo: N/A

Libra: Violent

Scorpio: Violent

Sagittarius: N/A

Capricorn: Violent

Aquarius: Violent

Pisces: N/A

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Vital Signs**

Aries: Vital

Taurus: N/A

Gemini: N/A

Cancer: N/A

Leo: Vital

Virgo: N/A

Libra: N/A

Scorpio: N/A

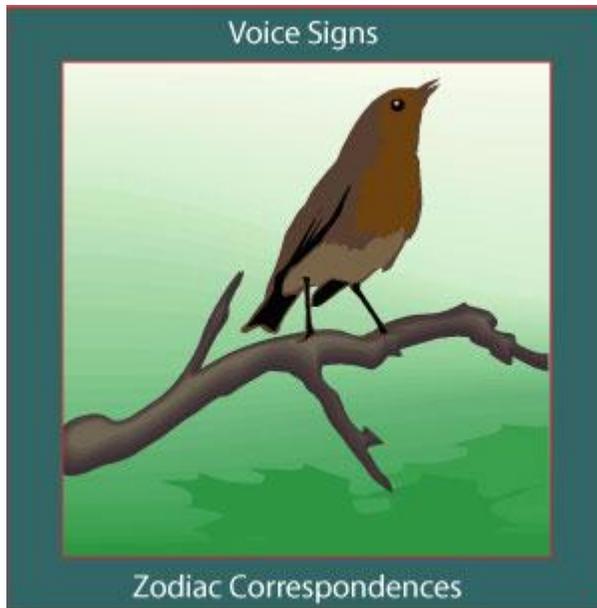
Sagittarius: Vital

Capricorn: N/A

Aquarius: N/A

Pisces: N/A

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Voice Signs**

Aries: N/A

Taurus: N/A

Gemini: Voice

Cancer: N/A

Leo: N/A

Virgo: Voice (last part)

Libra: Voice

Scorpio: N/A

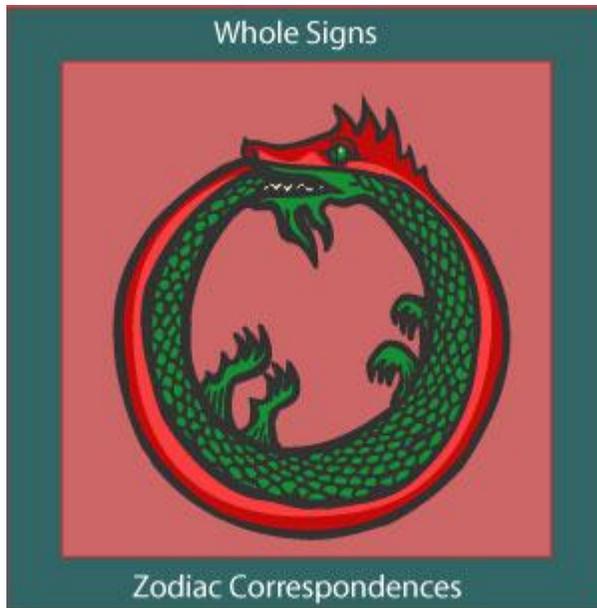
Sagittarius: N/A

Capricorn: N/A

Aquarius: Voice (sometimes included)

Pisces: N/A

## The Zodiac Signs



### Whole Signs

- Aries: N/A  
Taurus: Whole Sign  
Gemini: Whole Sign  
Cancer: N/A  
Leo: Whole Sign  
Virgo: N/A  
Libra: N/A  
Scorpio: Whole Sign  
Sagittarius: Whole Sign  
Capricorn: N/A  
Aquarius: Whole Sign  
Pisces: N/A

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Boreal Signs**

Aries: Boreal

Taurus: Boreal

Gemini: Boreal

Cancer: Boreal

Leo: Boreal

Virgo: Boreal

Libra: N/A

Scorpio: N/A

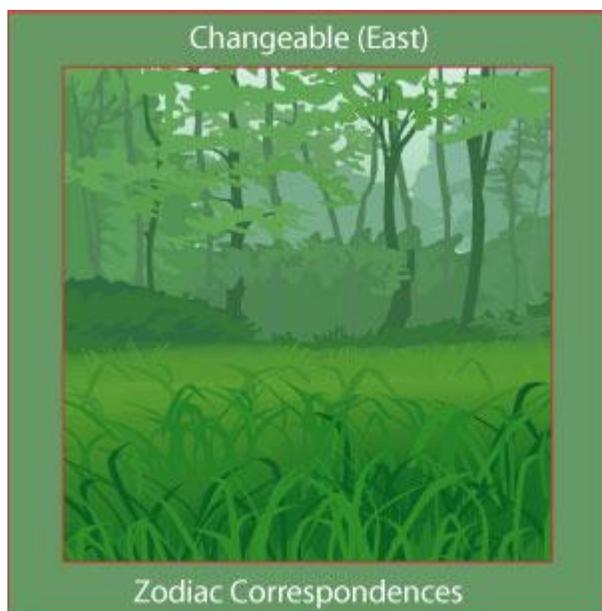
Sagittarius: N/A

Capricorn: N/A

Aquarius: N/A

Pisces: N/A

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Changeable (East Side of Chart)**

Aries: N/A

Taurus: Hot

Gemini: Hot and Dry

Cancer: N/A

Leo: Hot and Dry

Virgo: Warmish Cold

Libra: N/A

Scorpio: N/A

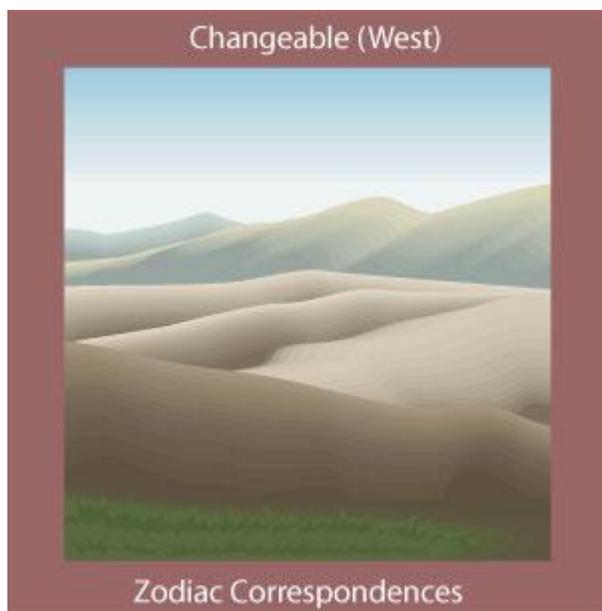
Sagittarius: Cold and Moist

Capricorn: Cold and Dry

Aquarius: N/A

Pisces: N/A

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Changeable (West Side of Chart)**

Aries: N/A

Taurus: Cold

Gemini: Cold and Moist

Cancer: N/A

Leo: Hot and Moist

Virgo: Moist

Libra: N/A

Scorpio: N/A

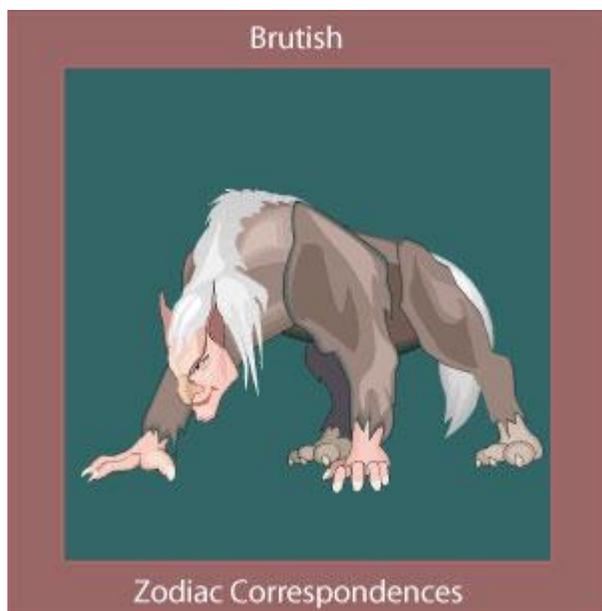
Sagittarius: Hot and Dry

Capricorn: Cold and Moist

Aquarius: N/A

Pisces: N/A

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Brutish**

Aries: N/A

Taurus: N/A

Gemini: N/A

Cancer: N/A

Leo: Brutish

Virgo: N/A

Libra: N/A

Scorpio: N/A

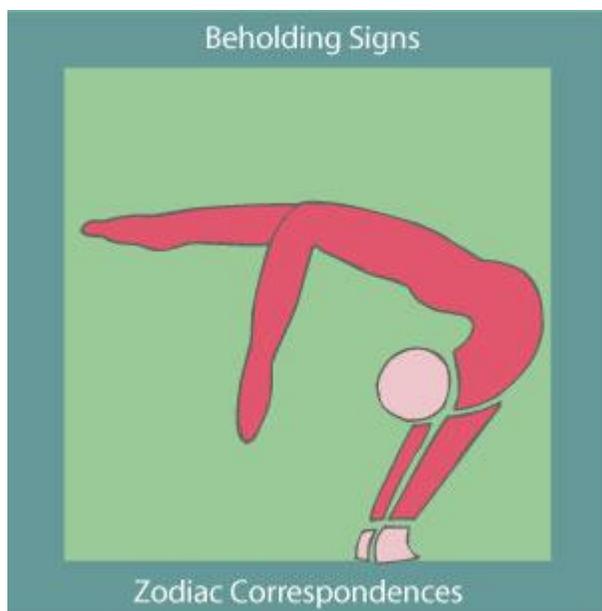
Sagittarius: Brutish (last half only)

Capricorn: N/A

Aquarius: N/A

Pisces: N/A

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Beholding Signs**

Aries: Aries and Virgo

Taurus: Taurus and Leo

Gemini: Gemini and Cancer

Cancer: Gemini and Cancer

Leo: Taurus and Leo

Virgo: Aries and Virgo

Libra: Libra and Pisces

Scorpio: Scorpio and Aquarius

Sagittarius: Sagittarius and Capricorn

Capricorn: Sagittarius and Capricorn

Aquarius: Scorpio and Aquarius

Pisces: Libra and Pisces

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Imperfect Signs**

Aries: N/A

Taurus: N/A

Gemini: N/A

Cancer: N/A

Leo: Imperfect Sign

Virgo: N/A

Libra: N/A

Scorpio: Imperfect Sign

Sagittarius: N/A

Capricorn: N/A

Aquarius: N/A

Pisces: Imperfect Sign

## The Zodiac Signs



### **Initiating Signs**

Aries: Initiating Sign

Taurus: N/A

Gemini: N/A

Cancer: Initiating Sign

Leo: N/A

Virgo: N/A

Libra: Initiating Sign

Scorpio: N/A

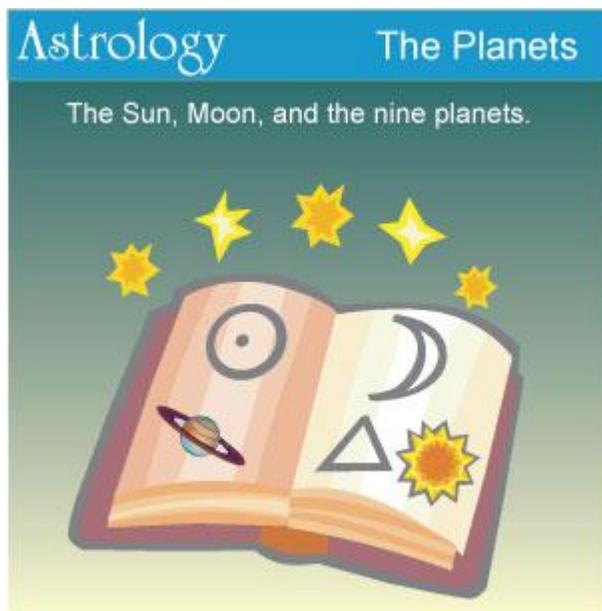
Sagittarius: N/A

Capricorn: Initiating Sign

Aquarius: N/A

Pisces: N/A

## The Lights and Planets



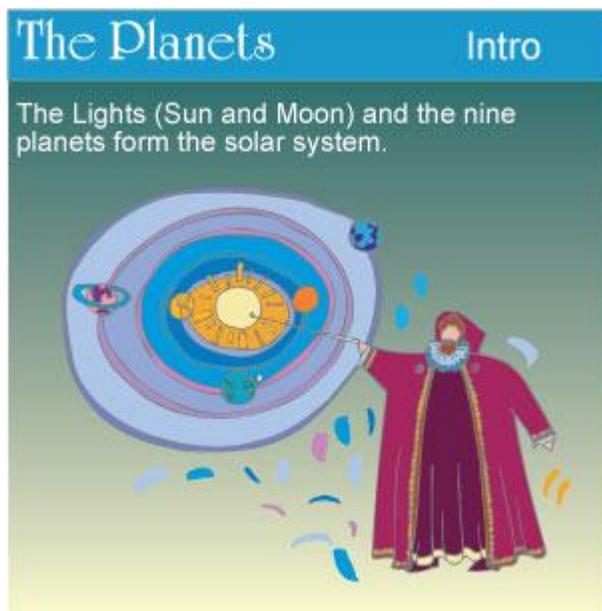
### **The Planets: An Introduction**

Astrology is all about the Sun, the Moon, and the nine planets—these are at the very heart of astrology, both ancient and modern. We all know some astronomy, just by having seen the Sun and the Moon in the sky, and most of us have probably seen Venus, and even Jupiter, once or twice; but what we want to learn here is more than just the astronomical value of these bodies, we want to know their astrological value. What do these bodies mean in our natal charts?

The modern astrologer knows that planets don't cause things to happen here on Earth. We watch the endless planetary patterns forming and dissolving in the heavens, much as we see airplanes writing smoke letters across the sky, and we try to read that writing. What is happening out there in space and what is

## The Lights and Planets

happening down here on earth are both happening in the same moment and in the same general space. The same thing is happening everywhere, and there are just different ways of expressing it. Astrologers learn to read the language of the planets and the stars so that they can better understand what is happening here on Earth. The key players in this are: the Sun, the Moon, and the planets.



### **A Working System**

Perhaps the most important first concept to note is that all of those bodies out there are not just isolated entities. They work and hang together as a system—the solar system. And, they have all been doing this for a very long time, so they have found just the right distances to keep, one from another, as they all orbit around the Sun. This integrated balanced system is older than any time we can measure and will probably last longer than any time we can imagine. At this point in history, this entire

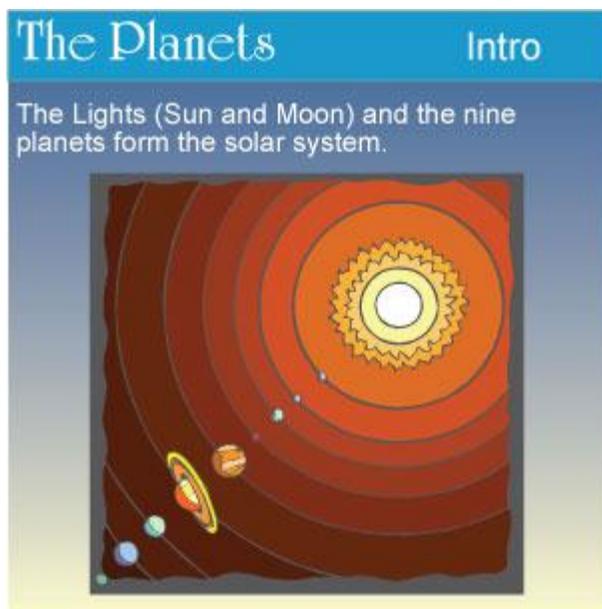
## The Lights and Planets

system has settled down and found its own unique rhythm and pace.

Where we sit, on Earth, there are two planets inside Earth's orbit, Mercury and Venus, and a number of planets outside of that orbit: Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, etc. Gradually, over recorded time, each of these great heavenly bodies has drawn around it a vast amount of lore and meaning. These are not just a bunch of rocks circling the Sun. There is more and more evidence that not just our entire solar system, but our entire galaxy, is a coherent system that somehow communicates within itself, at least communicates enough information so as to continue to remain intact—coherent.

Perhaps your introduction, so far, to this lore and tradition, amounts to little more than what you have heard people say, maybe things such as, "It's Mercury retrograde, so don't sign that contract," or, "Have your party at the Full Moon, that's when the energy is high." What we want to do here is take the time to really get to know the planets and what they have to say to us.

## The Lights and Planets



### The Planets

One of the most helpful things to understand is that the planets—out there—point to something happening down here, as well, and not just within our skin, although there also. The planets are vast areas of life where we spend much of our time and most of our energy. Think of the planets not only as spheres of activity of one kind or another, but as actual stages in our life, places where we may spend years or even decades. Elsewhere in this course is a module on esoteric astrology, covering the planets as chakras. Chakras are these vast areas or stages.

In other words, each planet not only represents a certain kind of activity, but is also a location or a place somewhere in our life space that we can visit, and, in some cases, eventually master and find our way around in. We may go there to get a certain activity done, if we know how to use that space, but we can also, at times,

## The Lights and Planets

get lost in a particular planet's energy, and have trouble moving beyond it. But we are drifting off topic here, and into the realm of esoteric astrology; so, let's present the basic facts first.



### The Lights

The two most important bodies are the Sun and the Moon, and, in the history of astrology, this pair, together, is called "The Lights." One light shines and the other reflects. You cannot look directly into the Sun, but you can, more or less, find your way around in the dark by the reflected light of the Moon—by moonlight. And, the Sun is not just another body in the solar system; it is THE body around which all of the others revolve—the very heart and center of the solar system. The Sun is, above all, the most important body in the whole system, not just astronomically, but also astrologically. There is no comparison.

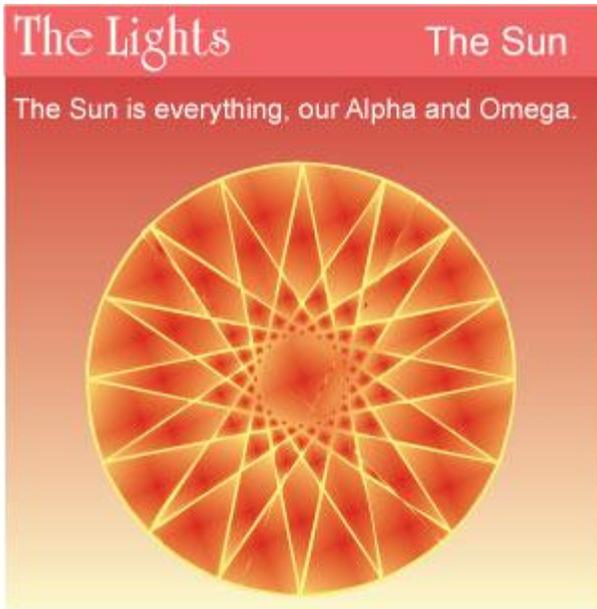
## The Lights and Planets

In a similar way, the Moon is the second most important heavenly body, not because it has any mass or importance outside of how it influences earth, but because it is about the only way we can receive light from the Sun other than from the Sun itself. We all look at the Moon—we cannot look into the Sun.

Throughout the history of astrology much has been made of the fact that the Moon shuttles back and forth between the space beyond the earth's orbit and the space inside that orbit. It has been said that it gradually feeds us the light of the Sun, by degrees, so that we can assimilate it into our lives—rather like a great mother nurturing us.

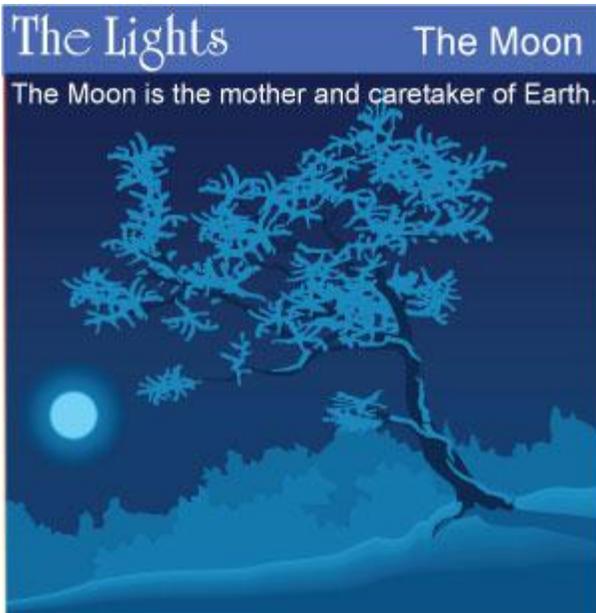
And the Moon is filled with mystery. The Mysteries of the Moon have been an integral part of occult lore for ages. We can get into some of that later, but for now, let's go over some of the more common keywords and general descriptions of the Sun and the Moon.

## The Lights and Planets



### **The Sun**

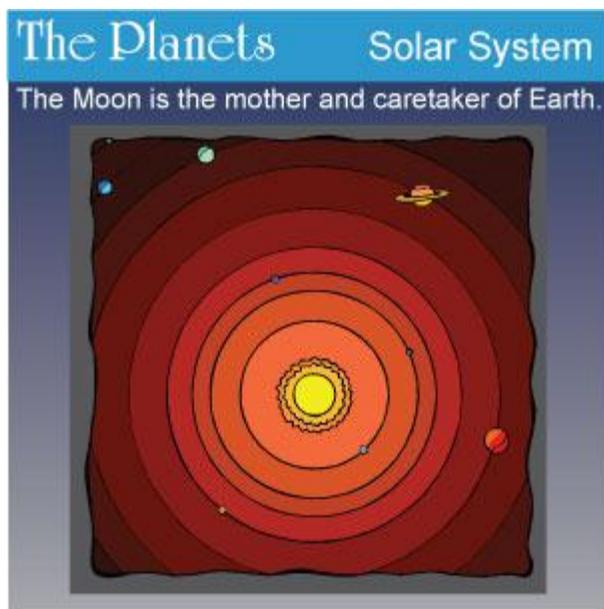
The Sun is not a planet, but one of The Lights, and it is important to us beyond words. It is the source of all light warmth and life, and the very center around which the entire solar system of planets revolve. In astrology, the Sun has always stood for the Self, with a capital "S." It has everything to do with what we strive to discover, what we hope to become, and what we treasure in old age. It is the ultimate reference point. The Sun is the entire process of life. Perhaps all that can be said is: The Sun is Shining.



### **The Moon**

The Moon, not even a planet, is the caretaker of Earth. She spends her time shuttling from the inside the earth's orbit to the outside, and back. The Moon reflects the light of the Sun as would a great mirror, lighting up the night of our lives, endlessly redistributing the solar light throughout her phases. She is the great mother, the nurturer, and the womb from which all life arises. The Moon holds many mysteries, some of which we will go into in another section. Next to the Sun, the Moon is the most important body in the heavens for us.

## The Lights and Planets



### The Major or External Planets

The earth's orbit, 'third stone from the Sun' as they say, is far enough away so we are not burning and close enough so we are not freezing. At any rate, from where we sit on Earth, there are planets inside of the earth's orbit (Mercury and Venus), and planets beyond the earth's orbit (Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn). And beyond this, we have the so-called outer or transcendental planets—Uranus, Neptune, and Pluto—which we will study later.

Since we live here on Earth, we can look either inward toward the Sun, at the planets Mercury and Venus, the inner planets (esoterically, these planets are a part of our inner life, as we have pointed out) or we can look outside ourselves, to the planets Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn. These are external or outside our skin. Let's start with these latter three planets; the very order of them—Mars, Jupiter, Saturn—as they exist outside the

## The Lights and Planets

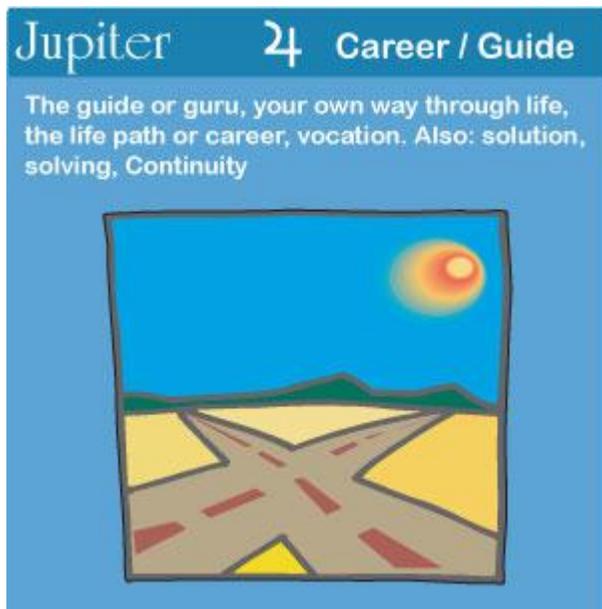
orbit of the earth, is important, and tells us something. Let's go over these planets briefly, getting a feel for them.



### **Mars**

Mars, the closest planet to Earth outside of Earth's orbit, shows us just that—how to get outside our self, how we can reach out and take action. Mars is the planet of our ambition and drive. Mars is what moves us. It is the energy that keeps us moving, the energy pushing us onward—but not in any particular direction. In fact, in traditional astrology, Mars is considered a malefic because it can blindly move us to act without thought or direction, rashly, and we can get into real problems. We take action through our Mars. Mars is our endless drive to act, and this planet is also what moves us to find meaning in our lives. As mentioned, Mars propels us forward in life, but it is Jupiter setting the course we will run.

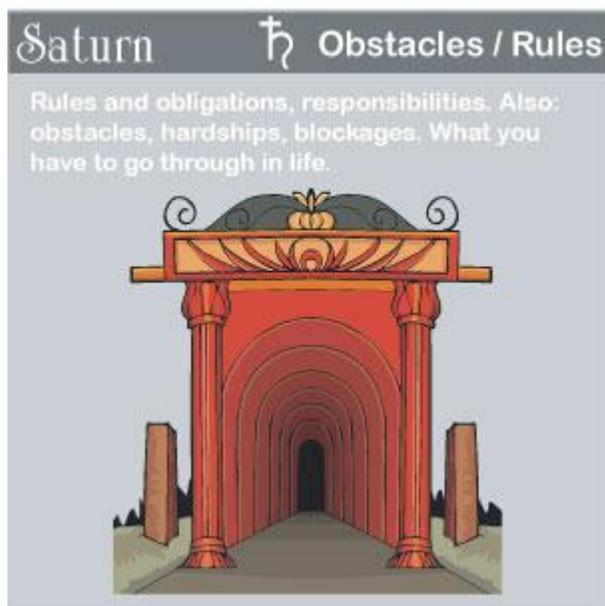
## The Lights and Planets



### **Jupiter**

Outside of Mars, as we move outward from Earth and away from the Sun, is the planet Jupiter and, if Mars is what keeps us moving, then Jupiter is the direction we are moved to go in—our particular life path. In this sense, Jupiter represents our vocation, how we make a living, and how we find our way through the obstacles and circumstances of our life. In a word, Jupiter is how we succeed or continue—it is our particular road or path through life. And, while Jupiter shows the best direction for us to take in life—our life path—the terrain we have to pass through is ruled by Saturn.

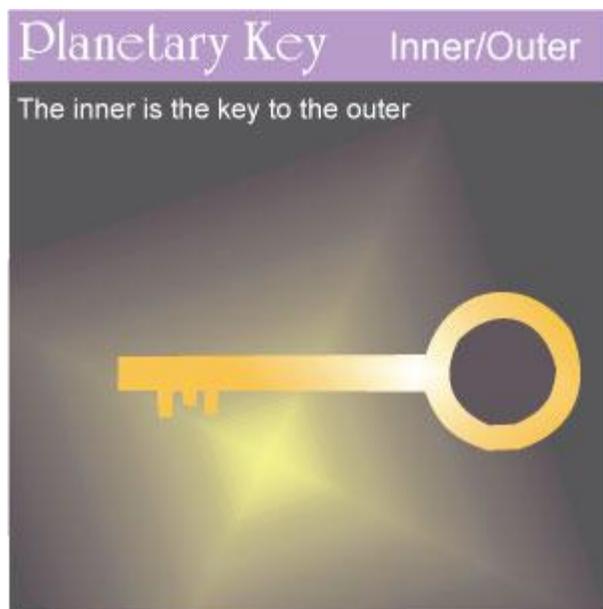
## The Lights and Planets



### **Saturn**

In ancient astrology, Saturn was said to be the lord of form and the prince of the material world. Saturn is the set of physical or natural laws to which we all must conform. We don't break nature's laws, they break us. We must, therefore, obey these laws or pay the consequences. In this way, Saturn lays down the rules and sets the boundaries of our lives. This planet represents the particular set of limitations and obstacles that each of us face. Traditional astrology considers Saturn the major malefic, a planet to approach with great care. On a friendlier note, Saturn also provides all of the structure we have—the walls that make our homes possible.

## The Lights and Planets



### **Putting It All Together**

At this point, we have gone over each of the first three outer planets briefly, presenting their general qualities and pointing out how they lead, in fact, one to the other in the natural planetary order. The energy that drives us through Mars is directed along a path by Jupiter and Jupiter's path is shaped by the rules and laws of Saturn. This brings us to a very important astrological concept for chart interpretation, and this is:

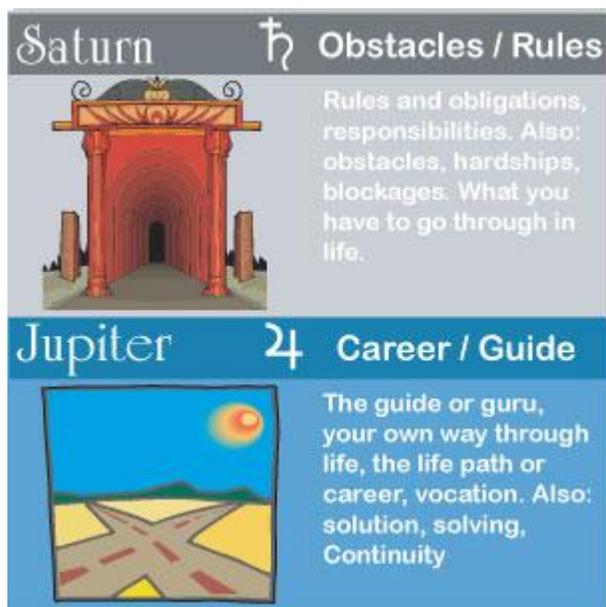
### ***The Inner is the Key to the Outer***

When we interpret an astrological chart and are considering a planet such as Saturn, trying to understand how to interpret it within the horoscope, we can remember this principle:

The key to most any planet will be found with whatever planet is closest to it inside it's orbit—"The inner is the key to the outer." This concept is useful, at least for the

## The Lights and Planets

planets Mercury through Saturn, and vice versa, Saturn through Mercury.



### **The Inner is the Key to the Outer**

Since it makes a good example, and because this planet represents, among other things, the obstacles each of us face in life, let's use Saturn. If the inner is the key to the outer, then what planet is 'next' or closest to Saturn—inside Saturn's orbit? This would be Jupiter, and so, in a natal chart, Jupiter will be the key to interpreting Saturn.

If we want to figure out how to deal with the problems and obstacles that Saturn represents in a chart, just look at the planet Jupiter in that chart—by sign, house position, aspects or whatever other techniques you get results from. Saturn represents the obstacle course life offers, and Jupiter is the guide or path through that obstacle course. In India, the Sanskrit name for Jupiter

## The Lights and Planets

is guru; this points out to us the real nature of Jupiter: our guide through the limitations and corridors of life.

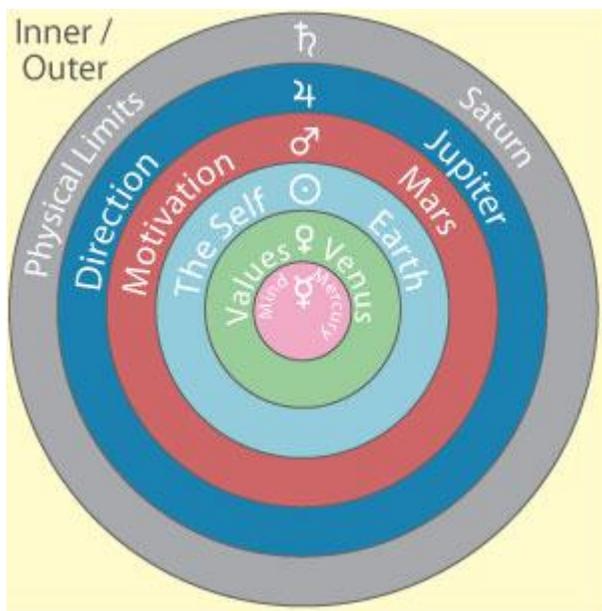
<p><b>Jupiter</b> ♃</p> 	<p><b>Career / Guide</b></p> <p>The guide or guru, your own way through life, the life path or career, vocation. Also: solution, solving, Continuity</p>
<p><b>Mars</b> ♂</p> 	<p><b>Drive / Activity</b></p> <p>Action, initiative, the activity that generates space. Also: urges, ambition, and drive. Exercise and physicality. Sports.</p>

### Jupiter is the Life Path

We can apply the same principle to any other planet. Now, let's take Jupiter, the guide or life-path we spoke of earlier. Using the principle that the inner is the key to the outer, the key to Jupiter in any chart will be Mars, which is the next planet inside of Jupiter's orbit. Mars is the key to Jupiter. Let me make this clearer. As pointed out, Jupiter is the planet of vocation, the path each of us will take through life. If we are having vocational problems—trouble getting a job or finding our way—then we look to the planet Mars in the chart, since this will show us what really drives or motivates us—what moves us. If the Jupiter path is not working out (a person cannot make a living), then examine what it is that moves that person, which is shown by the natal Mars.

## The Lights and Planets

This simple concept can be very useful as you interpret the planets in a chart, especially if you are having problems or questions concerning a particular planet. In the module on esoteric astrology this concept is gone into in much greater detail, as it relates to spiritual awakening; here, however, we have presented it more simply. To recap: the key to better understanding any planet is to be found in the next innermost planet. The inner is the key to the outer. Now, let's take a look at the inner planets.

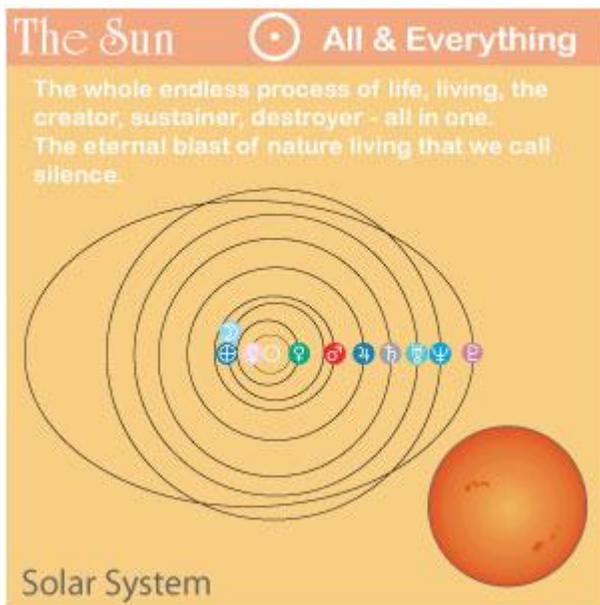


### Earth and the Inner Planets

The inner planets are Mercury and Venus, and they are termed inner because they exist *inside* the orbit of Earth. In an esoteric sense, they are a part of our inner life and do not have as much to do with our external or outer life. By saying that they represent our inner life, we mean just that: look to find the influence and nature of Mercury and Venus within yourself and not somewhere outside

## The Lights and Planets

in the world around you. We have, however, left out planet Earth, which, arguably, is the planet of most importance to us.



### The Earth/Sun

When we talk about Earth, what we are referring to is the Sun in the natal chart, since it is the Earth/Sun relationship which gives us the sun signs we use all the time. It is easy to forget, when looking at the natal chart, that it is Earth that is at the center of it all. It does not appear in the chart because the natal chart is a diagram of the heavens around the Earth. The symbol of the Sun is what is used in the astrological chart to represent this Earth/Sun relationship, because it is the Sun as seen from Earth which gives us our "sun sign." For example, having been born in the middle of July, my sign is the zodiac sign Cancer, which means that when I was born, (from our perspective on Earth at that time, according to Earth's orbit around the Sun) the Sun appeared to be in

## The Lights and Planets

the tropical zodiac sign Cancer. This means that at my birth the *Earth* was actually in the tropical sun sign Capricorn. The point here is that the Sun in the natal chart ALWAYS stands for the Earth. In the natal chart we consider the Sun and the Earth as the same thing.



### The Key to Mars is Earth

We left off with the planet Mars—what motivates or moves us to action, what really gets us going; and, this is different for each of us. The key to Mars in a natal chart will be, of course, Earth, so we should look to the Sun's position in the natal chart. The Earth/Sun always represents our self and what we will become or could become when all is said and done—when we have realized our potential. The Earth/Sun always represents our Self, who we are at heart or in essence, and what we are striving to find or become. Mars is the striving—the drive to find—and, the key to Mars will be to find that Self or peace that each of us seek; moreover, this Self

## The Lights and Planets

or peace is always pointed out to us in the chart by symbol of the Sun; thus, the key to Mars will be the Earth/Sun in any natal chart—this will tell each of us who we are and how we will find peace in our self.

The Earth		You / Future
	You, the future, what you will become, all the changes you have not yet taken, authority, elders, mentors, men.	
Venus		Love / Values
	Love and cherishing, also: value, valuation, evaluation, appreciation, and appraisal. Possessions, money, have and having.	

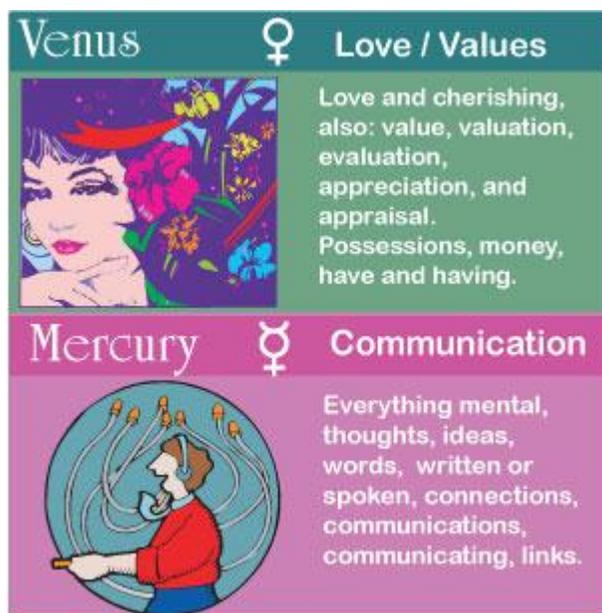
### The Key to Earth is Venus

Now, let's get back to the looking at the Earth, the third planet from the Sun, using the rule: the inner is the key to the outer. According to this rule, the key to life here on Earth, and to the Sun (Earth) in our natal chart, will be the next planet inside of the earth's orbit, which is Venus. Venus (Love) will be the key to life here on earth. This should not surprise us, for the poets have been telling us this for centuries—in about every way possible—that the key to life here on Earth is love; as the Beatles sang: "Love is all you need."

If we are looking at the Sun in a natal chart and want to learn more about what that Sun is really about, what

## The Lights and Planets

that person (Self) really cares about, all we need to do is study the planet Venus in that chart, for this will be the key. Venus has to do with love and with how one appreciates things—anything. It also shows our sense of values, how we value, appraise and measure whatever life offers us. Venus has to do with possessions, because it is about how we possess things; it also points to what we value, love and care about. And, this love or care is not something *out there*, but rather something *in here*—within us. Venus is an inner planet. When we say someone is venal, we are talking about Venus.



### The Key to Venus is Mercury

The planet just inside the orbit of Venus is Mercury, and Mercury is thus the key to Venus in a chart. The planet Mercury has to do with the mind and with awareness, in particular with mental awareness, and thus with thoughts and ideas as well as how those thoughts and

## The Lights and Planets

ideas are communicated. The Sanskrit word for Mercury is 'Buddha', which is the concept of pure awareness, and the key as to how Venus values or loves in a chart is related to the *idea* behind those values—the kind of awareness one has. In the natal chart, Mercury represents our particular brand of awareness and how we communicate because of that awareness. Communication is central to understanding Mercury.



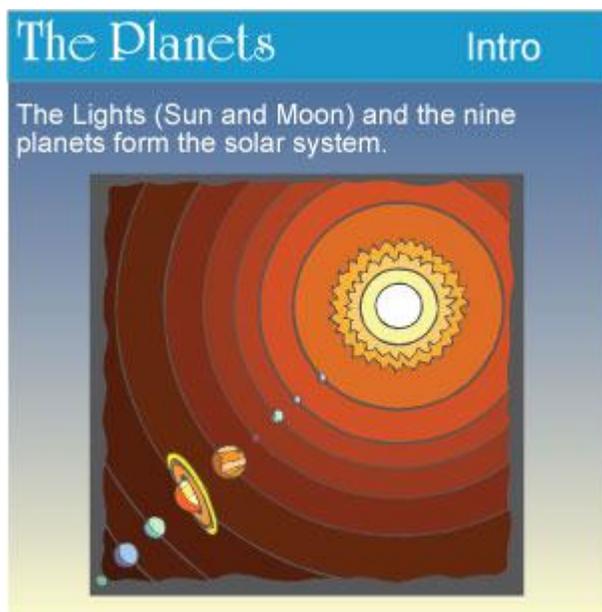
### The Sun as Key

The Sun is not a planet, but rather is the center of and source around which all of the planets revolve. The Sun is the single most important astrological body, and, together with the Moon, is called one of "The Lights." Together, the Sun and Moon light up our life in a literal way. The Sun shining in the heavens is the single unalterable and seemingly eternal fact of our existence: it shines day and night, and has done so for as long as we can remember, and will continue to do so beyond

## The Lights and Planets

our mind's grasp of future time. The Sun is the whole deal. Period.

This is why looking at our inner or heliocentric natal chart is so important, because this is the chart of what was actually taking place in the solar system at the moment of one's birth. The traditional geocentric natal chart, which we mostly use, is a snapshot of the solar system from Earth's view, but the inner or helio chart is a chart of the whole solar system itself, as it is in and of itself, and not just from Earth's viewpoint. We all need to learn about this more encompassing helio view, because this view provides us with our inner or dharma chart—a chart of our life path.



### ***Planet Interpretations***

We have a number of sections on the interpretation of the planets included in this course, so you can shop

## The Lights and Planets

around for one that best suits you. Here are straight-forward brief descriptions.



### **The Sun**

The Sun signifies your identity and self, your vital or heart essence; also, the father, husband and men; authorities, especially males, but also kings, presidents, heads of state, employers and high religious figures.

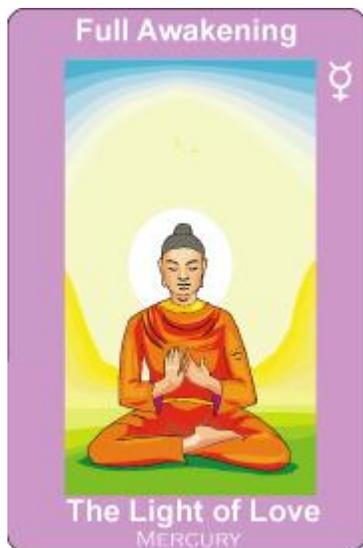
## The Lights and Planets



### **The Moon**

The Moon signifies the mother and wife, plus women in general; also, your environment, surroundings, background and history; the womb, embryos, motherhood, fertility and the tides; the public, masses, crowds; the mind, subconscious and psyche.

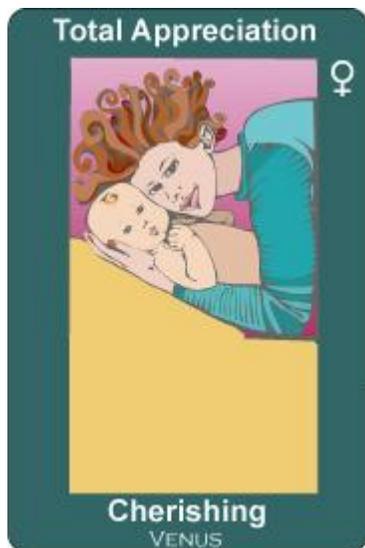
## The Lights and Planets



### **Mercury**

Mercury signifies communication of all forms: ideas, thoughts, words—both written and spoken, news, messages and gossip. These spin off to paperwork, deeds, letters, papers and documents, in general; also, schooling, reason, logic and all mental processes.

## The Lights and Planets



### **Venus**

Venus signifies money, acquisitions and possessions; thus artwork, jewelry, museums, decorative items, designs and the arts in general. It can also indicate younger women—the mistress or sweetheart.

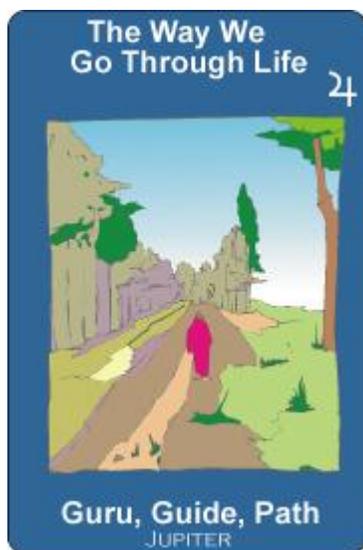
## The Lights and Planets



### **Mars**

Mars signifies force: soldiers, police, weapons, hunters and adventurers; also, sports, athletes and exercise; violence, war, crime, combat and enemies; surgeons.

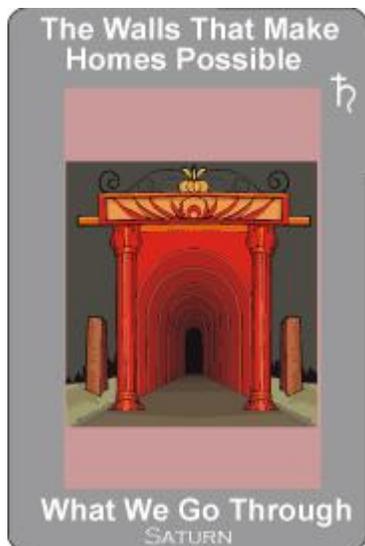
## The Lights and Planets



### **Jupiter**

Jupiter has to do with success, succession, and simple continuance—how we manage to continue and get through life. One of the Hindu words for Jupiter is "guru," and this tells us a lot. Jupiter is our guru and guide, showing us how we can get through life. Success or path = career, so Jupiter indicates our vocation or career, as well as how we solve the problems life throws at us.

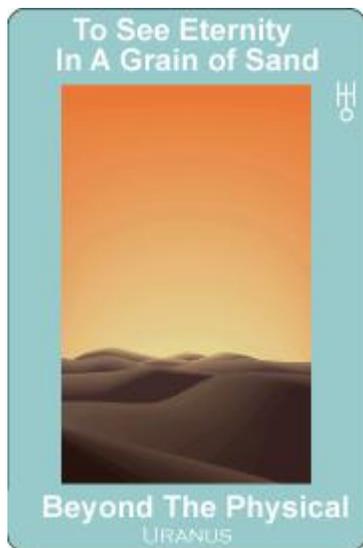
## The Lights and Planets



### **Saturn**

Saturn signifies limits, restraints, boundaries and confines; thus buildings, foundations, skeletons, teeth and property; also, laws, rules, organization, corporations and time.

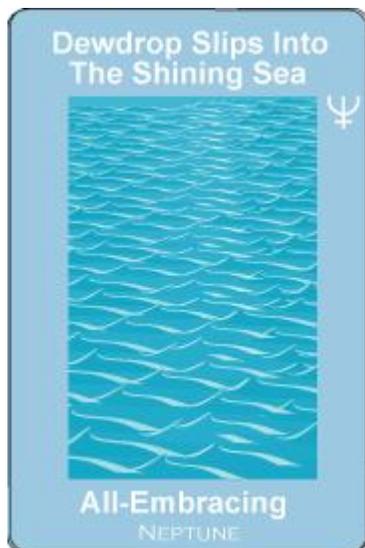
## The Lights and Planets



### **Uranus**

Uranus signifies innovations, insight, computers, electricity, patents, inventions and discoveries; also, independence, freedom, rebellion and revolution; earthquakes, lightning, accidents, sudden events; divorce, separation.

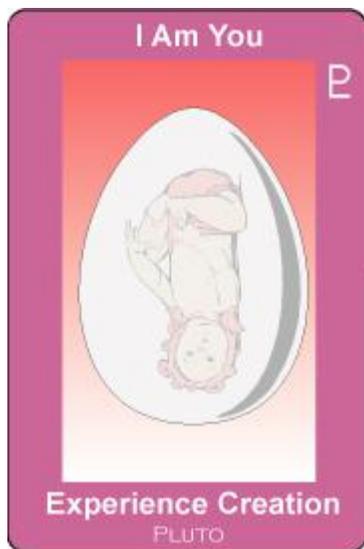
## The Lights and Planets



### **Neptune**

Neptune signifies compassion, embracement, cherishing, unity, union, oceans and the sea; also, music, film, photography, movies, images, hallucinations, alcohol and escape.

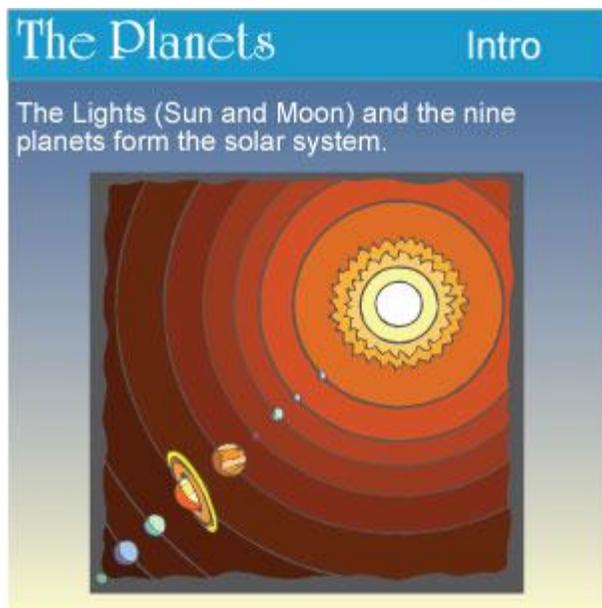
## The Lights and Planets



### **Pluto**

Pluto signifies deep change, transformation, extreme sensitivity and vulnerability; also, the occult, all things hidden or buried; investigations, detectives; power politics, big business.

## The Lights and Planets



### ***Planets: Meaning***

We have a number of sections on the interpretation of the planets included in this course, so you can shop around for one that best suits you. Here is a straightforward description going over the basic qualities of each of the bodies.

## The Lights and Planets



### **The Sun**

The Sun/Earth always represents the future, what you will be, or become, in time, and thus, your true identity or real self. This is what you look toward and up to, so the Sun stands for elders, authorities, teachers, gurus—anyone more experienced. The Sun is your own future light shining like a beacon in time; also, that part of you, you have not yet experienced.

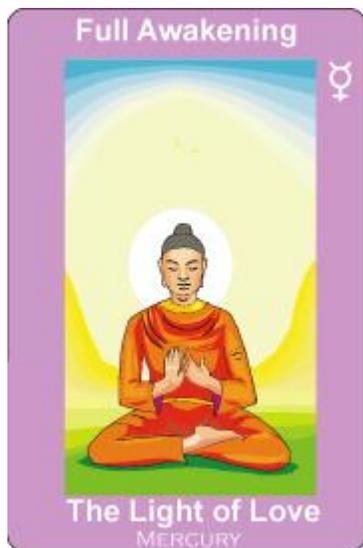
## The Lights and Planets



### The Moon

The Moon represents all that is feminine, nourishing, and supportive in life, including the environment from which one comes, including: motherhood, home, family, childhood surroundings, and the past. It also represents the world of feelings and emotions, as well as that of the Mind—all meaning, memory, nostalgia, and history. The Moon is a passive force in that the Moon helps things to pass and be forgotten.

## The Lights and Planets



### **Mercury**

Mercury is pure awareness, the light shining in our eyes—consciousness itself. It governs all things of the mind: thoughts, words and ideas; plus all communications and connections—whether spoken, written, by phone, email, letter or in-person.

## The Lights and Planets



### **Venus**

Venus is all about how we appreciate or cherish life and the things and people in it. At the high end, this is compassion and universal love, but Venus also indicates just how one appraises, values and enjoys life, as well as the things in it. Venus is synonymous with money, acquisitions and possessions.

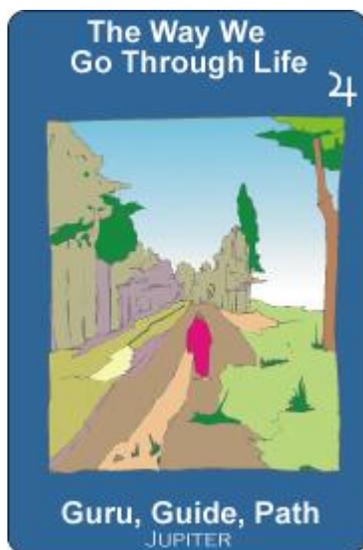
## The Lights and Planets



### **Mars**

Mars is the inner surge of ambition, motivation, and energy that drives or spurs us forward in our personal quest for the meaning of life. It is the energy within us striving endlessly to find peace and unity, and thus it is connected to marriage, union, and yoga. When we speak of passion, it is Mars we are talking about.

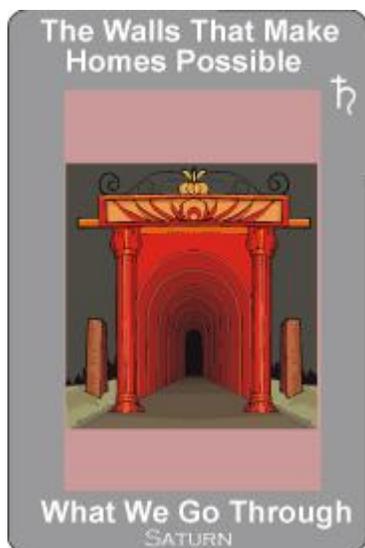
## The Lights and Planets



### Jupiter

Jupiter has to do with success, succession, and simple continuance—how we manage to continue and get through life. One of the Hindu words for Jupiter is "guru," and this tells us a lot. Jupiter is our guru and guide, showing us how we can get through life. Success or path = career, so Jupiter indicates our vocation or career, as well as how we solve the problems life throws at us.

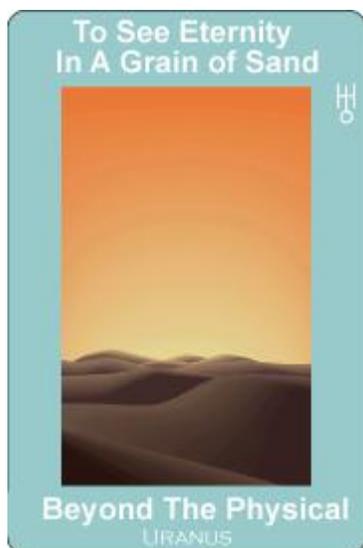
## The Lights and Planets



### Saturn

Saturn represents rules, laws, and the particular limits we face in life—our limitations. This planet shows us where we have no choice but to learn, the narrowness that makes our way through life felt—the walls that make our homes possible. Saturn holds us together as much as it separates us. Saturn represents discipline, organization, and order, and always works to limit and determine our every thought, word, and deed.

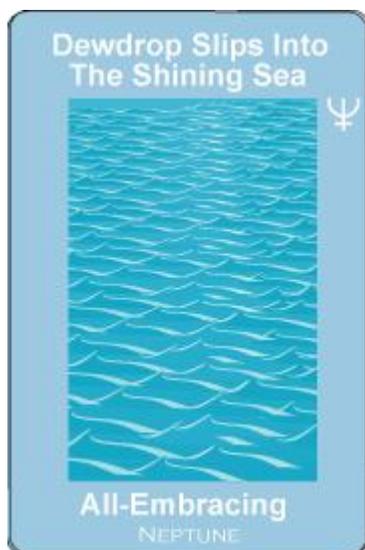
## The Lights and Planets



### **Uranus**

Uranus represents our keyhole from which we can see beyond day-to-day reality and into the future, and has to do with discovery, invention and insights. "To see eternity in a grain of sand"—that is Uranus, finding new uses for everyday objects. It has come to stand for anything out of the ordinary: the unusual, eccentric, unconventional, novel, and innovative. It also brings independence, rebellion, and revolution. It is the opposite or undoing of Saturn.

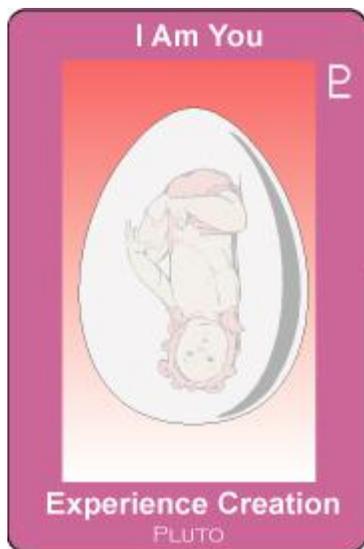
## The Lights and Planets



### **Neptune**

Neptune represents compassion, acceptance, unity, and universal love. "The dewdrop slips into the shining sea," is what this planet is about; anything to do with communion and non-separateness. Neptune rules the imagination, dreams, mysticism and inspiration, including music, movies, film—anything related to our ideas and images.

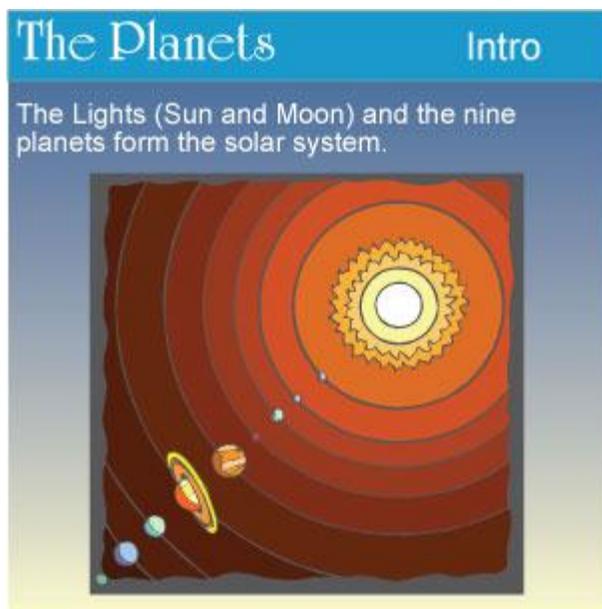
## The Lights and Planets



### **Pluto**

Pluto points to deep inner change and transformation, always touching the raw nerve where we are the most sensitive and vulnerable. If we can't stand to look change in the eye, Pluto brings it about by force—if necessary. For many, this has to do with our thoughts of death, dying, and rebirth. "Touch me if you dare!" is Pluto.

## The Lights and Planets



### ***Planet Interpretations***

We have a number of sections on the interpretation of planets...here is a straight-forward description of The Lights (Sun and Moon), the planets, the lunar node, and the main chart angles.

## The Lights and Planets



### The Sun

The Earth/Sun represents your Self or identity, what you look forward to or hope to become in the future, and whatever you respect or use as a reference point. In other words, the Sun represents all of the changes that are still ahead of you, all of yourself that you have not yet experienced; the Sun in one's life, therefore, is usually, at first, someone you look up to and respect, often a mentor, teacher or older person; authorities, or those more experienced in life—the essence of your future. The Sun burns brightly before us, showing us ourselves as we can or will be; however, it is also too hot for us to endure just at the moment.

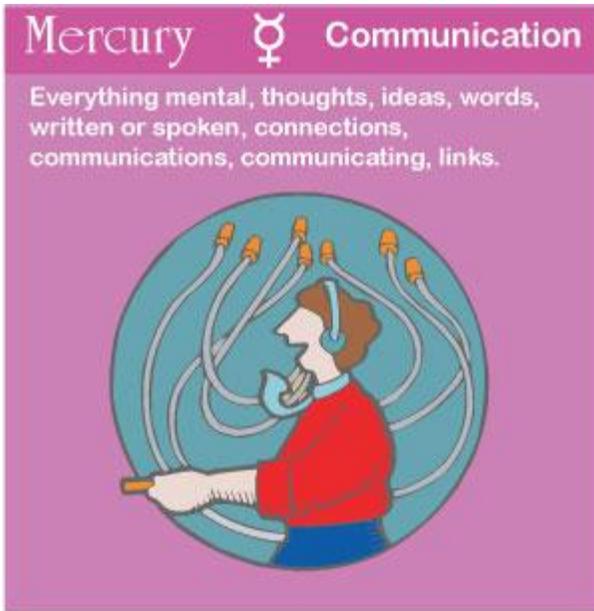
## The Lights and Planets



### **The Moon**

The Moon is whatever has nurtured us, our support system, and the entire environment out of which we came or were born of, and thus, it represents our mother, our personal past or history, our old habits, etc. The Moon is a mystery, and is said to be both our mother and our child. The Moon is our mother because it gave birth to us, and because it represents all the formative experiences out of which we have just emerged. And it also rules all memory of our experiences—it is said that we can see by the light of the Moon. The Moon is our child because we can remember our past and then easily see younger persons living, now, in the past where we once lived. This is called "looking at the Moon" –looking at all those younger souls who are unconscious or 'sub' conscious to our own level.

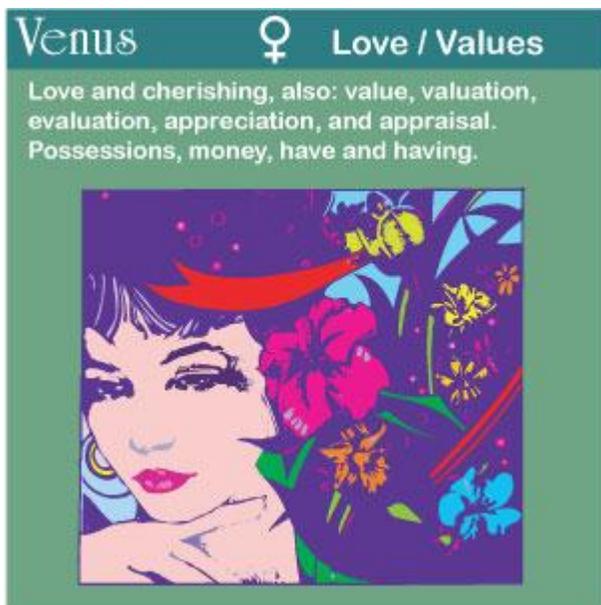
## The Lights and Planets



### **Mercury**

Mercury, called "Buddha" (Awareness) in Sanskrit, is the light in our eyes, the ever-changing consciousness within us that moves us from idea to idea. Mercury represents the Mind, therefore, and all ideas: the thoughts we have, and mental processes in general. Mercury rules not only our thoughts but also their travel, meaning—all manner of communication, whether by phone, letter, e-mail, spoken conversations—what have you. And finally, Mercury rules the wires, waves, cables, and connections communication travels through to reach us.

## The Lights and Planets



### Venus

Venus rules how we love and how we are appreciative—how we value things in our life—and therefore, rules our values and sense of values. On the high end, Venus is compassion, the deepest form of appreciation, and, on a more mundane level, it rules how we appraise, access, and value the things around us: a good dinner, a new car, and so on. How we appreciate is also how we enjoy life, so Venus marks what we enjoy, just how we like to have a good time. Venus rules our values and sense of appreciation.

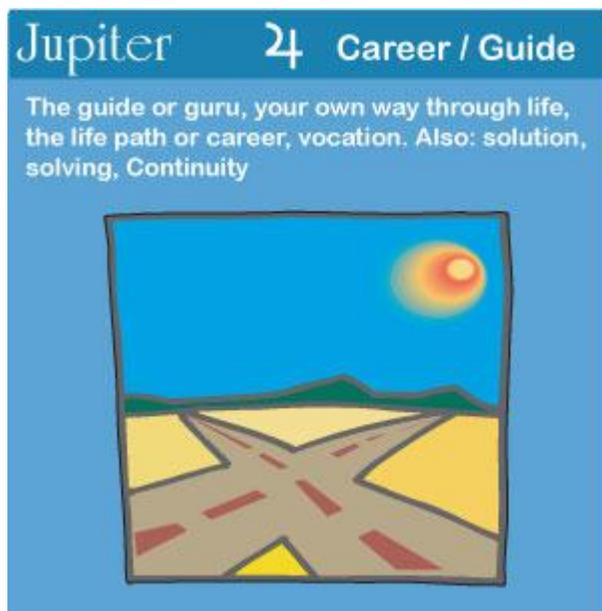
## The Lights and Planets



### **Mars**

Mars represents ambition, our inner motivation and drive, what urges us on and keeps us moving forward. Mars is the all about meaning—what things mean and what moves us—and about emotional energy and push in general. Mars carries us beyond ourselves and out into the world, driving us up against things. Mars is also outward aggression and moves us into competition and combat. Ultimately, Mars-energy is our search for meaning in our lives, and a deep urge for peace and unity. Mars is the sexual energy that ends in marriage, union, and yoga.

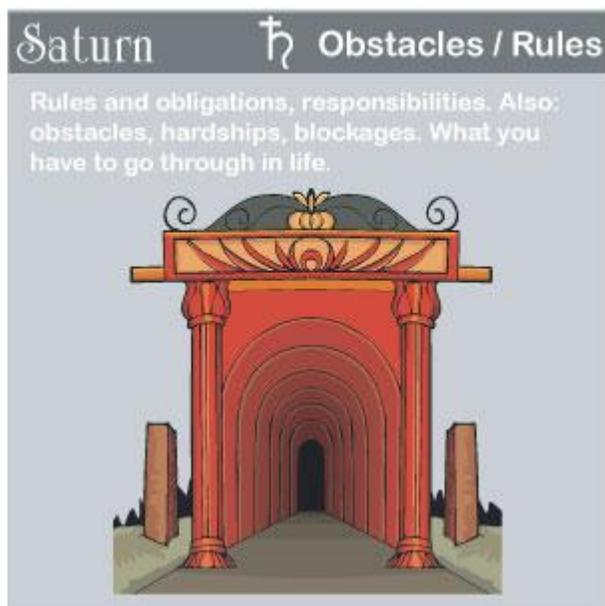
## The Lights and Planets



### **Jupiter**

Jupiter, named "Guru" in Sanskrit, is just that, our guru or guide through the thickets of life, our particular life path or vocation. Jupiter is how we succeed, the planet of success; success, here, means simple succession or continuing—how we will be able to continue. Jupiter is said to be the key to Saturn, how each of us will find our way through the limitations and laws life lays on us. It is our personal dharma path, how we will solve the problems and obstacles that life brings. Jupiter is the way we go through life, our way to go.

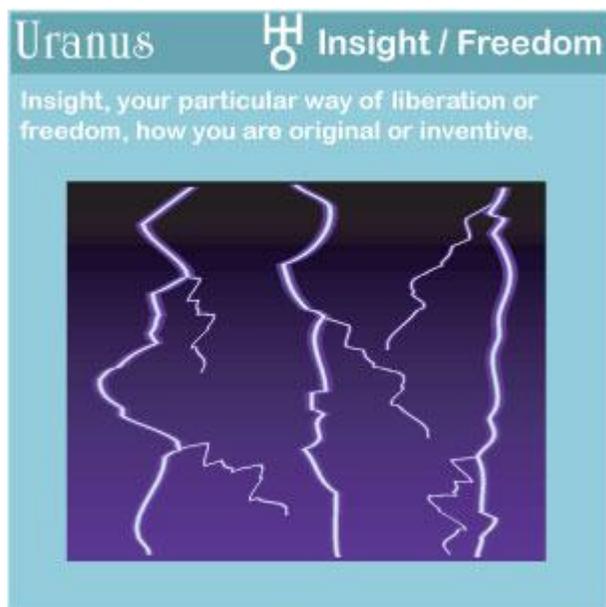
## The Lights and Planets



### **Saturn**

Saturn is about the laws and limitations of this material world we live in. Saturn indicates where we are *bound* to learn; it is the narrowness that makes our way felt—the walls that make our homes possible. Saturn, the great divider, holds us together as much as keeps us apart. In many traditions, Saturn is said to be the great teacher, the planet that keeps us from getting carried too far away in one direction or another. This planet will always seek to limit and determine any thought, word or action. Saturn, or ‘Satan’, has been called the prince of the material world.

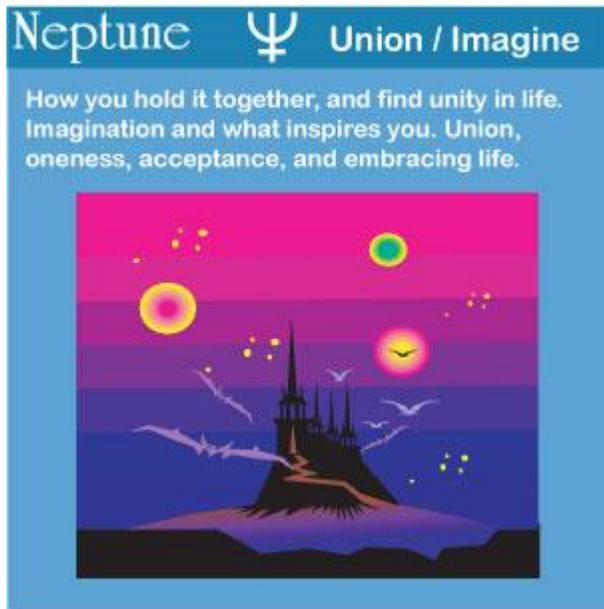
## The Lights and Planets



### **Uranus**

Uranus is how each of us gains some independence from the routine of our everyday existence, how we break out and are able to see things differently. It rules all manner of discovery, invention, and insight; in particular, it rules the finding of new uses for old things. Uranus marches to the beat of a different drummer, and therefore rules all that is unusual, eccentric, and off the beaten path. It goes against convention and the status quo, favoring difference and variety—whatever is unconventional.

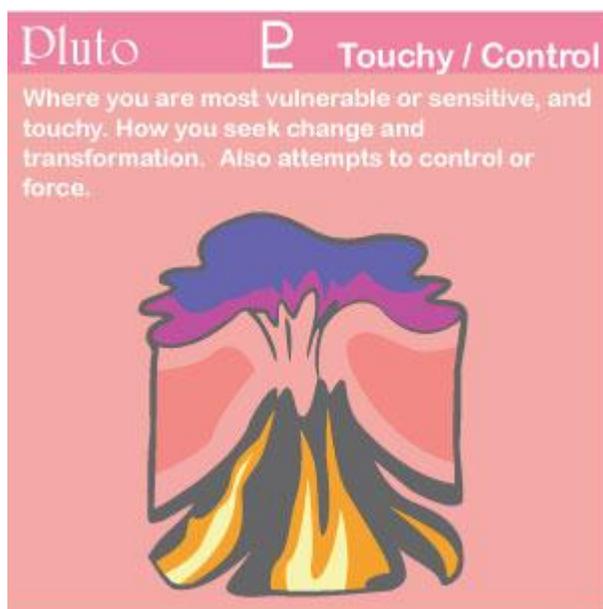
## The Lights and Planets



### Neptune

Neptune is the planet of solution, endlessly solving all differences, and finding the unity in life rather than what separates. It is said to be the higher octave of Venus, representing compassion and deep acceptance, universal love and union. "The dewdrop slips into the shining sea"—Neptune always sees the whole picture, the ideal as it *should* and *could* be rather than how it *may* be at present. It is the planet of imagination and inspiration, and thus relates to film, music, and the arts— wherever the mind can soar. It also rules all things spiritual, whether that be the spirituality found within formal religion or the spirituality found in personal dreams and beliefs—the mystic.

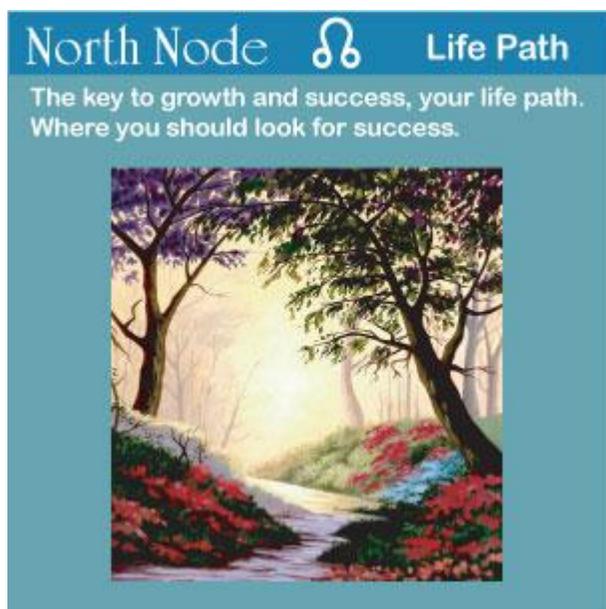
## The Lights and Planets



### **Pluto**

Pluto somehow manages to skirt past our defenses and touch us deeply to the very quick, always wherever we are most sensitive. It can humble us in an instant and bring on the hour's heartbreak, no matter how we may have tried to steel ourselves. For this reason, Pluto has been called the planet of transformation and inner change—our inner alchemist. It is through 'Pluto moments' that we identify with the greater life process itself, and, in that experience, we cannot but change—dying to whatever we have been thinking up to that moment, being forced to take another look at things. Pluto can be harsh to the extreme, and is also associated with all kinds of force, as well as with the more brutal kinds of truth.

## The Lights and Planets

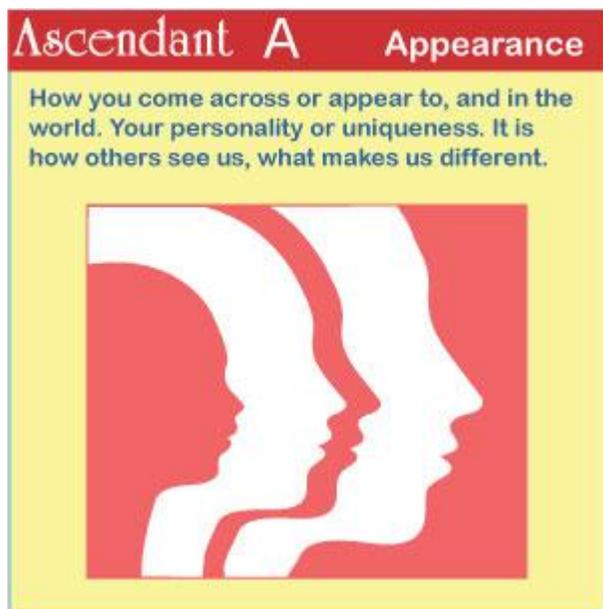


### **North Node**

The Northern Node of the Moon is one of the major indicators of one's life or career path, a point in the chart you can invoke or point toward with the confidence that you are doing what you should be doing, and that any activity you make there will bring out and/or strengthen your overall life direction or path.

The lunar nodes (north and south) mark where the plane of the orbit of the Earth/Sun intersects with the plane of the orbit of the Moon. In other words, here is the connection between the life-giving support of the Moon (for all growth) and the will and direction of the Sun (your future). Activating the North Node is said to strengthen the Sun/Moon relationship, bringing support (Moon) to help in the realization of the goal/future (Sun). This is why the North Lunar Node is sometimes called one of the "Life Path" indicators.

## The Lights and Planets



### **Ascendant**

The ascendant or rising sign is how we appear or come across to others, not only how we appear physically, but HOW we appear, the way we make an entrance or take action. It has been called the most personal point in the natal chart because it is the way we present (as in "to be present") or express ourselves—whatever is fresh-flowing in us. It is what others see first when they meet us, as well as how they remember and recognize us.

## The Lights and Planets

**Midheaven M Management**

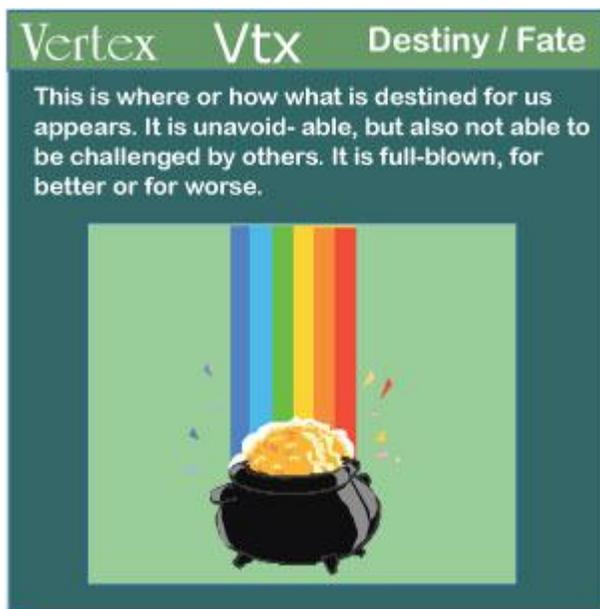
How we manage or see the world, our practical vision, and supervisory capacity. This is our vocational ability, our "can do" talents.



### **Midheaven**

The Midheaven, or MC, indicates our overall practical view and take on things, how we see the world and how we are able to take advantage of it, thus—our vocational inclinations and abilities; it is our vantage point. Because the MC represents just how we manage things, as well as the type of management style each of us has, it tells us much about our fame, fortune and general reputation.

## The Lights and Planets

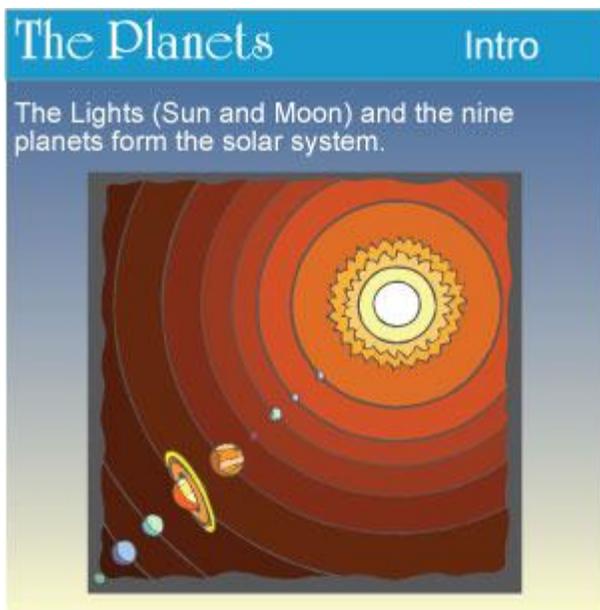


### **Vertex**

The Vertex is said to refer to our destiny or fate, that which is in store for us and cannot be altered. While this may sound a little rigid, it has the advantage of protecting us as well. It is true that we cannot alter it, but it is also true that no one can come close to challenging us in this area either. "Touch me if you dare!" might be the motto for the Vertex. This is an area of the chart where you have real gifts; gifts that neither you nor others can ignore.

The Vertex is one of the main chart angles or sensitive points. It is the point where the Prime Vertical intercepts the zodiac at the West, or right-hand side, of the chart; it is usually found in the 7th or 8th houses.

## The Lights and Planets



### ***Planet Keywords***

Here is a section with keywords and phrases for The Lights (Sun and Moon), the planets, the lunar node, and the main chart angles.

## The Lights and Planets



### **The Sun**

Self

Being, Existence

Conscious Mind

Realization (self)

Willpower

Will to Live

One's Self

Objectivity

Man, Male, Masculinity

Yang

Authorities

Father

## The Lights and Planets

Kings

Leaders, Officials,

Executives

Objectivity

Vitality

Physical Body

"Elan Vital"

Good Health

Life Force

Heart

Hero

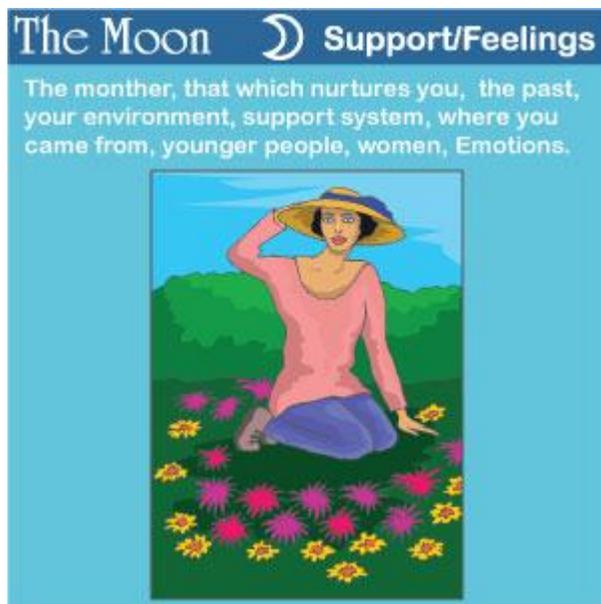
Individuality

Person, the Individual

The Individual

Achievement

## The Lights and Planets



### **The Moon**

Mother

Birth

Fertile

Maternity

Womb

Female, Femininity

Wife

Women

Yin

Receptivity

Emotions

Moodiness

## The Lights and Planets

Feelings

Psychic

Soul

Support Network

Nourishment

Nurturing

Environment THE MOON

The Past

Child

Memory

Childhood

Inner Self

Younger People

Unconscious

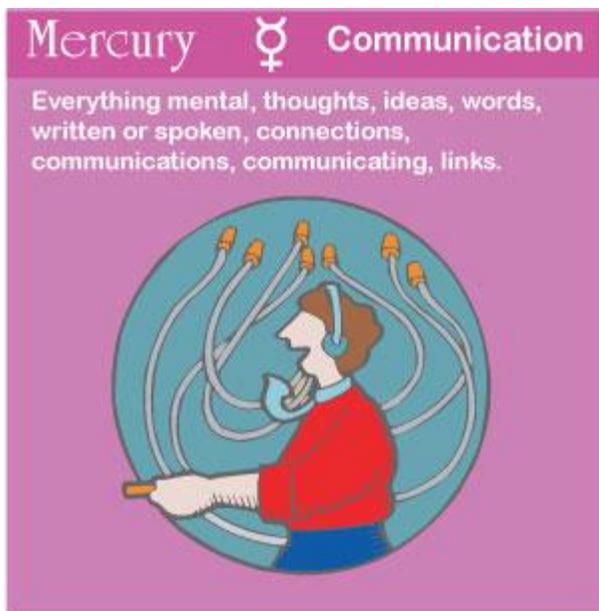
Subconscious

Subjectivity

The Public

Audience

## The Lights and Planets



### **Mercury**

Awareness, Alertness

Agility / Dexterity

Perception

Light of the Mind

Adaptability

Agility

Skillful Means

Communication

Connections / Links

Writing

Transportation

Letters

## The Lights and Planets

News

Travel

The Mind

Mental

Ideas

Intellect

Logic

Intelligence

Speech

Talk

Thinking

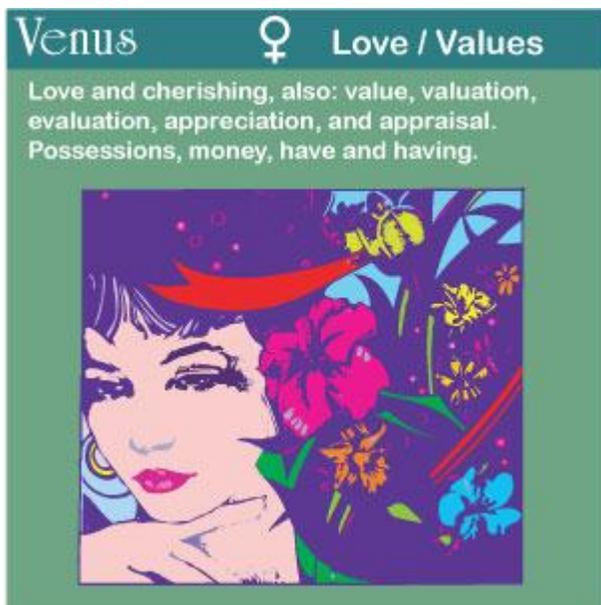
Thought

Reasoning

Youth

Adolescence

## The Lights and Planets



### **Venus**

Compassion

Cherish

Care For

Concern For

Venerate

Love

Romance

Fondness For

Women

Wife

Maidens

Mistresses

## The Lights and Planets

Young Girls

Acquiring

Venality

Money

Enjoyment Of

Pleasure Seeking

Affection

Appreciation

Evaluation

Taste

Valuation

Value

Fine Taste

Approval

Estimate

Appraisal

Admiration

Touch

Conceive

Conception

Beauty

Charm

Attraction

Elegant

Glamour

The Lights and Planets

Social Graces

Lovely

Fashion

## The Lights and Planets

**Mars** ♂ **Drive / Activity**

Action, initiative, the activity that generates space. Also: urges, ambition, and drive. Exercise and physicality. Sports.



### **Mars**

Ambition

Drive

Motivation

Urge

Effort

Endeavor

Initiative

Energy

Enthusiasm

Drive for Meaning

Men

Masculinity / Macho

## The Lights and Planets

Aggression

Anger

Assertion

Fighter

Violence

Forceful

Surgery

Inflammation

Sports

Athletes

Competition

Muscles

Courage

Daring

Challenge

Bold

Adventuring

Action

Military

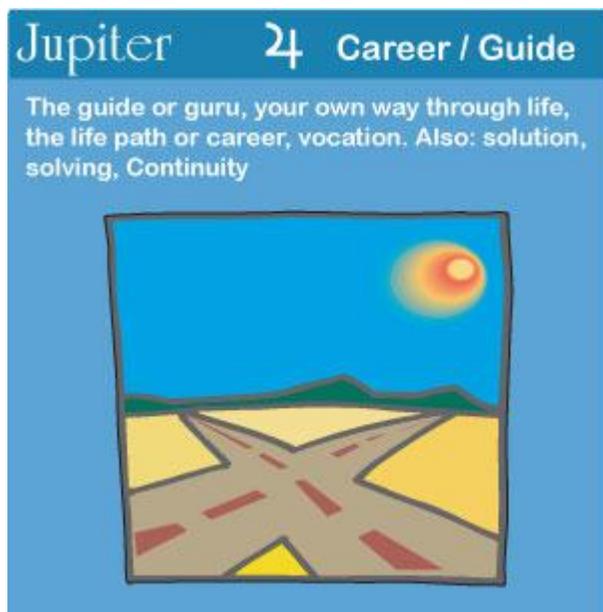
War/Combat

Soldiers

Bloodshed

Weapons

## The Lights and Planets



### **Jupiter**

Success

Career

Vocation

Life Path

Guide

Guru

Mentor

Leader

Counselor

Lawyer

Problem Solver

Succession

## The Lights and Planets

Continue

Expansion

Growth

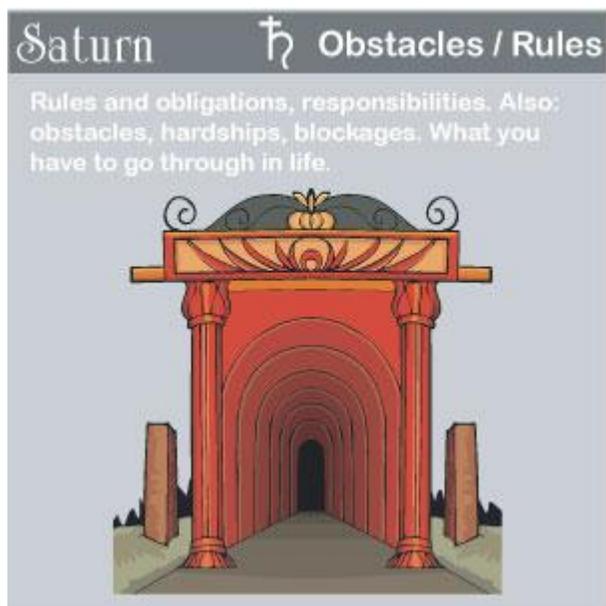
Fortune

Abundance

Wealth

Fortune

## The Lights and Planets



### **Saturn**

Limits

Boundaries

Laws

Endurance

Limitation

Austerity

Construction

Buildings

Austere

Stinginess

Frugality

Asceticism

## The Lights and Planets

Abstinence

Caution

Restriction

Patience

Conservative

Serious

Severity

Responsibility

Sense of Duty

Obligations

Discipline

Organized

Structured

Control

Law

Law Enforcement

Prisons

Authority / Boss

Government

Solitary

Isolation

Loneliness

Seriousness

Pessimism

Inhibited

## The Lights and Planets

Coldness

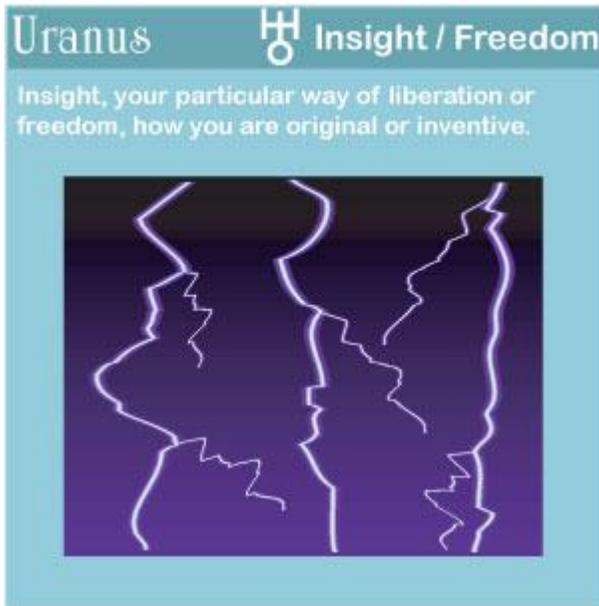
Elderly

Aging

Death

Bones

## The Lights and Planets



### **Uranus**

Discovery

Aha!

Breakthrough

Innovation

Insight

Inventions

New Idea

Original

Sudden Awareness

Genius

Science

Spontaneity

## The Lights and Planets

Suddenness

Improvisation

Lightning Insight

Independence

Break Away

Detaching From

Liberation

Novelty

Freedom

Rebel

Reformers

Revolution

Eccentricity

Unconventional

Peculiar

Unusual

Erratic

Thrill Seeker

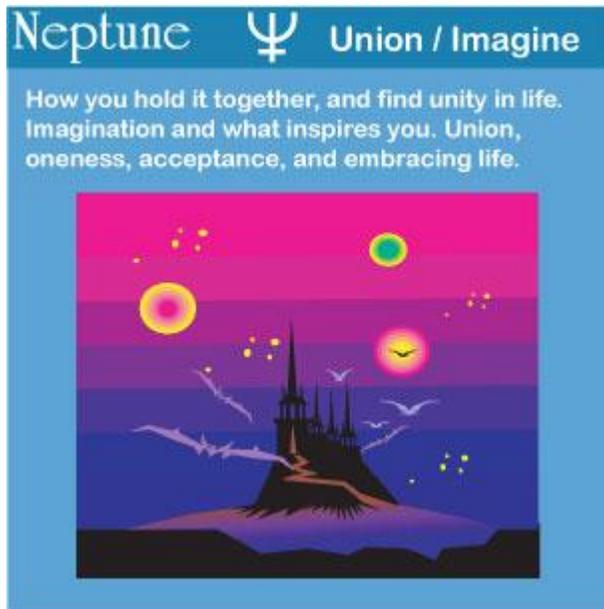
Excitability

New Use for Old Things

Eternity in a Grain of Sand

Everyday Rarity

## The Lights and Planets



### **Neptune**

All Embracing

Accepting

Atonement

Compassion

Conception

Bodhisattva

Receptivity

Mirror

The Sea

Contemplation

Divine Love

Idealism

## The Lights and Planets

Ideals

Envision

Beyond Reality

Big Picture

Non-Ego

Imagination

Illusions

Film and Movies

Music

Inspiration

Rapture

Enchantment

Trance

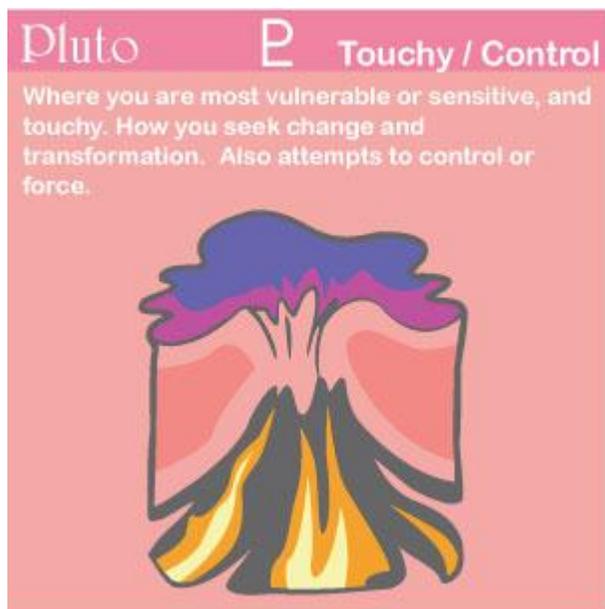
Ecstasy

Mediums / Psychics

Mysticism

Trance

## The Lights and Planets



### **Pluto**

Transformation

Conversion

Metamorphosis

Rejuvenation

Transmutation

Cleansing

Resurrection

Rebirth

Regeneration

Reincarnation

Renewal

Purgation

## The Lights and Planets

Death

Self-Transformation

Coercion

Power Politics

Power Struggle

Sexual Power

Dictatorship

Dominance

Force

Ruthless

Tyrant

Mass Influence

Vulnerability

Impermanence

Candor

Sensitivity

Depth

Subconscious

Underworld

Collective Unconscious

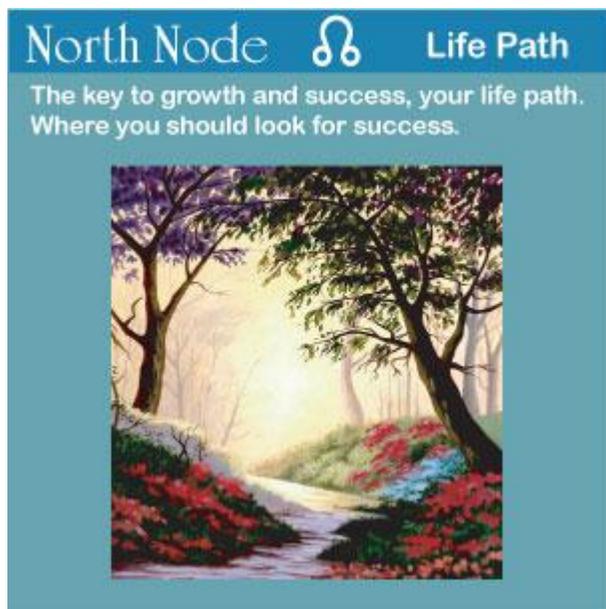
Occult

Compulsive

Obsession

Secrets

## The Lights and Planets



### **North Node**

Key to Relationships

Affiliations

Alliances

Associations

Blood-Ties

Relatives

Contacts

Career Indication

Contacts

Dharma Path

Discover Direction

Guru

## The Lights and Planets

Jupiter

Links / Connections

Opportunities

True Direction

Vocation

Destiny

Where We Need to Learn

Karmic Connection

Life Direction

## The Lights and Planets

**Ascendant A Appearance**

How you come across or appear to, and in the world. Your personality or uniqueness. It is how others see us, what makes us different.

The illustration shows three overlapping profiles of human faces in profile, facing right. The profiles are rendered in a minimalist style using solid red and white colors. The background of the illustration is a solid red color. The profiles are layered such that the one in the foreground is white with a red outline, the middle one is red with a white outline, and the one in the background is white with a red outline. This creates a sense of depth and multiple perspectives, symbolizing the concept of 'appearance' and 'how others see us'.

### **Ascendant**

Appearance

How You Come Across

Impression

Point of Arising

Atmosphere

Attitude

Personality

Personal Style

Character

## The Lights and Planets

**Midheaven M Management**

How we manage or see the world, our practical vision, and supervisory capacity. This is our vocational ability, our "can do" talents.



### **Midheaven**

Aptitude

Career

Credentials

Clairvoyance

Clear Seeing

See To Do

Direction of Life

Aims

Management

Objectives

Practical Vision

Supervision

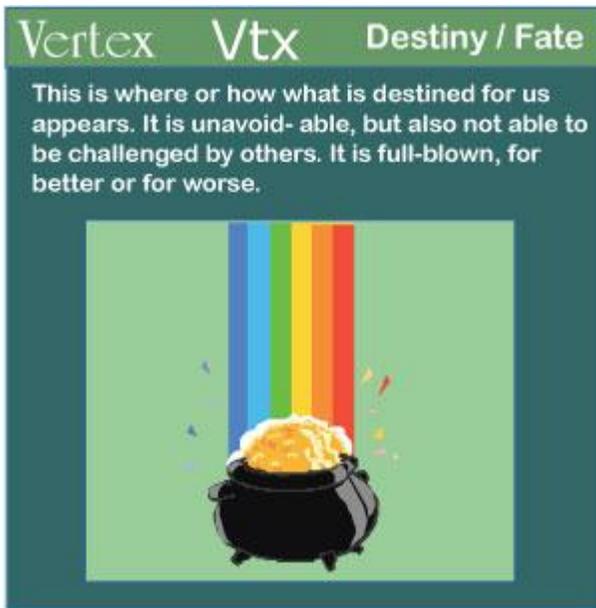
The Lights and Planets

Vision

Methods

Status Achieved through Career

## The Lights and Planets



### **Vertex**

Destiny

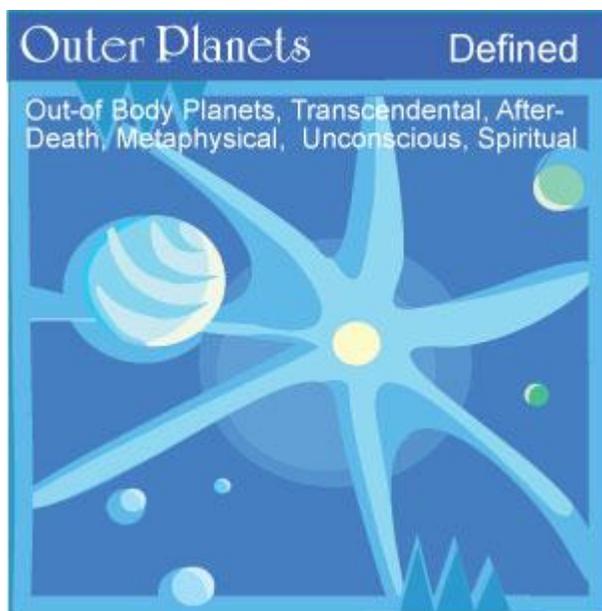
What Will Come

Destined

Future

Next Step

## The Lights and Planets



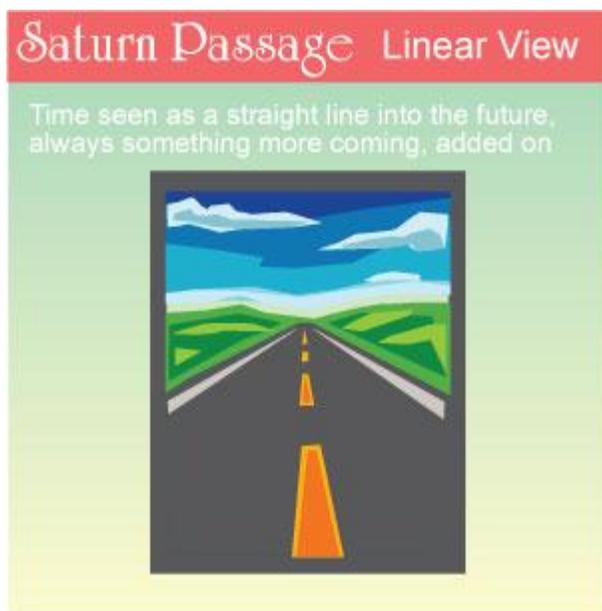
### ***Transcendental Planets***

We now look briefly at the planets existing beyond the realm of Saturn, or time. These external planets are beyond the physical or material—beyond Saturn, as Saturn=material—just as the inner planets are beyond the physical on the inside (inner toward the Sun). These outer planets are Uranus, Neptune, and Pluto. These three together have been called any of the following: Out-of Body Planets, Transcendental Planets, Metaphysical planets, After-Death Planets, Planets of the Unconscious, Spiritual Planets, Impersonal Planets, Psychic Planets, and many other names as well.

Since these planets are beyond Saturn, as mentioned above, they are transcendental, that is, they are beyond physical experience, beyond the facts of life. What then, exactly, are they?

## The Lights and Planets

Saturn, as we have learned, is the physical shell or body that encloses (and contains) life as we know it. We all live within the bounds or laws of Saturn, within our physical body. Therefore, when approaching the outer planets, don't look for anything "more" out there. All of the physical "more" that we know is held firmly (and safely) within the grip of Saturn. We could say that the outer planets communicate just that fact: that there is no "more." You have not only gone as far as you can go, but you have gone too far. Let me explain, slowly.



### The Turning Point

In our youth, as we grow up, we look forward to becoming older. When we are young, age is attractive, some kind of goal we hope to reach; to come of age, to be an adult and not a minor, is something we look ahead to. All through the 30-year cycle of Saturn, in fact, our physical body is forming. During this cycle of Saturn, age is added on, incrementally, and each day and each

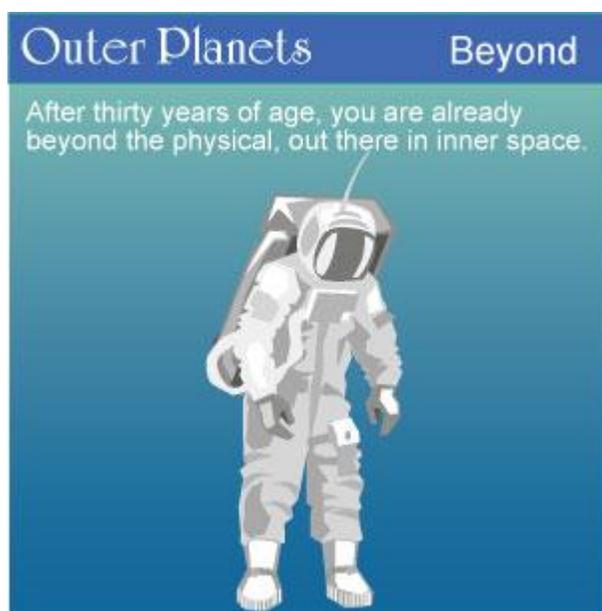
## The Lights and Planets

year gives us 'more'—more maturity, more control, more respect and so on. We became attached to the idea of always getting "more."

So it is a deep (and for most, a very quiet) shock when Saturn completes its cycle at the age of 30 years and the adding on stops. We may not know it for a while, but suddenly there is no "more" being added on. That kind of incremental growth just stops; our expectations for more, however, don't stop.

Our forward momentum, built up through all the years of pushing to get to our maturity, carries us onward, past the point of what we could agree is the prime of life, past the point of where we stop maturing in the absolute physical sense of reaching our prime. The physical process ceases, but our mental expectations do not. We are still pushing onward for more—More of what? More of whatever we have been pushing for all our lives thus far. This is the root of a seldom-discussed problem that each of us face. What do we do when there is no 'more'?

## The Lights and Planets



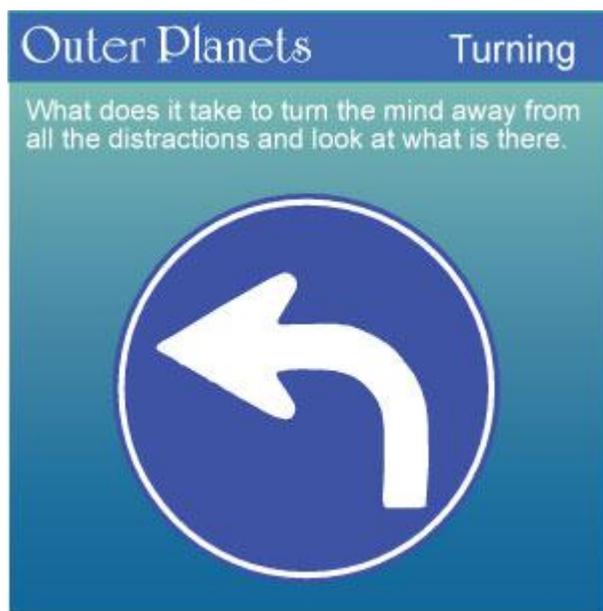
### **Esoteric Astrology**

This is not an article on esoteric astrology—and this is what we are wandering into here. It would take a book to present the picture in full, but let's take a quick tour of this concept, since this is perhaps the best way to introduce the outer planets.

The outer planets are just that, what is beyond Saturn—what is beyond the physical. When we go sailing past our Saturn return at around 30 years of age, we are heading for those planets outside of Saturn—to the transcendental. My esoteric teacher used to say, "transcend-dental," meaning, literally, "beyond the teeth" and therefore beyond the physical. The next outer planet, Uranus, does not complete its orbit until around the 84th year, so there is a huge gap before we will be forced to get its message. In fact, we will have Saturn wrapping two times around before the experience of Uranus is completed once.

## The Lights and Planets

Another way to look at this is that each of us will spend most of our adult life wandering beyond the reach of Saturn (that is: beyond the physical) and we may not even realize it. At thirty years of age we are launched beyond what we all recognize as the physical, but awareness of this fact is almost nil in modern society. Do you begin to see how obvious this concept is? The popular way of saying this, is: we are past our prime.



### Hidden in Plain Sight

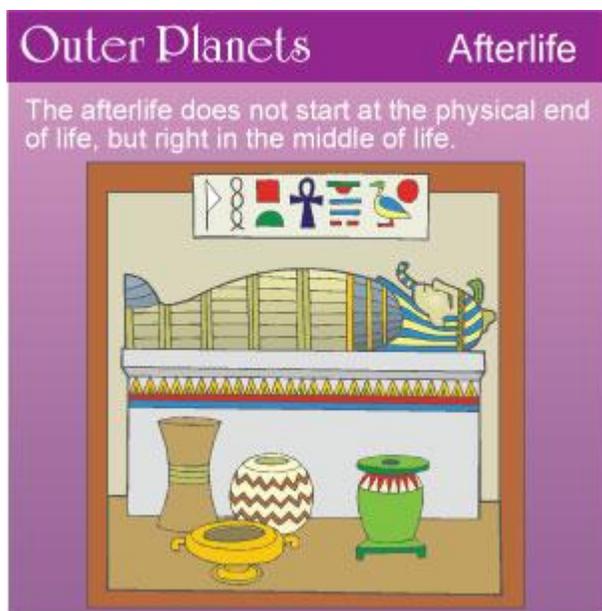
It is an occult truth that the best place to hide something is in plain sight, and most of life's greatest secrets are hidden there—right before our eyes. They are so obvious that we cannot see them and cannot grasp their import. My way of putting this is: “It goes without saying,” or “We can say it again.” For most of us, these secrets of life are so obvious that they go without saying; here, I am choosing to say them again.

## The Lights and Planets

Saturn marks what prime is, so, if we are past our Saturn return at 30 years of age, we are already there—past our prime, and, physically speaking, it is a downhill slope we are on. Sure, the trajectory of our path will sustain us for some years. We still look good and continue to mature culturally, but there is no more growing toward a perfect physical form, only this coasting for a while and then the gradual decline.

The point of all this discussion is not to be particularly morbid, but to set the ground, very clearly, for a discussion of the outer or transcendental planets. To do this, we have had to, as the Buddhists say, "turn the mind" toward the more serious side of things. I hope we have done that. If we understand that Saturn (and its cycle) represents the very limit of our physical life, then we can begin to wonder about what comes after, about what has been called "the afterlife."

## The Lights and Planets



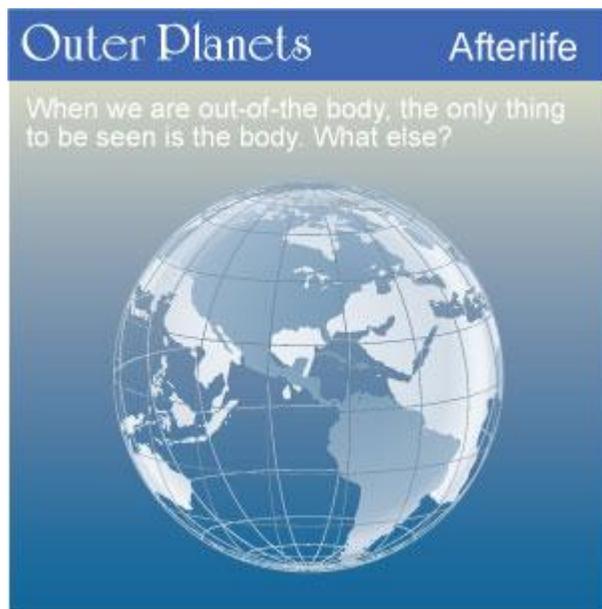
### **The Afterlife**

It has always been a source of humor to me that what the afterlife books speculate on and discuss does not seem to start at the live-long end of life, as we are told, but, rather, right smack in the middle of life, at the first Saturn return. Esoterically, we begin exploring the afterlife right here in the middle of this life, and it is ironic that what is right here in front of each of us is relegated to the realm of occult scholars and to professors like me. This knowledge is everyone's heritage; this is obvious if we will just take a good look at it—think about this, when you can. It would require a whole book to present it, but hopefully you get the idea.

So, that being said, let's turn our attention to the transcendental planets—Uranus, Neptune, and Pluto. We have established that they are outside Saturn. This is what "outer planets" means, i.e., beyond Saturn and the traditional planets. And, we have made it clear that,

## The Lights and Planets

by definition, they cannot be about anything physical, because the physical ends at Saturn.



### **Metaphysical**

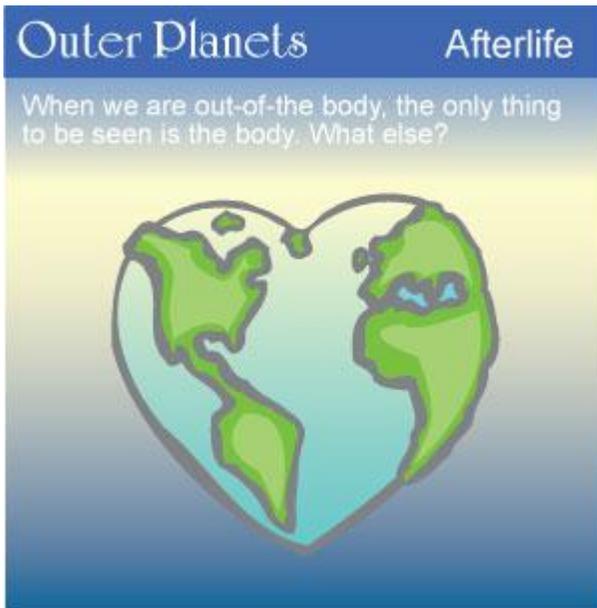
These planets, therefore, show us what is beyond the physical, what has been called the "metaphysical." My dictionary tells me that "metaphysical" means, among other things, "without material form or substance," which is my point exactly—beyond Saturn. Metaphysics is not some weirdly 'new-age' or even particularly hard to understand concept. We should all get it. So, let me get right to the point by giving you an analogy.

What is the main thing we see as the space shuttle rockets outside of earth's orbit?—Deep dark space? Nope, the main thing to be seen from outer space, at least from outside of the earth's atmosphere, is Earth. All the best photographs taken from the space shuttle are of the earth, are they not? Here you have the KEY

## The Lights and Planets

to the experience of the transcendental planets, which are beyond Saturn.

If we could send the space shuttle beyond the planet Saturn, we would see what? Mainly, we would see the blazing Sun 'shining in the firmament', to use the traditional phraseology. "The Sun Is Shining" is what this is all about. Now, let's talk about the outer planets in regards to what they can mean to us astrologically.



### **The Outer Planets**

We have made it clear that they are beyond Saturn and therefore not physical in nature. We have pointed out, by analogy, that what we are going to see and experience when we get beyond Saturn, beyond our Saturn return, is not something subtle, something that is somehow just "out there waiting for us," but rather, we will see and experience something quite striking: the Sun, the Earth...actually, all the inner planets; moreover,

## The Lights and Planets

these inner planets represent our inner life. When we complete our Saturn return at 30 years of age, we begin to discover our inner life, call it being re-born, born again—what have you. When we stop looking out and start looking in we have discovered our inner or "spiritual" life.

We did not see it before because we were, ourselves, within it (within Saturn); however, as we emerge from time's (Saturn's) grip, and start to float out beyond, we begin to see (and value) our inner life. In a very real spiritual sense we are "born again" and our spiritual life has just begun. This is, in fact, a major turning point in life.

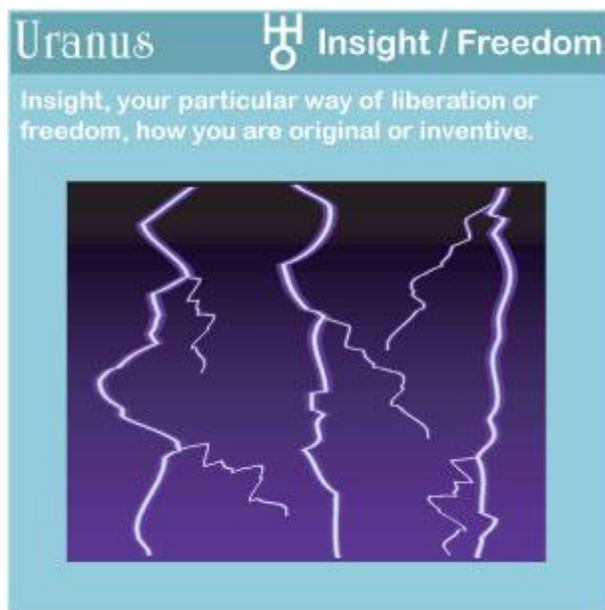
To recap: We get outside Saturn or the physical only to find Saturn and the physical—where?—within us, of course, and very much a part of our inner life. This concept is central to learning about esoteric astrology. Now, more on the outer planets:

The outer or transcendental planets, Uranus, Neptune, and Pluto, are the story of the discovery of our inner or spiritual life. Please keep in mind that the inner or spiritual life I am talking about here is not "out there" somewhere, but rather "in here." It is the process of actually discovering the inner planets, as well as all we have had and known all along. How could it be anything else?

Each of the outer planets progressively disclose more and more of our inner life to us, making it ever more clear that there is no "out there" to be added onto life, but rather, we already have and always have had, in here, as a part of our life, whatever there is of value to us and worth sharing. One traditional way to say this is that we "discover our self" and that the self we discover is, astrologically speaking, the Sun, as well as all of the

## The Lights and Planets

inner planets—including the processes that bind them together. Let's take these three outer planets, one by one, and, using the traditional keywords for them, show how all of this works.



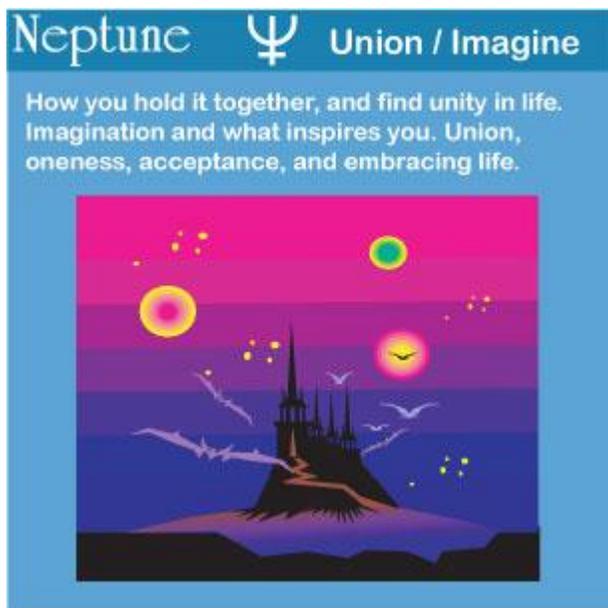
### Uranus

Uranus is the first planet beyond the Saturn cycle, and it brings the first breaking up of the saturnine grip on us, giving us flashes of insight and recognition...brief glimpses of the awareness that is to come.

Each bit and part of this break up of Saturn's grip becomes a lens through which we can peek and catch a glimpse of eternity, that eternal process of awakening that awaits each of us. Uranus is ever the planet of inventors and inventions, of lighting-fast insights and discovery, and of new ways of seeing things. Makes sense, does it not?

## The Lights and Planets

When Saturn releases its hold on us and its influence begins to break up, when we start to glimpse or see through the chinks in time's armor—to what is beyond time—that is the function of the planet Uranus and the sign of its influence; "To See Eternity in a Grain of Sand" as the poet William Blake wrote, is the work of the planet Uranus. Every grain of Saturn, every physical part and form, in time, becomes a window for us into eternity. At first, there are just sharp lightning flashes, lighting up our awareness for very brief moments, quick glimpses into another world. But these flashes, as time progresses, and as we learn to work with them, become of longer and longer duration, lighting up more and more of our inner sky, until, at long last, the great Sun dawns, and we have constant light. We get the idea. Our spiritual life begins. This constant light is the province of Neptune, which we consider next.



## The Lights and Planets

### Neptune

The experience of Neptune dawns as Uranus—much like the grand finale at a fireworks display—lights up our inner sky. With Uranus, we broke through Saturn and began to discover our inner life. With Neptune comes the dawn. It is like the Sun coming up. With Neptune we can at last get our arms around the whole idea. Our process of discovery has gone beyond counting mere glimpses and insights and moved into a cacophony of light, as we finally get the whole idea—the idea that, beyond life as we know it, we find that same life alive and well, within us. As Sir Edwin Arnold so aptly put it: "The Dewdrop Slips into the Shining Sea"; Neptune is the archetype of the "big picture," the Grand Trine of the planets.

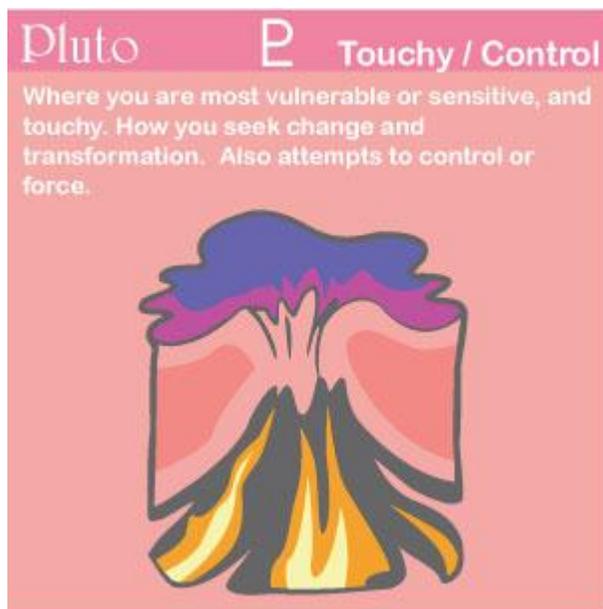
With Neptune, we reach the point where we not only realize we are now outside of time, or Saturn, and that we have (and always have had) an inner life, but also that the same hard-edged life we grew up in is now something to be cherished and cared for. Neptune embraces life, with no exceptions. It is pure compassion. Everything is valued equally. In the Buddhist hierarchy, Neptune represents the Bodhisattva, the one who vows to care for all sentient beings, until every last one reaches enlightenment.

The idea here is that what we discover in the planets beyond Saturn is not something out there beyond Saturn to "get" or "get to" but rather we encounter the bare fact that there IS nothing else out there. This is what we can call the turning point, and, as we turn, we discover that the life we left and grew up in (or grew through) is the only game in town. As the philosopher Parmenides so eloquently put it: "Being alone is." In other words, there are not two, but only one.

## The Lights and Planets

Uranus provides the insights and flashes toward this fact, and Neptune, in regard to it, illuminates our inner sky with full daylight—which leaves Pluto.

## The Lights and Planets



### Pluto

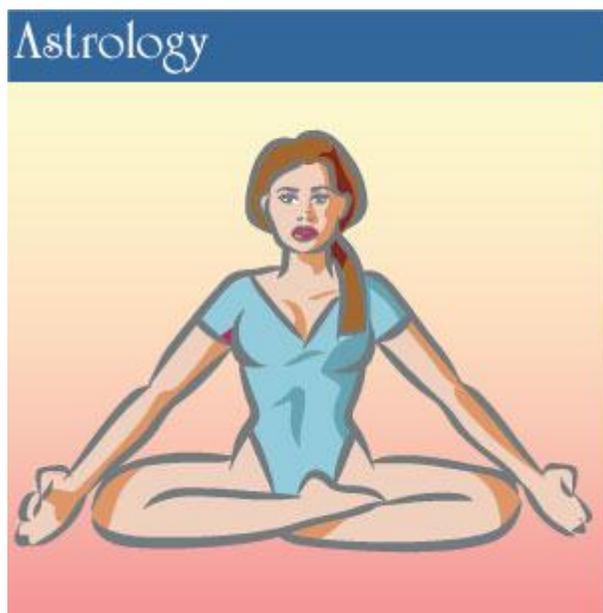
Thus far, each planet beyond Saturn brings home to us the point that looking further outside for things will never work: we must look within to find what we are looking for; speculation, therefore, about finding more and more planets beyond Pluto, whether these be large or small, should be tempered with the fact that we cannot hope to get a different message from them. They all tell us the same story and that story is: Look no farther out here. Turn around and begin to look within. This is the key. Of course, philosophers and poets have been telling us the same thing for centuries. Regardless of how many more bodies will be found out there at the edge of the solar system, their meaning will always be the same: look within.

Pluto represents that message more clearly than the insights of Uranus and the embracement of Neptune. If Uranus is breaking out and Neptune is turning back and

## The Lights and Planets

embracing all that is, then Pluto is the knowledge that this whole process will repeat itself, endlessly. It is one thing to discover our inner or spiritual life (Uranus), another to embrace it fully (Neptune) but yet another thing entirely to grasp that we will do this all yet again—that we don't go around only once, as the beer commercial would have it, but that we go around again and again.

Pluto is the planet of reincarnation; reincarnation not as an abstract idea on the pages of a book, but as a vital realization into the nature of life. Pluto is the actual experience of all life, all people, and all sentient beings, as 'us', and the realization that when we look into a young person's eyes, we are seeing ourselves.



### ***The Planets as Chakras***

There are dozens of books written about chakras, those invisible force centers within the body, and about their

## The Lights and Planets

relation to the various planets used in astrology. You have all likely seen one of the various drawings of a person seated in a meditation posture, with glowing circles (representing centers) posited in a line up and down the spine, from the top of the person's head to the ground. Each of these glowing spiritual centers (chakras) represents a certain kind of energy, and, for astrologers, each chakra has a planet associated with it, one we can key into. Most of this material on chakras has its roots in the various kinds of yoga practice found in ancient India, practices which are still in use today.

Chakras and their study have to do with spiritual awakening. Each chakra or spiritual center refers to a certain type of energy we can become aware of and tap into. In fact, as we shall see, the chakras are not just small centers along our spinal cord, but are vast areas of life. We spend most of our lives wandering in one chakra or another.

What is important for astrologers to discover is which chakra they (or a client) are in right now. Where are we? Once this is known, a great deal of very useful knowledge is forthcoming, as we shall see below.

Thus an important part of chakra study is to learn how to become aware of the chakras in our lives, and also to become aware of the order in which each chakra is opened or comes to our attention and realization. What we want to cover here is just what the chakras are and how astrology makes use of them.

## The Lights and Planets



### **Vast Areas of Life**

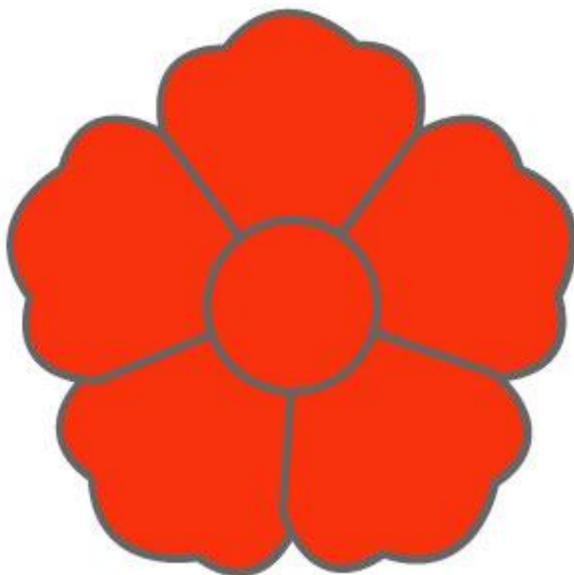
First of all, it has been said that these subtle centers, or chakras, are the stuff that very high yogis and those who meditate experience, not something you and I are likely to be very sensitive to. I have not found that this statement is not true. Second, and this is now getting into esoteric astrology, the chakras are not something to look for inside your own personal body so much as they are something to find in the world you live in—all around you. Again: chakras are vast areas of life. They are not all that subtle, and they can be experienced by anyone who is willing to look.

This entire world we live in is one great life and body, and the various chakras are external places out there in our world rather than just points located along one's personal spinal cord. In fact, if you want to study the chakras, it is far easier to do this by learning to see these vast centers as they exist in the everyday world

## The Lights and Planets

we live in than to find them only in your body. This will be our approach here.

The first step is to stop looking for the chakras inside your body and instead learn to recognize them all around you, where, in fact, they exist. This will not be very difficult, because in the external world chakras are easy to see, and not particularly subtle; however, they are not places you can travel to, such as you can travel to Chicago or L.A., but rather they are more like stages we all go through, phases each of us tend to spend time in during our lives. In fact, everything you can read about chakras, in the many books on them, you can also see and experience for yourself.



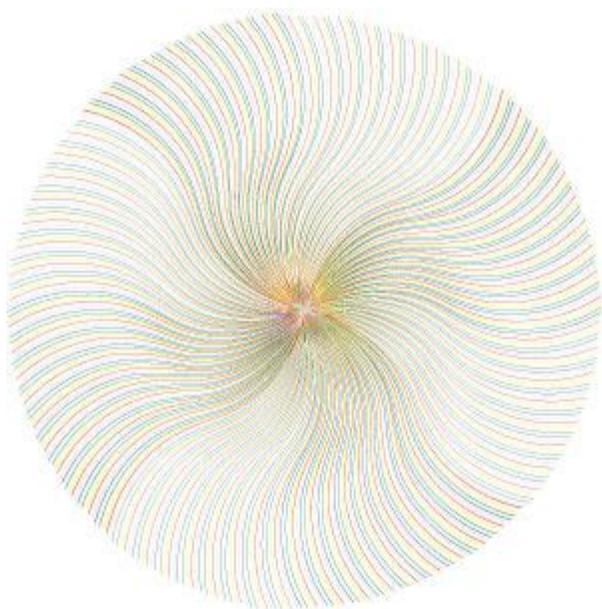
### **Opening the Chakras**

In the books and literature on the chakras, each chakra is often matched to a planet, and that planet is the astrological key to that particular chakra. There has

## The Lights and Planets

been much discussion on how the various planets fit (or don't fit) a particular chakra, as well as discussion on which particular order the chakras are opened or recognized in—how we become aware of them. You can Google this on the web and find dozens of maps and descriptions, seldom finding any two that agree on all factors.

Aside from the pairing up of the planets and the chakras, the main point of working with the chakras is to understand the order in which they are opened, that is: the order in which we become aware of them in our lives—how they unfold for us. Again, there is much disagreement on this topic as well, and different people may become aware of (or open to) the chakras in different orders.



### Summing Up

Chakras are vast centers of life energy, not located only along the line of the body's spine, but also out there in the world we live in, for all to see and experience. They are not all that subtle, and they are the rule rather than the exception—we all experience them, all the time. It is hoped that after we point out what they are, you will immediately be able to see and experience at least some of them right away. You are in them now, and always have been, so don't look for something new; look to see what it is you already have, and then see that from a new perspective. That's it.

One of the more useful things about studying the chakras is to better understand how they relate to one another, and how we move our consciousness from one chakra to another as we learn and change. How we open the chakras (the order of that opening) is the main reason we study this subject at all, and it is well worth learning about. In fact, understanding how most people become aware of chakras (the order of their opening) is essential for becoming a skilled astrological reader of charts. Those of you who already are experienced astrological readers will soon recognize what is being described here. In other words, the order of the opening, or the experiencing of the various chakras or planetary force centers, will tell you where someone is at in their life, and therefore, where they are headed next. This is essential information to have.

The vast majority of people, that is, most of us, experience the chakras or planetary centers in the same way—we find and open them in the same order—encountering one, then another, and so on. Sure, there are alternate ways to experience them, but my goal here is to just point out one way—the most usual way—and let you take it from there.



### **Esoteric Keys**

Now, let's look at the planets. The planets partake of cycles but are not cycles themselves, so what we have learned about the cycle phases of the signs, houses, and aspects won't help us much here. So, how are we to avoid a simple rote memorization of the planet attributes?

Luckily, there is an approach to these bodies that makes it easy to understand how they relate to one another, an approach that will make it easier to generate keywords.

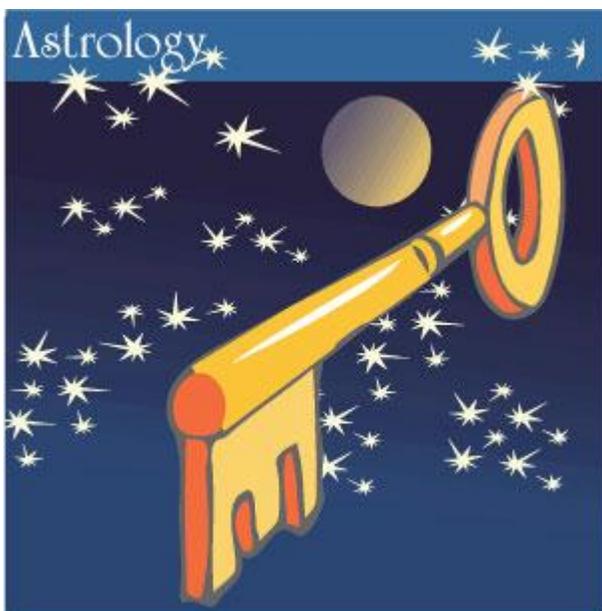
First, let's group the heavenly bodies as astrologers and astronomers have grouped them for centuries. The Sun and the Moon, technically called "The Lights," are not planets and are usually treated separately. Also, the outer, or Transcendental Planets (Uranus, Neptune, and Pluto), are most often also treated as a separate unit, so

## The Lights and Planets

we will save them until later as well. In traditional chakra study, the outer planets are not considered.

We will concentrate on the traditional set of planets used by astrologers around the world for centuries and centuries: Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn. These six bodies, plus the Sun, are the main bodies we will consider at this point.

We will study these planets in their natural order from the Sun: Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn. The secret to understanding these planets is simple:



### **The Key To The Outer Is Always The Inner**

In other words, the key to the nature of any of these planets will be to look at the planet just inside their orbit, the planet next to them closest to the sun. To make this obvious, let's use an example regarding the planet we live on, Earth, as this should be clear to any of us. The

## The Lights and Planets

planet that is just inside Earth's orbit (closer to the Sun) is Venus, the planet of love and appreciation. So, the KEY to the Earth/Sun in our charts will always be Venus. Does this ring a bell?

It should, for the poets and philosophers have, for centuries, told us that the key to our life (on Earth) is love. Love is the key. Love is all you need.

Well, Venus stands for love and Earth/Sun stands for "us," since this is where we live. If we want to better understand the Earth/Sun in our chart, we should examine the position (and aspects) of Venus. The same is true for the other planets. Here is the list.

The key to Saturn is Jupiter.

The key to Jupiter is Mars.

The key to Mars is Earth/Sun.

The key to Earth/Sun is Venus.

The key to Venus is Mercury.

The key to Mercury is the Center of the Sun.

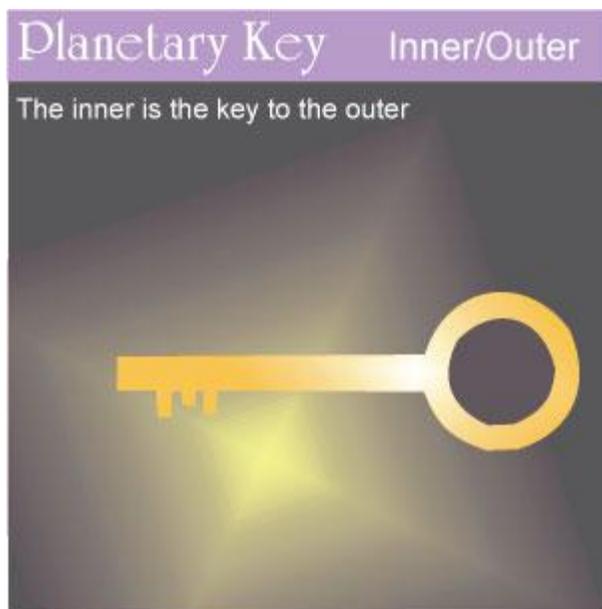


### ***Planets as Chakras***

We can read these bodies from the outside in as illustrated above: Saturn, Jupiter, Mars, Earth, Venus, Mercury, and Sun. Or, we can read them from the inside out: Sun, Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn. If we read them from the inside out, from the Sun out to Saturn, they describe the order in which we form and grow; however, if we read them from the outside in, they show very clearly the path or road most of us take to spiritual discovery or awakening. This second ordering is why chakras are so important to understand, because they point to how we will spiritually awaken.

In every case, in order to reveal, open, and use the outer, we take from within. We literally go within. Each inner planet is the entire essence and key to every planet outside its orbit.

But let's start with the first ordering, from the inside out, from the Sun out to Saturn. The natural ordering of the planets outward from the Sun to Saturn is literally a description of their function and use. In what follows, there is only one key thought necessary in order to use the planets in your own natal horoscope, and that is:



### **The Inner is the Key to the Outer**

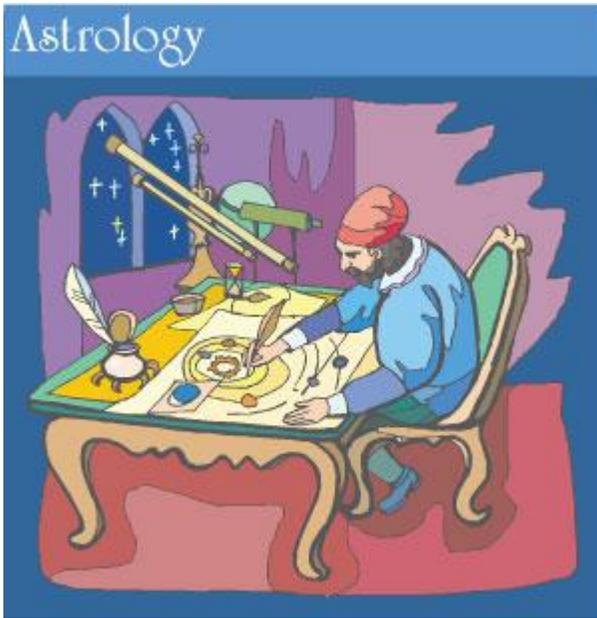
Examine the following list very carefully. It is the measure in time of exactly when in growth (during each child's personal existence) the various planets complete one whole revolution of the Sun in their orbit, and pass on, repeating themselves—going for a second round. A complete revolution of a planet seals or separates the infant from the non-manifested state out of which he or she is born, into this world of time. There are said to be seven seals, including the Sun (which is timeless), on out to Saturn, and, with each seal, the rule of Saturn or time takes a greater hold on the lifetime.

It has been pointed out by great astrologers such as Grant Lewi, that after birth each planet moves to complete its first round of orbit. When this happens, that particular planet becomes a part of our history, or experience, and falls into endless repetition of itself, going over and over the same ground of the zodiac.

## The Lights and Planets

Each planet, once it has made one complete circle or cycle, becomes a part of us, of who we are.

More important, as Grant Lewi points out, is the fact that, as each planet completes its first round, we are freed somehow, of that planet—free to begin picking up on the rhythm and nature of the next (and longer) planet cycle. In other words, when Mars completes its first orbit at around two years of age, we are free to start sensing or monitoring that of the next more outward planet, Jupiter, and so on. Mars has become a part of our experience; we cannot, at this point however, grasp the whole concept of Jupiter, because it has not yet been revealed to us in its entirety. The first round of this planet is not yet completed. You get the idea.



### **Mercury through Mars**

Let's go through the orbital periods of the planets, moving outward from the Sun, so as to begin to get an idea as to how this works. Here is the list:

**MERCURY:** Mercury returns in its orbit at about three months of age. In studies of child behavior, we find that after the third month, the child's basic awareness and vision approximates that of an adult, and he/she begins to see in color. Around this time, the child's motor responses switch from reflex to voluntary.

**VENUS:** Venus completes an orbit of the Sun at about seven and one half months. Studies show that, near this point in time, the child perceives the mother as separate from it, and also begins to become strongly attached to the mother. The child can now distinguish and vocalize both pleasure and displeasure. In other words: an

## The Lights and Planets

awareness of separation (or duality) occurs, which also fosters an appreciation of reunion.

**EARTH:** The Earth completes its orbit of the Sun in one year, and we all know that this is usually when a baby steps out into the world on his or her own two feet.

**MARS:** Mars completes its orbit of the Sun in a little less than two years, and any parent reading this is quite familiar with what has been nicknamed the "Terrible Twos"—when a child discovers emotions and struggles for independence.

**JUPITER:** Between Mars and the next planetary orbit is, relatively, the vastest change—when measured by the space between any two planets. Mars makes six revolutions before Jupiter completes one, at around twelve years of age. In between these two planets is the great asteroid belt, filled with countless particles. The six year molar occurs as Jupiter reaches his half way mark and opposes himself, but more important, at around eight to nine years of age the child passes, quite rapidly, from a rather eternal or expanded time concept to the common adult perception of time's passage.

After the twelve-year molar, and Jupiter's return, the child expands into adolescence and begins to pick up on and monitor the next and most definitive of cycles: that of Saturn. At Saturn's opposition (14-15 years) puberty has set in; moving on, time (or Saturn) continues to complete its cycle, which will be accomplished at around thirty years, after which point spiritual awakening, or the unsealing of the seals (or chakras), proceeds at an accelerated rate.

## The Lights and Planets

### Current Age and Major Aspects

Yr	Jup	Sat	Ura	Nep	Plu	Yr	Jup	Sat	Ura	Nep	Plu
01	045					21	300		090		
02	090					22	315	270			
03	120	045				23	000				
04		060				24		300			
05	180					25	045	315			
06						26	090				
07	225	090				27	120			060	
08	270					28	135		120		
09	300	120				29	180	000			
10	315		045			30					045
11	000	135				31	225		135		
12						32	270				
13	045					33	300	045			
14	090	180	060			34	315	060			
15	120					35	000				
16	135					36		090			
17	180					37	045				
18		225				38	090				
19	225	240				39	120	120			
20	270			045		40	135	135			

### Climacteric Years

The accompanying graphic charts all of the major planets aspects to their own natal horoscope positions, as they transit to complete their various cycles for a period of 99 Years. What should be clear in a careful study is the bunching of important aspects at certain points and years in any lifetime. Space prevents elaboration here, but examination on your part will show you how and when the various chakras are formed, as well as how they open or come apart. Any good dictionary will list certain crucial years under the term "Climacteric," but not as they are linked to the cycles of the planets. The most well known climacteric years are: 21, 49, and 63, but, you, as an astrologer, will recognize these following years as important also: 7, 9-10, 14, 25, 29, 41, 51, 54-55, 66, 69, and so on.

## The Lights and Planets

### Current Age and Major Aspects

Yr	Jup	Sat	Ura	Nep	Plu	Yr	Jup	Sat	Ura	Nep	Plu
41	180			090	060	61	060			135	090
42			180			62	090	045			
43	225					63	135	060	270		
44	270	180				64					
45	315					65	180				
46						66	225	090			
47	000	225				67	240				
48	045					68	270	120			
49	060	240				69	315	135			
50	090					70			300		
51	135	270				71	000				
52			225			72	045				
53	180					73	060	180	315		
54	225	300		120		74	090				
55	240	315				75	135				
56	270		240			76					
57	315					77	180	225			
58		000				78	225	240			
59	000					89	240				
60	045					80	270				

### The Point

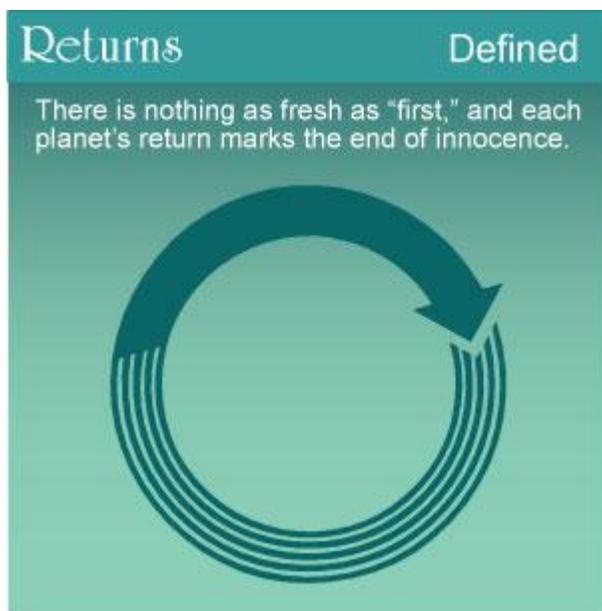
The point here is to introduce you to the planetary chakras, as they are major life-stage centers—great areas in our lives that most of us visit or discover, whether we are aware of them or not. Although pundits argue and discuss in what order the chakras are opened or found, almost everyone follows the same order, and, those who do not follow this order still follow the simple order of the planets: Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter and Saturn, but in the reverse order.

In the paragraphs above you were introduced to the orbital lengths of the major planets, that is: how long in time it takes each planet to go the full 360-degree cycle of their orbit and then to start repeating themselves, going over the same ground again. Completing a planetary circle or cycle, and starting again, is an important event. The idea is a simple one: when we experience our first round of any planet there is

## The Lights and Planets

something very fresh and new about the experience for us. It is as if what that planet represents knows no end or boundaries—as we are experiencing it for the first time.

However, once it completes that circle/cycle and begins to go over the same area in our natal place for the second and subsequent times, we sense the repetition. Something within us recognizes that we have been here before, and this particular planetary cycle falls into an endless repetition within us, becoming like a marked groove, one we go round and round on thereafter.



### **Mercury and Earth**

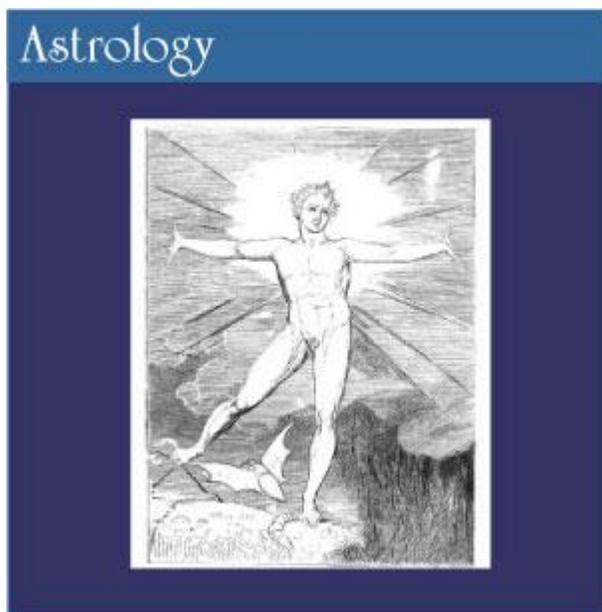
The planet Mercury takes only about three months to complete its cycle and, after even a few years, that planet's track through the zodiac is like a constant groove or hum for us. Mercury represents the mind and all mental work, and these quickly become a natural part

## The Lights and Planets

of our inner life. Remember, Mercury is an inner planet to earth, so it is sensed within or inside us, rather than in the external world—outside us.

It is similar with Venus, another inner planet that establishes its rhythm within us at an early age—at less than one year. Venus has to do with our likes and dislikes, how we care for and cherish things—with love, if you will.

Earth is where we live, so we *are* that. We start walking around at about one year. It is the planets outside the orbit of the earth, such as Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn, that we will look to and find their effect outside our skins, so to speak, finding it somewhere out there, in the external world around us. As we get to the planets beyond earth's orbit, it takes longer and longer to make a cycle, and we are caught up with the freshness of each of these cycles for many years. We will have more to say about this later on. We are measuring these cycles heliocentrically, since they are the actual orbits of the planets around the Sun. No 'body', other than the Moon, orbits the earth.



### **The Ultimate Talisman**

Let's get back to the concept of the planets as chakras.

The life process we each live, as measured by time, follows a very regular pattern of growth, sustenance, and aging. The physical is not independent from the spiritual; rather, the physical quite reflects the spirit. The physical body is our ultimate charm or talisman. It is our sign or signature of spirit, however much it may fail, at any point in time, to reflect our intentions. As the adage says, "The road to hell is paved with good intentions." The KEY idea presented in these pages is that THE INNER IS KEY TO THE OUTER. We must take from within ourselves and bring out and manifest our good intentions in this world.

The physical body, ruled by Saturn (the master of form), takes some 30 years (29.4 years) to reach maturity and fullness—this is the cycle of Saturn. By that time our

## The Lights and Planets

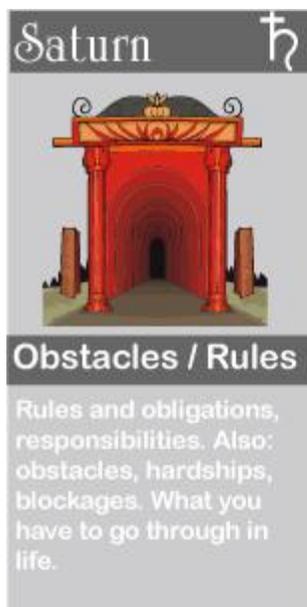
physical body has matured as much as it is going to. If we have lived well, our body will sustain itself for some period of years, and then gradually go into the slow decline of old age. We all know this.

All of the planetary cycles, from Mercury through to Jupiter, are contained within one cycle of the planet Saturn. In fact, all have gone round more than one time by the time Saturn makes its first round, so we are familiar with these other planets to some degree. We have seen how these planets measure our life and growth after birth, from Mercury out to Saturn. That is our physical growth and maturation.

What we now want to study, and we are getting to the meat of this section, is how does our spiritual unfolding take place? We have seen how the body forms around the young child, now we want to understand how we leave the body, how we awaken spiritually. It should not be surprising that it is the planet Saturn, and the Saturn chakra, that we first face when we begin to have some kind of spiritual awakening or self-discovery.

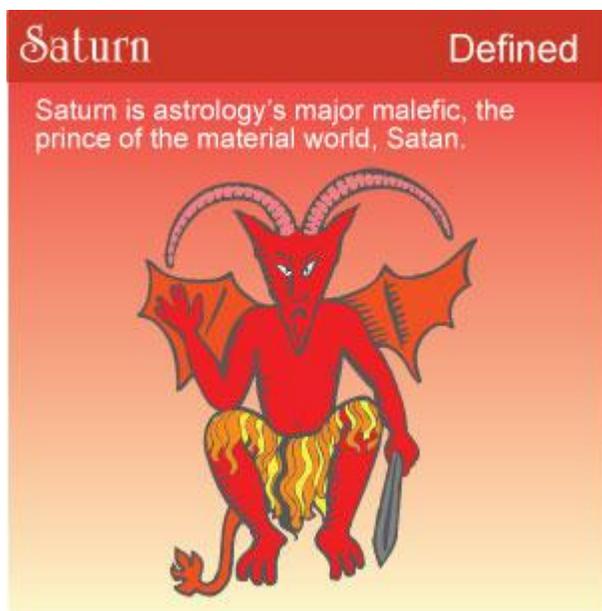
In the sections that follow, we will present this process of spiritual awakening, planet by planet, in the most usual order—the order that most people experience it—from Saturn toward the Sun.

## The Lights and Planets



### **Saturn**

In our personal horoscope, many astrologers begin within the natal Saturn, so as to see how we will be tried and tested. The key to overcoming Saturn will always be our natal Jupiter; meditation on that part of our chart, therefore, will gradually help us to succeed in rising above Saturn. Remember: the inner planet is the KEY to the planet outside its orbit, from Saturn into the Sun. I am reminded of the old saying stating that: "God helps those who help themselves;" we might add, however...who help themselves "from within." The inner is the key to the outer.



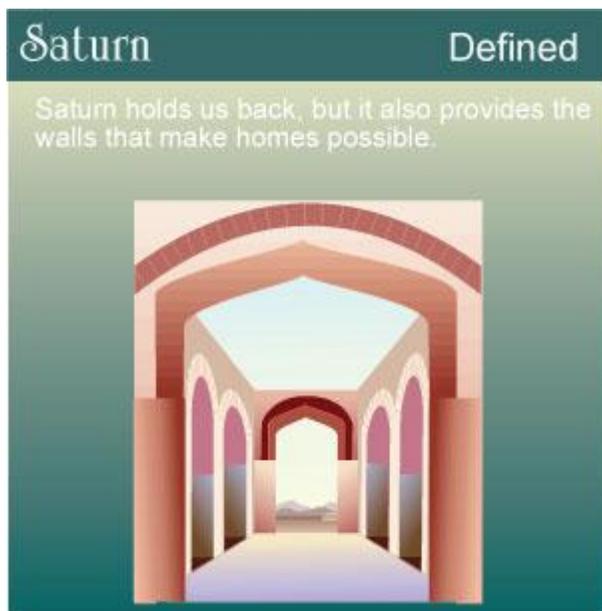
### ***Saturn: A Formal Definition***

Let's be a little poetical here and describe this very powerful planet. Saturn or 'Satan' has always been said to be the prince of the material world. Saturn is the narrowness that makes the way felt. Saturn is the raceway or spillway through which courses Jupiter and the waters of life (Mars). Jupiter is the blood coursing as well as the course—the path—itsself. Saturn is the *structure* of the course, the walls of the arteries, the resistance that allows pressure to build up to something definite—to real "feeling."

Saturn is like a wood shaper that is adjusted to produce a certain piece of molding. Any wood presented to this shaper has no alternative but to pass through and be conformed to the desired shape—the only shape possible as set by certain limits. Saturn is the limiter. All other wood is shaved away. Eternity or truth dictates the limits, and Saturn is the shaper or test of form. When we

## The Lights and Planets

talk about "getting straight" or "getting in line" or "in tune," we are talking about getting within the control that *is*. In this sense, Saturn helps to determine the shape of things to come. All laws, working together, produce form.



### **Saturn: Natural Law**

Saturn is, most simply, the system of natural laws (for instance, the law of gravity), the functioning of which determine what is possible in this material world. Saturn is the system of law holding things in place and the walls making our homes possible. Saturn is, actually, both the system of law governing the forms things take AS WELL AS the form things take. The forms things take is only the form things *are* taking (the process). Saturn represents all of the laws by which we are physically determined. Saturn is the form to which we must submit before our evolution or unfolding may take place. Saturn is the system of law against which we may ram our head until such a time as we learn, by feeling

## The Lights and Planets

our way, to walk around or even to build upon these very same laws—to COUNT on them. Saturn is, literally, where we are BOUND to learn.

Saturn is the test of a lifetime, and, equally, a lifetime of testing. We are subject to and tested by these laws until such time as we learn to use these laws on our own behalf—putting them to use as something working for us. We rise above Satan, or Saturn, by proper use and obedience to these physical laws. "Render unto Caesar that which is Caesar's."

Saturn is where one comes to grips with oneself and learns more of one's spiritual side. Saturn is the end to which we are tending, but also how we tend to get there—"Call what carriage you may your hearse"—for Saturn holds you together as much as it may appear to hold you back.



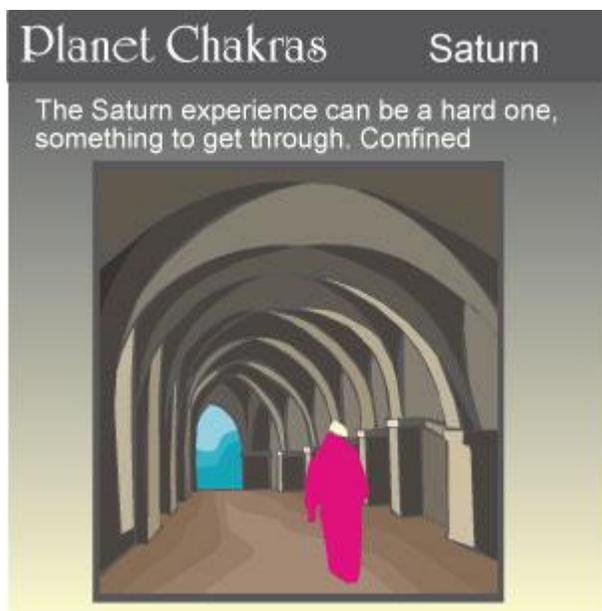
### **The Guardian at the Threshold**

Well, that was a more formal definition of Saturn. What about the experience of Saturn as a chakra? Saturn is usually the first of the chakras to be opened, not because we choose it, but rather because it stands between us and knowing ourselves, between us and any kind of spiritual awakening. This planet is the ring-pass-not—the guardian on the threshold of awareness. Until we have come to grips with our personal Saturn, we cannot really make any kind of personal progress.

How Saturn manifests in each of our lives varies; we can look to the placement of that planet in our chart for more information; however, what we are describing here involves more than can be found by looking up a planetary symbol on an astrological chart form—it is the other way round: the astrological chart form is a diagram of these planetary life energies always surrounding us.

What is important to grasp here is that Saturn is a vast area of life; at the very least, it is a phase each one of us encounters and must confront as we grow from being a young person to an adult. As a way of showing you this, let's talk for a moment about the key to Saturn, which would be Jupiter—the next planet in from Saturn. Jupiter, as we shall see, is the vocational planet, the planet that shows us our life path, our way through Saturn.

## The Lights and Planets



### **The Saturn Chakra**

Therefore, if you have a young person (or an older one), who has not come to grips with their own talents and who cannot seem to find a good vocation—a way to get through this world we all live in—then you have a person who is living (at least most of the time) in the Saturn chakra. They have yet to find the key to Saturn—a way to make a living, a path through the Saturnine world they are mired in. And, being stuck in the Saturn chakra, which a great many people are, is not fun. It is a tough go.

So, perhaps you can see why the Saturn chakra is the first one to be encountered when we reach maturity. We can sum it up as being all of the problems we come up against in life, as well as the way in which we rise up against them. Each of us must learn to come to grips with our own problems and deal with them. We each must find the key to our Saturn chakra, the way to get

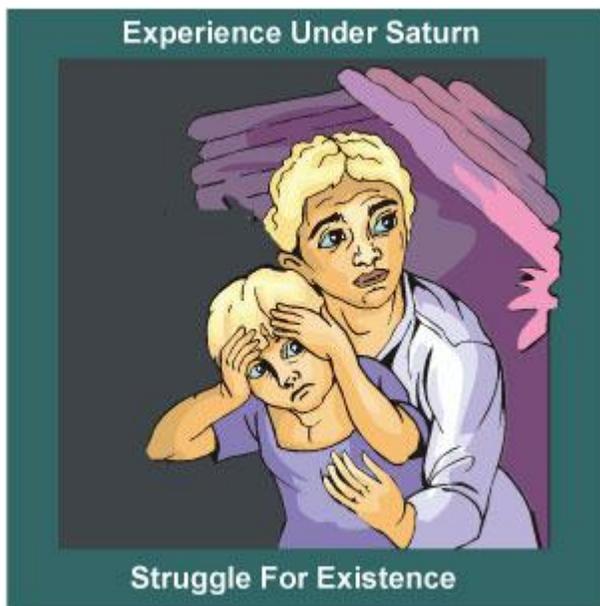
## The Lights and Planets

through Saturn, to handle it. Saturn never goes away. It is always right where it is, but we learn to work with it, to manage it. *How* we manage it depends on the planet Jupiter, and we will get to that. But before we go there, let's spend just a little more time making sure you recognize life in the Saturn chakra.

Keep in mind that, as we grow up, we become habituated to the endless round of the smaller planetary cycles in our life; meanwhile, all this time, Saturn has been laying down its tone, or experience. Let's say something about how the Saturn chakra may manifest for us.

First, there can be the obvious physical hardships that come from being unable to find a right livelihood—to make a decent living—and the congruent hardships of having to go without. Physical struggle is tough, but there are psychological effects as well.

## The Lights and Planets



### **Experience under Saturn**

The psychological experience under Saturn, or time, is to know only total fear for our life, in particular, fear in relation to what we hope to become. The external world sulks, looms ominous, and threatens disaster and accident at every street's crossing. We are wrapped in the rush of time tearing at each hour's heart. Every single thing, every outer edge and hard person, only serves to cause us to put off our life, to postpone, and sends us scurrying fast into the future, hoping, hoping, hoping, someday, somewhere, to find the chance to be ourselves. Living in this fear, we put off endlessly until tomorrow what we find just too hard to do today.

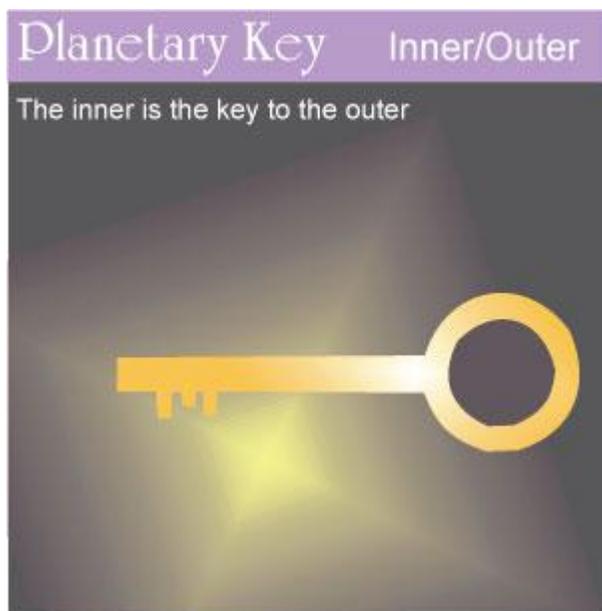
We are the "Beautiful Soul" that Hegel describes, so exactly, in his *Phenomenology of the Mind*:

"This soul lacks force to externalize itself ... the power to make itself a thing and to endure existence. And, to

## The Lights and Planets

preserve the purity of its heart, it flees from actuality and steadfastly perseveres in a state of self-willed impotence to renounce a self which is pared away to the last point of abstraction... and to give itself substantial existence or in other words: to transform its thought into being and commit itself to absolute distinction, that between thought and being."

Life under Saturn is an endless imitation, a rehearsal, boredom, and a long, long wait. The way we tell it, it asks a lot, and, in all our talk, we hear our own hollowness echoing back upon ourselves to inform us that we have not yet begun. We have not yet solved the problems. We are the prey of time and of Satan/Saturn.



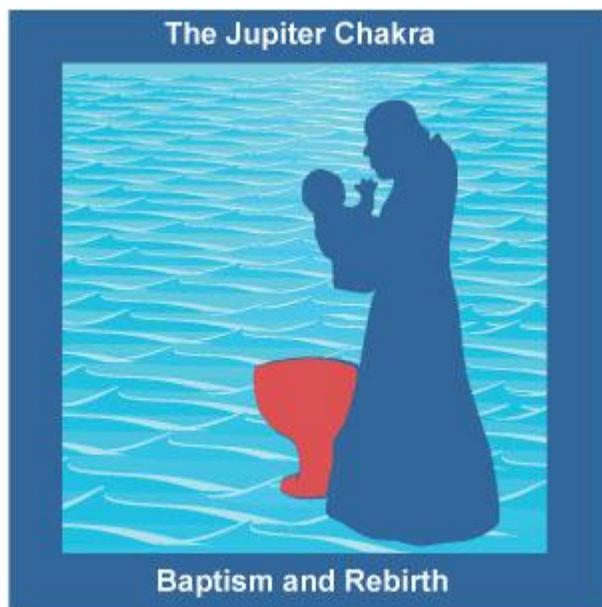
### ***Jupiter is the KEY to Your Natal Saturn***

Jupiter is the key which unseals and overcomes our Saturn. Jupiter is the heart of Saturn, grasped and turned inside out. It is the guide and the light that sees

## The Lights and Planets

us through the darkness of time—or the darkness of Saturn—the straight and narrow path by which we pass through Saturn's test. For each of us, Jupiter is our particular way of going, our religion—the truth for us. It is the way we go or continue, our luck or solution to time's test. Jupiter is the only way or doorway open to us, and the only one by which we may pass through the realm of Saturn. Jupiter is said to be expansion, because life unfolds or continues at this point. It is here that we find the extension of the present situation—the way through or the way onward. Jupiter is simple continuity—how we can continue or get through.

Jupiter is the endlessness of going through life, regardless of particular form. Jupiter is how and where things continue or happen—the Path. Jupiter is an endless round of passage, the lamp or light that will see shadows fail. Jupiter is, above all, the KEY, or reverse of Saturn. It is the recognition or realization of Saturn, for Jupiter is the way each of us must go through Life; it is the recognition through which we have to pass, the way we go through life. Jupiter is success or succession through time. Thus, it is the key to Saturn.



### **Vision of Jupiter is Baptism or Rebirth**

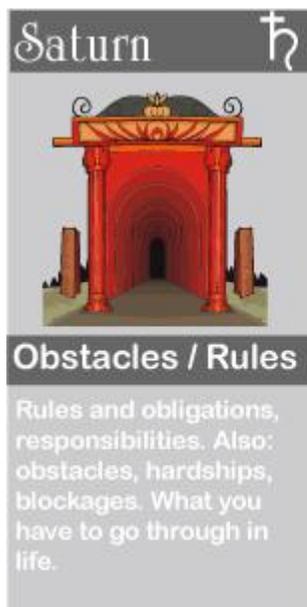
Saturn is the test of time. Through our Jupiter, we overcome Saturn and awaken within time itself. This Jupiter awakening or awareness is like the crowning in childbirth of the head of an infant. It is our first glimpse or insight. It is baptism, or complete immersion in spirit, for the first time, and the resulting knowledge of faith: the message or spiritual word. Once we begin to awaken and begin to get glimpses beyond Saturn of how we can solve our problems, we can have faith.

Faith—no longer an endless round of waiting, but now a force in itself more powerful than time, for it is through faith we end all time. We begin to awaken to our more eternal life or awareness, our true self, and, although still in the world of time (under Saturn), we now have a glimpse that, when it shall be made flesh and real for us, we will be set us free over and for all time. Once awake, we shall never again fall back to sleep in the total

## The Lights and Planets

ignorance of youth from which we came, for our eternal memory has been revived and stirred: WE CAN NEVER FORGET.

With the Jupiter chakra once open we begin to rise above Saturn and to become a warrior in the fight against our own ignorance, wielding time-mortal blows for as long as life lasts. We are now a warrior, carrying the sword of faith that cuts at time's heart—it always opens Saturn's seal, and, even now—today, is forging ahead into eternity. The lightening quick sword of the once Awakened Mind can never rest, but rides from victory to victory over time's rule. Jupiter is succession through all time. Jupiter is succession, continuity—simple continuing: Success.



### Summary

In summary, the key to Saturn is Jupiter. Each of us is born and grows up under Saturn, for Saturn provides

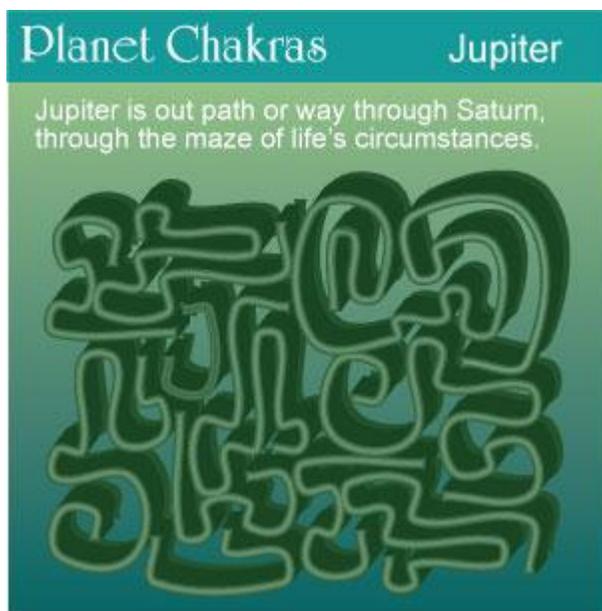
## The Lights and Planets

the laws and structure for what forms us, which are, at the very least, our body and probably a lot of our habits. This is natural. We all go through it.

However, at some point in our development, usually before the age of thirty, but certainly soon after thirty, each of us must find some way to deal with the circumstances and problems of our life. This is usually accomplished by taking a vocation—learning some way to make a living and handling the demands of life.

Jupiter is the planet of vocation. The Sanskrit word for Jupiter is "guru" or guide, and Jupiter is the guide or path each of us follows through the maze of Saturn. So, what should you understand at this point?

Hopefully, by now, you have some idea of what represents the Saturn chakra in the world around you. Each person has their own set of circumstances, but all face the same type of problems. All have the Saturn chakra to negotiate before life will go smoothly. Look around you, at your family, at your friends and relatives, perhaps at yourself. If you want to do astrological readings, you will have to learn, first of all, to recognize what chakra each client is spending most of their time in.



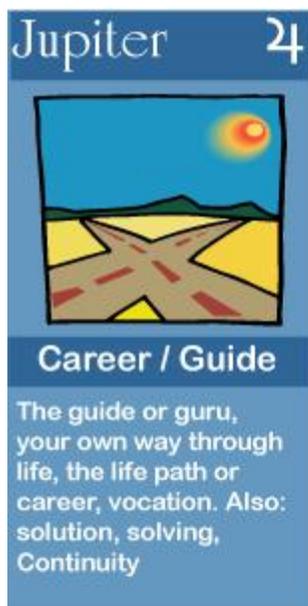
### **Vocational Struggle?**

Are they struggling to make a living? Do they never seem to have enough time to get the basic facts of life sorted out? Are they lost in a sea of problems, monetary or otherwise? Are they clueless as to what to do so as to be successful? If so, you are looking right into the Saturn chakra, and, it is a chakra that can involve a lot of suffering for the person locked in there. What can you do to be helpful?

For one, you can begin to guide them, as well as help them learn to guide themselves, into finding and invoking their own Jupiter. Forget about love and marriage, intellectual study, and all of the finer things of life. If a person is struggling simply to exist, there will be no time for anything else until their Jupiter awakening takes place, until they can subsist and sustain themselves—make a decent living.

## The Lights and Planets

You can be sure, no matter what the client may tell you otherwise, that until their Jupiter is invoked and awakened, until they can take hold of the vocational reins of their life, these other desires (love, marriage, friendship, intellectual pursuits, etc.) will never have time to come to much of anything. Sure, we all want them, but first things first. You must first have the time (Saturn), and mastering time is the province of Jupiter, Jupiter is the key to time—the way to pass through time unharmed.



### **Natal Jupiter**

Therefore, you will want to examine their natal Jupiter, using all of the standard astrological indicators (sign, house, aspects, etc.)—whatever you find that works for you.

We learn in the Tibetan Book of the Dead that reading to the recently deceased, and whispering in their ears

## The Lights and Planets

words that may be helpful, can assist them on their inner journey. The chakras are just like that. All of us are relatively asleep and lost in one chakra or another. If we understand what chakra a person spends most of their time in, we can tell them about (or read to them about) the planet that is the key to that chakra. Each of us needs to hear what it is that will solve our current problems; even if we think we want to be hearing about something else.

Sure, that new romance or new car may help you gain the resolve to deal with your life, and may help you find some way to survive in the day-to-day rat race, but this is not probable. Rather than encourage you to marry or do whatever it is that you desire at the moment, it may be more helpful to tell you something that will help you to manage what you have to manage—therefore, to introduce you to your Jupiter.

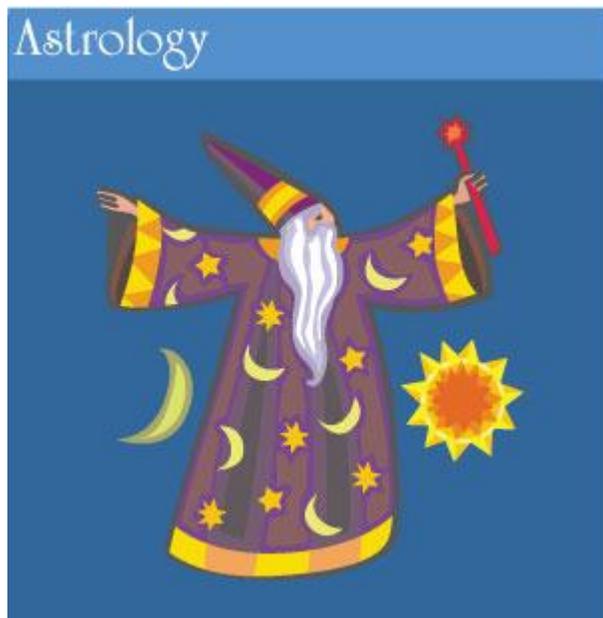
And, reading to the ignorant is a lot like reading to the deceased, because we, in ignorance, can find it hard to understand what we most need to hear—otherwise, we would have understood it a long time ago, when it was first pointed out! It is most helpful to try to present the information that will be the key to opening the next chakra, going over this again and again, until some spark of illumination occurs.

Once some basic insight has taken place, once there is a glimpse into the future of the next chakra, the rest kind of takes place automatically—we have broken through into the next chakra, or area of life, and have found the key, now it is only a matter of time until we develop that insight into something useful.

The person in the Saturn chakra has to learn how to manage time (Saturn), how to get things done so that they are not at the mercy of circumstance. Each one of

## The Lights and Planets

us must solve this problem. This is what jobs and vocations are all about. This is Jupiter.



### **New Chakra Level**

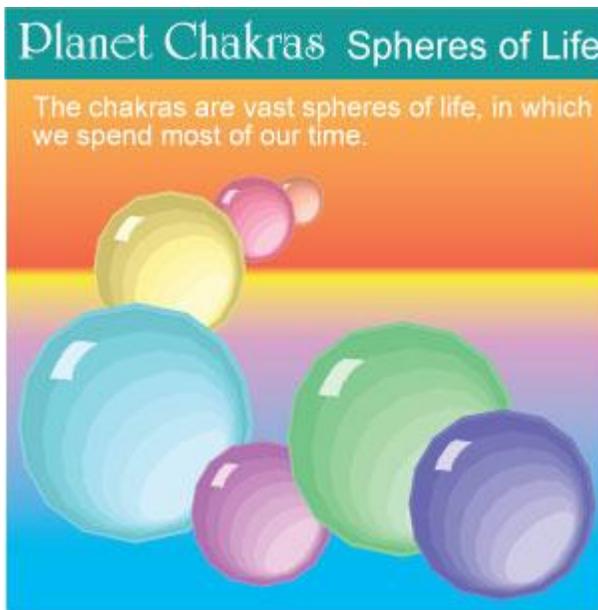
Each time we manage to break through into a new chakra, that chakra becomes the center of our life. We must make it our own, find our way around in it, and somehow master it, for it is everything we have been looking for—the answer to our current questions. It is not as if the previous chakra goes away, but rather that we have learned to manage and master that one. It is a lot like the different levels in video games. The previous levels don't vanish, but we learn how to master those levels and they no longer present a problem for us. Chakras are much the same.

Once we have mastered the Jupiter Chakra and know how to make a living, we have to keep doing that, but this becomes almost second nature. We have taken

## The Lights and Planets

care of that chakra and there is now room for other questions and needs to arise.

Each chakra leads to yet another and more inner chakra, and the mastery of an inner chakra automatically designates the mastery of every chakra that is outward from it. In other words, to master the Mars chakra, you must have mastery of the Jupiter chakra and the Saturn chakra, which are external to it. One who has mastered an inner chakra appears, in relation to where we may be, almost as a magician to us, since they have the answers to all our questions.



### **Planet Chakras**

Although each of us has all of the chakras available to us, and we have some (however fleeting) experience of all of them, it seems to be a fact that, at any one time, we spend almost all of our time in one particular chakra.

## The Lights and Planets

For example, if you don't know how to make a living (right livelihood), then you will be more or less roaming the Saturn chakra until you can somehow unlock your natal Jupiter—the next planet inside Saturn. You get the idea.

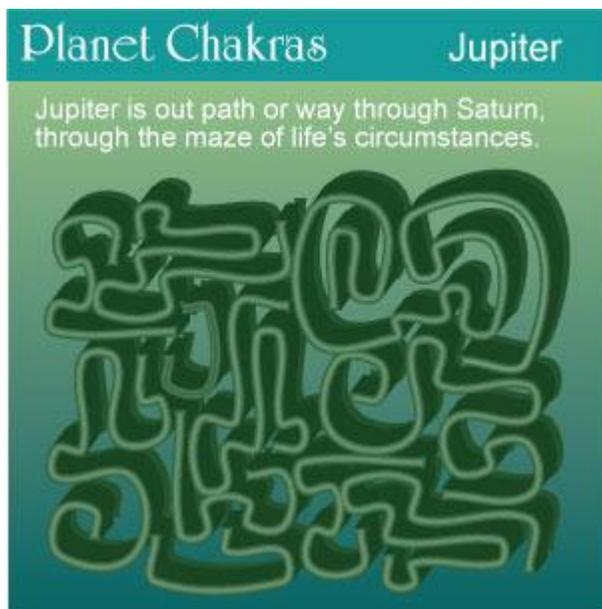
Since knowledge of these chakras is progressive, that is, we work in one until we graduate to another, it is very important that we learn how to determine which chakra a given person is in, at least for ourselves. This is not too difficult to do, and, in terms of helping others, it does not matter whether we personally have a conscious experience of a particular chakra or not, although it sure does help. Luckily, at least for the outer chakras, there are signs we can read which will help us determine which chakra is active for a person. Let's go over these signs briefly.



## The Lights and Planets

### Saturn Chakra

A great many people you will meet will be stuck in this chakra, and having a rough time of it, at that. As for keywords or phrases, they are simple. Does the person have a job, and, preferably, a vocation, that is more or less satisfying? If they have learned to make their way in life (have a vocation), then you can probably move onto the next chakra (Jupiter) and start checking out keywords there. Life in the Saturn chakra is tough, and what is wanted there, are things as basic as some way to get through life, which may boil down to a job, or at least way to make a living. If the person is just trying to keep their head above water, then the Saturn chakra may be where they are at. They need to hear about the Jupiter chakra, for that is the key, or the way through, the chakra they are in.



## The Lights and Planets

### **Jupiter Chakra**

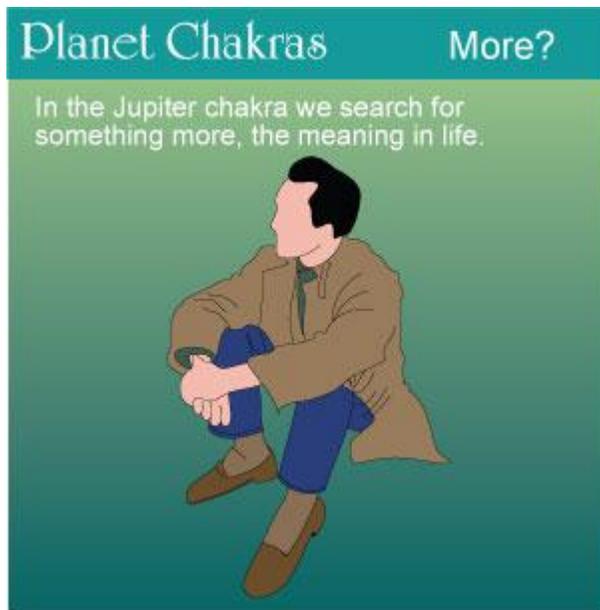
Those who live mostly in the Jupiter chakra have solved the equation of making a living and have found a way to manage (handle) Saturn and survive. So, in the Jupiter chakra, simple survival is not what is needed. They have that, and know how to manage their livelihood. With their vocation in place, they begin to look around their life for something more than just making a living. They begin to pick up on the next inner chakra, which is the planet Mars—what moves us.

Those living in the Jupiter chakra tend to be smart, skillful in manipulating life, and able to think and use their head. These mental skills are common to them, so this is not what interests them, not what they value.

Instead, what will interest those in the Jupiter chakra has more to do with meaning—what does it all mean? What is life really about? What is the purpose of life—beyond just surviving? They have learned to survive. They want more out of life. They want feel and be moved.

As pointed out, life in the Jupiter chakra is very mental, clever and pretty much devoid of feeling—devoid of meaning. Lawyers tend to spend a lot of time in the Jupiter sphere, because they are adept at handling the law (Saturn)—they are great manipulators.

What drives the Jupiter chakra person is the wish to find meaning and sense—what it all means. They search through all the books and traditions...



### **Jupiter Profile**

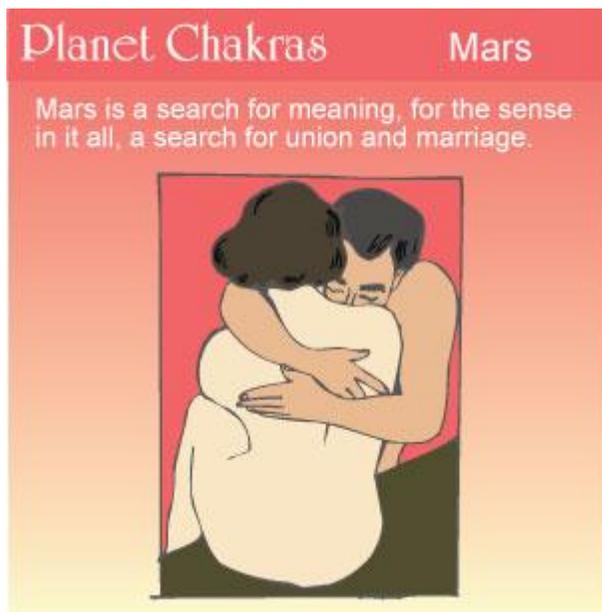
Let's profile a typical Jupiter chakra person:

They are successful, at least minimally. They know how to survive and make a living. They tend to use their heads, are thoughtful, and may possess all kinds of manipulative skills. For example, often they are great students, very learned, and can show off these skills by being witty, clever, funny, etc. You get the idea. They tend to be very good with words, great talkers. They would prefer to talk about something rather than do it.

What is missing for the Jupiter chakra person is any deep motivation or feeling. They yearn for meaning and may spend most of their free time trying to puzzle out the meaning of life—searching. Most of all, they are lonely, and either cannot find a partner or cannot maintain relationships.

## The Lights and Planets

So, one of the earmarks of this chakra is that the person is not married. Marriage is beyond them at this point, something to look toward and yearn for. So, in a nutshell, the Jupiter chakra person is successful, but either single, unmarried, or already divorced. They have not found the inner drive and motivation to push them beyond mental gymnastics into the realm of real emotional care and feelings—marriage—which is the main sign of having entered the Mars chakra.



### **Mars Chakra**

And I am talking about a successful marriage (Mars), the same way we talked about being successful at making a living (Jupiter), not just dabbling in relationships. Please keep in mind that we are speaking here about the most common path or way these various chakras are encountered and mastered, not the only way. It is not uncommon, as we all know, to find some folks more-or-less happily married, but unable to get

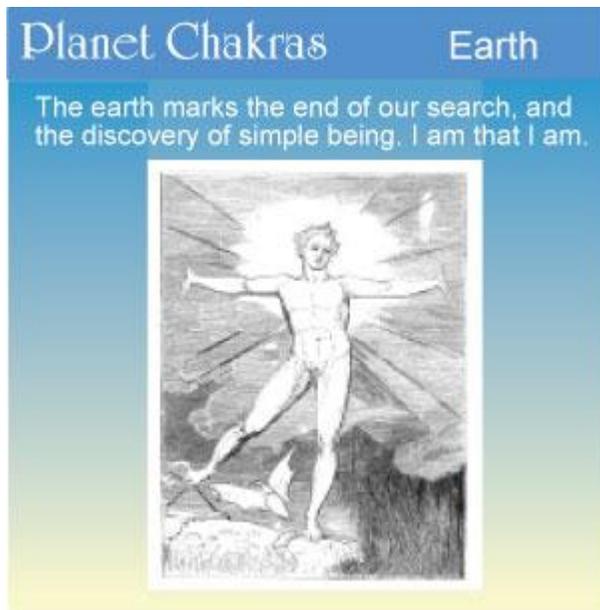
## The Lights and Planets

their career in gear. They have it just backward to the usual way of things, which we all know from literature is: the young man first establishes a career, and then looks for a wife. It can happen vice versa, but this is not the recommended route. This is why, in the literature of chakras, there are all kinds of discussion as to the way the chakras are opened. But most of us open them in the normal order, from Saturn into the Sun, one by one.

As pointed out, those in the Jupiter chakra yearn for a partner, or, if it is their wish not to marry at all then they at least wish to bring an end to yearning, by being married to their work, or whatever it is they are moved to do in life. Mars is what moves us deeply, what drives us to search for unity, union, or yoga; and the most common form of union (or yoga) is marriage. When we have a successful marriage we have mastered the Mars chakra, not the easiest thing to do these days. We should point out here, also, that each inner chakra is progressively harder to accomplish. There are fewer adepts on the inner chakras than there are on the outer ones.

Mars is all about following our inner feeling and meaning to its logical conclusion, which is experience itself—taking the plunge. Those active and successful in the Mars chakra have harnessed meaning, and have ‘made’ their marriage, be it to a partner or to their work in the world. They know what life means. So, what do those in the Mars chakra go after? What interests them?

## The Lights and Planets



### Earth or Heart Chakra

The next planet inside the Mars orbit is Earth, as all of us know. If Mars has to do with feelings and emotions—with what drives us—then Earth represents the very essence of meaning, the essence of what it all means. If Mars energy is endlessly referring or driving us onward, then the Earth chakra is at the very heart of meaning, and is the end of referral; Earth is, itself, just what it means. Here we are getting very subtle indeed. Also, this will be true not only for the Earth chakra, but for all the chakras inside of Earth as well.

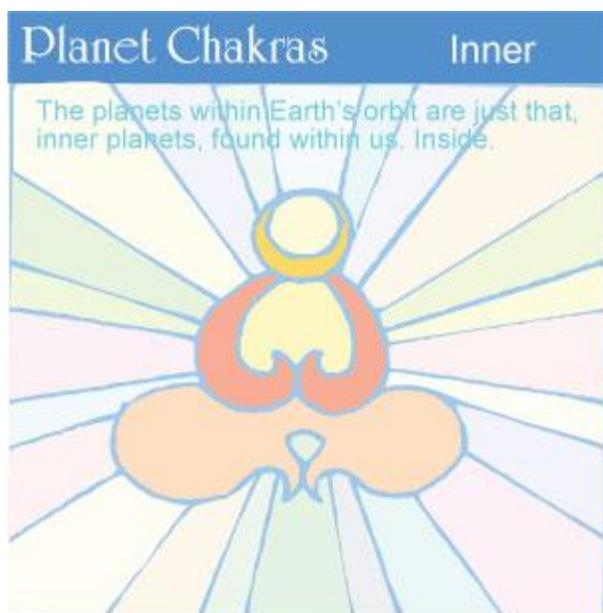
The Earth chakra is the heart center, what has been called the Christ center itself, the "I AM THAT I AM," and for no other reason. We are done with reasoning (Jupiter); we are done with meaning (Mars). We become our own meaning—this is the point of life here on Earth; or, as the philosopher Hegel wrote: "We go behind the curtain of the Self, to see what is there, but mainly for

## The Lights and Planets

there to be something to be seen." In the Earth chakra, we become the answer, ourselves, the end of our own questioning, and the end of any questions: 'quest-I-on'. It is all right there in the words, "earth" and "heart." These two words have the very same letters: earth, and, heart.

The earth stands balanced between the outer planets: Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, etc., and those inside the earth, Venus and Mercury. These inner planets are just that: within or inside us. They represent our inner life. It has been written in the esoteric literature that we cannot see with our physical eyes beyond the Earth chakra due to the blinding light when looking toward the Sun. The Earth chakra is, so it is written, where the crucifixion takes place for each of us, where we cease to search, and where we, ourselves, become the answer to life's question. We become our own authority. No more references, no other meaning than this: I am that I am.

## The Lights and Planets



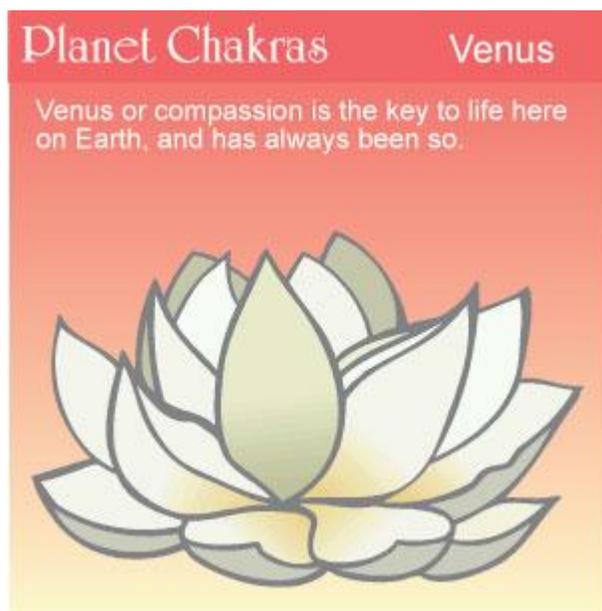
### The Inner Planets

Those individuals who reach and master the Earth chakra become mentors and teachers for the rest of us. You would think that each of us live in the Earth chakra, but this is not the case. While most of us learn to master the Saturn chakra (to make a living) by invoking our Jupiter, and many more master the Jupiter chakra and prove a successful marriage (Mars), fewer are there that master the Earth chakra and become miniature Sun/Earths, shining in the sky for all to see and be guided by.

Even fewer people master the inner chakras, Venus and Mercury, and this writer can only describe, briefly, what these chakras are, having had no real experience there; moreover, what description I can offer will be very high-toned, at that. We are talking about something beyond our experience, something we might find in saints and

## The Lights and Planets

holy persons, which I am not; so, please bear with me. What follows is what I understand the literature to say:



### **Venus, the Key to the Earth Chakra 6**

The key to the Earth Chakra is Venus, the next planet inside earth's orbit. And this should not come as any surprise. Our poets, mystics and philosophers have been telling us for centuries, in every way they can, that the key to life on Earth is love and caring—and this is the province of Venus, as we all know from Valentine's Day. It is all right there in front of us.

Venus is the inner essence of the Heart, and thus the Key to Earth. In the esoteric literature, Venus stands behind the veiled Sun of the Earth—is of the Heart Center—and there is no material here. Venus is a rendering or loving of all that is—irrespective of personalities. It is beyond the personal. The idea to understand here is that Venus is beyond the material

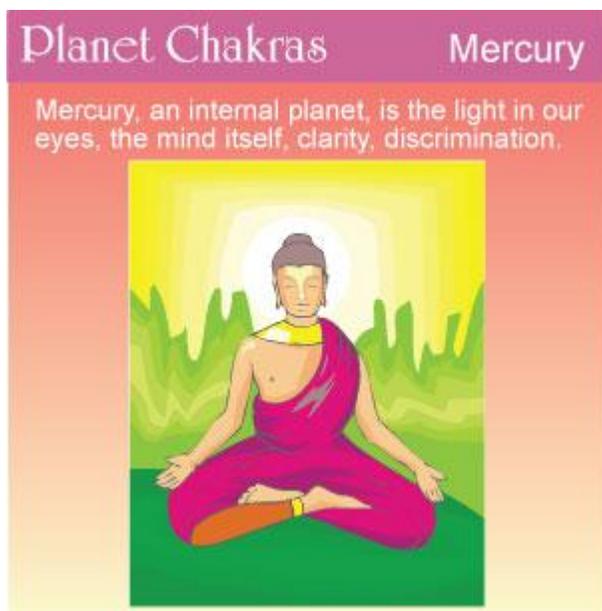
## The Lights and Planets

world, which ends with Earth. There is no way to grasp through our material senses what Venus represents. We can only experience it as we come to know our inner self—as we, ourselves, find our inner sense of compassion and love.

Venus is all the love there is, is the mother of love, and— the Immaculate Conception, for it endlessly conceives in love all that is. This great mother or spiritual force has not ever, does not now, and never will *matter* in this world, for it is itself beyond the reach of matter. It is the support or womb of all matter, the matrix. It is the uncreated or unborn cornucopia out of which all life endlessly pours, itself forever immaculately conceiving all life. It is total appreciation or Love.

This planet is the key to our earth-life and to our natal horoscope. It is the essence, or divinity itself, from Earth's viewpoint. In the Christian tradition, this chakra alone is the key and the mother of Christ, forever giving birth to the Christ within us. It is for divine love, that we pray and worship, for this love is the key to our life. Venus is divine love and compassion.

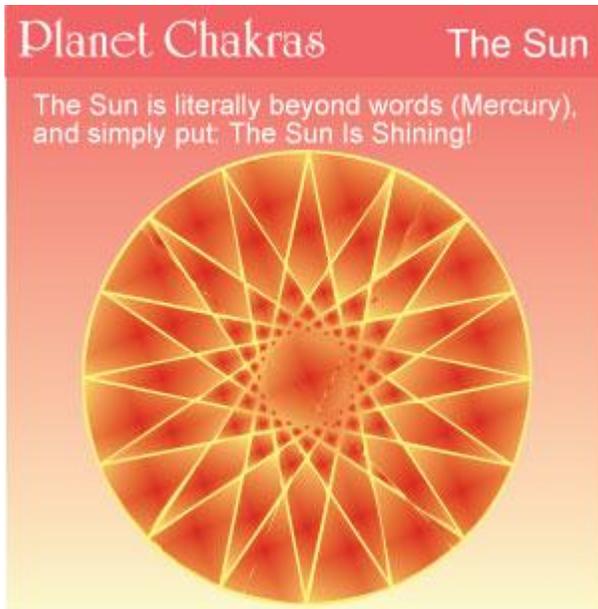
## The Lights and Planets



### **Mercury - The Light of Love**

Very few words here, for this is where words come from. Mercury, the key to Venus, is itself beyond even love. Mercury (called Buddha in Sanskrit) is the very Buddha—pure awareness itself. Mercury is the light of love, the pure light of eternal truth, the eternal corona, and the radiance of the Sun Center itself. Mercury is the Voice and Direct Word of the Father sent forth—God's messenger, what we call the light of consciousness and awareness itself. Pure awareness. Words fail here.

## The Lights and Planets



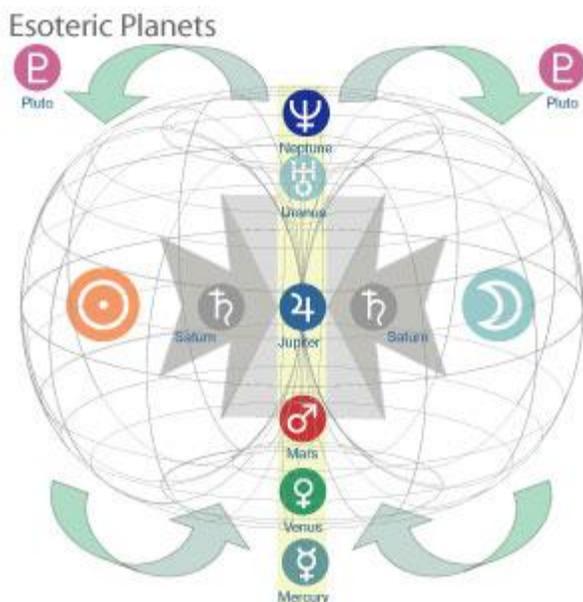
### **The Sun Center Itself**

We could say that the Sun is the key to Mercury, since it is inside Mercury, but that would not be correct. The Sun is the KEY not only to Mercury, but to all of the planets, and to all creation. It is the center itself, and only 'nothing' can be said here. "It was in the beginning, is now, and ever shall be." And here we do not simply mean the Sun as we find it in our horoscope, for that is the representative of the Earth/Sun/Moon relationship, what we mean here is the Sun as it exists in itself (timeless)—itself the eternal messenger of all time. The sun represents the whole process of life, from alpha to omega. If I had to sum it up, I would have to say:

"THE SUN IS SHINING"

That's it!

## The Lights and Planets



### ***Esoteric Planets Diagram***

The literature on esoteric astrology is filled with crazy diagrams, so I might just as well add a few of my own. This diagram does not follow strict astronomy or astrology, but rather is intended to convey some idea as to how the planetary energies work in astrology. If it looks like nonsense to you, feel free to ignore it.

#### **What It Is**

This is what we could call the planetary sphere of life, involving a sphere-like object (mathematically called a torus) with a center channel running from the bottom up to the top. The arrows indicate that the energy flow goes from bottom to top, and on around again—endlessly.

Running up the center channel, much like images we might see of the chakras (but not in the usual order), are the planets—from Mercury through Pluto. The Lights, being the Sun and the Moon, sit on the left and right

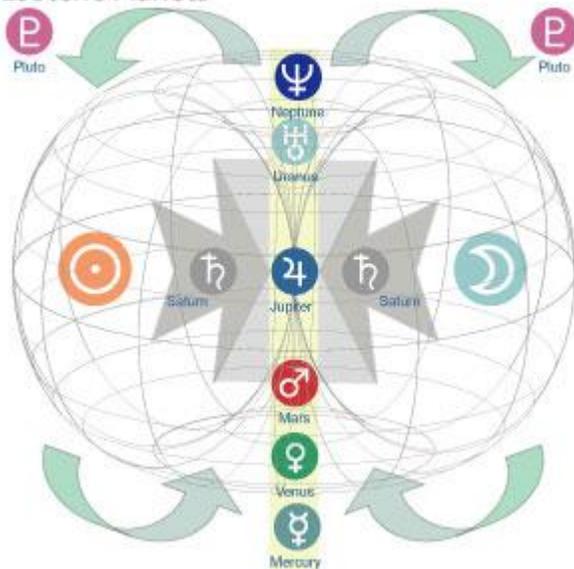
## The Lights and Planets

sides of the diagram. They are not a part of the channel, but together they represent the whole process of life.

This diagram represents, in two dimensions, a dynamic process. It illustrates the endless life process that is represented by the symbol of the Sun in its shining: The Sun is Shining. Each planet represents a particular part of this dynamic process, and even a brief study of the diagram should help to make this clear.

Let's start with Saturn.

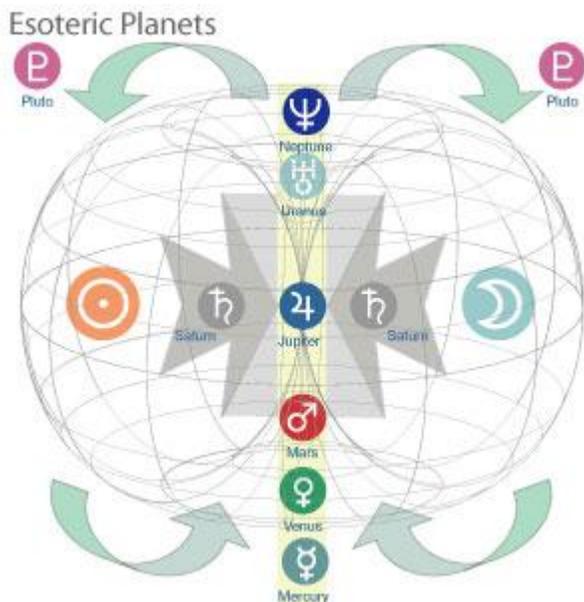
### Esoteric Planets



### Saturn

Saturn, the great master of form, provides the walls of the central channel, the resistance that makes it possible to feel anything; however, Saturn also represents any obstacles that may confront us. Saturn defines the physical course we all must pass through in our lives, but not the nature of the course itself—our path. That is Jupiter.

## The Lights and Planets



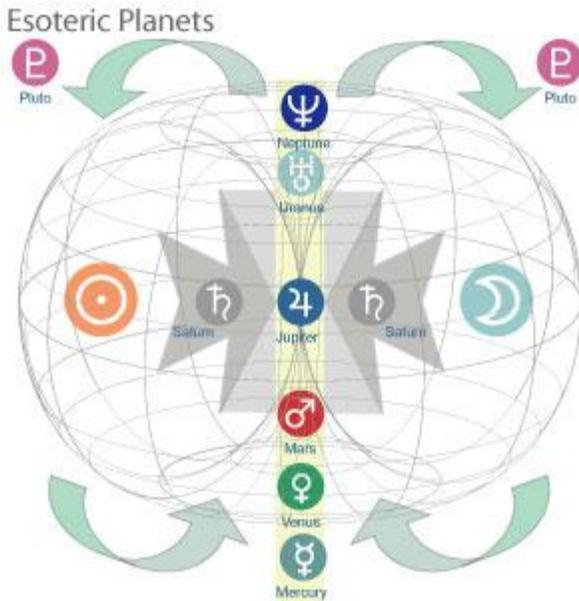
### Jupiter

Jupiter is our guide and the path through the channel, the actual course itself, the way through the walls of time (Saturn), a path we must travel. Each of us has a different path, and Jupiter is the way we can go. But getting through that path depends on what drives us, and that is Mars.

### Mars

Mars is the energy or push that drives this whole process, what urges us forward and propels us through the channel and its course. What drives each of us onward can differ, depending on what we care about and love, and that is Venus.

## The Lights and Planets



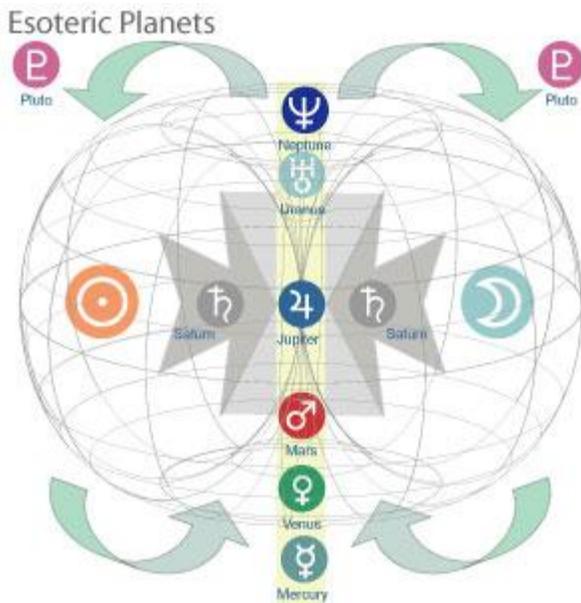
### Earth

We *are* Earth, and Earth stands between Mars and Venus.

### Venus

Venus stands at the mouth of the channel and has to do with what we care about, what we appreciate, and all that we can acquire—what we manage to draw around us. Venus acquires or gathers everything together, ready to pass into the channel. What we care about depends on our vision, what we can see and the ideas we have, and that is Mercury.

## The Lights and Planets



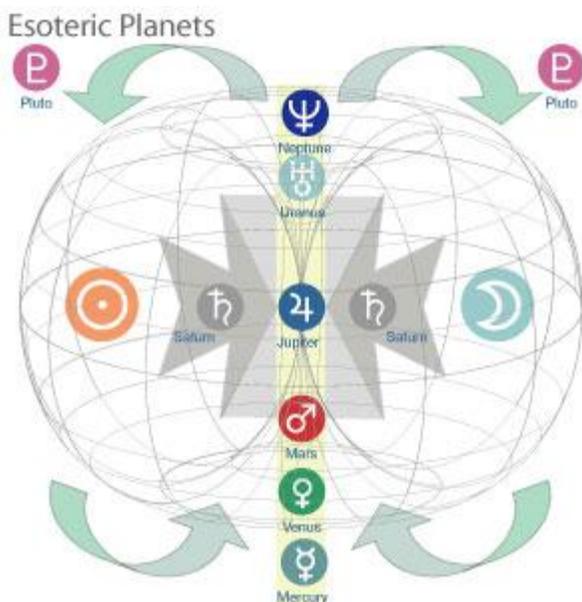
### Mercury

Mercury is the light of the mind, the ideas that come out of nowhere and from which all else will form and precipitate.

### Outgoing

As things reach the limit of Saturn, at the top of the middle part of the channel, which is about 30 years of age, the building of our body has ended and the beginning of our spiritual awakening may begin. This is the province of the outer planets, and the planet that marks the end or the limit of Saturn is Uranus.

## The Lights and Planets



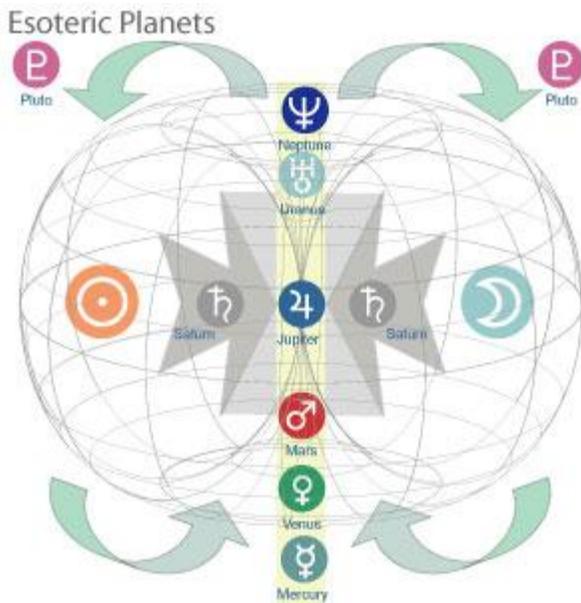
### Uranus

Uranus marks the point where we break out or work free from the control of Saturn. Things go from being bound in a tight pattern to opening outward in all directions. Suddenly everything appears new, or in a new light. Uranus sits just at the inside lip of the great channel. When the insights of Uranus become universal—so that all is new, we are in the planet Neptune.

### Neptune

Neptune sits where the channel turns into the sphere, and therefore embraces the entire central channel—including within itself that from which it came. Neptune loves every last thing. When the Neptune sense of unity reaches the point where it is clear that the whole process is endless, then we reach Pluto.

## The Lights and Planets



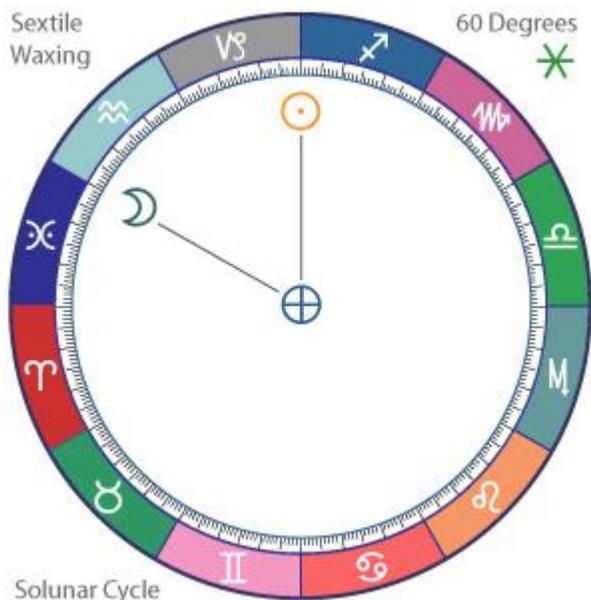
### Pluto

Pluto stands free of the channel and marks the fact that this process is not just a straight line (Saturn), not just a tangent (Uranus), and not just an embracement (Neptune), but a very fine curve wrapping around the sphere, endlessly repeating the entire process, a "we are our own grandpa" sort of thing: Very sensitive stuff.

Summary: The only purpose of this diagram is to point out that all of the planets work together as one great system, each with their own particular role to play. In other words, there is only one continuous process taking place, and the symbol for this entire process is the Sun.

## The Aspects

### ***The Aspects***

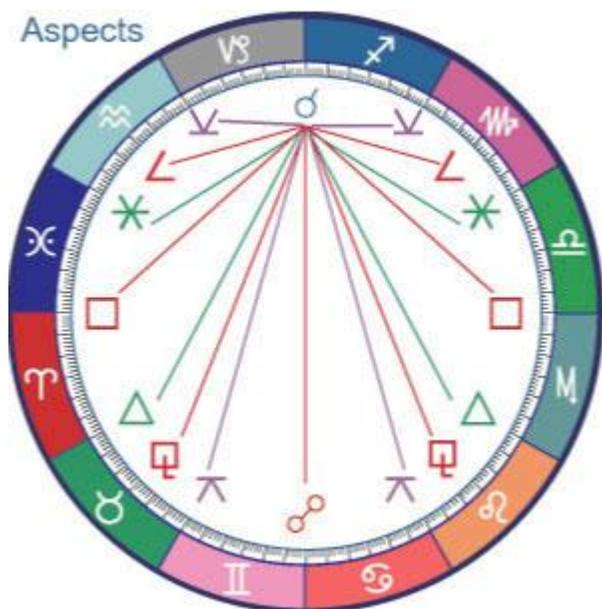


### **Aspect Orbs**

As we have presented elsewhere, aspects are angular separations (in degrees and in fractions of degrees) between any two bodies or points, be these the Sun and the Moon, Mars and Jupiter, Saturn and the ascendant... and so on. Aspects can range from zero degrees (conjunction) and on around the full 360-degrees back to the next conjunction. The farthest angular separation is 180 degrees, after which the angular separation between any two bodies begins getting smaller again. Using Full-Phase Aspect analysis, we have seen that the waxing Square (90-degree aspect) is not the same (in interpretation) as the waning Square (90-degrees aspect), but this has been covered in another section. Here is a diagram of the Sextile or 60-degree aspect, in this case "waxing," that is: the

## The Aspects

Moon is separating from the Sun, and moving toward the opposition.



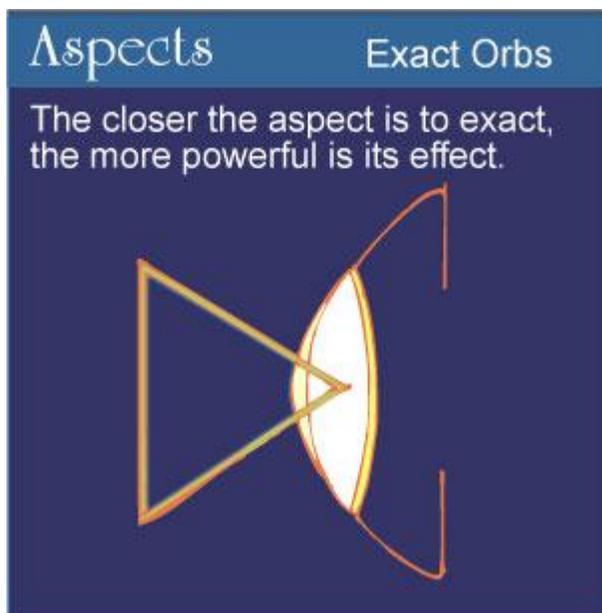
### Standard Aspects

Any degree of angular separation amounts to some aspect; however, over the history of astrology, certain particular aspects or angular separations have been considered especially significant, such as the Conjunction (0 degrees), the Sextile (60 degrees), the Square (90 degrees), the trine (120 degrees) and the Opposition (180 degrees). These are the so-called Ptolemaic Aspects, since they were first used by the Greek astrology Ptolemy. Some astrologers add more aspects to this list, and the diagram above represents what astrologers consider the standard set of aspects; however, that is not the point of this lesson.

## The Aspects

Here we want to take a look at WHEN a particular angular separation is considered an "aspect," and thus, the subject here is one of "orbs." We know when an angular separation is exact, so that is no problem. In other words, an exact trine aspect is 120 degrees, no more and no less. At that moment, there are no orbs. But the question here is: as we approach an aspect, at what point can we say that we are within reach or influence—within the "orb effect" of that aspect? When does it affect us? As you might guess, astrologers agree to disagree on when or where this exact point is.

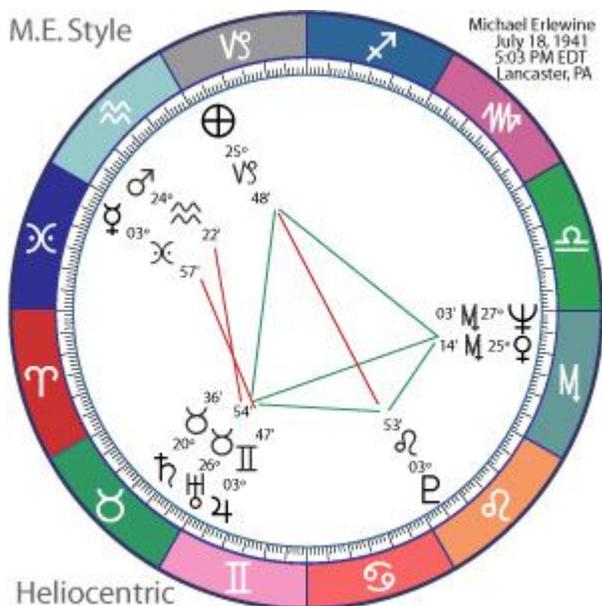
Moreover, astrologers use different orbs, depending on which planet they are considering, as well as which aspect they are considering, so it can get a little complicated. In this lesson, I will stay away from the extremes and just present the orbs most commonly used by astrologers. You are free to use any orbs you wish, of course.



## The Aspects

### Exact Aspects

Astrologers appear to be in agreement about the fact that when aspects are exact, they are more powerful. Sometimes the analogy of a lens has been used to illustrate how an aspect works. Similar to focusing a pair of binoculars, as an aspect between two planets approaches its exact point, it resolves itself increasingly into focus. I believe that most astrologers would consider this resolution to be exponential, not linear, in nature, meaning: the closer you get to the exact aspect the more powerful is its nature, exponentially. In other words, an aspect that is one degree away from being exact is not twice as powerful as an aspect that is two degrees away from being exact, but even more powerful. There is a sharp curve, and not just a straight line. Some astrologers might disagree, but this has been my experience. It is like the focusing of a lens.



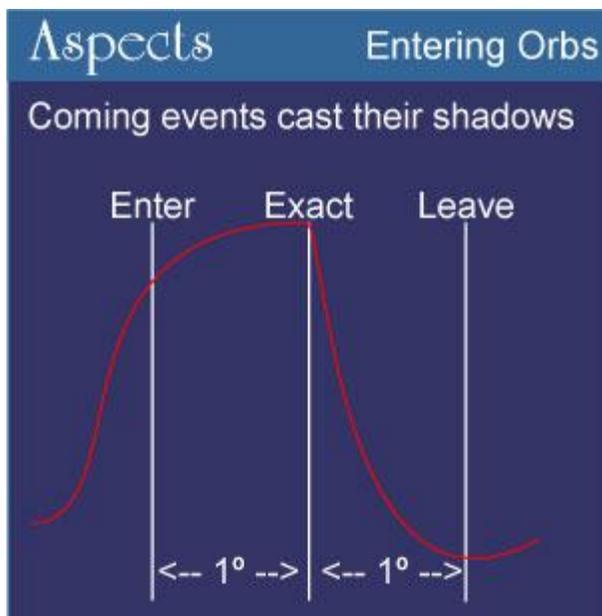
### **Tight or Wide Orbs**

Now we are getting into disputed waters, when we ask what orbs we should use. Astrologers are just like people (in fact, they are people!) in that some use very fussy and tight orbs, while others consider anything remotely in the ballpark to be an aspect. Let's look at this.

Astrologers tend to use different orbs for different purposes. When we are looking at a static natal chart, wider orbs are generally used, as we are trying to get an overall picture as to the nature of the person or event. On the other hand, if we are looking at today's transits in the sky, we may use much smaller orbs. The same goes if we are looking at today's transits in the sky as they relate to your natal chart: tighter orbs.

For example, here is my helio natal chart. Everyone could agree that Venus and Neptune are within orb of a conjunction. Also, most astrologers would agree that Saturn is conjunct Uranus and Uranus is conjunct Jupiter, but few would agree that Saturn is conjunct Jupiter. Jupiter has, however, recently completed a conjunction with Saturn, so it is not that far from a conjunction. And finally, some astrologers would say that Mercury and Mars are in conjunction (some 9 degrees), although most would probably say they are not, since Mercury is moving away from that aspect.

## The Aspects



### Entering and Leaving Orbs

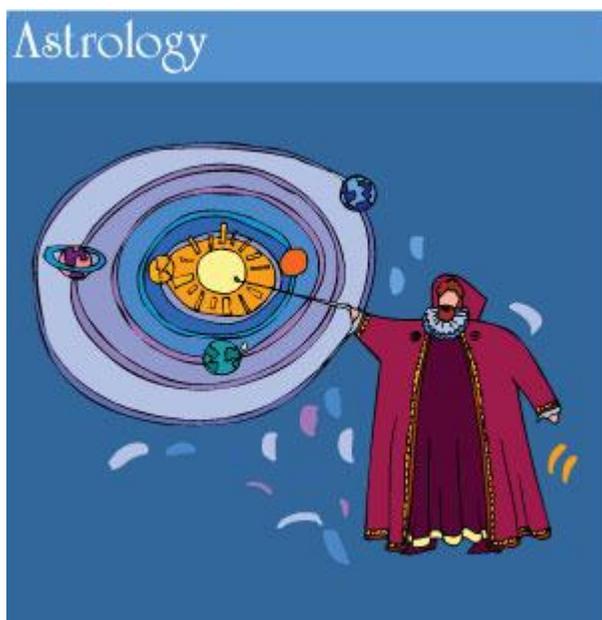
When looking at transits in the sky, or transiting aspects in the sky, to our natal planets, most astrologers use fairly tight orbs, often as small as one degree. And the orb used extends before and after the aspect, one degree before and another degree after. For example, if we are looking at the sextile aspect (60 degrees) with a one-degree orb, then we would be looking for an angular separation between the two planets that ranges from 59 degrees to 61 degrees.

However, astrologers have found that the effect of the aspect tends to precede the event rather than follow it. In other words, from the orb and up to where the aspect is exact, up to the point of exactness, this is where we feel or experience the effect of that aspect strongest, and not afterward. This is not always the case, but it is the general rule. The old astrological saying: "Coming events cast their shadows" is very true here. The time

## The Aspects

before an aspect—what is called the "Entering Orb"—is considered the most important; the time after the aspect is exact—what is called the "Leaving Orb"—is not as important, and astrologers usually do not give it much attention.

In the diagram above, we are showing the point where the aspect is exact, along with a 1-degree orb before and after that aspect. The red line shows how the importance of the aspect as it is forming or entering is much greater than it is after the "exact" point is reached.



### **Planets, Bodies, and Points**

Different orbs are used depending on what planets or bodies are involved. The Sun and the Moon (The Lights) are the two most important bodies, and wider orbs are generally used when working with them. Their influence is greater, and we make allowances for that by giving

## The Aspects

them a wider orb. For example, with the Sun we might use an orb as wide as 10 degrees, while using a 9-degree orb for the Moon, and a 7 or 8 degree orb for the other planets. This would be when looking at a natal chart.

If we were looking at transits (at what is happening in the sky right now) using too wide of an orb would give us too many transits, and the list of them would likely be longer than our attention span. What we want are lists of things that are manageable. Having a list of 200 aspects may be very nice, but how often are you going to sit down and count through 200 aspects, especially when all you want is a quick picture of what is happening today?

So, in actual practice, we tend to limit our orbs, and the list of aspects we use, to something manageable, to what we will actually be able to use and find helpful in our day-to-day work. As I like to tell myself, I want astrological techniques that work for me, and not vice versa. There are thousands of possible techniques you can experiment with, but which ones give back enough return for your investment of time to make them valuable to you? Each of us will have to answer that question for ourselves.

## The Aspects

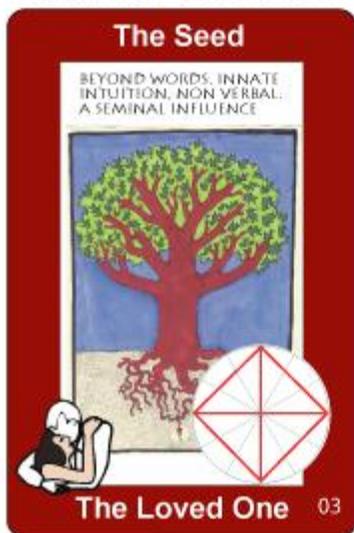
Aspects		Standard Aspects			
Here are the what most astrologers use in the way of aspects and orbs.					
Aspect	ABR	DEG	SUN	MOON	PLANETS
Conjunction	CNJ	000	09-deg	08-deg	07-deg
Opposition	OPP	180	09-deg	08-deg	07-deg
Trine	TRI	120	07-deg	07-deg	06-deg
Square	SQR	090	07-deg	06-deg	06-deg
Sextile	SXT	060	07-deg	07-deg	05-deg
Semisquare	SSQ	045	04-deg	04-deg	03-deg
Semisextile	SSX	030	04-deg	04-deg	03-deg
Quincunx	QCX	150	04-deg	04-deg	03-deg
Sesquiquadrate	SQQ	135	04-deg	04-deg	03-deg

### Standard Aspect Set

Here is a set of orbs for what might be considered the standard set of aspects, the ones most used by astrologers. Let's go through them.

As you can see, the Sun and the Moon get the widest orbs, and then, orbs decrease in size from the Sun to the Moon to the planets. And, certain aspects (in particular the conjunction and opposition) deserve wider orbs. When any two planets are considered—such as, for example, the Sun and Mars—use whichever orb is widest for that pair. In this case, we would use 9 degrees for the conjunction aspect if we were looking at the Sun and Mars. This table should be clear.

## Grand Cross Pattern

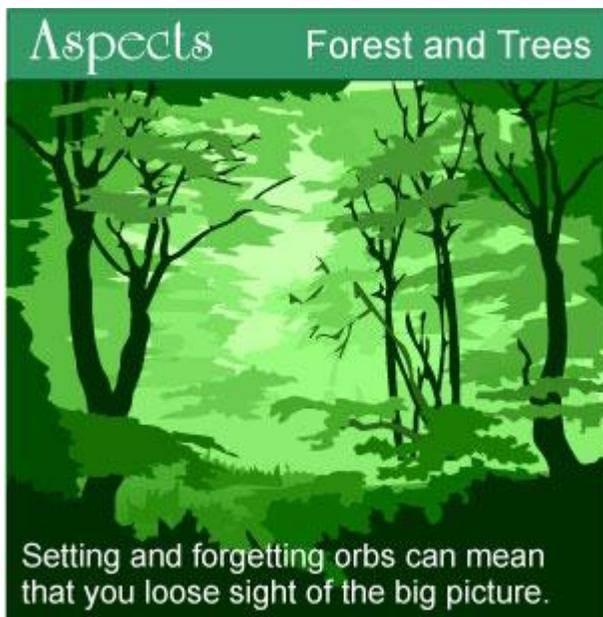


Born With This

Charlie Sheen  
H. Ross Perot  
J. Campbell  
Robert Plant  
Omar Sharif  
Deborah Kerr  
Liberace  
Wyatt Earp  
Roger Moore  
Aleister Crowley  
Butch Cassidy  
Barbara Walters  
James Dean  
Bob Newhart  
Thelonious Monk  
Cary Grant  
Karl Marx

### Large Scale Patterns

We have been considering what orbs to use when looking at planets in aspect, and more or less taking them a pair at a time, such as "Moon Sextile Venus," and so forth. More important than single aspects are aspect patterns. An aspect pattern occurs when various aspects link up to form a larger pattern than just a single aspect would form. In particular, when aspects link up and create a "Whole-Chart Pattern," they are of special importance. A whole-chart pattern is a series of aspects, linked one to another, that add up to 360 degrees. In other words, they extend all of the way around the chart wheel. An example of whole-chart patterns would include such traditional patterns as the Grand Trine (three trine aspects linked together), the Grand Cross (four square aspects linked together), and the T-Square (an opposition, linked to two square aspects.)



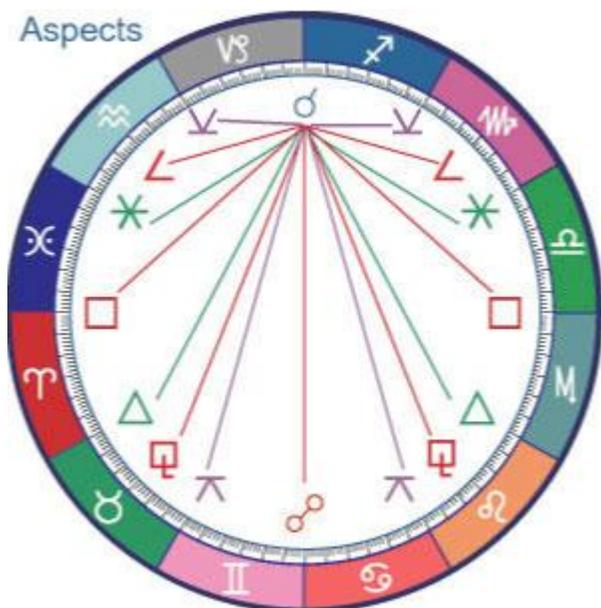
### **The Forest and the Trees**

In understanding aspects and their orbs, it is easy to lose sight of the forest because of the trees, and this is a very important point. The reason we look at aspects and aspect patterns is to see what is going on. Since astrologers, today, for the most part, use computers, it is easy to set some orbs and then let the computer churn out a list of aspects. The problem with such lists is that once you set an aspect to a certain orb, you may exclude or be unaware of many important astrological events, without ever knowing it.

For example, if I set the orb for the Sun at 9 degrees, as we listed earlier, and I have the Sun and the Moon with an angular separation of 9-degrees and 1 minute for whatever aspect they might be approaching, that aspect is not going to appear on my list, even though I need to

## The Aspects

be aware of it. This is the danger of setting and forgetting orbs. There is no substitute for actually looking at the chart patterns with your eyes. Do not depend only on lists or you will miss a lot of what is important in a chart.



### The Main Point Here

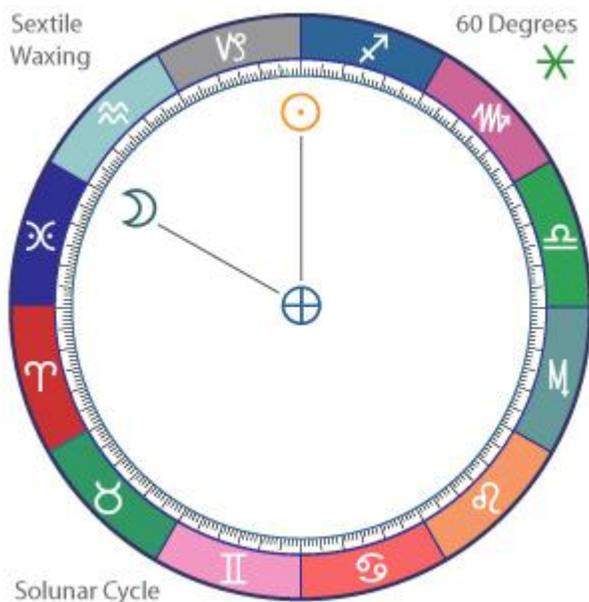
While exact aspects are important, it is, no doubt, of equal importance (or even more important!) to know about the angular relationship between any two planets. In other words, exact aspects are snapshots or moments in the larger cycle of whichever two bodies you are looking at, but they are not the only thing to keep track of here. Let me give you an example:

If I tell you that you have Venus Square Saturn in your chart, this is something worth noting. But if Venus and

## The Aspects

Saturn are slightly out-of-orb—just beyond whatever orb you have set—they may not come up on your radar screen, so you might not consider them. Here is the point:

Regardless of whether Venus and Saturn are at the exact point of being square to one another, or even within orb, they are right near that point, and nowhere else. Any two planets are in aspect at all times, regardless of whether they are currently at one of the designated aspects (square, trine, etc.). They are either before or after whatever is the nearest aspect we are using. That aspect is about to happen (soon) or has just happened (and is over). This information is essential to know; that is, the location in the cycle, of any two planets, regardless of exact aspects. The diagram here shows all of the major aspects, and you can see that no matter where you are in the cycle, the next aspect is never that far away.



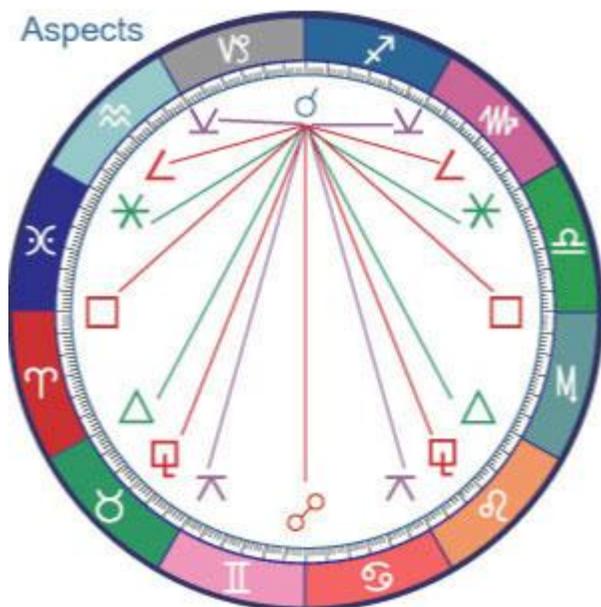
### **Where in the Cycle?**

If you only want to know when two planets are within orb of an aspect, you are missing a lot. Of course, it is most important to know when an aspect is exact, or nearly so, but it is also important to know, even if only roughly, about the relationship between any two planets at any time. Where are they in the cycle of their relationship? This is what you should be asking.

The point here is that the activity of any two planets or bodies does not just manifest at the exact aspect points, rather this activity is a process that is ongoing, and we can take a snapshot of that process at any time, not only when an exact aspect is reached. While orbs are very helpful in spotting the high points, we also need a general idea of where we are throughout the entire cycle. For example, an aspect may be short of being called a square (90-degree aspect), but it is more a square than it is anything else, and you or your clients need to know this.

For most of my work, which is with large-scale patterns, I do not look at orbs, but only at the patterns. A misshapen (out-of-orb) grand trine is still a grand trine, and is nowhere near being any other pattern. If it walks like a duck and quacks like a duck, it's a duck. The same is true with aspects. Don't get hung up on exactness; grasp the whole picture.

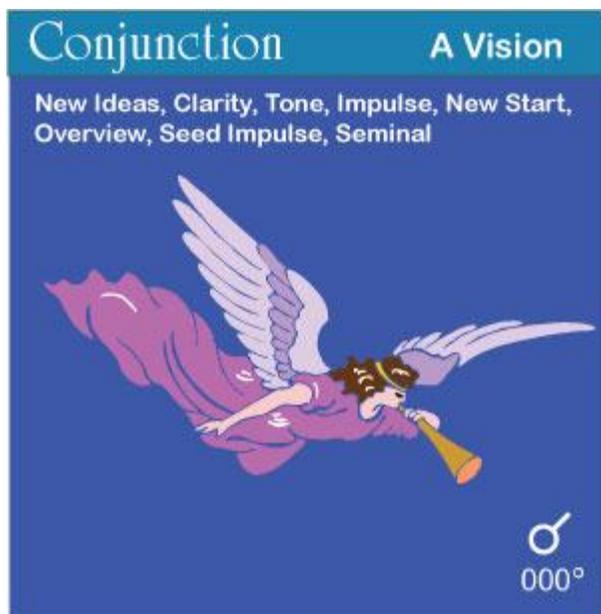
## The Aspects



### ***Full-Phase Aspects***

Learning to use and keep the concept of full-phase aspects in mind can be made easy by going through the sixteen different phases, one at a time, and understanding the interpretations. The following interpretations would work for looking at the phases of the Moon (Sun-Moon angle), or the phases of any two bodies: Mars-Saturn, Venus-Jupiter, etc. It will be most important to understand how each phase changes into the next, as well as how the entire set of phases is just one continuous cycle—with distinct points along the way.

## The Aspects



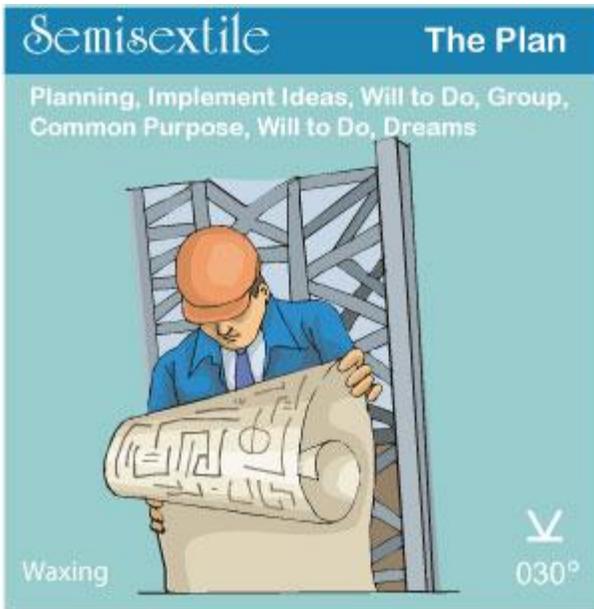
### **Conjunction - New Idea**

In a word: the seed impulse, pure potential.

This is the most encapsulated moment, the most indrawn point, and the source of a vibration that starts a new cycle; it is a vibration sending out a pulse, a new beginning, one built upon results of the previous cycle. It is an idea in its purest or most direct form—pure thought.

It is clarity, but very pure, and seminal. Above all, it is a new signal that is strong enough to overcome and rise above the past and assert itself. It cannot be denied. It will have its day. This is a vision point.

## The Aspects



### **Semisextile (waxing) - Planning**

Here is a gentle push as the new idea or vibration grows and begins to spread out, making clear a sense of direction, or a flow from inward—outward. This is the planning stage—as the idea turns into a plan of action; it is also the wish to make this plan manifest.

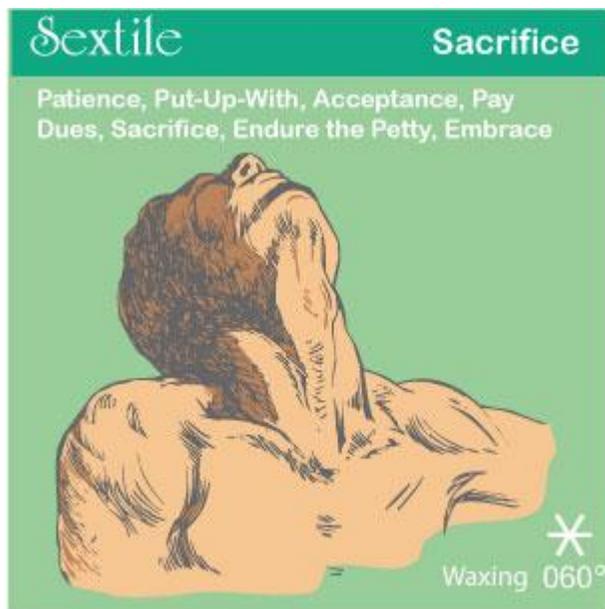
## The Aspects



### **Semisquare (waxing) - Overcome Resistance**

Here, perhaps some token resistance to forward motion must be negotiated. It could be residue from the past—whatever might rise up and block passage to progress. It is to be expected, and, since this is the waxing or outgoing phase, it is appropriate to push firmly forward at this point and wade through whatever it is that is giving resistance. This is not a place to back off or to take no for an answer. Gentle but persistent forward motion is recommended. This is a waxing phase, or upswing—a moving outward.

## The Aspects



### **Sextile (waxing) - Making Plans**

The first real burst of energy, and perhaps sense of being freed up, with space to move and make progress. This is a good point to move plans forward, to begin to grasp what must be done or accomplished; the purity of purpose and a 'one-pointedness' here make it easy to share the vision, as well as have solidarity with the community and among co-workers. There is a definite sense of "can do" and—"let's just go and do it." There is also the confidence and strength to put up with and endure petty problems and hindrances that will get in your way, for the sake of accomplishing the greater goal and good. Self-sacrifice here is easier than elsewhere.

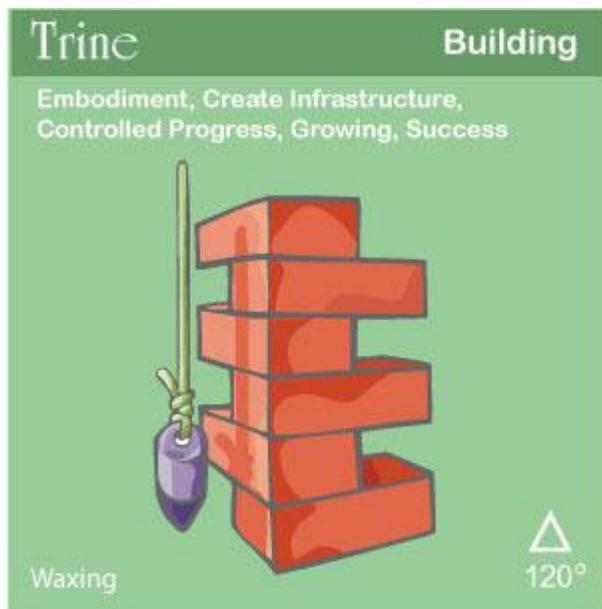
## The Aspects



### **Square (waxing) - Positive Start**

This is one of the four cardinal points, it is a transition or turning point; in this case, a point that is a part of the waxing phase. It is good for moving forward, making a statement, and for manifesting something new that is visible for all to see. This is the first step out of the planning or theoretical stage and into the arena of action. Here, something can be done, and something will appear. Positive.

## The Aspects



### **Trine (waxing) - Building**

Now past the starting point, there is the energy, space, and room to really accomplish things, to build something solid. The actual embodiment of plans into something real is what takes place now, a drawing around oneself whatever form fits the seed idea that one started with. That seed idea is being carried forward here and made manifest. This is where we draw things to and around us. Possessions.

## The Aspects



### **Sesquiquadrate (waxing) - Push On**

Another push comes to shove point, where various resistances or obstacles may appear on the path. This should not be a major problem, since we are already on a roll here, and so, this is a point where one ought to press on and push forward, not withdraw or hold back. One has the control, energy, and forward momentum to push forward, and the strength to overcome obstacles and blockage. Gaining control and confidence.

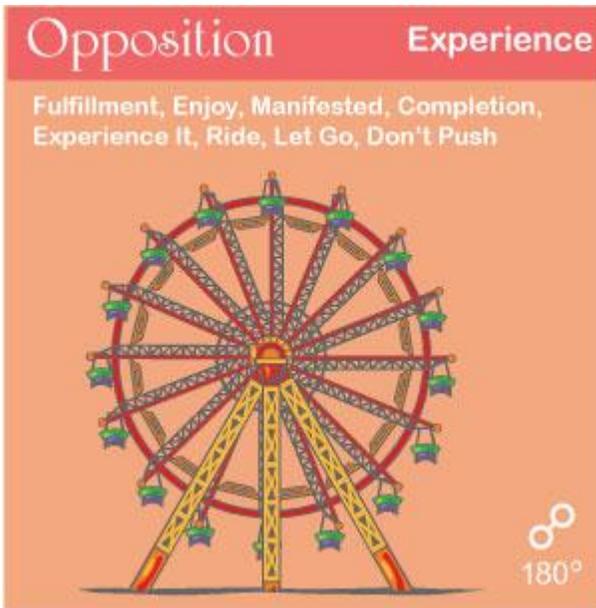
## The Aspects



### **Inconjunct (waxing) - Connect Up**

This is the last point at which to push forward, and, actually, any action or drive should be devoted to connecting things up, to tying-up loose ends and to bringing whatever is already in the works to completion. Not a time to start anything new or to push too hard. Finish it up, and use a light touch at that. Connectivity. Exploration.

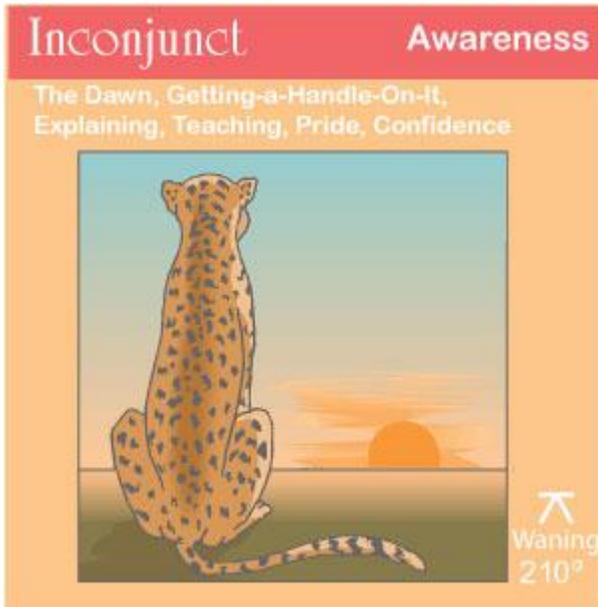
## The Aspects



### **Opposition - Result or Experience**

The result or full manifestation of whatever has been building, up to this point, is here. This is it, the full experience, the ride—whatever it can be. This is not a time to push, not a time to start anything new, nor a time to speculate or think. Rather, it is a time to savor the experience, or, more simply, to live it. The experience itself.

## The Aspects



### **Inconjunct (waning) - Dawning**

We are past the heart of the experience, past the opposition, and just far enough past so that there can be some awareness of what it was all about—a dawning, and coming to mind of what it was. We can begin to get a handle on what has just taken place and can perhaps have some sense of accomplishment and pride in a job well done—in the experience itself. Also, there is perhaps the desire to share or talk about this experience with others, even to teach and explain. No more push. The secret here is to let things arise and come to you, rather than pushing hard to get them.

## The Aspects



### **Sesquiquadrate (waning) - Gather Things**

Another resistance point, but one that will not respond to further pushing; we are now on the waning side of things, so, rather than push for what we want, we learn to respond, to give in, and to work with and manipulate what confronts us. We work things through us, in the sense of Aikido, helping things to pass rather than confronting them headlong. Facilitation.

## The Aspects



### **Trine (waning) - Conservation**

A rush of useful energy, and enough space to use it in, but not the kind of energy used for building things or driving forward, but rather, here is energy for removing the scaffolding, for conserving and hanging onto what you can from the current situation. Salvaging. The party is over and you are taking down the decorations, saving what is significant.

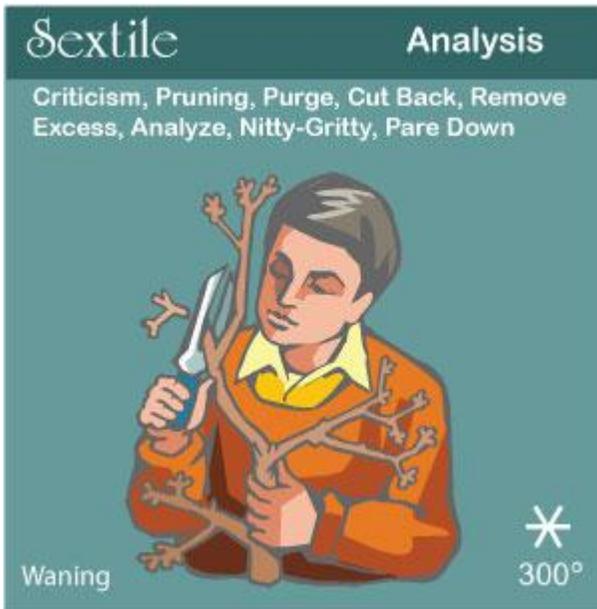
## The Aspects



### **Square (waning) - Responsibility**

Another cardinal or turning point, this time it is a moving from the outside to the inside, a moving away from the personal and toward the impersonal, impartial, and objective. There is, here, a sense of responsibility and a response to what 'is', a reflecting rather than initiating, and the managing of a situation rather than creating one. Reflection, mirroring.

## The Aspects



### **Sextile (waning) - Analysis**

This is an expansive time, with increased energy and a sense of being on the outside looking in. Here there are extreme critical faculties at work, with the ability to analyze and criticize, as well as a seeing of what should be kept and what can be pruned away—purging what is unessential. This is not a time to begin new things nor to push, but rather to receive, observe, and consolidate.

## The Aspects



### **Semisquare (waning) - Push In**

This is another one of the four resistance points, one of those the Tibetans call "Tomb Signs," where there may be some obstacle or blockage. The thing to do here is *not* to push forward or use positive force, but instead, a use of negative force is required; a giving way rather than a pushing forward. Make way and help the blockage to pass rather than confront it. Step aside.

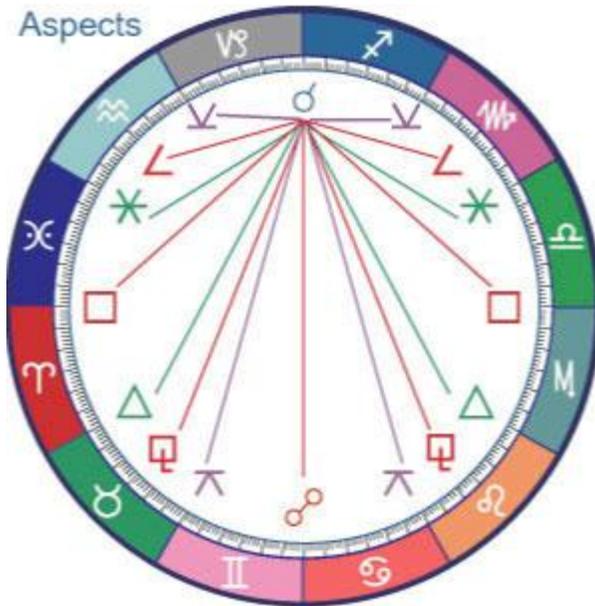
## The Aspects



### **Semisextile (waning) - Encapsulation**

This is a drawing down time after having removed what should be removed and having retained what can be retained; a time to pack it in and salvage what is essential, reducing it into its most compact form. Not a time to push but a time to consolidate. Building the kernel.

# The Aspects



## Aspects Continued

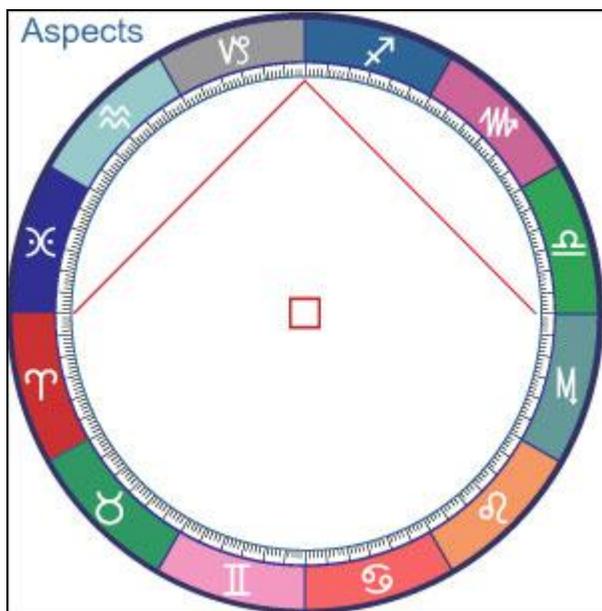


## The Aspects

### The Phases of the Moon

As we have seen, cycles are a crucial part of astrology and we find them in almost all of its main components; for example, the cycle of the zodiac signs, the cycle of the Moon phases, the cycle of the daily rotation of the earth, and so forth.

The aspect cycle is one of the most important cycles to study, but there is an issue to discuss. Astrologers use a standard set of aspects that go from zero degrees of separation (the conjunction) to 180 degrees of separation (an opposition); this is the waxing half of the aspect cycle, so far so good; then, they use the same set of aspects to measure from the opposition, on around in the circle of aspects, to again reach the conjunction; this is the waning half of the aspect cycle. Here is the problem: We use the same interpretation for the aspects on the waning half as we do on the waxing half. Let me try to make this clear.



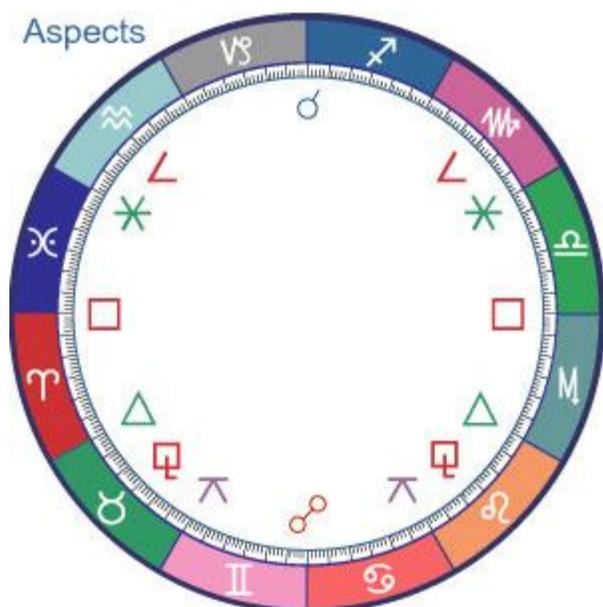
### **Which Side Are You On?**

This might make it simpler: Let's say I am cooking dinner and send you on a round of errands, a circular route that takes you past various stores, as you are picking up some various items for our meal. I live in Michigan and it is winter and perhaps snowing, and, since I have no idea of where you are on the route, I don't know whether to start the peas or not. So, I call you on your cell phone and you tell me that you are on the route at a 90-degree aspect, one quarter of the way from home. Now, your cell phone cuts out. I don't know whether you are 90-degrees out and just getting started going through all of the snow, or, 90-degrees from home, on the way back, in which case you will be here in a few minutes and I should start the peas.

This kind of problem with aspects is true for all aspects, aside from the conjunction and opposition, which, of course, are directly opposite of one another.

When you say you have a sextile aspect or a trine aspect, I have no way of knowing which sextile or trine you refer to. One is a waxing or outgoing aspect, and the other is a waning or incoming aspect—very different aspects and interpretations. Perhaps in the past it was enough to know that there was a square aspect. Period. But in the world we live in today, where every thing is monitored down to the last microsecond, it is time to give a little more attention to the phase of the aspect we are looking at. Well known astrologers such as Dane Rudhyar and L.E. Johndro have been pointing out this discrepancy for decades.

## The Aspects



### Full-Phase Aspects

Full-phase aspects are identical to the original aspects we have been using for hundreds of years, with a single exception: with full-phase aspects, we not only give the aspect, but we also indicate which phase the aspect is in, whether it is a waxing/separating aspect or a waning/applying aspect. One marks two planets growing farther and farther apart, and moving toward the opposition at 180 degrees (waxing), while the other marks two planets growing ever closer together, and heading toward their next conjunction at zero degrees (waning). It is that simple.

As for their interpretation, full-phase aspects are similar in most respects to what we have been using all along, but their interpretation is quite different in other respects. The general difference is that with full-phase aspects we need to keep in mind the energy flow and direction of the two planets. With the waxing phase, we know the

## The Aspects

aspect is widening, and will continue to widen until the opposition is reached. It is open throttle and onward for these aspects. It is the reverse with waning aspects, for the aspect between the two planets is narrowing, and will continue to narrow until the conjunction is reached. We are throttling back, at this point.

Also of importance is the fact that, with waxing aspects, we are moving toward the opposition, which represents the single greatest point of manifestation, or extension of the two planets involved, of the entire cycle. There is a definite sense of building up to this opposition, the extending of whatever qualities the two planets involved have—a getting strung out. Conversely, after the opposition, the push is over, and the energy is more a withdrawing and scaling back. Here the sense is one of backing off and, just as the word says: waning. As astrologers, we need to take these factors into consideration.

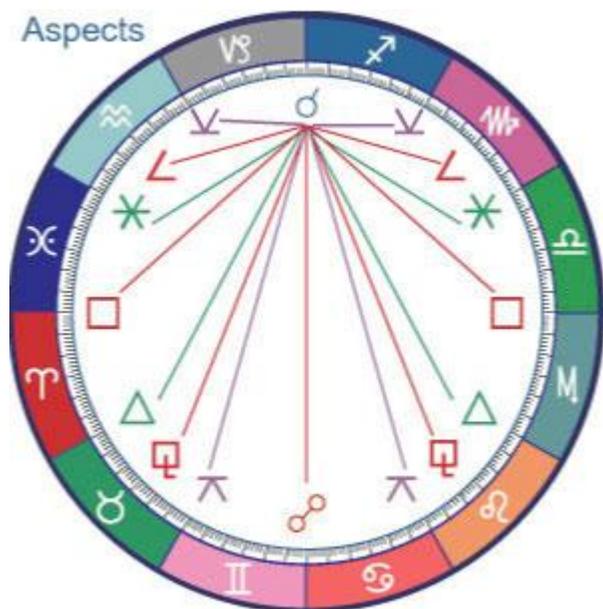
Since I have a large astrological library at my disposal, I have spent a good deal of time combing through the literature to see who the champions of these full-phase aspects were. To my surprise, there were very, very few. Yes, there was some lip service given to the idea of full-phase aspects, but hardly anyone followed through with any practice, or even used the concept in their own work, at least in print. One of the strongest advocates for full-phase aspects, as mentioned above, was Dane Rudhyar, who was very clear indeed about the nature and value of looking at both sides of an aspect. Another advocate was L.E. Johndro, who incorporated waxing and waning aspects throughout his work.

In this course, we have provided you with full-phase aspect interpretations, as well as the more traditional aspect interpretations. Astrological interpretations can be very subtle, so any extra information can make a

## The Aspects

great deal of difference. Full-phase aspects provide you with that extra information, information having to do with the general direction of development for whatever situation you may currently be considering.

## The Aspects



### ***Aspect Phase Keywords***

The phases of any cycle are similar. Here we are looking at the phases of the aspect cycle as it occurs between any two bodies, such as between the Sun and the Moon. The faster body always aspects the slower one. For example, it is the Moon that aspects the Sun each month as the Moon travels from New Moon to Full Moon and back, and not vice versa. If we were looking at Mars and Saturn, then it would be Mars that starts from the conjunction of these two planets and moves out to the opposition, and back to the next conjunction.

As you are learning about the various phases, it can be helpful to chart them out, using keywords. I understand that this is very dry and robot-like stuff, so feel free to skip over it. Once you get the idea, you can generate your own keywords for the various phases. Here is a quick explanation of the various points we are listing:

## The Aspects

### **Aspect Name (example: the Conjunction)**

Motion: Either waxing (outward), waning (inward), or no motion.

State: Either Inward or Outward

Energy Point: Also called a "Push Point," where some kind of action may be required.

Resistance Point: Where you can expect resistance or obstacles.

Turning Point: Either inward toward outward, or vice versa (turning point at Conjunction or Opposition)... or inside to outside or vice versa (turning point at the two square points, from inside to outside, or vice versa).

Keyword: The phase keyword.

## The Aspects



### **Conjunction: 0 Degrees**

Motion: None

State: Maximum Inward

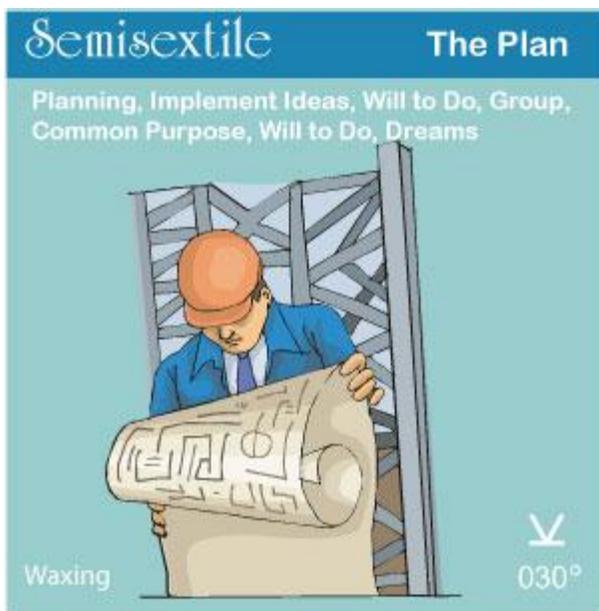
Energy Point: No

Resistance Point: No

Turning Point: Yes. Inward to Outward

Keyword: Insemination

## The Aspects



SemiSextile: 30 Degrees/ 0750

Motion: Waxing

State: Inward

Energy Point: Minor

Resistance Point: No

Turning Point: No

Keyword: Planning

## The Aspects



### **Semisquare: 45 Degrees**

Motion: Waxing

State: Inward

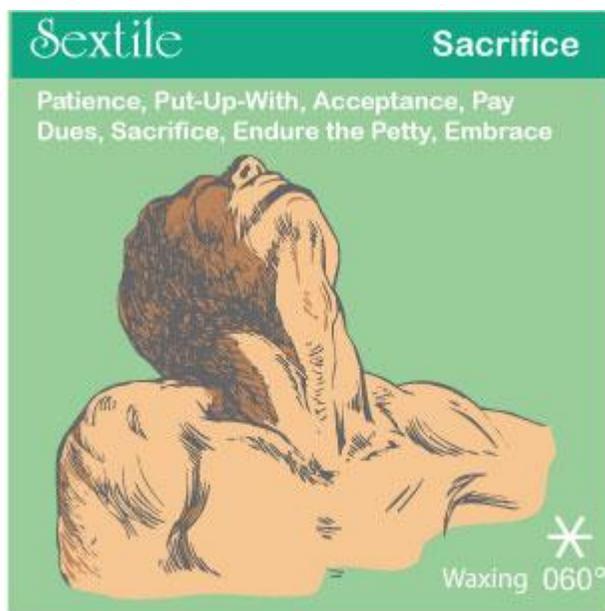
Energy Point: Yes. Outward Directed.

Resistance Point: Yes. Strong

Turning Point: No

Keyword: Overcoming Resistance

## The Aspects



### **Sextile: 60 Degrees**

Motion: Waxing

State: Inward

Energy Point: Yes

Resistance Point: No

Turning Point: No

Keyword: Making Plans

## The Aspects



### **Square (waxing) - 90 Degrees**

Motion: Waxing

State: Inward/Outward

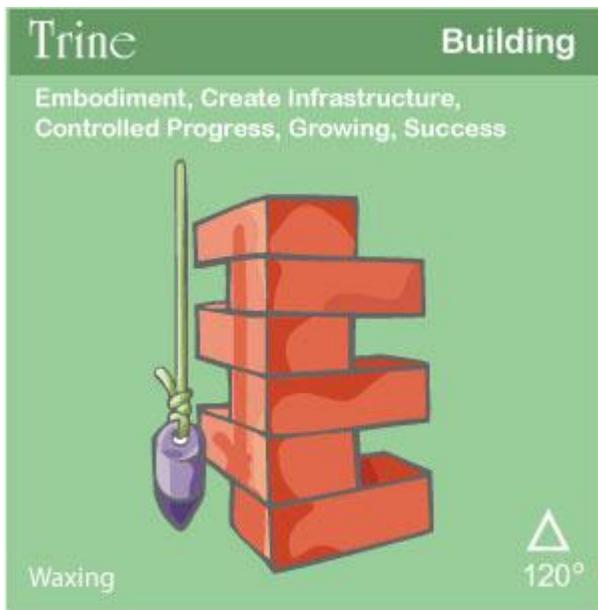
Energy Point: No

Resistance Point: No

Turning Point: Yes, Inside toward Outside

Keyword: Positive Start

## The Aspects



### **Trine: 120 Degrees**

Motion: Waxing

State: Outward

Energy Point: Yes, Major

Resistance Point: No

Turning Point: No

Keyword: Embodiment

## The Aspects



### **Sesquiquadrate: 135 Degrees**

Motion: Waxing

State: Outward

Energy Point: No

Resistance Point: Yes

Turning Point: No

Keyword: Push On

## The Aspects



### **Inconjunct: 150 Degrees**

Motion: Waxing

State: Outward

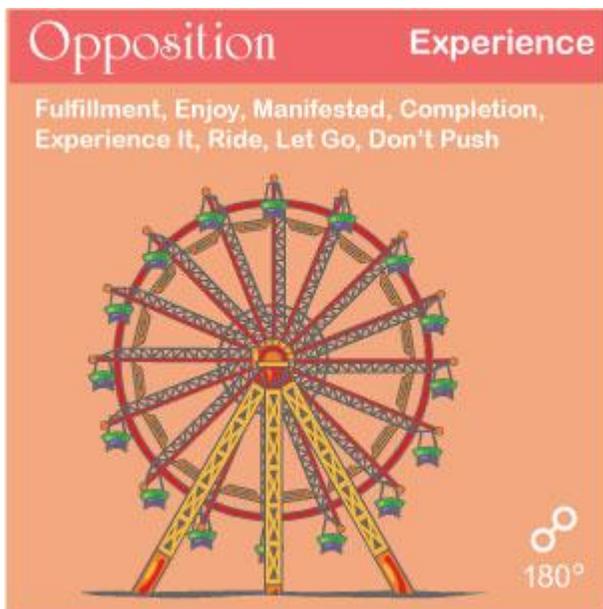
Energy Point: No

Resistance Point: No

Turning Point: No

Keyword: Connect Up

## The Aspects



### **Opposition: 180 Degrees**

Motion: None

State: Maximum Outward

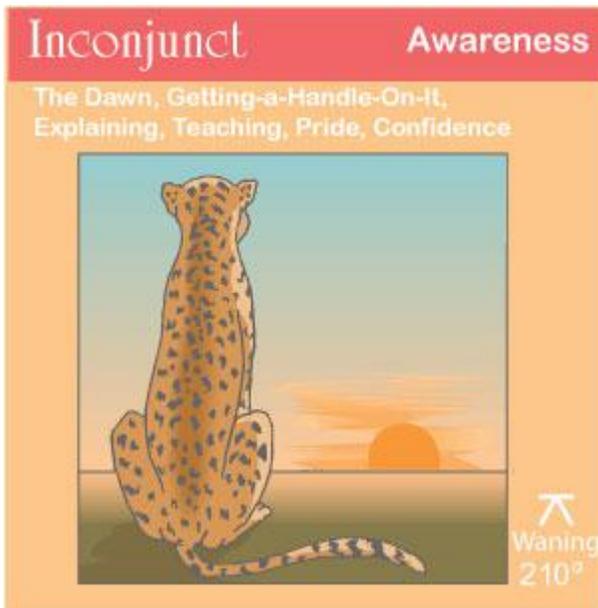
Energy Point: No

Resistance Point: No

Turning Point: Yes, Outward to Inward

Keyword: Result or Experience

## The Aspects



### **Inconjunct: 210 Degrees**

Motion: Waning

State: Outward

Energy Point: No

Resistance Point: No

Turning Point: No

Keyword: Dawning

## The Aspects



### **Sesquiquadrate: 225 Degrees**

Motion: Waning

State: Outward

Energy Point: No

Resistance Point: Yes

Turning Point: No

Keyword: Gather Things

## The Aspects



### **Trine: 240 Degrees**

Motion: Waning

State: Outward

Energy Point: Yes

Resistance Point: No

Turning Point: No

Keyword: Conservation

## The Aspects



### **Square: 270 Degrees**

Motion: Waning

State: Outward/Inward

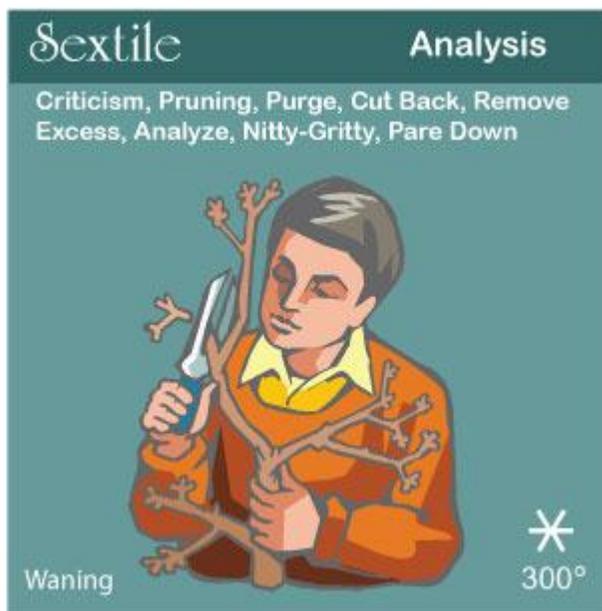
Energy Point: No

Resistance Point: No

Turning Point: Yes. Outside toward Inside.

Keyword: Responsibility

## The Aspects



### **Sextile: 300 Degrees**

Motion: Waning

State: Inward

Energy Point: Yes

Resistance Point: No

Turning Point: No

Keyword: Analysis

## The Aspects



### **Semisquare: 315 Degrees**

Motion: Waning

State: Inward

Energy Point: No

Resistance Point: Yes

Turning Point: No

Keyword: Pack Down

## The Aspects



### **SemiSextile: 330 Degrees**

Motion: Waning

State: Inward

Energy Point: Minor

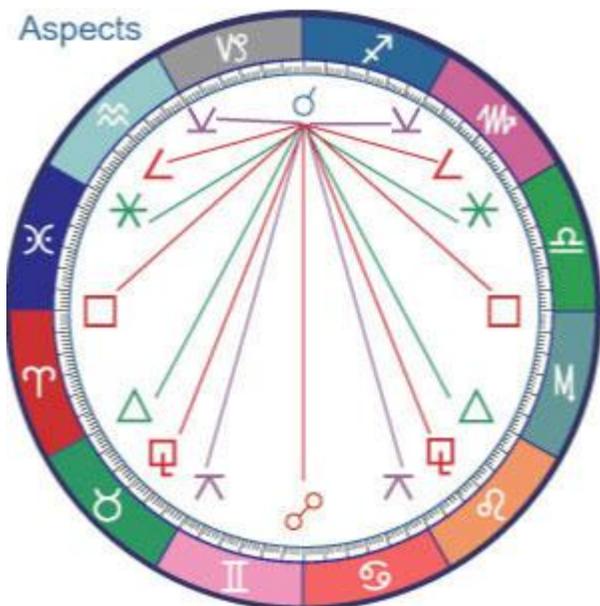
Resistance Point: No

Turning Point: No

Keyword: Encapsulation

### ***Cycle Phases***

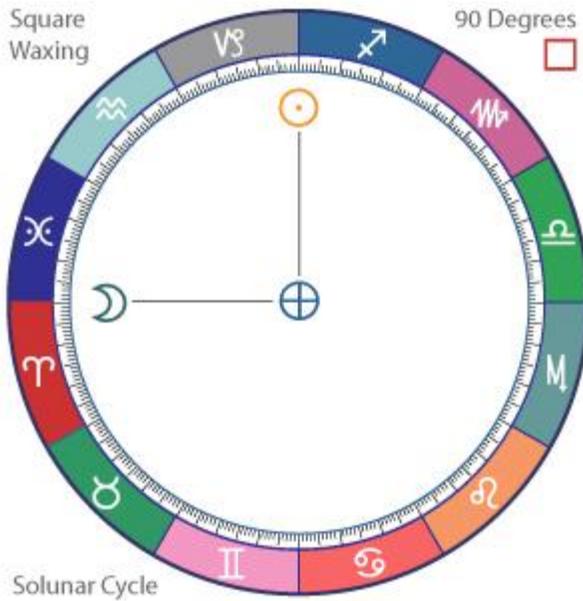
## Cycle Phases



### Phases Keywords

Cycles can be (and are) broken down into smaller parts called phases. It does not matter whether we are looking at the phases of the Moon, the zodiac cycle, the astrological houses, or the aspect cycle between any two planets or bodies. The phases for any cycle are all the same, and a number of introductory lessons on cycles can be found elsewhere. What we have here are a series of keywords and phrases relating to some of the major cycle phases. Here are the details of twelve phases.

# Cycle Phases



## Phase 1 90 Waxing

090 Square Waxing

Turning Point

Transition

Theoretical to Practical

Signs of Progress

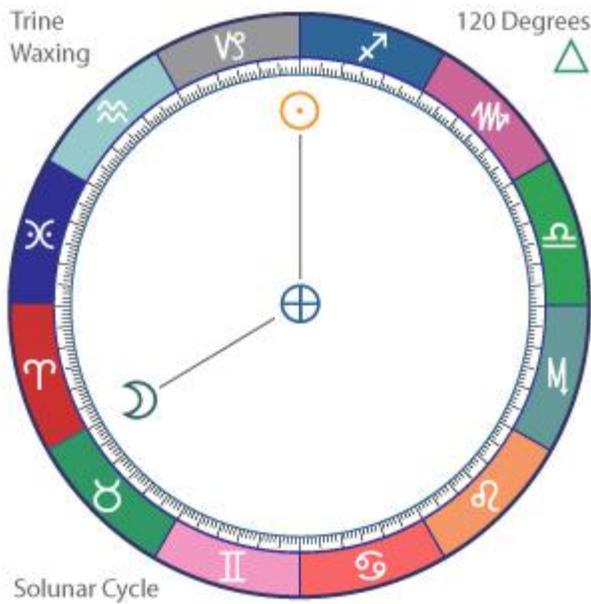
Make Statement

Do Something

Beyond Planning Stage

Concrete Step

## Cycle Phases



### **Phase 2 120 Waxing**

120 Trine Waxing

Taking Control

Practical Grasp

Directing Flow

Fruitful Energy

Controlled Progress

Forward Momentum

Solid Effort

Embodiment

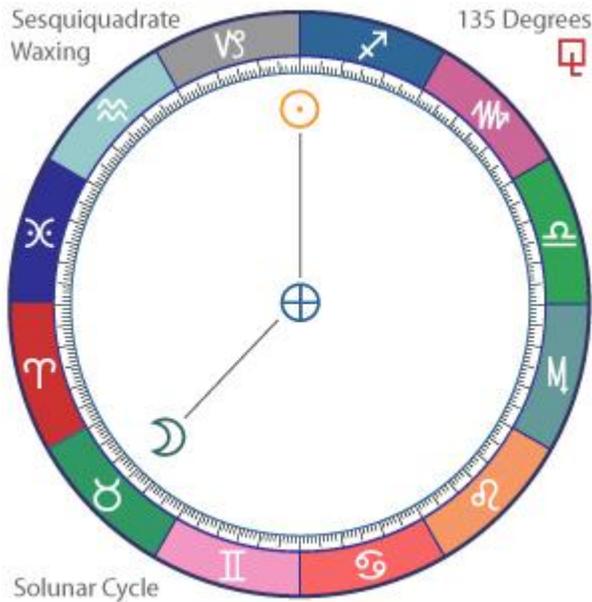
Something Real

Building Infrastructure

Results Visible

## Cycle Phases

### Drive Forward



### Phase 3 135 Waxing

135 SSQ Waxing

Overcome Resistance

Seize Control

Drive Forward

Don't Take No

Completion

Finish Up

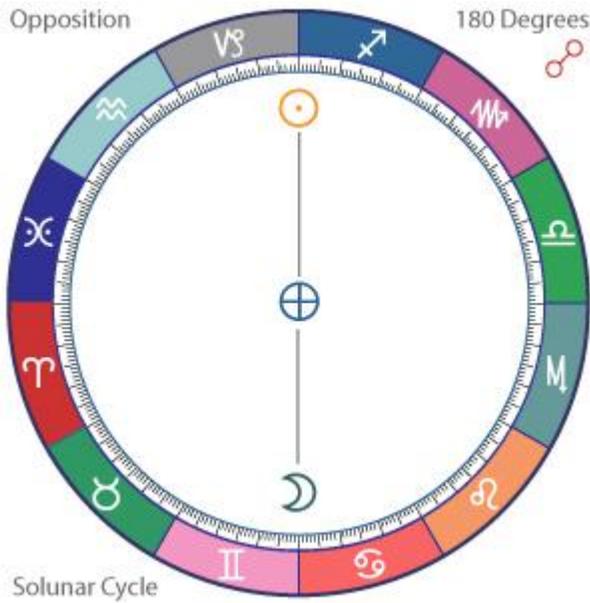
Attend to Details

Make Connections

Dot the "I's"

Don't Expand

## Cycle Phases



### **Phase 4 Opposition**

180 Opposition

Stop Driving Forward

Don't Push

Experience It

Fulfillment

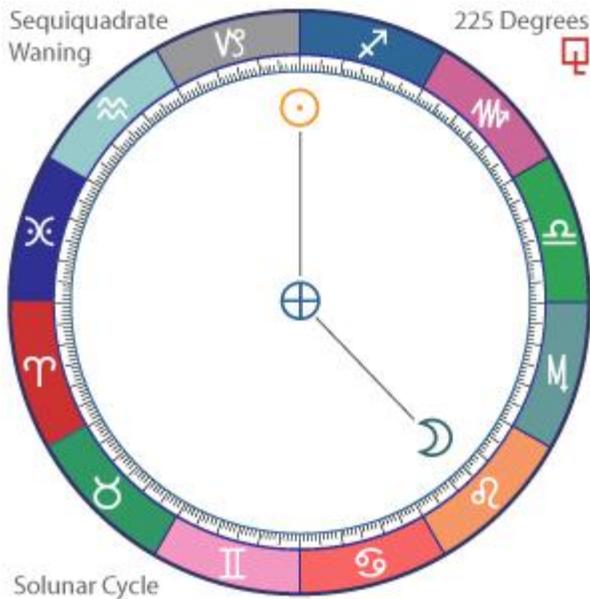
Let Go

Manifestation

Completed

Materialization

## Cycle Phases



### **Phase 5 135 Waning**

135 SSQ Waning

Awareness

Dawning

Getting A Handle

Explain to Others

Growing Confidence

Pride

Don't Push

Relax

Enjoy

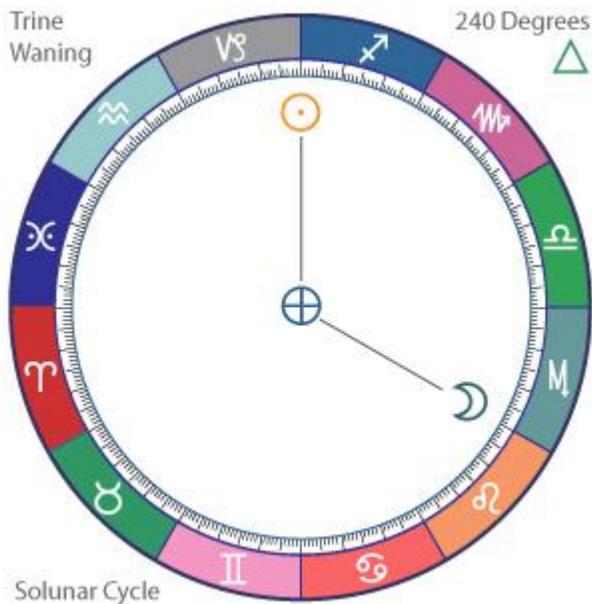
Deal With

Work with Obstacles

## Cycle Phases

Aikido Style

Passive Handling



### Phase 6 120 Waning

120 Trine Waning

Working Energy

Energy to Handle Things

But Work From Outside In

Don't Expand

Conservation

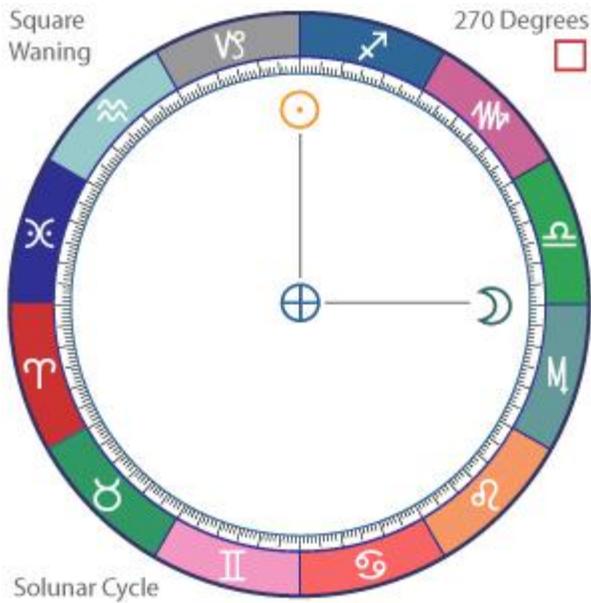
Dwindling Resources

Cap the Wells

Conserve Energy

Understanding Grows

## Cycle Phases



### **Phase 7 90 Waning**

090 Square Waning

Turning Point

From Outside, In

Subjective to Objective

Personal to Impartial

Growing Up

Objectivity

Responsible

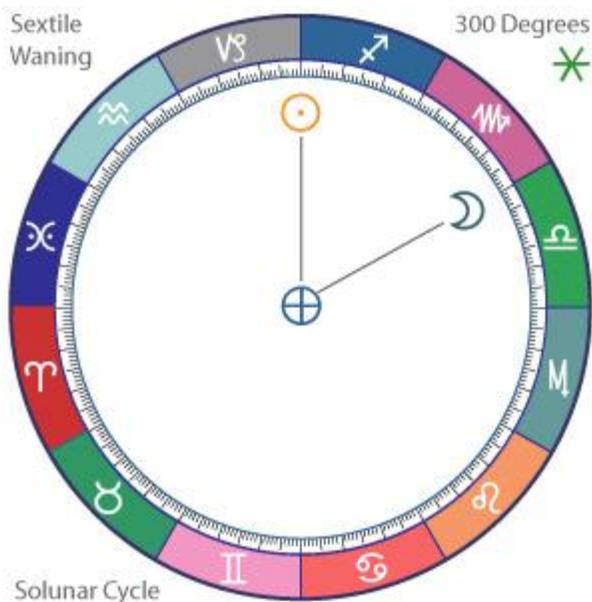
Reflecting

Managing

Public

Personal to Public

## Cycle Phases



### **Phase 8 60 Waning**

060 Sextile Waning

Critical

Can See Problems

Analysis

Energy Surge

Energy to Act

Working-With Energy

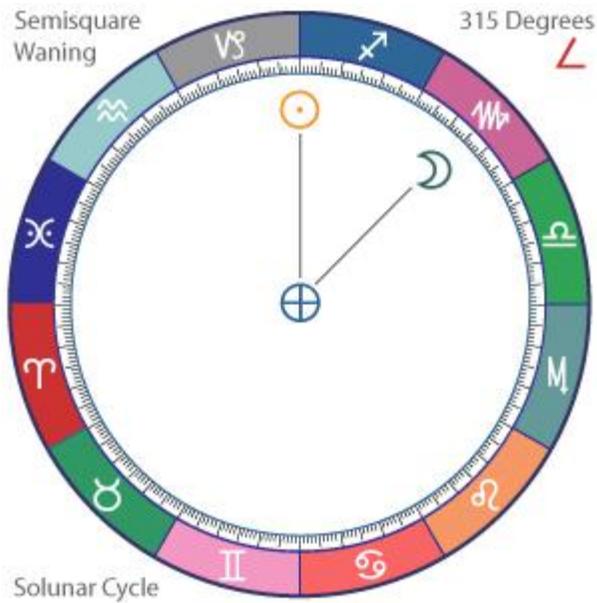
Remove Excess

Pruning

Purge

Cut Back

## Cycle Phases



### **Phase 9 45 Waning**

045 Semi-Square waning

Encapsulate

Seed Time

Essence

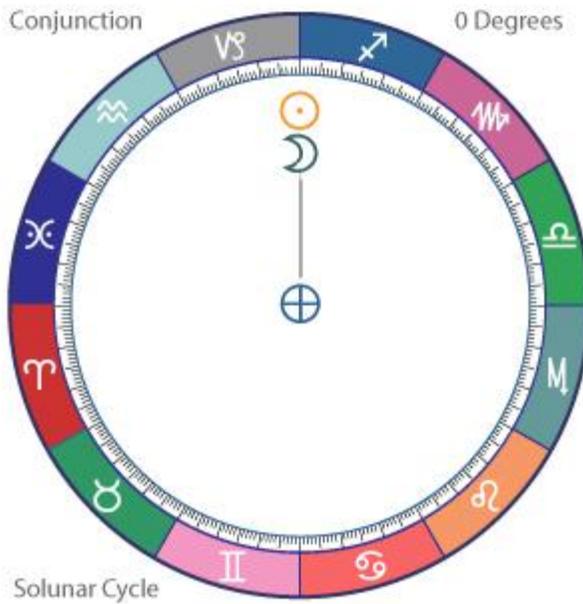
Bare Bones

Endurance

Long Lasting

Kernel of Truth

## Cycle Phases



### Phase 10 Conjunction

Conjunction

A Vision

New Ideas

Clarity

Clear Seeing

Big Picture

New Beginning

Fresh Start

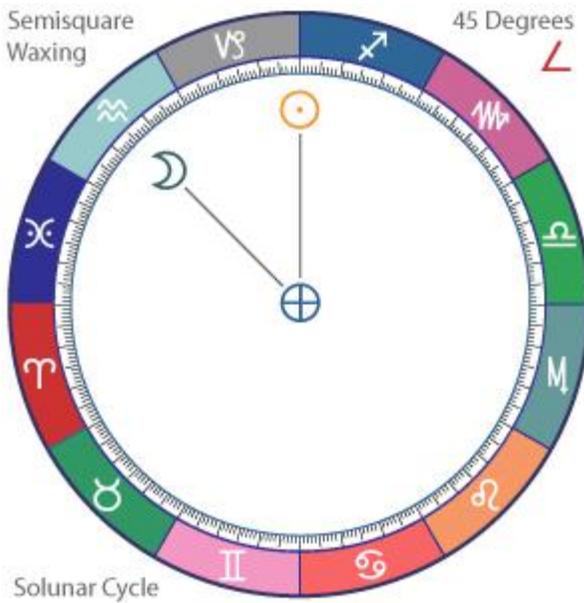
Seed Impulse

Tone

Single Purpose

Conjunction

## Cycle Phases



### **Phase 11 45 Waxing**

045 Semisquare

Planning

Community Vision

Co-Working

Blueprints

Future Goals

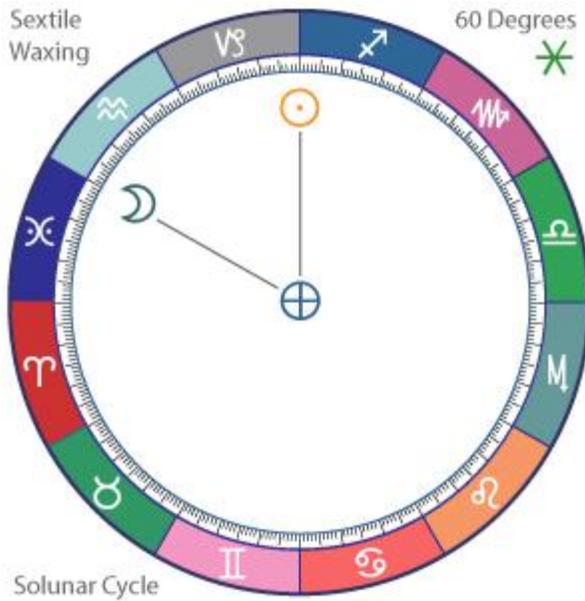
Overcome Obstacles

Strive

Push Forward

Deal With Habits

## Cycle Phases



### **Phase 12 60 Waxing**

060 Sextile Waxing

Working Energy

Constructive

Forward Momentum

Implementing Plans

Obstacles

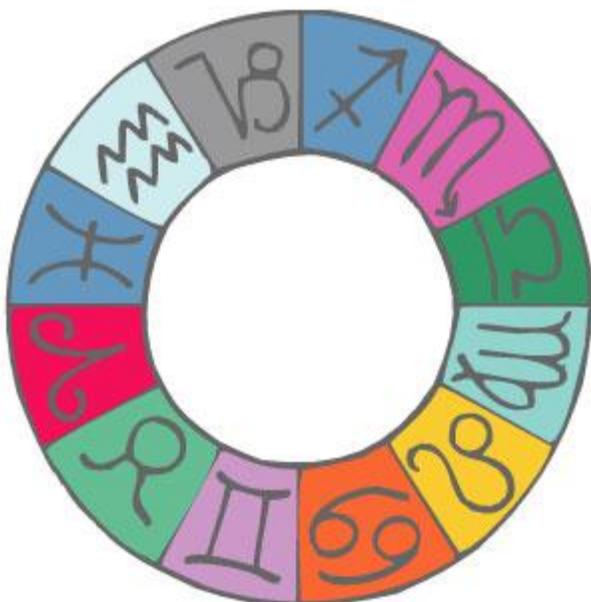
Accept Limitations

Patience

Sacrifice

Put Up With

## Cycle Phases



### ***Cycles Continued***

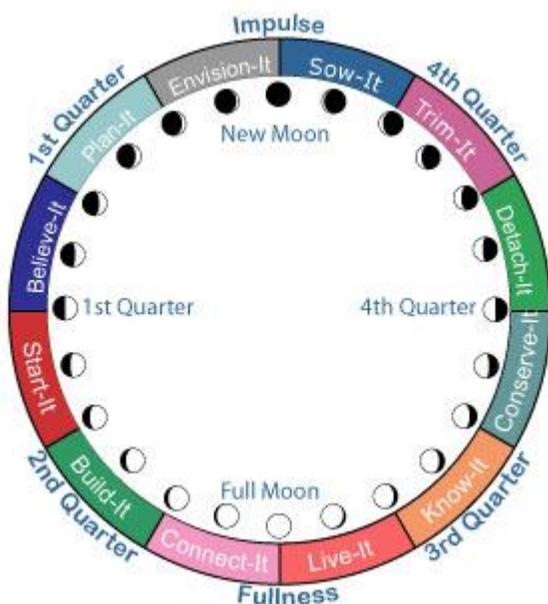
The signs of the zodiac follow each other, endlessly, in a circle or cycle: Taurus follows Aries; Gemini follows Taurus; and so on. The earth makes one complete circle (it completes one cycle) in the course of a year. In any cycle, there is no particular point that is the beginning or the end. You can start at any point and continue on around. All cycles do, however, have phases, and we can start at any phase and follow that phase through the round of changes.

It is customary to measure the zodiac cycle from the beginning of Aries, but many cultures consider the summer and winter solstices more important, and start from there. Philosophically, any point or degree of the circle is a potential starting point. It is not of crucial importance which point is used.

## Cycle Phases

What *is* important to keep in mind is the particular phase of the cycle that each point or section of the zodiac represents, so we need to discuss this.

One fact that makes this learning curve easier is the fact that all cycles have the same phase structure—all of them; this goes for the cycle of the breath, of the heartbeat, of the lunar phases, of the seasons of the year...on and on. Once you understand something about cycle phases you will automatically know a lot about all cycles. This means you will not only know about the cycle of the zodiac, but also about the cycle of the twelve houses, the one of the phases of the Moon, and each cycle of the planetary aspects. One size fits all.



## Cycle Phases

Any cycle can be divided into as many phases as you find helpful. For example, the cycle of the Moon's phases is typically divided into four main phases (New

## Cycle Phases

Moon, 1st Quarter, Full Moon, and 4th Quarter), but some astrologers use eight phases, and Asian astrologers divide the lunar cycle into 30 distinct phases. It all depends on your usage. And, of course, some astrologers interpret all 360 degrees of the zodiac, each with a different meaning. So, it is possible to divide any cycle into as many phases as makes sense—as many as you find useful; but let's start with a very simple cycle, like that of the breath.

### Four Cycle Phases

1. Exhaled    2. Inhaling    3. Inhaled    4. Exhaling    1. Exhaled



### Symbol of the Sun

#### Cycle of the Breath

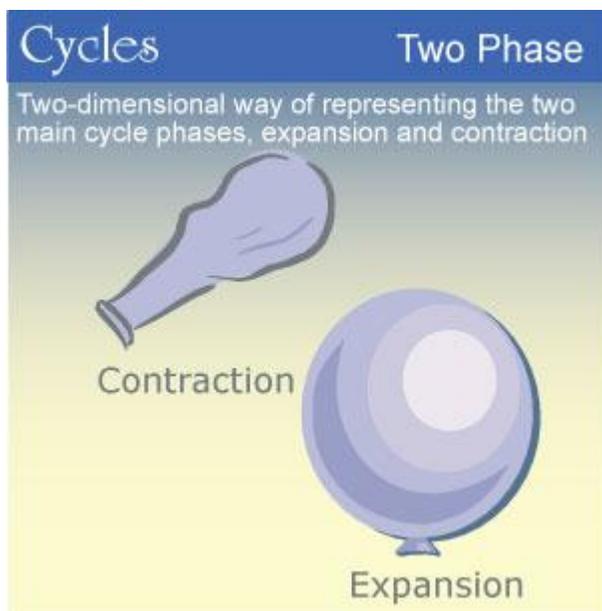
The cycle of the breath is a cycle we carry around with us, so this one is easy for anyone to check out. Although we could start examination at any part of the cycle, it is usual to start with the two distinctive phases, the one of being fully inhaled and the one of being fully exhaled. The fully exhaled phase is analogous to the zodiac sign Capricorn, the New Moon phase, and the Midheaven (10th house). The fully inhaled phase

## Cycle Phases

(holding the breath) is analogous to the zodiac sign Cancer, the Full Moon phase, and the I.C. (4th house). The breath is all breathed in (inhaled and expanded) or the breath is all breathed out (exhaled and depleted).

If we want to analyze the cycle of the breath using four phases instead of the two, then we add a phase for the process of inhaling (the air coming in) and a phase for the process of exhaling (the air going out). Then, the four phases being considered are: exhaled, inhaling, inhaled, and exhaling. These are at the four corners of a square, as far as position. We could easily turn this into an eightfold phase analysis by adding four more phases at the 45-degree points, and this is frequently done, particularly with the lunar cycle; moreover, each of these phases has a meaning, something to tell us. Let's go over a simple cycle.

## Cycle Phases



### **Inward and Outward Points of a Cycle**

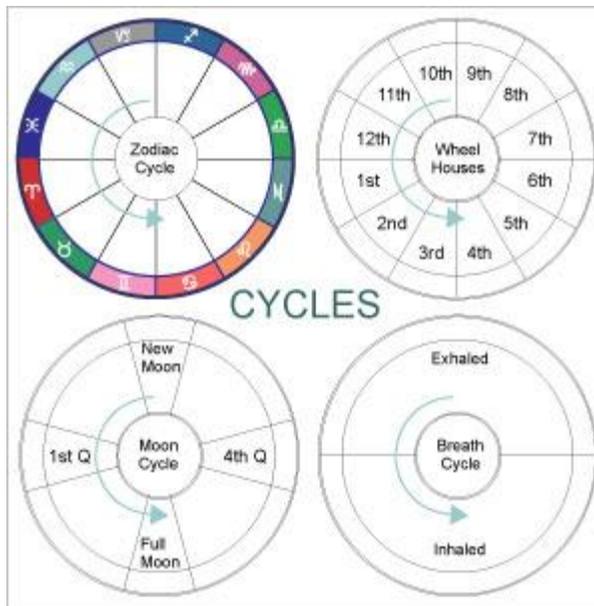
The point of greatest inwardness, inside-ness, or whatever we could agree to call it, marks the beginning of the cycle—our choice of beginning here—the point where everything is withdrawn to its very smallest point. This is often called the "seed" or kernel, as it represents, as does the acorn to the oak tree, the point from which everything stems. It is the seed.

As with the cycle of the breath, or as occurs with the heartbeat, this is the point of complete exhalation or the point when the heart is closed. With the zodiac signs in the northern hemisphere, this is the sign Capricorn and the dead of winter, the time when everything is inside and still. Astrologers agree that this is the seed point, or seed essence, sometimes called the solar tone or start. Everything expands from this point outward. It is our most inward or seed point.

## Cycle Phases

At the other extreme, the point of greatest outward-ness or expansion represents the most physical or outer form that this cycle will bring. If we are talking about the cycle of the breath, then this is when we have filled our lungs with air and they are fully expanded. If it is the cycle of the lunar phases we are looking at, then it is the Full Moon, and so forth. With the zodiac signs, it is the summer sign Cancer, when, at last, in the Northern hemisphere, everything is in bloom and full. If we are looking at the cycle of aspect phases between two planets, then it is the opposition, when the two planets are fully extended and on opposite sides one from the other. Whatever the cycle, small or large, the expanded phase is as outward and external as it gets for this round. It cannot get any more expanded, and, it is only downhill, from a physical standpoint, from this point forward.

## Cycle Phases



### Cycles: Four Main Phases

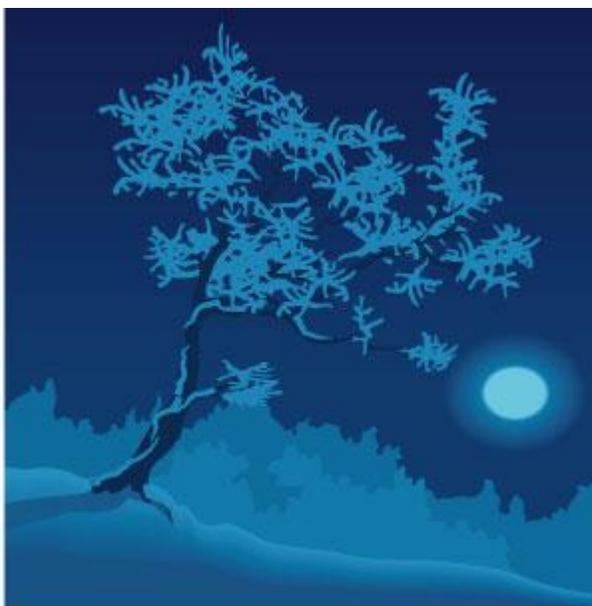
Let's take a quick look at two other phase points we might add, the phase of going outward (waxing) and the phase of going inward (waning). Using the zodiac cycle, the sign Aries becomes the strongest point of going outward, and, as we know, Aries has always been the sign of action, of assertion, of making a statement, and so on. On the other hand, Libra, the strongest point of going inward, has always been associated with leaving the personal, going social and finding a partner—focusing on someone other than your self.

Perhaps you can already see how even a little knowledge of cycle phases makes it easier to understand the zodiac signs. With just some familiarity and practice you will soon be able to not only understand why certain signs have certain attributes but also be able to generate keywords and concepts for the signs yourself. This is why I mentioned that it is much

## Cycle Phases

easier to learn a little about cycles than to spend years memorizing what each sign means and then still not understand anything about the origin of that meaning.

Let's recap a bit. What we have learned so far is that many of the major astrological factors are cycles, are cyclical, that is, they either repeat themselves endlessly, as does the yearly cycle of the zodiac and the phases of the Moon, or, they complete a 360-degree cycle of phases, as do the aspect phase points created by any two planets, similar to the lunar cycle, for instance, the cycle of the Sun and Moon aspects.



### **Cycles Are Organic**

Let's stop being analytical for a moment. Cycles are organic, like the heart beating or the lungs breathing, in and out, open and close. The earth orbiting the sun and the moon orbiting the earth are also organic cycles. We are studying these cycles and trying to understand how

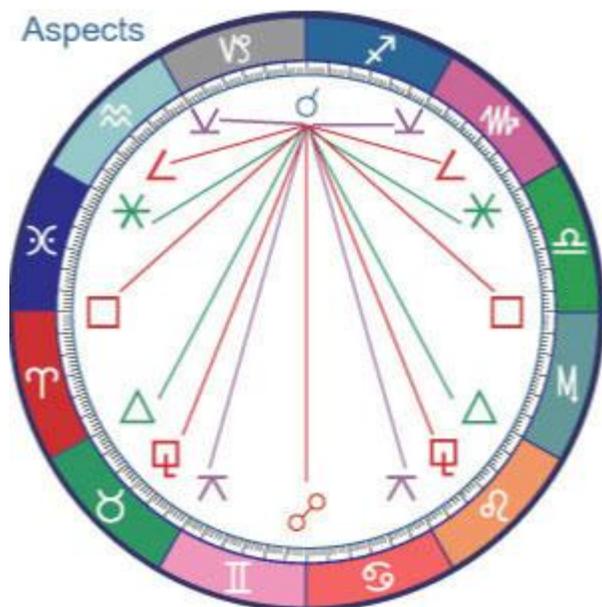
## Cycle Phases

they work, and phase analysis is a tool to help our understanding. Astrology *is* analytical. These organic cycles don't actually pause or stop at the various phase points we are studying, except perhaps at the top and bottom of the cycle, the expanded point and the contracted point, which are actually some kind of event; however, all the points in between are just a smooth movement, expanding or contracting, continuous, and so forth.

On the other hand, our analysis and the phases we have pointed out are not just theoretical or made up. Electrical engineers have definitely isolated the four 45-degree points and noted them as critical points in electrical cycles. The two 90-degree or square points are also considered major points, and so on, through as many phases as we find useful.

The fact that so many astrological factors are cycles makes learning astrology much easier than it otherwise might be. If we learn a little about how cycles work, and what their phases represent, then we can understand any astrological (cyclical) factor, including the signs of the zodiac, the twelve houses, the lunar cycle, and any two-planet aspect cycle. These alone make up the main astrological factors used by astrology.

## Cycle Phases



### **Cycle Phases**

Let's go through a cycle phase by phase, which is a good way to see and understand how a whole cycle works, as well as to learn something about each phase. Since all cycles are roughly the same, it does not matter which cycle we look at; however, since most of us are used to the yearly cycle of the sun signs, we can start there. As for phases, why not just use the standard set of aspects that most astrologers use, being careful to distinguish between waxing and waning aspects. In other words: full-phase aspects.

The diagram shows the familiar zodiac wheel, complete with the major aspect phases we are going to take a look at. Our starting point will be zero degrees of Capricorn, the winter solstice, and the most indrawn or seed-essence point.

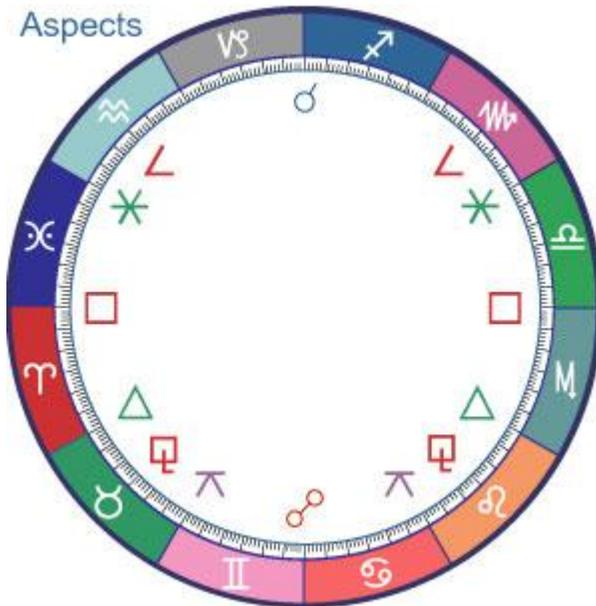
The flow of the phases is in a counter-clockwise direction, moving from Capricorn to Aquarius to Pisces,

## Cycle Phases

and on around. As you can see, aside from the conjunction and opposition aspects (top and bottom center), there are two of each aspect, one set on the left or waxing side of the chart and one set on the right or waning side of the chart. The aspects proceed from conjunction (0 degrees) to semisquare (45 degrees) to sextile (60 degrees) to square (90 degrees) to trine (120 degrees) to sesquiquadrate (135 degrees) to inconjunct (150 degrees) to opposition (180 degrees) and back.

In any cycle, the movement is from the most inward point to the most outward point and back again. This is true of all cycles: the cycle of the heartbeat, the cycle of the breath, the 24-hour cycle of earth's rotation, the lunar cycle, the yearly cycle of the signs, and so on; still larger cycles, for instance that of the Sun orbiting the Galactic Center, take millions of years to complete.

## Cycle Phases



Cycle Keywords/ 0101

### CYCLE KEYWORDS

Conjunction - New Idea

Semisquare (waxing) - Overcoming Resistance

Sextile (waxing) - Making Plans

Square (waxing) - Positive Start

Trine (waxing) - Building

Sequiquadrate (waxing) - Push On

Inconjunct (waxing) - Connect Up

Opposition - Result or Experience

Inconjunct (waning) - Dawning

Sequiquadrate (waning) - Gather Things

## Cycle Phases

Trine (waning) - Conservation

Square (waning) - Responsibility

Sextile (waning) - Analysis

Semisquare (waning) - Encapsulation

### **Too Many Words**

I have given you keywords and illustrations to help in your understanding cycles and how they work. I have done my best to point out the nature of cycles. If this 'pointing out' did not work, I have no other recourse but to write more detailed descriptions.

For some, it may be helpful to read these following descriptions of each phase. I do this with mixed feelings, knowing how utterly wordy and abstract such descriptions are. Even as I write this out, I can see it is just too much—too many words. You can always skip over this section. However, for some of you, it may be helpful to have the many words, and the chance to hear and be able to say the same thing in several different ways, as a kind of verbal therapy. Anyway, here they are:

## Cycle Phases



### **Conjunction - New Idea**

In a word: the seed impulse, pure potential.

This is the most encapsulated moment, the most indrawn point, and the vibration that starts a new cycle. It is a vibration sending out a pulse, a new beginning; a beginning made from the end and result of the previous cycle. It is an idea in its purest or most direct form, pure thought.

It is clarity, but very pure and seminal. Above all, it is something new that is strong enough to overcome and rise above the past and assert itself, however subtly. It cannot be denied. It will have its day. This is a vision point.

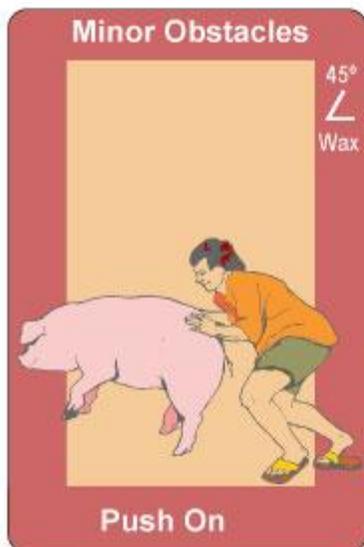
## Cycle Phases



### **Semisextile (Waxing) - Making Plans**

The seed impulse or tone of this cycle is: working. This is a good point to plan out a project, to begin to grasp what must be done or accomplished. The purity of purpose and 'one-pointedness' makes for communal vision and sharing, and makes co-workers easy to come by and have solidarity with. There is a definite sense of "can do"—let's just go and do it!

## Cycle Phases



### **Semisquare (waxing) - Overcome Resistance**

Here some perhaps token resistance to forward motion must be negotiated. It could be residue from the past—whatever might rise up and block passage to progress. It is to be expected, and, since this is the waxing or outgoing phase, it is appropriate to push hard at this point and wade through whatever it is. This is not a place to back off or to take no for an answer. Gentle but persistent forward motion is recommended. This is a waxing phase or upswing, a moving outward.

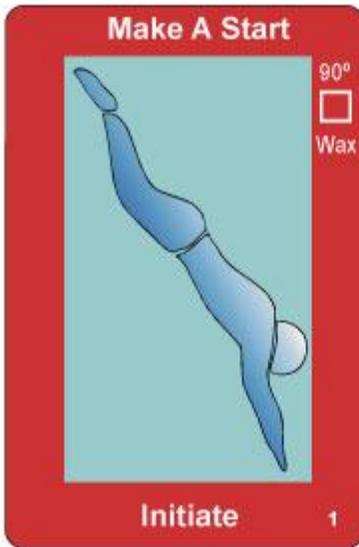
## Cycle Phases



### **Sextile (waxing) - Paying the Dues**

This, the first real burst of energy, and perhaps a sense of being freed up, with real space to move and make progress. There is also the confidence and strength to put up with and endure, for the sake of accomplishing the greater goal and good, the petty problems and hindrances that will get in your way. Self-sacrifice is easier here than elsewhere.

## Cycle Phases



### **Square (waxing) - Positive Start**

This is one of the four cardinal points, a transition or turning point, and, in this case, one that is part of the waxing phase—good for moving forward, making a statement, and manifesting something new that is visible for all to see. This is the first step out of the planning or theoretical stage and into the arena of action. Here something can be done and made to appear. Positive.

## Cycle Phases



### **Trine (waxing) - Building**

Now past the starting point, there is energy here, and space/room to really accomplish things, to build something solid. The actual embodiment of plans into something real is what takes place now, a drawing around oneself whatever form fits the seed idea that one started with—this is what is being carried forward here and made manifest. It is where we draw things to and around us. Possessions.

## Cycle Phases



### **Sequiquadrate (waxing) - Push On**

This is another 'push comes to shove' point, where various resistances or obstacles may appear on the path. This should not be a major problem, since we should already be on a roll here; therefore, this is the point to press on at, to push forward—not a place to withdraw or hold back at. One has the control, energy, and forward momentum to push forward, as well as the strength to overcome obstacles and blockage: Gaining control and confidence.

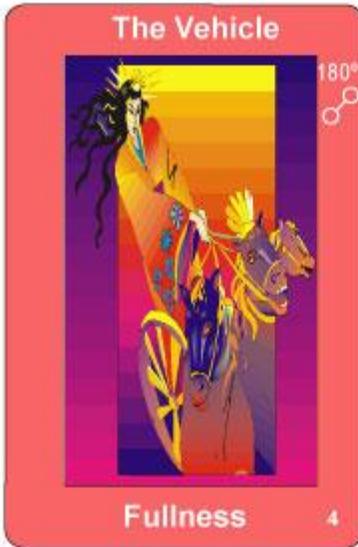
## Cycle Phases



### **Inconjunct (waxing) - Connect Up**

This is the last point at which to push forward; and, actually, any action or drive should be devoted to connecting things up, to tying up loose ends, and to bringing whatever is already in the works to completion. Not a time to start anything new, or to push too hard. Finish it up, and use a light touch at that. Connectivity. Exploration.

## Cycle Phases



### **Opposition - Result or Experience**

The result or full manifestation of whatever has been building up to this point is here. This is it, the full experience, the ride—whatever it can be. This is not a time to push, not a time to start anything new, nor a time to speculate or think. Rather, it is a time to savor the experience, or, more simply, to live it: The experience.

## Cycle Phases



### **Inconjunct (waning) - Dawning**

We are past the experience, past the opposition, and, just far enough past so that there can be some dawning awareness, a coming to mind of what it was all about. We can begin to get a handle on what has just taken place and perhaps have some sense of accomplishment and pride in a job well down—in the experience. There is, also perhaps, the desire to share with others and tell about this experience, even to teach and explain. No more push. The secret here is to let things arise and come to you rather than pushing to get them.

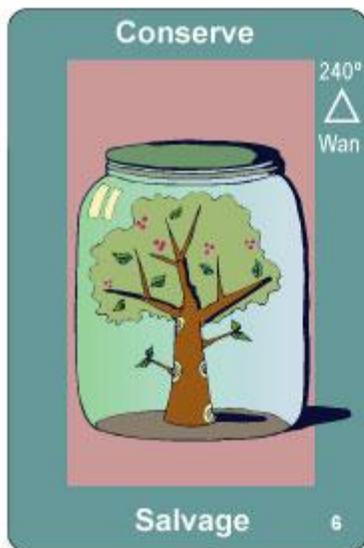
## Cycle Phases



### **Sequiquadrate (waning) - Gather Things 1**

Another resistance point, but this is one that will not respond to further pushing. We are now on the waning side of things; so, rather than push for what we want, we learn to respond, to give in, and to work with and manipulate what confronts us. We work things through us, in the sense of Aikido, helping things to pass rather than confronting them headlong. Facilitation.

## Cycle Phases



### **Trine (waning) - Conservation**

A rush of useful energy and enough space to use it in, but not the kind of energy required for building things or driving forward. Rather, here is energy for removing the scaffolding, conserving and hanging onto what you can from the current situation: Salvaging. The party is over and you are taking down the decorations, saving what is significant.

## Cycle Phases



### **Square (waning) - Responsibility**

This is another cardinal or turning point, this time, a turning away from the outside and toward the inside, away from the personal and toward the impersonal, the impartial and the objective. There is, here, a sense of responsibility—responding to what is, reflecting rather than initiating, and the managing of a situation rather than creating one. Reflection, mirroring.

## Cycle Phases



### **Sextile (waning) - Analysis**

An expansive time with increased energy; there is the sense of being on the outside looking in. Here there are extreme critical faculties, as well as the ability to analyze and criticize, a seeing of what should be kept and what can be pruned away— the purging of what is unessential. This is not a time to begin new things or to push, rather, it is a time to receive, observe, and consolidate.

## Cycle Phases



### **Semisquare (waning) - Packing It In**

This is a resistant point, not a place to push but rather a place to make effort, as in bearing down or collecting everything together, packing things down.

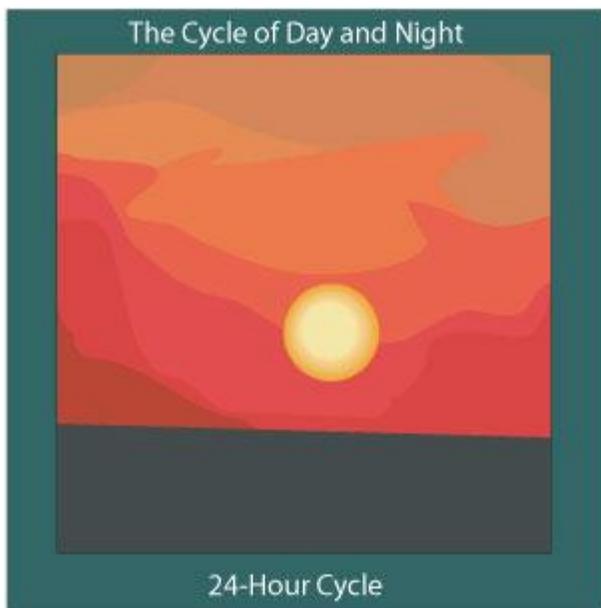
## Cycle Phases



### **SemiSextile (waning) - Encapsulation**

This is a drawing down time. Having removed what should be removed, it is a time to pack it in and salvage what is essential, reducing it to its most compact form. Not a time to push but a time to consolidate: Building the kernel.

## Cycle Phases



### ***The Study of Cycles***

For now, we could define Astrology as the study and practice of the cycles we can find present in our life. We study astrology and cycles so as to get a better idea of what is happening to us in our lives, and we practice or put to use what we have found through our study and understanding. It will do no harm to start with the dictionary definition of a cycle, although we will soon get much less formal.

The Oxford Universal Dictionary states:

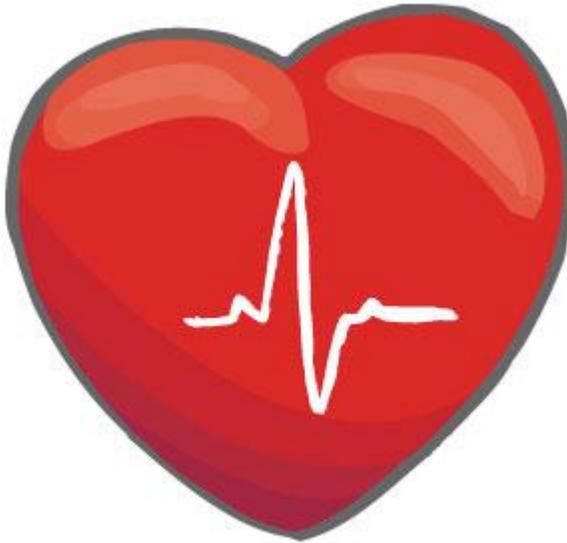
Cycle: A circle or orbit in the heavens; a recurrent period in a definite period of years; a period in which a certain round of events or phenomena is completed, recurring in the same order in equal succeeding periods; a long, indefinite period, an age; a round, course, or period through which anything runs to its completion, etc.

## Cycle Phases

Therefore, a cycle is something that happens in our life again and again, and always in roughly the same form or format. Each of us cycles through periods of feeling good or normal and of feeling bad and not-so-good. This is a cycle none of us seem able to avoid. We experience all kinds of cycles all the time. The first step is to be aware of that fact.

Cycles are so important to the study of astrology that understanding what the dictionary has to say about them is only a start, and quite an abstract one at that. We must extend and deepen this understanding until we can see cycles not just as formal concepts, but as they are happening to us right now—see them at work around us in our day-to-day lives. The understanding of these cycles in our lives may come slowly at first, but they are not all that difficult see.

It can take a little time to pick up on these ideas, much less experience them happening in the life around us, but it is well worth our effort. Without becoming aware of the cycles in our lives—the ones we have always been experiencing—and learning to recognize them as they occur, our understanding of cycles remains just an abstract idea—a bunch of words. Let's go over this again.



### **Life as Cycles**

Our life is filled with cycles. There are very short cycles, short cycles, long cycles, and very long cycles. All cycles repeat or return on themselves—they happen again. Some examples of convenient-sized cycles that we can understand and measure with our mind include the cycle of our breath, the cycle of the seasons of the year, and the cycle of day and night. The cycle of our heart beating is almost too small and fast for us to keep in mind. Smaller cycles yet include cellular cycles and, of course, atomic and sub-atomic cycles. These smaller cycles happen so often or so fast that they are a blur to our mind. They fall through or beneath our awareness and make up the ground of our consciousness.

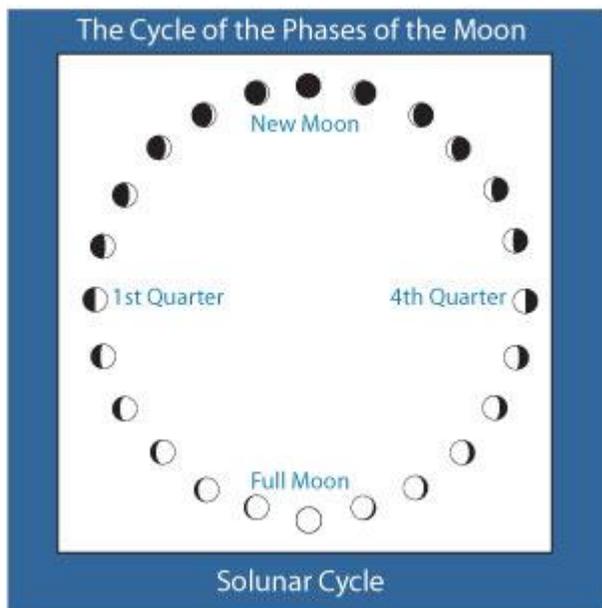
When we look for long cycles, the planets provide good examples. We live through and experience the two-year cycle of the planet Mars, the 12-year cycle of Jupiter, and even the 30-year cycle of Saturn; however, many

## Cycle Phases

people don't live through the 84-year cycle of Uranus, much less through the very longer cycles of Neptune and Pluto. While it is possible to grasp the meaning or import of these longer sized cycles with our mind, it can be very hard to bring home the meaning of them—to practice them consciously on a day-to-day level. Then, there are cycles, such as the one of our Sun orbiting the Galactic Center, that take so many millions of years to complete that, for our purposes, they assume the proportions of a straight line. The portion of these larger size circles or cycles that we can witness or comprehend in our lifetime is so very small that they appear as a straight line. We cannot even see the curve of the line, much less the return.

Thus our awareness is bounded on the one hand by the incessant hum of smaller cycles and on the other by the long-theme straight-lined cycles. This leaves us with an awareness or consciousness of those cycles that we CAN recognize and appreciate. At this point, it is important for you to have a beginning understanding that our entire life is cyclic. It is all cycles—nothing else. I will explain.

## Cycle Phases



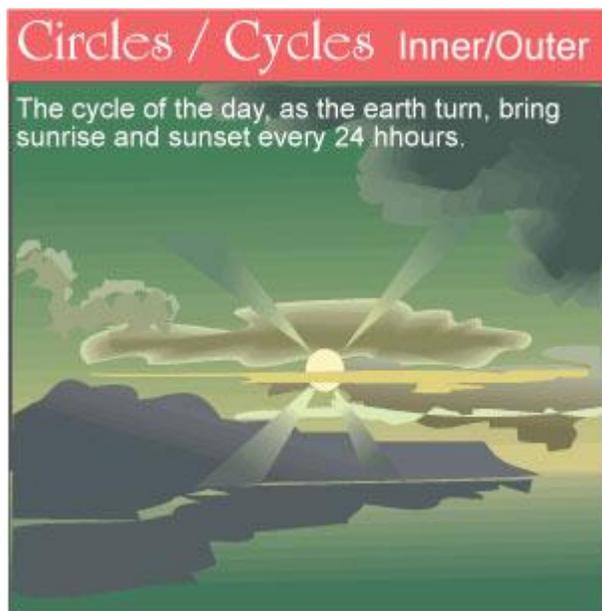
### **A Tangle of Cycles**

For now, let's not even try and sort out the tangle of cycles in which we are embedded, saying "This is the Mars cycle doing this. That is the Jupiter cycle over there doing that." and so on. It is quite enough to become aware that our moods, capabilities, attitudes, etc. come and go in a very regular manner. We can wake up minutes, hours, days, months or years later and remember that we have been here before; that we have went through a patch just like this; we may not have felt this good in years. These are cycles we are recognizing for the first time, even though they have been there all along.

Many people have no awareness of the cycles they are going through each day or month. They may not even recognize when they don't feel very good or when they do feel very good, so embedded are they in the tangle of life's cycles. This is why the first step is to develop an

## Cycle Phases

awareness of how you *do* feel and then begin to cultivate an awareness of the cycles in life.



### Investment and Returns

Our heart beats, cycle after cycle. Our lungs open and close our whole life, in the cycle of the breath. Expand, contract, expand, contract. These cycles last as long as life. They return or repeat each second. We live on their returns. We count on them for life.

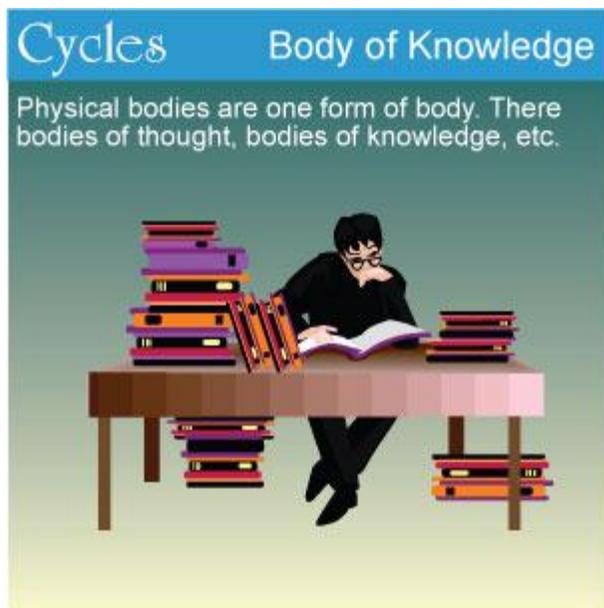
In a similar but more abstract way, our whole life depends on this same kind of return or continued repetition. Success means succession, simple continuing. The return of the sun to the eastern horizon each morning, the return of the spring rains each year, the return of youth in the form of the next generation. As you study astrology, you will find that in a very real sense we are made up of these returns. We ARE and continue to BE by means of these returns. We are

## Cycle Phases

conscious only of what returns on itself or restates itself. Anything that does not return or repeat itself is soon forgotten and, from our point of view, IS NOT—has no more reality.

For example: investment and return. If we make an investment which brings us no return, that investment is lost to us. We have lost it. In fact, if we are smart, we cease investing, when?—at the ‘point of no return’, of course. We are habituated to investing in something (even in a friendship) and receiving some return—sowing and reaping, but usually getting something back. What’s in it for me? If nothing comes back, we stop investing in that person or project. We invest in our life in the same manner, and this concept is a key to understanding how astrology works.

## Cycle Phases



### **Making Bodies**

In day-to-day living each of us faces a situation that follows all of the laws of cycles—and the law of investment and returns. It is very important that this be perceived and understood.

You are investing time in reading this article. We are all looking for a return of some sort from almost everything we do. You want to get something out of it, something back for your effort. It is not as simple as saying, "What's in it for me?" It is not simple selfishness, but rather more like a blind person feeling their way along a corridor, it is how we feel our way through life—by experiencing and feeling for the returns.

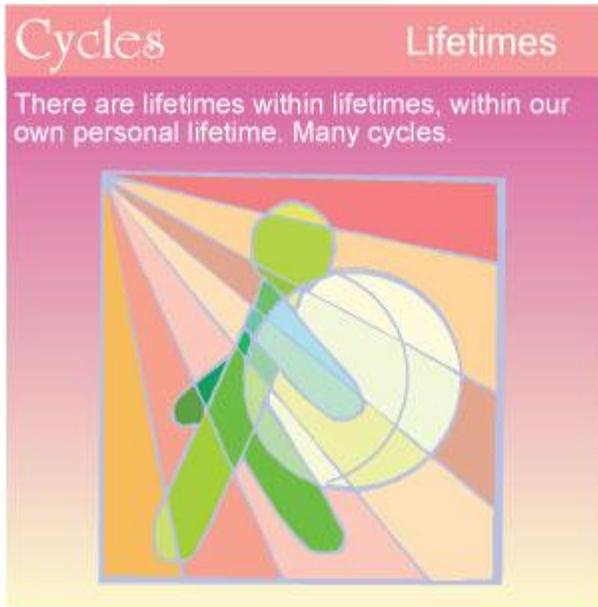
Even now, while reading this, you are creating a body of knowledge, called astrology, through your efforts to understand what I am writing. I apologize if this sounds too abstract. I am trying to say it simply.

## Cycle Phases

This concept of bodies, how they are made and unmade, is important. We are used to thinking of a body as a physical body: the body of a cat, of a dog, a person, etc. And yet, we often speak of a body of knowledge or a body of thought. We may feel that this or that idea embodies our hopes and dreams, and so on.

These alternate uses for the word 'body' are very important in our work with astrology. It is important to recognize that there are many different kinds of bodies; that bodies are created with the mind as well as according to the flesh, and, that these bodies (all bodies) hold together for a while and then gradually come apart. Everything under the sun only lasts so long and no longer. How long something lasts depends on how well it was made or put together—for instance, a well-made guitar outlasts a shoddier one. Learning to see these many kinds of bodies in our lives, in their creation and formation, in their duration, and, in their eventual dissolution, can provide instant access to difficult to understand concepts such as re-incarnation, karma, and the like. If you have always wanted to understand re-incarnation, then this approach is a key help for such understanding.

## Cycle Phases



### **As Below, So Above**

When we try to understand everything in relation to our physical body and personal lifetime, our own life and death, we are biting off a very large chunk. It is hard to understand and grasp the meaning of our whole lifetime since we are right in the middle of it. Most of us can't seem to remember life before our birth, and we have trouble grasping what life after death might be; we can be left with some very large questions—some real doubts.

The very same process of birth, life, and death is happening all around us in countless examples. In fact, there is nothing else. It can be said we have lifetimes within lifetimes within our own personal lifetime; it is possible to examine these smaller lives or cycles in their entirety and, by analogy, get a picture of what our personal lifetime must also be like. If we spend considerable time now on these concepts it is because

## Cycle Phases

any real understanding of astrology depends upon grasping the essential nature of these cycles and of lifetimes—in understanding their value. Without this understanding, we are left with rote memorization. The primary goal of this e-book is to enable you to generate the details of astrology, yourself, rather than just memorize some of them.

In the first part of this book it was stated that, in this course, we are busy creating a body of knowledge for ourselves called 'astrology'. This body of knowledge is an example of a mini-incarnation. We are creating a body or a vehicle in which to live and experience astrology. It is hoped that astrology can become a way, then, for us to know and experience life from a new perspective.



### Who Is The Spaceman?

Here is the story of how I first began to understand this idea. It was back in the early 1970s, and I was studying and cataloguing all of the objects out there in the heavens, *and*, there were all *kinds* of them: bright stars, clusters, nebulae, black holes, quasars—you name it. This was before home computers were available, so I was busy calculating the positions of all of these celestial objects on a hand calculator, transforming them from astronomical coordinates into astrological coordinates and seeing where they fit in on the astrological charts. Eventually, I published a book detailing all of these points, titled: *Astrophysical Directions*. This was in 1976.

The more I studied and learned about the countless objects in space, the more I gradually realized that they were all one form or another of stars. Not only that, but that all of astronomy was about the birth, life, and death of stars—all of it. These stars came into being, they were born, they lasted so long, and finally, they died away, in one way or another. Some of them went out with a bang, others with a whimper—as they say. Of course, it did not escape my notice that our lives here on earth are very similar: that we are born, live for a time, and then die. Moreover, every thing we do in life begins, endures for a while, and then comes apart. The energy that was put into any form lasts until the end of that form and is then released. It breaks up.

The lives of the stars, and of every celestial object out there, together with the lives of all of us here on earth, are identical; they follow the very same pattern. Out there, written across the heavens; down here, acted out on earth—the same. There was nothing foreign or exotic out there in space that was not also right here in my own life; ‘All,’ was of the same stuff. Along with this

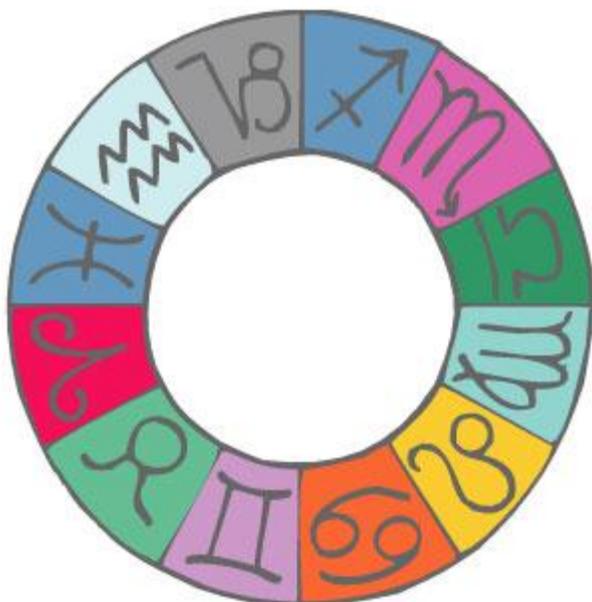
## Cycle Phases

realization came another one, one having much more important implications, and this was:

There is no different intelligence out there than what is found down here. In fact, we are, already, all of us, out there—in space. We are as much a part of space, of the solar system, the galaxy, and anything more we could imagine out there, as anything else. We are ‘out there’ right now, sitting on earth, as it travels 67,000 miles an hour through space. What could be more ‘out there’ than that?

This understanding helped me to overcome a feeling and a fear I had had since childhood, namely, that man was but a tiny warm speck in an endless, somewhat alien and cold, universe. I understood— gradually, for sure—that whatever I was or was not, I was an equal part, not only of all creation, but of the entire universe. In other words, I was (and we are) the intelligent life that we look to find in outer space. I was the spaceman. Out there and in here became the same for me. This understanding has helped.

## Cycle Phases



### ***The Twelve Phases***

What we are presenting here is a way to look at the aspects occurring between any two planets, or bodies, and how these aspects might be interpreted. In this example, we will use the monthly cycle of the Moon as it moves around the earth in a 360-degree cycle/circle; however, you can use this type of interpretive approach for any two bodies where the faster planet or body makes aspects in regard to the slower one. In these diagrams, the slower body, the Sun, is fixed in the 12-o'clock position at the top of the chart, and the faster-moving planet, the Moon, moves through the cycle.

Any aspect cycle, such as that of the monthly cycle of the Sun and the Moon, describes a circle of 360 degrees. In other words, the Moon starts from a conjunction with the Sun (New Moon) at zero degrees (they both are in the same zodiac place), and then the

## Cycle Phases

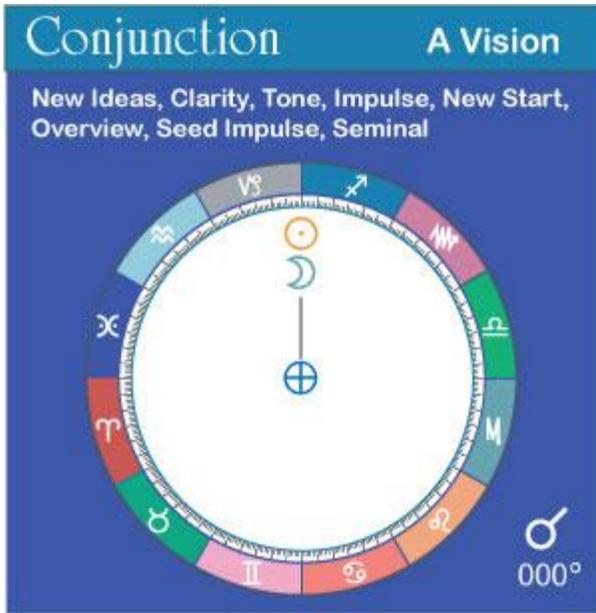
Moon starts to move away from the Sun, day by day, and degree by degree. This is the solunar cycle.

This 360-degree cycle is usually divided into a various number of phases; here, we are using the standard twelve 30-degree sections. To make it (I hope) easier to remember, I am here giving these sections the names of the twelve zodiac signs; however, please note that this does NOT mean that the Moon is in one of these signs.

What it does mean is that the Moon is at the phase it would be—as with a clock—if the Sun is considered fixed at the Capricorn position at the top of the chart. Look at the diagram upper-left, and the diagrams for each successive phase.

Understanding this approach can be very useful in interpreting any kind of aspect.

## Cycle Phases



### Phase 10: Capricorn Phase

Aspect: 0 to 30 Degrees

You should be able to sense a new beginning, with some fresh ideas burning brightly, the lighting up of this time with clarity, and with visions of what can be accomplished. You can see what needs to be done 'right now', and also what needs to be done farther on up the road. You may feel inspired.

## Cycle Phases



### Phase 11: Aquarius Phase 6

Aspect: 30 to 60 Degrees

Putting new ideas to work is important here, using any and all of the help you can get, very much community oriented. You want the new plans you are making to succeed and manifest; however, this could be a moment where push may come to shove and things get stuck, or, just a little sticky. Here is a chance to move beyond old habits, beyond whatever may be obstructing your way and actually get moving on things that need to be done; however, it may not be easy.

## Cycle Phases

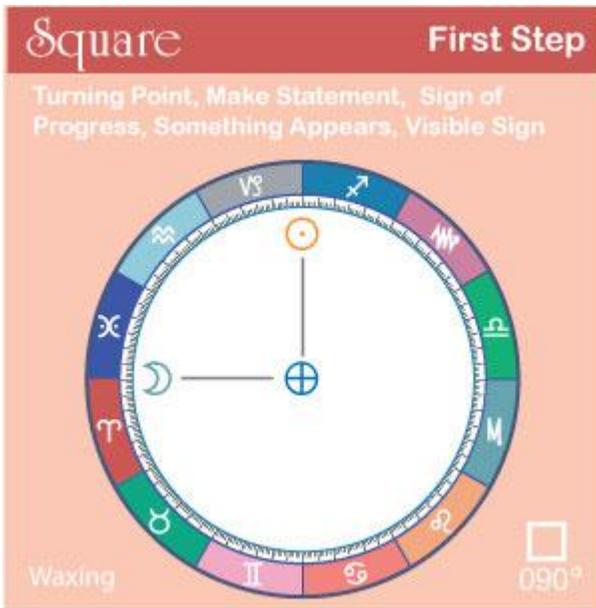


### Phase 12: Pisces Phase

Aspect: 90 to 90 Degrees

If you are looking for a time when things free up a bit, and the going might get easier, this is it. Plan things out, and get a better grip on the forces around you. For the sake of what you care for, it is better to let outmoded or unimportant things pass and to look toward the goal. Keep your eye on the ball. This may require acceptance of "what is" (and of what is not perfect situation) in order to get your new plans launched.

## Cycle Phases



### **Phase 01: Aries Phase**

Aspect: 90 to 120 Degrees

This is one of those critical points where continued effort and action on your part can make the difference and bring about real change, producing something that cannot be easily ignored. The result of your plans and ideas should have an established foothold here. No time for hesitating, just do it.

## Cycle Phases



### Phase 02: Taurus Phase

Aspect: 120 to 150 Degrees

By this point, things should not only be started, but well on their way; it is a good time to take control and point things in the direction you want them to go. This is a point of least resistance and of solid momentum; therefore, the making of a solid effort will take you a long way. Also, this is the time to embody your ideas, to build them, physically, into something solid.

## Cycle Phases



### Phase 03: Gemini Phase

Aspect: 150 to 180 Degrees

Connect it up. Establish communications. Complete the detailed infrastructure. This is not so much a time to continue expanding, but rather one in which to do the finish work and wrap up the project. Explore all of the nooks and crannies while you have the energy.

## Cycle Phases

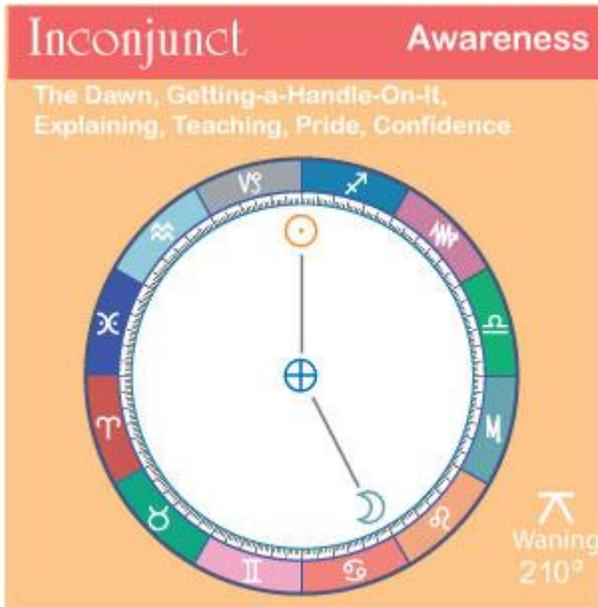


### Phase 04: Cancer Phase

Aspect: 180 to 210 Degrees

Stop the engines, because this is it! Don't push on any farther because you have accomplished what is possible for this round. From here, you coast and experience things for a while. This is the fullness you have worked for, such as it can be. Just let go and ride.

## Cycle Phases

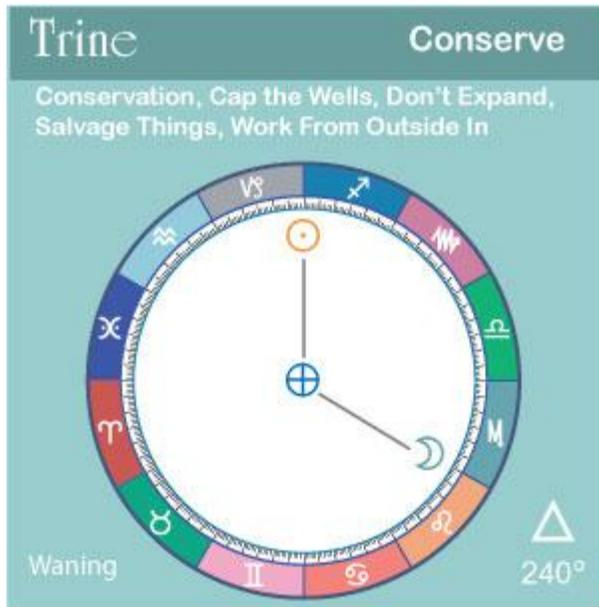


### Phase 05: Leo Phase

Aspect: 210 to 240 Degrees

You are in the thick of things, perhaps just starting to get a handle on what is going on around you; this may be a sticking point. This is not the time for action— to do more—but rather a time for letting things take their own course. You should be able to get a better idea of what will come out of this by just riding it out. Now is when you can own this event, feeling confidence and pride in what you have done.

## Cycle Phases

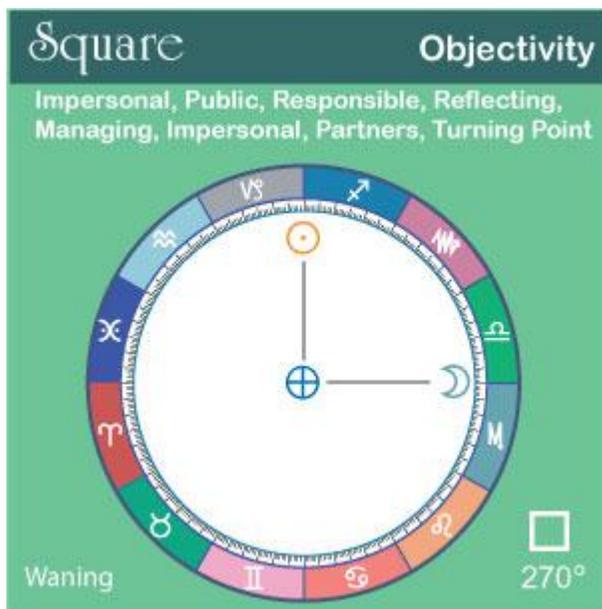


### Phase 06: Virgo Phase

Aspect: 240 to 270 Degrees

This is a time to take stock and step back while you still have plenty of energy and a growing understanding of your situation. Things are throttling down, so you may want to conserve your gains, plugging some of the leaks: Conservation.

## Cycle Phases



### Phase 07: Libra Phase

Aspect: 270 to 300 Degrees

This is a major turning point, one where you can just let go. It is a point where you find it easy to turn away from purely personal worries and memories and take a more reflective and impersonal point of view. You could feel a growing sense of responsibility and a willingness to just 'grow up'.

## Cycle Phases



### Phase 08: Scorpio Phase

Aspect: 300 to 330 Degrees

You should be able to see not only the problems at hand but also have the insight and energy necessary to actually do something about them, separating the good parts and culling out whatever is excessive and holding you back.

## Cycle Phases



### **Phase 09: Sagittarius Phase**

Aspect: 330 to 360 (zero) Degrees

This is a more inward time, a time which involves ignoring the external world and giving attention to things that really matter, to the things that will last.

## Cycle Phases



### ***Phase Details***

The signs, houses, aspects and many other astrological cycles can be divided up into various phases. All cycles share the same phase structure, so if we learn about the basic phases of one cycle, we automatically know about them for any other cycle. Let's go over them.

## Cycle Phases



### **Phase 10**

000 Degrees

The Vision (CJN)

Idea time. Something new sparks forth, perhaps inspiring plans and an effort to get the word out.

## Cycle Phases



### **Phase 11**

045 Degrees

Community Plans (SSQ)

New plans and fresh ideas meet resistance from the past and have to be worked with. Getting more involved.

## Cycle Phases



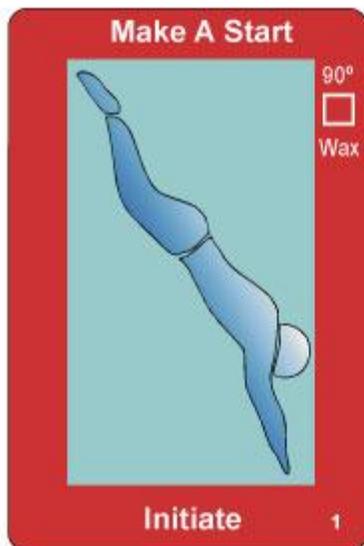
### Phase 12

060 Degrees

Paying the Dues (SXT)

An easier time, a time perfect for moving things ahead; a time which should be made use of; any progress, however, will depend on putting up with some major and minor inconveniences that stand in the way. Getting more involved.

## Cycle Phases



### **Phase 01**

090 Degrees

Making a Start (SQR)

Seeing plans and new ideas through to actuality, making a visible start, something to be seen; also, obstacles will appear. Getting more involved.

## Cycle Phases



### **Phase 02**

120 Degrees

Embodying It (TRI)

A time of increased ease or energy, a time when ideas can be embodied and real progress in implementing or building infrastructure can take place. Getting more involved.

## Cycle Phases



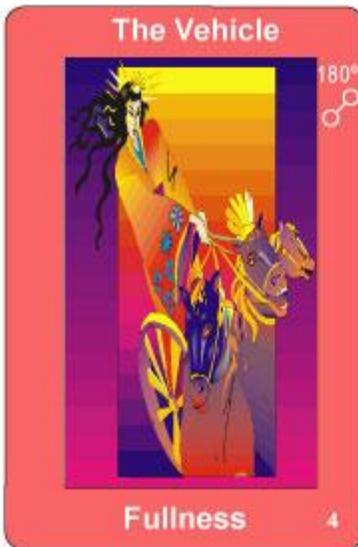
### Phase 03

150 Degrees

Making Connections (INC)

A time to complete or finish things; to extend and follow out connections down to the last detail; not a time for starting anything new. Getting more involved.

## Cycle Phases



### **Phase 04**

180 Degrees

The Experience (OPP)

This is time to experience and feel something in its fullness; a time of no past and no future. Take it in.

## Cycle Phases



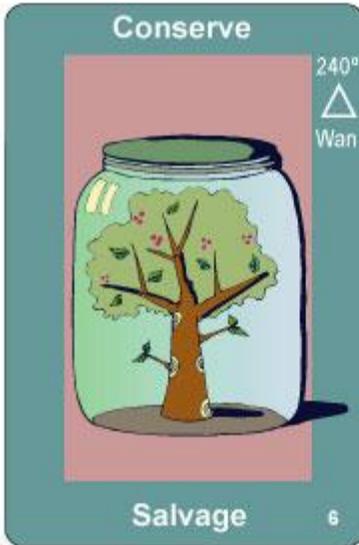
### **Phase 05**

225 Degrees

Awareness and Use (SQQ)

Getting something out of an experience—perhaps pride and awareness—and also learning how to handle other things related to that experience. Reflecting and stepping back.

## Cycle Phases



### **Phase 06**

240 Degrees

Conservation and Care (TRI)

This is an easier time, a time when we learn to care for an experience, perhaps learning to salvage or save what we can of a situation. Reflecting and stepping back.

## Cycle Phases



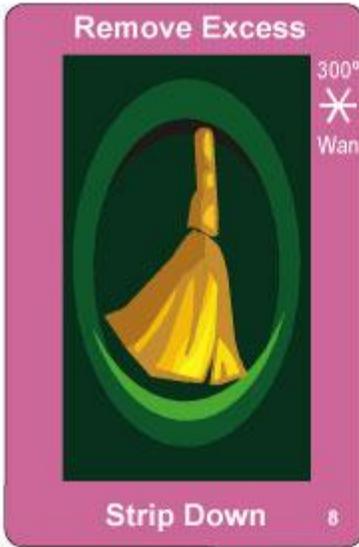
### **Phase 07**

270 Degrees

Objectivity and Response (SQR)

This is a turning point, turning away from a more personal point of view and toward a more public, impersonal and objective viewpoint. Reflecting and stepping back.

## Cycle Phases



### **Phase 08**

300 Degrees

Analyzing and Excess (SXT)

Critical powers of observation; a focusing on detail;  
looking to pick out the good and throw away the rest:  
Reflecting and stepping back.

## Cycle Phases



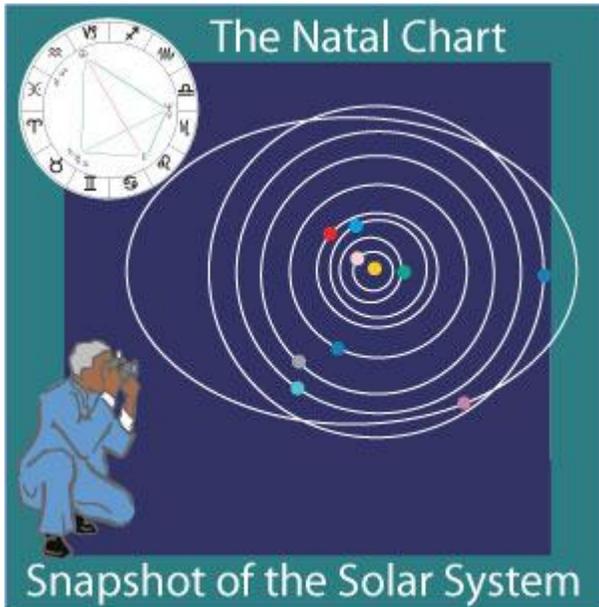
### **Phase 09**

330 Degrees

Seed Encapsulation (SSX)

Boiling things down to the essence; encapsulating experience. Reflecting and stepping back.

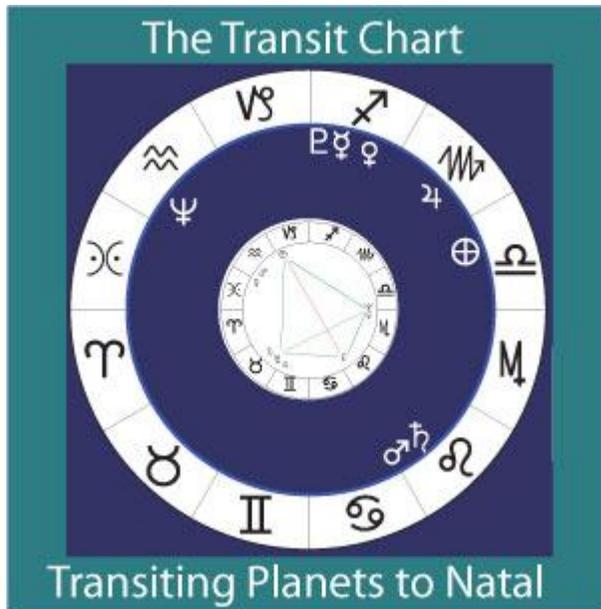
## ***Transits***



### **Snapshot**

The astrology chart is a snapshot of the solar system at the moment of your birth; the Sun, the Moon and the planets, however, don't stop moving. They are not frozen in time as your birth chart is. They continue moving in the heavens day by day and year by year. Today, as you read this, they are out there, somewhere, moving steadily ahead through space and time. Do they still affect us? How do they impact our natal chart? This is what we will cover in this section.

## Transits

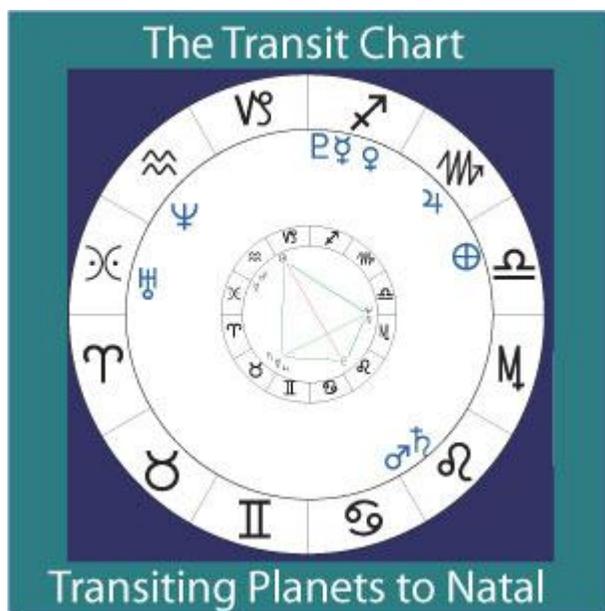


### Charting It

At this point, you should be familiar with your natal chart—whether it is geocentric or heliocentric does not matter. The natal chart is fixed in time—freeze-framed—a snapshot of the solar system at your birth. In the diagram above, we see my own helio natal chart in the center. Around it, on the outer band, are the planets as they are on the day I write this, April 7, 2007. The familiar band of the zodiac is shown on the outside to provide a reference point.

We can see my natal planets (chart center) and the transiting planets (outer) band, as they are placed against the zodiac for April 7th.

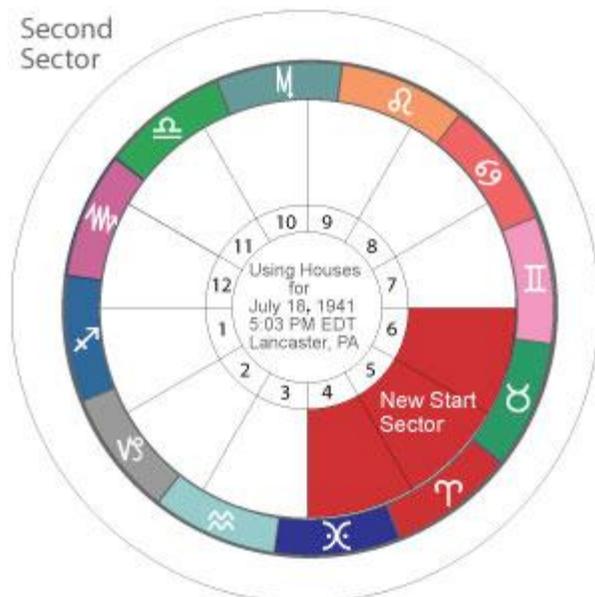
## Transits



### The Bi-Wheel

Here are both sets of planets placed in a single chart form, which is how astrologers like to look at transits and natal positions. This is called a bi-wheel chart form. The natal planets are in the center, the transiting planets (of today) are on the outside. For clarity's sake, I have not drawn in the degree, zodiac sign or minutes for the Sun, the Moon, the planets or the house cusps; however, in a standard chart, most of these would be present.

## Transits



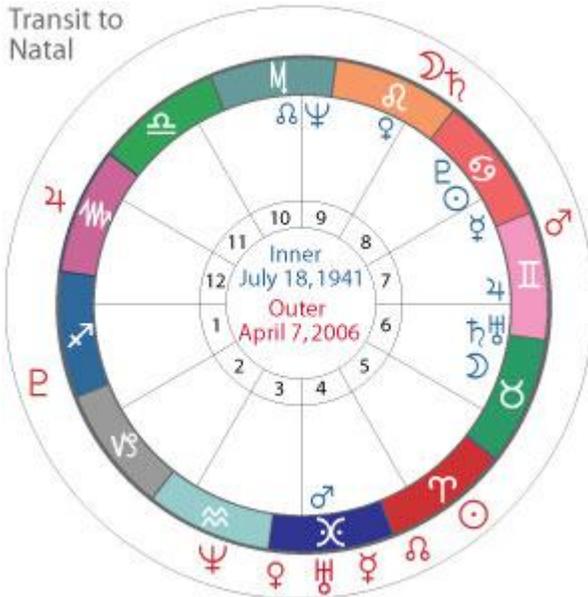
### Transits on the Wheel

Here is a typical bi-wheel chart, with the natal chart on the inside and the transiting planets on the outside. We are using the heliocentric natal chart of my birth as an example. Note that on the outer ring of transiting planets, we have only drawn in the planet symbol, the sign the planet is in, and the degrees. We have left out the minutes, as they tend to clutter up the chart too much. This is the usual method of displaying transits—not showing the minutes.

You can see, by looking at any of the transiting planets (outer ring), where any planet is today in relationship to the natal or birth chart. For example, we can see at a glance that transiting Mars is about to conjoin (make a conjunction aspect) with my natal Pluto. Or, we could note that transiting Neptune is forming a waning square with my natal Saturn. In fact, we could note all kinds of aspects. That is what a transit to natal bi-wheel chart is

## Transits

all about—letting us see how that which is happening today affects our natal chart.



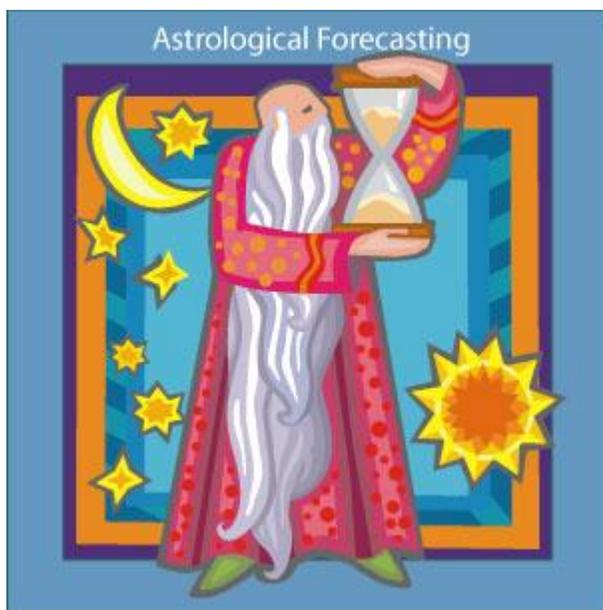
### The Wheel of Houses

Many of you may be more familiar looking at transits on the traditional wheel of houses, so let's look at my natal *geocentric* chart in the standard bi-wheel format. Here you see my natal planets placed in the twelve houses, while the transiting (geocentric) planets have been placed on the outer ring. All planets are placed approximately where they belong in the zodiac, which is shown in color—it is the middle ring.

We can easily see which of the natal houses each transiting planet is in. Keep in mind that, while the natal wheel stays fixed in time, the transiting planets will continue to move through the signs in a counter-clockwise motion, each day a little farther along.

## Transits

Using a computer program, or any standard ephemeris table, we can track each planet as it moves through the houses. Please note that all of these bodies—the Sun, the Moon, and the planets—move at different speeds. The Moon moves so fast that most astrologers don't even bother to track it on a chart form such as this bi-wheel form. On the other hand, the slowest moving planet, Pluto, can spend years in one house. Which brings us to our next topic: how do we interpret these transiting planets moving through our houses?

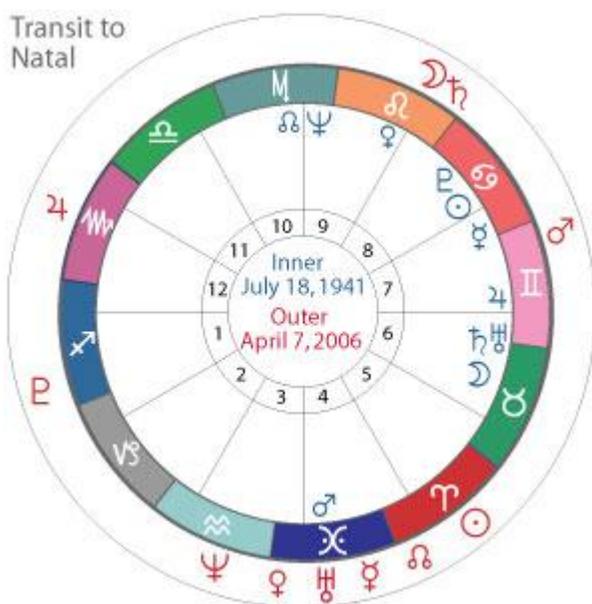


### Interpreting Transits

As mentioned above, when astrologers speak of transits, they are referring to the Sun, the Moon and the planets as they exist today in the heavens above us, in other words: what is happening right now. A chart wheel with today's transiting planets is identical to a natal chart for someone born today. These two charts are the same

## Transits

and they are interpreted using the same astrological techniques: planets, houses, aspects and what-have-you. Another use of the word "transits" by astrologers involves looking at the planets in the sky today and seeing how they compare/relate to your birth or natal chart. This is probably the most common use of the term transits and refers to a most popular astrological technique: transits to a natal chart.



### Transits to the Natal Chart

No astrological technique that I am aware of is used as much as that of looking at your natal chart by transits. We only have one natal chart, but we have transits every day of our lives; we can, therefore, compare today's transits to our natal configurations as often as we feel the need. It is important for us to understand

## Transits

how to best use transits—how to get the most possible use from them.

As mentioned earlier, the natal chart is a snapshot frozen in time. Around this timeframe we put the transiting planets to see how they relate—by aspects, house and sign positions—to the birth chart. We can watch the transiting planets move through the natal houses and through the zodiac signs. The standard way to do this is to show the natal chart in the familiar wheel of 12 houses, but with the zodiac signs shown also, as in the above diagram.

As you can see with this chart form, we can see the transiting planets in the zodiac signs—we can see where they are at present. By placing the wheel of the zodiac alongside the twelve natal house cusps, both the houses and the signs are as they were in the birth chart, and the positions of the transiting planets appear in contrast to the natal signs and houses. We can see at a glance, in the natal chart, what sign and what house the current (transiting) planets are in. In the example above, transiting Mars is near the end of the sign Gemini, in the seventh house, soon to conjunct the natal Mercury. I trust this is clear.

## Transits



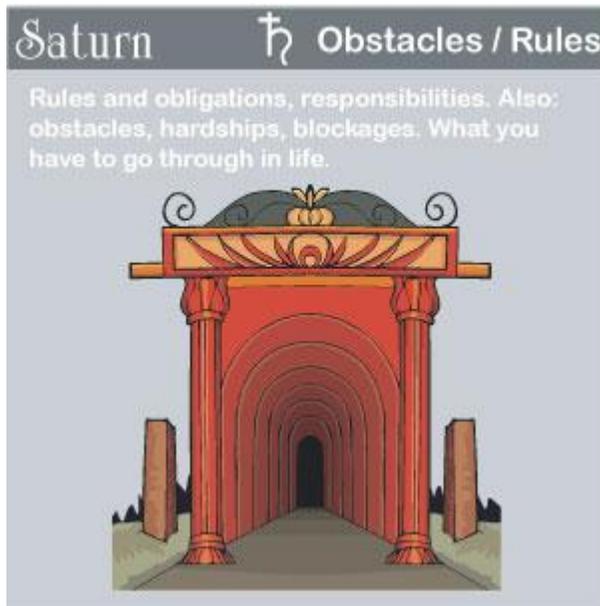
### The Quadrants or Sectors

In studying transits, we watch the transiting planets move around the circle of the twelve houses of the natal chart wheel, house by house. Most astrologers' think that the most important house cusps for transits are what are called the Angular Houses: the first, fourth, seventh and tenth ones. Also called 'the Angles', these are the main crossing points to be aware of as we observe transits.

In my opinion, the most important book written on transits, to date, is *Astrology for the Millions*, written by the astrologer Grant Lewi. It is a must-read for every astrologer, and lays down what I think of as the definitive description on how to use transits. Lewi divides the houses of the natal chart into four quadrants, which he then calls "sectors." These are shown in the above diagram

## Transits

Ignoring the inner house cusps, as many astrologers do, Lewi concentrates on the angular houses and considers these to be the starting point of each sector/quadrant. We can observe the transit of any of the planets, as well as the transit of the Sun and Moon, through these quadrants; in his book, however, Lewi concentrates mainly on the transit of the planet Saturn, since this is the planet that rules the circumstances and obstacles life confronts us with. In fact, the cycles of Saturn—or, the Saturn Cycle—is the one used by many if not by most professional astrologers. It is one of the real gems of astrological technique. Let's take a look at it.



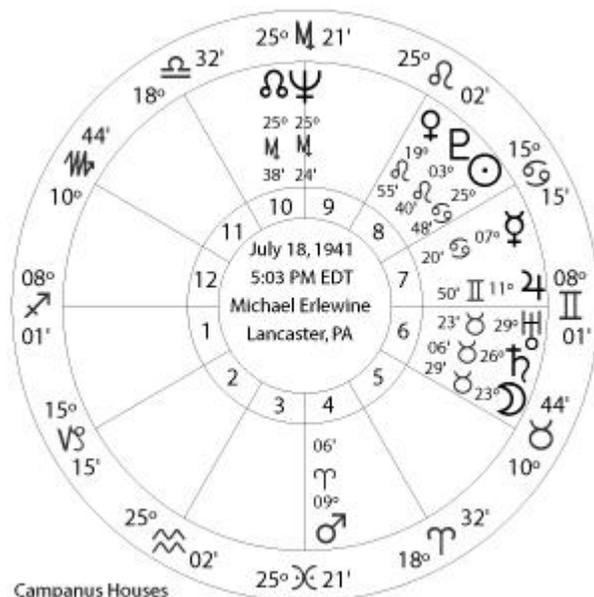
### ***The Saturn Cycle***

In ancient and traditional astrology, the planet Saturn is the great malefic, confronting each of us with obstacles and defining what it is we have to work or pass through (the stuff we must face) in our lives. Modern astrology is a little more kind, and sees Saturn as the great form

## Transits

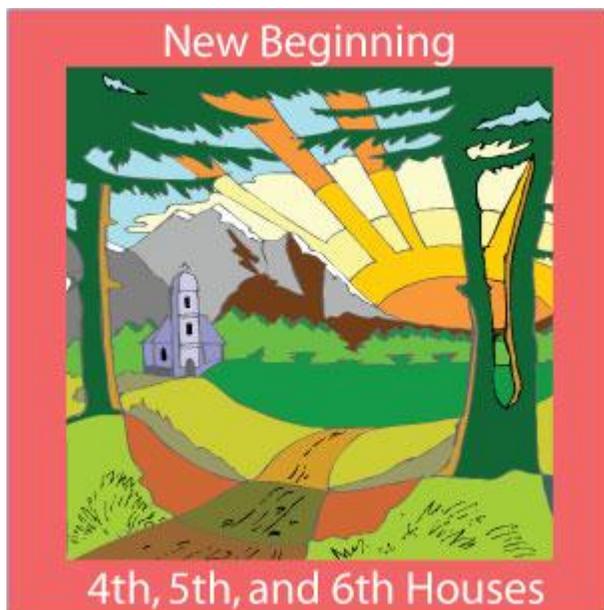
giver, molding and shaping our lives by setting limits and boundaries we each must negotiate. It has also been said that Saturn is the prince of the material world—ruling all things physical.

The cycle of Saturn through the houses of our natal chart takes about 30 years (29.4 years), which is considered one generation. We have all likely heard the phrase that young people use: "Never trust anyone over thirty." Why this is so, is a subject for esoteric astrology, but it relates to the Saturn cycle. Here we will concentrate more on the exoteric fact that astrologers have, for centuries, monitored the passage of Saturn through the charts. I should add my two cents. I have used the Saturn cycle for over thirty years, and with great satisfaction. It is one of the few astrological techniques that have always worked for me.



### **Saturn in Your Chart**

To begin with, locate the position of Saturn in your natal chart by sign and by house; although, for what we will be doing here, particularly by house. This is where we start: at birth; Saturn keeps moving, however, always counterclockwise, through the houses of our chart. As it moves, it crosses over (conjuncts) the various planets in our chart, and also conjuncts each of the house cusps. Most important, we will want to note when it crosses one of the four angular house cusps: the 1st, 4th, 7th and 10th. These four points mark the sectors or quadrants, and they have a particular meaning, which we shall look at.



### **The 2nd Sector: New Beginning**

When Saturn, by transits, crosses over the 4th house cusp, what is called the I.C. (Imum Coelum), it enters the 2nd quadrant, and this marks a new beginning, a fresh start. The 2nd quadrant includes the 4th, 5th, and 6th astrological houses. This transit of the 4th house cusp marks the end of a period of some seven years, a period during which Saturn was transiting the 1st quadrant—the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd houses. The 1st sector or quadrant is also called the private or obscure sector, a time when we are very concentrated or inward-oriented, and are in a sort of building or formative phase—working on and building ourselves. I call this 1st sector the "Formative Sector."

When the 4th house cusp is reached, we begin to emerge from the formative sector and things gradually

## Transits

take off. I used to tell my students that this is like watching snowflakes fall on grass. For the longest time, the flakes fall and melt; but, suddenly, there is a point at which they don't melt, but stick to the grass, hold and start to build. Saturn's crossing of the 4th house cusp is like this, a point at which, after a long time of our putting things into action but with nothing coming back, things suddenly catch, hold, and very slowly we begin to move forward. We start to get some return out of our life investment, starting with an awareness of our self and what we have been doing; it is, however, slow—rather like the Sun coming up—a gradual dawn.

What is great about this transit of the 4th house cusp is that, from this point forward, everything you are doing well accumulates for you. Your awareness grows, and you can actually see and feel this happen from day to day. Confidence, from this point onward, builds, and each day brings more assurance. Saturn crossing this point is a major turning point, astrologically, in the 30-year cycle.



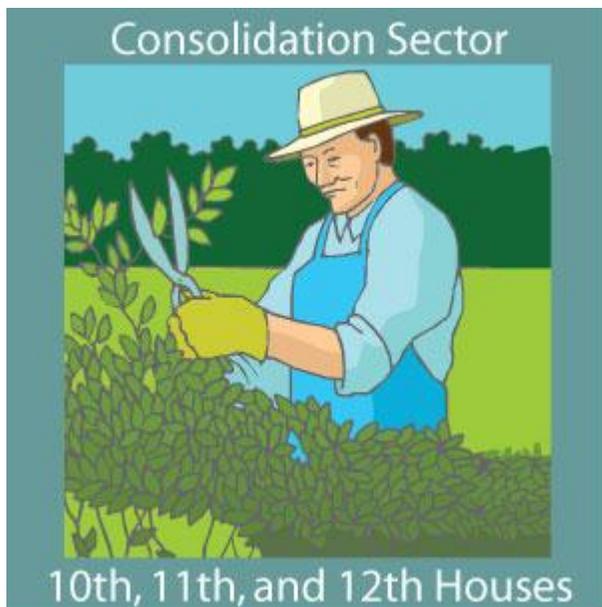
### **The 3rd Sector: Rising**

When Saturn crosses the 7th house cusp, the descendant, it leaves the lower part of the chart wheel, of the first six houses, and rises into the elevated houses, those above the horizon: the 7th through the 12th. If things have gone well during the 2nd sector (houses 4, 5 and 6), then they will go even better now, as Saturn crosses over into the seventh house. This sector is the one everyone looks forward to, because, not only is one on an upswing, but whatever one has been working on during the last seven years or so suddenly comes to public attention: This is the harvest time for all your effort; other people can value and appreciate what you have done. At long last, you are visible to the public. Everyone can see what you have accomplished—if, in fact, you have made the effort.

Saturn's transit through the 3rd sector marks a high-water mark for success; it is for reaping the rewards of a

## Transits

vocation or a business, and for accumulating wealth or attention—storing it away. This is when the spotlight is on you, and—it is a good time to “make hay while the Sun shines.” This is the lucky third sector: Saturn transiting through the natal houses 7, 8, and 9.



### **The 4th Sector: Consolidation**

When Saturn, by transit, crosses the Midheaven or 10th house cusp, this represents, in the chart, the end of the physical power and influence of the past many years—whatever you have been referencing and harvesting for the past 14 years or so. This is the tip of the top, as they say, when it comes to garnering rewards. All of this time you have been looking back to what you have done and reaping whatever rewards and enlightenment possible from it, now you will begin to look forward again. From the point of view of the past, this former period is over and will go into gradual decline, fading away in

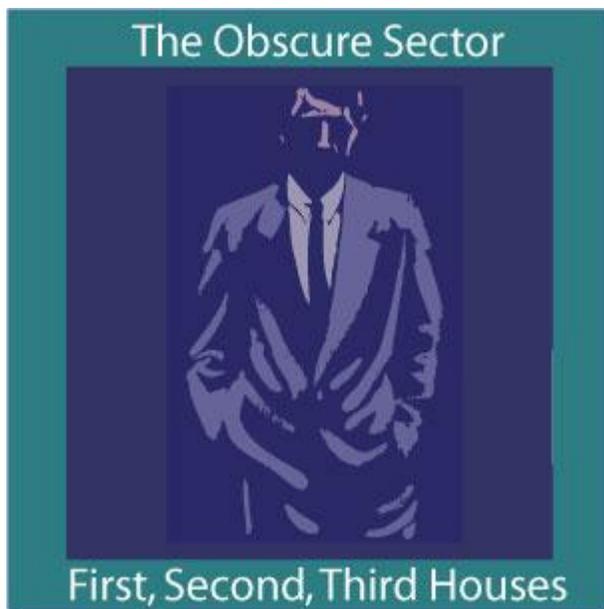
## Transits

importance and even be forgotten. Something new, will, very slowly, be getting your attention.

This 4th sector is one during which we may be consolidating and living on what we did in the past or earned up to this point. This entire 4th sector is one of gradually turning away from the outer and the physical and toward a more inward time—monitoring a new impulse. Our interest in fame and fortune wanes and we discover another tune—begin to march to a different drummer. Something inside of us is calling and, very gradually, we are able to listen and act on what we are sensing within ourselves. This marks for a new inspiration.

During the 4th sector, we turn away from all that we have accomplished up to that point and take on a more inward course—inward in the sense that we have new ideas inspiring us and we must work these ideas into the fabric of our life before they can begin to show on the outside and turn into something solid.

So, in this sector, we make the most of what we have built up—up to this point—and gradually allow the past to do just that—pass. Meanwhile, our mind is ever and increasingly taken up by an inner voice—something new...



### **The 1st Sector: The Obscure Sector 8**

"Obscure" is Lewi's word, and it may be a tad too harsh. Perhaps, "private" or "formative" might better describe this sector. When Saturn hits the ascendant or 1st house cusp, this is the most abrupt or marked point of change in the entire 30-year cycle, according to the experts. The past, outer and public life comes to an end, and is just dropped... or, we let it drop away.

And, it does seem a fact to me that during this 1st sector (1st, 2nd, and 3rd houses) we really are on our own in a new way. We are deep in there, deep within ourselves, and others may have a very difficult time reaching us and offering us any help. For a time, we are somehow beyond reach, just 'in there' on our own. We have to figure it out for ourselves.

It has been written, and it seems so, that this sector tends to be the hardest of all to work through—for any

## Transits

of us. Something new or fresh is working within us; it is, however, by definition so new that we ourselves have little idea of what it means yet—much less are we able to explain or show it to others. This might be a good way to describe it: we cannot show or prove what we know (or are learning) to others. In this sense, it can be a very lonely period, for it pretty much defines aloneness. We are very busy pouring ourselves into what we are, but, nothing is coming back yet. As my teacher used to say: "Michael, we know how to get the rabbit out of the hat, but how did it get in there to begin with?" Here we are putting the rabbit into the hat, all by ourselves.

This 1st sector lasts some seven years, until Saturn hits the cusp, or beginning, of the 4th house, after which we begin to emerge from our inward time of investment.

## Transits



### ***Saturn Cycle Summary***

While all transiting planets follow the same counter-clockwise motion through the signs and houses of our natal chart, astrologers tend to focus on Saturn, due to the fact that it controls form—everything physical in the chart and in the life. Saturn measures generations, and, its return at about 29.4 years marks the threshold of young and old, of inner and outer. Saturn marks some of the major rites of passage.

The cycle of Saturn through the houses of the chart follows the form all cycles, going from a point of greatest vision, or, outside-looking-in, to a point of greatest experience, inside-looking-out. The tenth house cusp is the point of greatest vision (outside-looking-in) and the fourth house cusp is the point of greatest experience (inside-looking-out).

The six left houses (10, 11, 12, 1, 2, and 3) chart the path of Saturn going down, from the top of the chart to

## Transits

the bottom, from an idea or impulse to the carrying of that idea into actuality—to the building or making something of it.

The six right houses (4, 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9) chart the path of Saturn progressively coming out of whatever experience was built during the first half and an increasing awareness of what that experience was and what it meant.

In other words, we have a thirty-year cycle, with about 14 years of investment (putting an idea into action) and about 14 years of returns (getting something out of that investment). The basic structure and phases of cycles have been detailed elsewhere, so next we will want to look at the placement of Saturn in the natal chart and what that can mean.

## Transits



### Your Natal Saturn

In each of our natal charts, provided we know our birth time, we know where Saturn resides—in one of the twelve houses—at the moment of our birth, and it is from this point that Saturn continues to move around the chart, always in a counter clock-wise direction. Earlier in this article we learned of the four sectors, as well as something of what they portend in relation to the transit of Saturn through them. Here we are looking at the idea that, as Saturn starts in a particular sector (and house) of your chart, at the moment of your birth, this placement can tell us something about *how* the flow of your life may go. In other words, for some of us Saturn may start out at the bottom of our chart, say at the 4th house cusp, and go up during the first 15 years of our life, thus entering the first or obscure sector when we are around 21 years of age. This is a very different birth chart than one with Saturn starting at the top of the

## Transits

chart and going downward the first 15 years of life, rising to the 7th house cusp when we are around 21 years old. These are very different scenarios. To make this clear, let's go over how we might look at Saturn as it is in various parts of the natal chart.

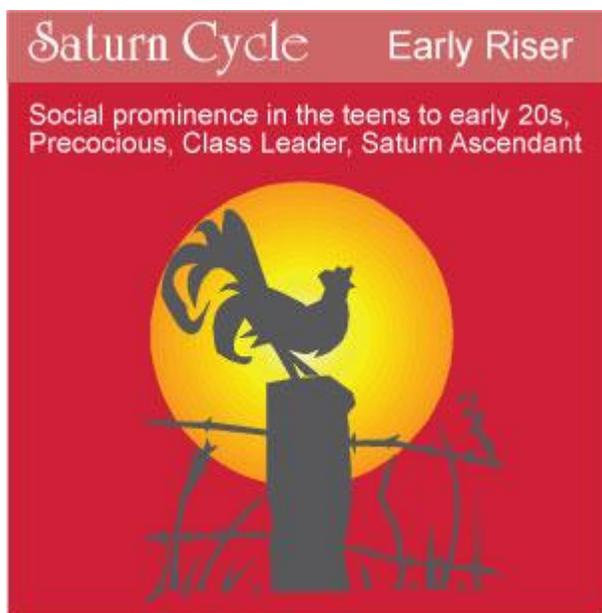


### **Saturn on the First House Cusp 5**

If Saturn is on the ascendant—on the first house cusp or somewhere in that vicinity—then the chart is sometimes called the chart of an "Early Riser." This suggests that, during the first years of this person's life, Saturn will be in the Formative Sector, and the person will be very inwardly directed as Saturn moves through houses one, two, and three. At around 7 or 8 years of age, Saturn will arrive at the fourth-house cusp, which always marks a major turning point—a point upward in the chart. From this point forward, for the next fifteen years or so, Saturn will be rising in the chart, moving through houses 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9.

## Transits

In fact, from the time Saturn crosses the fourth-house cusp (I.C.), there will be a gradual and ever-increasing sense of confidence that builds within the child, and a turning away from the more inward and formative time toward a more outward and social experience. By the time Saturn reaches the 7th house cusp and moves into the upper houses, the child will be a teenager, and coming into a more outward and aware time—becoming more social—at a rather early age. This young person may very well become socially prominent—perhaps a class leader or the center of social attention. This is why this Saturn placement is called, the “Early Riser.”



### **The Early Riser**

This social momentum continues to rise until Saturn reaches the very top of chart; thus, at around 21 years of age, this person is flying high, having risen to some kind of fruition-prominence early on; however, we should also point out, that, as Saturn crests the top of

## Transits

the chart, this marks a turning point—it marks the end of the rising part of the cycle and the beginning of a new cycle as Saturn begins to move downward through the chart. Many early-riser types have to be counseled to let the past go—to quit attempting to drive forward—because things will not keep on going just as they have been—always rising.

Instead, there will a turning away from what was—the past successes—and, very gradually, of course—a learning to listen to a new and more inner message: a message that will grow stronger as Saturn moves downward in the chart, a message leading, eventually, to an entirely new cycle of personal investment and return.

It should not surprise us, therefore, that at around 30 years of age, just as everyone else seems to be launched firmly in one direction or another, the early-riser type takes a turn inward—going back to school, so to speak—and becomes busy building or investing at the same time others seem to be harvesting the results of their work. The result stage for the early riser is delayed, now, until their late 30's, when Saturn once again crosses the 4th house cusp and begins to rise through the chart, bringing a new cycle of social prominence, as well as the results of all the previous investment work.



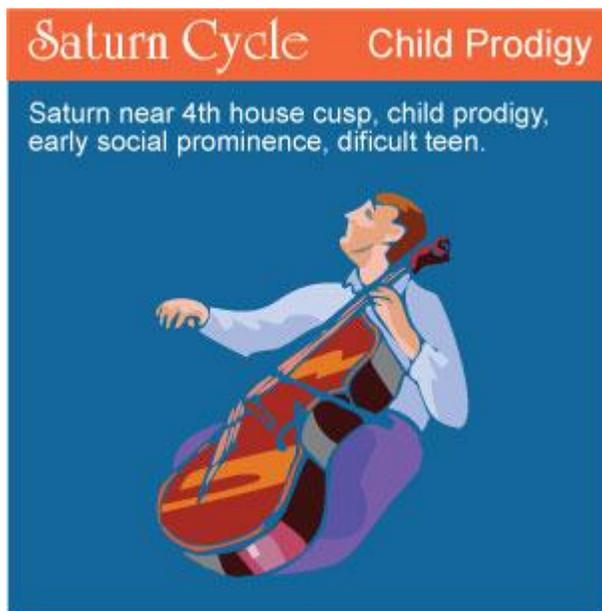
### **Saturn on the Fourth House Cusp**

By now, you should have enough understanding of how the Saturn cycle works, to know that this early rise to 'outwardness' is certain to peak in the mid-teens, which, for the young adult, is at about fourteen or fifteen years of age; this time could be, very easily, the end of the prodigy and the beginning of another phase of life for this young person. This person comes up early and changes life-direction quite early, heading off in a new direction—in this case, a direction leading toward what is more inward.

From the mid-teens until around the age of 21, this person is moving away from whatever it was that came before—during their earlier years—and taking up some new theme or idea, working with that. In fact, at around 21 years of age and after, a further deepening of intent and concentration occurs, as they plunge into the formative sector, pouring everything into the

## Transits

development of whatever is now moving them, looking outside very little.



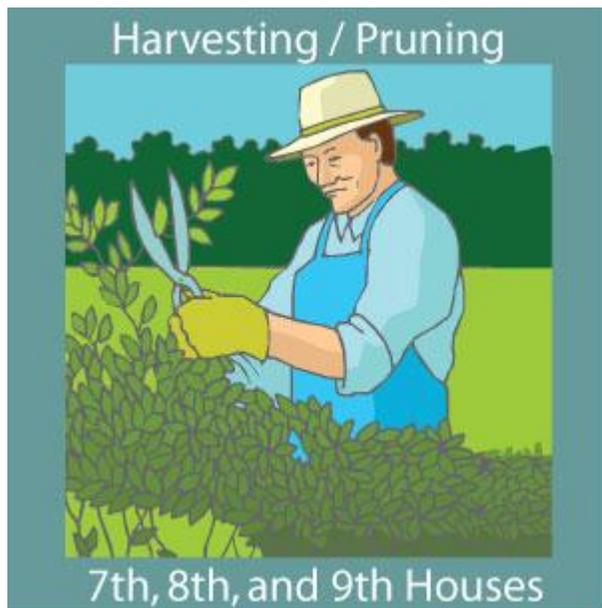
### Teen Prominence

This time of serious study or investment concludes at around 30 years of age, as Saturn rounds the tip of the 4th house cusp and begins its climb upward, once again, through the chart. In this case, the formative period occurs during the last possible time there is for new experience before one is grown up, that is: before the age of 30, which marks Saturn's return. This second rise through the 4th, 5th, and 6th houses should be very successful and pronounced, marking a period of quickly increasing self-confidence and mastery.

These skills will, of course, really take fire as Saturn crosses over the 7th house cusp, above the horizon of the natal chart, bringing a somewhat late but very accomplished section of time: there is the arrival of

## Transits

prominence, success and the harvesting of many prior years of investment. This middle section of life will be very successful.

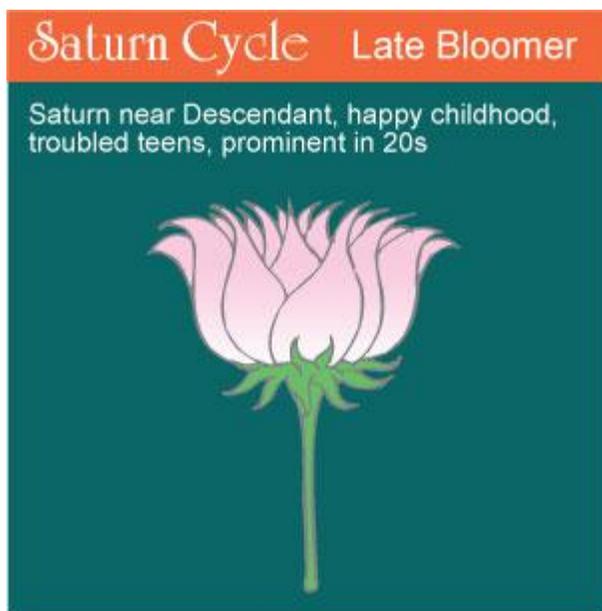


### **Saturn on the Descendant 7**

When Saturn, at birth, is around the descendant (7th house cusp—either in the late 6th house or early 7th house) we have what is called a "Late Bloomer," and we can explain why they are called this. At birth, Saturn is not only already on the rise, but is crossing over (or about to cross over) the 7th house and moving into the most outward or successful (harvest time) part of the chart. For a toddler, this means a very happy early childhood, for sure, but other than that, there is not a lot a kid can do with early success. Note, however, that a happy early childhood is a treasure in itself, and makes for a great start on life.

## Transits

Saturn will cross the top of the chart at around 7-8 years of age, sending the youngster into the beginning of a much more inward time and series of years. This will reach a major turning point at around 14-15 years of age, just when most kids are looking to learn about others socially. In this case, we have just the reverse happening: our late bloomer is now entering the formative or obscure sector at the time most young people around them are enjoying some kind of social adjustment or success.



### **The Late Bloomer**

Their teenage years—the years 14 to around 21 years of age—will therefore be more inward, perhaps even very lonely, because they are zigging when everyone else is zagging. During this formative sector, each of us are very much on our own, sort of out of touch with our social sense, and just about as far away from being recognized and successful as one can get. The first

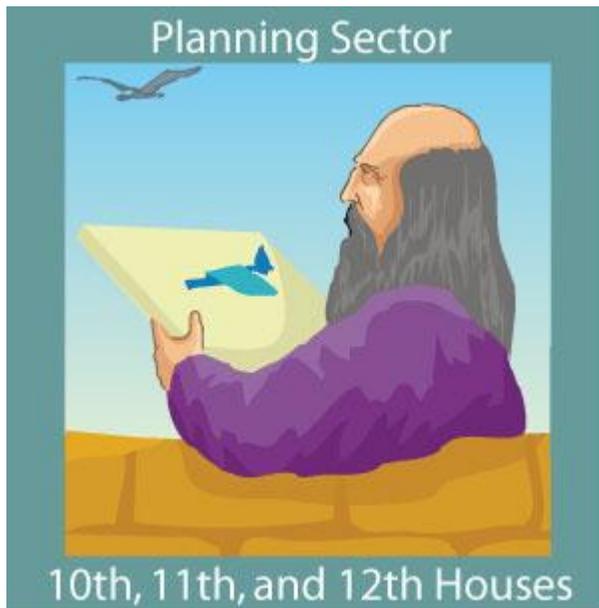
## Transits

sector is opposite the third or social sector. In this sense, it is hard for anyone to come to our aid, because we don't know ourselves at that point. We are in an experience that we are not out of yet enough to be aware of it. That is the idea.

However, at 21 years of age or so, as Saturn crosses the 4th house cusp, all of this changes and a much belated process of self-discovery takes place, thus the title: Late Bloomer. Our Late Bloomers make up for lost time, and, in the strength of their early twenties, increasingly build self-confidence at a rapid rate. This rapid growth takes greater fire as Saturn crests the 7th house cusp at around thirty years of age and moves into what astrologers have called the most successful sector—that of harvesting, of getting a return for our investment.

We can also see and look forward to the fact that, at around 37-38 years of age, Saturn will cross the tenth house cusp, ending this part of the success cycle while marking, once again, the advent of yet another.

## ***Saturn on the Angles***



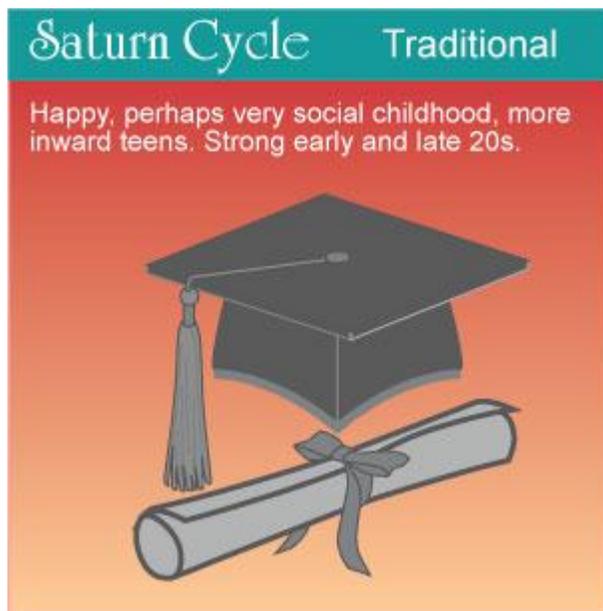
### **Saturn on the Tenth House Cusp**

Saturn, when on or around the tenth house cusp at birth, points to a quiet, or more inward, childhood and early teen years. With no outward climb, the child, from birth, is more inwardly directed, and this inclination grows much stronger as Saturn crosses the 1st house cusp, at somewhere around 7-8 years of age. So, all of the formative years, until around 14-15 years of age, are very much, as the old saying goes, formative—building infrastructure. They are not social or out-turned.

Of course, this changes as Saturn rounds the 4th house cusp, at about 14-15 years of age, and begins its climb upward through the chart. What may have been a very inward child becomes, increasingly, a more outward one, and those with this type of Saturn placement frequently

## Transits

become class leaders, or are otherwise very social—if not in their high-school years, then in their college years.



### **Saturn 10th House**

Saturn will cross the 7th house at around 21 years of age, bringing this person to the most socially outward and successful years experienced up to that point. In their early to mid twenties things should be going great guns, and this will continue on until around 30 years of age, when Saturn contacts its natal position and crosses over the tenth house cusp.

At this point, there should be a turning away from the more outward recent past and the beginning of an interest in a more inward reality, something that should gradually assert itself over the next few years.

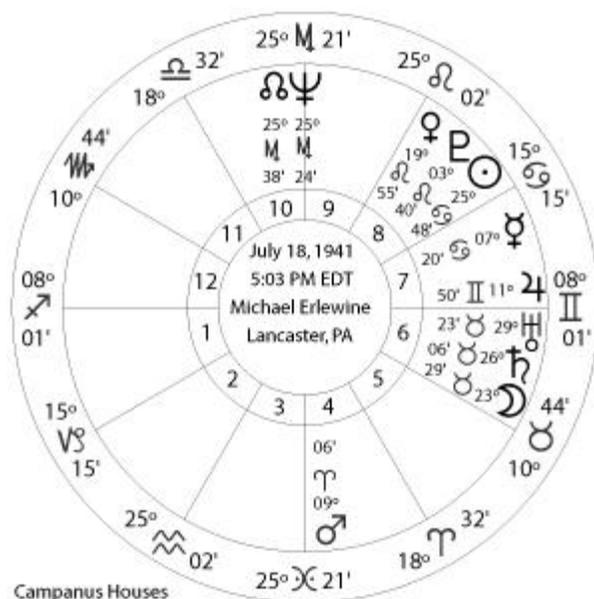
## Transits



### More Thoughts

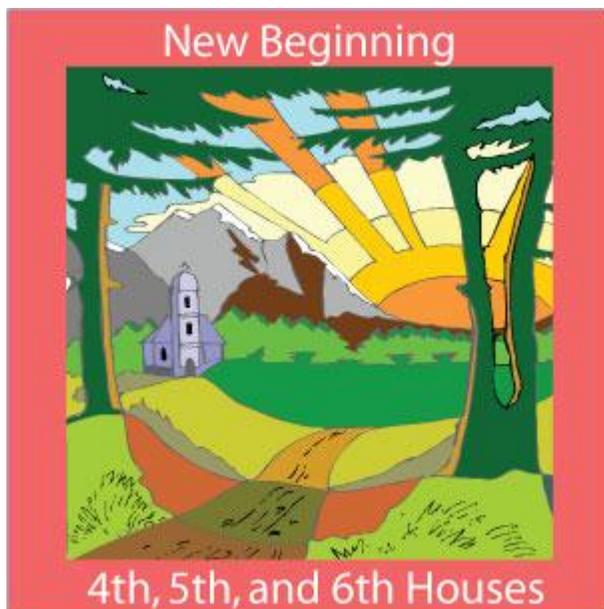
These above scenarios should give you an idea of how to interpret the Saturn in your own natal chart. Of course, Saturn in your chart may not be conveniently placed on any one of the chart angles (1st, 4th, 7th, or 10th house cusps) but may be somewhere else within one of the sectors. This means that you will have to adjust the dates and compensate for how far off your natal Saturn is from one of those four angles. Keep in mind that Saturn's cycle is roughly 30 years long, so, no matter where Saturn is in your chart, about every seven years or so Saturn will be about 90-degrees farther along in the zodiac than it was at birth. This should help you to come up with approximate dates as to when it crosses any angle.

## Transits



### Saturn Sectors

To begin with, locate the position of Saturn in your natal chart by sign and by house; although, for what we will be doing here, particularly by house. This is where we start, at birth. Saturn keeps moving, however, always counterclockwise, through the houses of our chart. As it moves, it crosses over (conjuncts) the various planets in our chart; it also conjuncts each of the house cusps. Most important, we want to note when it crosses one of the four angular house cusps: the 1st, 4th, 7th, and 10th. These four points mark the sectors or quadrants, and they have a particular meaning, which we shall look at.



### **The 2nd Sector: New Beginning**

When Saturn, by transits, crosses over the 4th house cusp, what is called the I.C. (Imum Coelum), it enters the 2nd quadrant, and this marks a new beginning, a fresh start. The 2nd quadrant includes the 4th, 5th, and 6th astrological houses. This transit of the 4th house cusp marks the end of a period of some seven years, the period during which Saturn was transiting the 1st quadrant—the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd houses. The 1st sector or quadrant is also called the private or obscure sector, a time when we are very concentrated or inward-oriented, in a building or formative phase—working on and building ourselves. I call this 1st sector the "Formative Sector."

Once the 4th house cusp is reached, we begin to emerge from the formative sector and things gradually take off. I used to tell my students that it is like watching snowflakes fall on grass. For the longest time, the flakes

## Transits

fall and melt; but, suddenly, there is a point where they don't melt anymore but stick to the grass, hold, and start to build. Saturn's crossing of the 4th house cusp is like this, a point where, after a long time of our putting things into action but with nothing coming back, these things suddenly catch hold, and, very slowly, we begin to move forward. We start to get some return out of our life investment, starting with an awareness of our self and what we have been doing. It is, however, slow, like the Sun coming up—the gradual dawn.

What is great about this transit of the 4th house cusp is that, from this point forward, everything you do well accumulates for you. Your awareness grows, and you can actually see and feel this happening from day to day. Confidence, from this point onward, builds, and each day brings more assurance. Saturn crossing this point is a major turning point, astrologically, in the 30-year cycle.



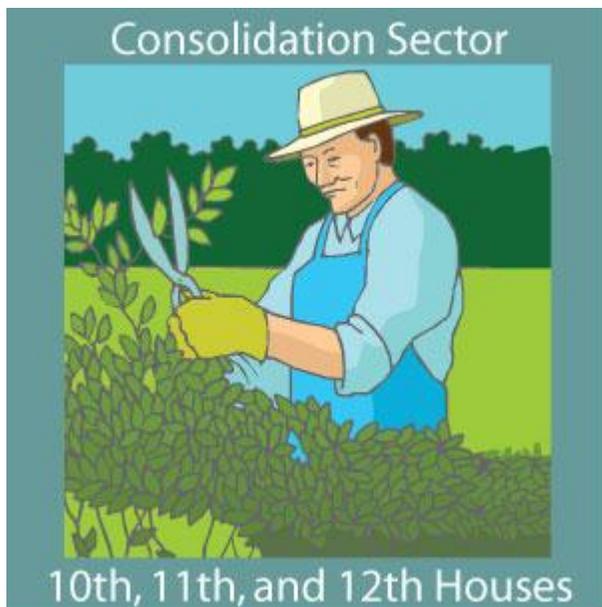
### **The 3rd Sector: Rising**

When Saturn crosses the 7th house cusp, the descendant, it leaves the lower part of the chart wheel, the first six houses, and rises into the elevated houses, those above the horizon: the 7th through the 12th. If things have gone well during the 2nd sector (houses 4, 5 and 6), then they will go even better now, as Saturn crosses over into the seventh house. This sector is the one everyone looks forward to, because, not only is one on an upswing, but whatever one has been working on during the last seven years or so suddenly comes to public attention. This is the harvest time for all your effort. Other people can see your value and appreciate what you have done. At long last, you are visible to the public. Everyone can see what you have accomplished—if, in fact, you have made the effort.

Saturn's transit through the 3rd sector marks a high-water mark for success, for the reaping of rewards from

## Transits

a vocation or business, as well as for the accumulation of wealth or attention—storing it away. This is when the spotlight is on you. It is a good time to “make hay while the Sun shines.” This is the lucky third sector—Saturn transiting through the natal houses 7, 8, and 9.



### **The 4th Sector: Consolidation**

When Saturn, by transit, crosses the Midheaven or 10th house cusp, this represents the end of the many past years of physical power and influence in the chart, whatever you have been referencing and harvesting from the last 14 years or so. This is the tip of the top, as they say, when it comes to garnering rewards. All of this time, you have been looking back at what you have done, and reaping whatever rewards and enlightenment from it; now you will begin to look forward again. From the point of view of the past, all of the former period is over and will gradually go into decline—fade away in

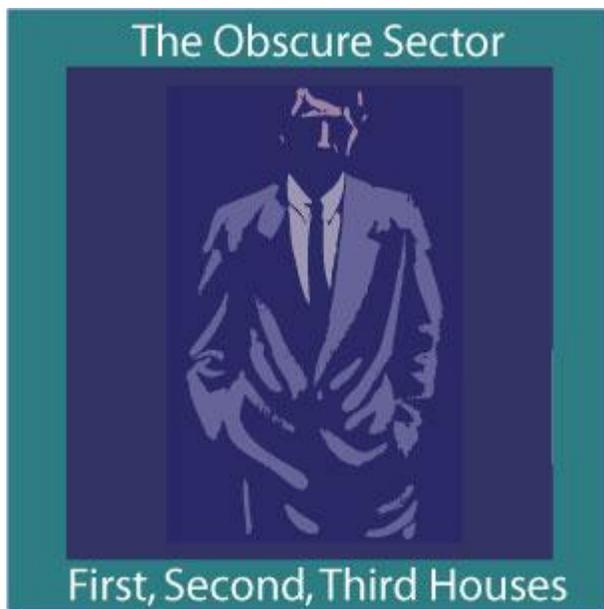
## Transits

importance and be forgotten. Something new will, very slowly, be getting your attention.

This 4th sector is one during which we may be consolidating and living on what we did, or earned, in the past—up to this point. This entire 4th sector is one of a gradual turning away from the outer and physical and toward a more inward time—monitoring a new impulse. Our interest in fame and fortune wanes and we discover another tune—we begin to march to a different drummer. Something inside of us is calling, and, very gradually, we are able to listen and act on what we are sensing within us. This marks for new inspiration.

During the 4th sector, we turn away from all that we have accomplished up to that point and take a more inward course—inward, in the sense that we have new ideas inspiring us; however, we will have to work these ideas into the fabric of our life before they can show on the outside and turn into something solid.

So, in this sector, we make the most of what we have built, up to this point, and gradually allow the past to do just that—to pass. Meanwhile, our mind is increasingly taken up by an inner voice, and this voice is something we want to devote a lot of time to, for the sake of understanding.



### **The 1st Sector: The Obscure Sector 8**

"Obscure," is Lewi's word and it may be a tad too harsh. Perhaps, "private" or "formative" might better describe it. When Saturn hits the ascendant, or 1st house cusp, this is the most abrupt or marked point of change in the entire 30-year cycle, according to the experts. The past outer and public life comes to an end, and is just dropped... or, we let it drop away.

And, it does seem to me to be a fact that during this 1st sector (1st, 2nd, and 3rd houses) we really are on our own in a new way. We are deep in there, deep within ourselves, and others may have a very difficult time reaching us and offering us any help. For a time, we are somehow beyond reach, just 'in there' on our own. We have to figure it out for ourselves.

It has been written, and it seems so, that this sector tends to be the hardest of all to work through—for every

## Transits

one of us. Something new or fresh is working within us, something that is, however, by definition, so new that even we ourselves have little idea of what it means—much less are we able to explain or show it to others. This might be a good way to describe it: that we cannot show or prove what we know to others. In this sense, it can be a very lonely period, for it pretty much defines aloneness. We are busy pouring ourselves into what we are but nothing is coming back—yet. As my teacher used to say: "Michael, we know how to get the rabbit out of the hat, but how did it get in there to begin with?" Here, we are putting the rabbit into the hat, all by ourselves.

This 1st sector lasts some seven years, until Saturn hits the cusp or beginning of the 4th house, after which we begin to emerge from our inward time of investment.

## Transits



### Saturn Cycle Summary

While all transiting planets follow the same counter-clockwise motion through the signs and houses of our natal chart, astrologers tend to focus on Saturn, due to the fact that it controls form—everything physical in the chart and in life. Saturn measures generations; its return at about 29.4 years marks the threshold of young and old, of inner and outer. Saturn marks some of the major rites of passage.

The cycle of Saturn through the houses of the chart, in its going from a point of greatest vision, or outside-looking-in, to a point of greatest experience, inside-looking-out, follows the form of all cycles. The tenth house cusp is the point of greatest vision (outside-looking-in) and the fourth house cusp is the point of greatest experience (inside-looking-out).

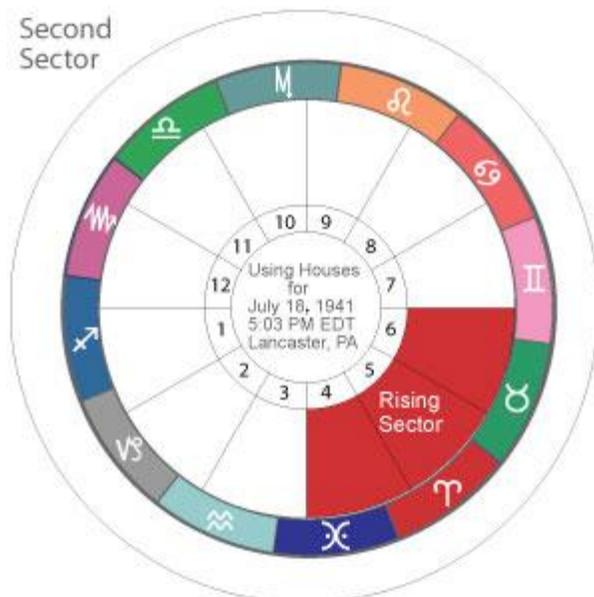
## Transits

The left six houses (10, 11, 12, 1, 2, and 3) chart the path of Saturn going down, from the top of the chart to the bottom; from an idea or impulse to the carrying of that idea into actuality—to the building up or making something of that idea.

The right six houses (4, 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9) chart the path of Saturn progressively coming out of whatever experience was built during the first half, to an increasing awareness of what that experience was and an understanding of what it meant.

In other words, we have a thirty-year cycle, with about 14 years of investment (putting an idea into action) and about 14 years of return (getting something out of that investment). The basic structure and phases of cycles have been detailed elsewhere. Here, we want to look at the placement of Saturn in the natal chart and what that placement can mean.

## Transits

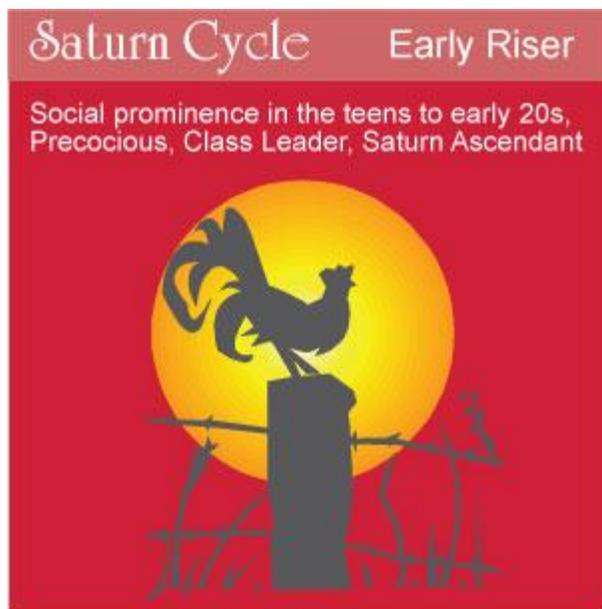


### ***Saturn in the Natal Chart***

In each of our natal charts, provided we know our birth time, Saturn resides in one of the twelve houses; it is from that point (where it resides at the moment of our birth) that it continues to move around the chart, always in a counterclockwise direction. Earlier in this article, we learned of the four sectors, and something of what each of them are about during the transit of Saturn to each area; here, we are looking at the idea that Saturn starts in a particular sector and house of your chart, at the moment of your birth, and, that this can tell us something about how the flow of your life can go. In other words, for some of us, Saturn may start out at the bottom of our chart, say at the 4th house cusp, and go up during the first 15 years of our life, thus entering the first or obscure sector when we are around 21 years of age. This is very different from a birth chart with Saturn starting at the top of the chart and going downward the

## Transits

first 15 years of the life, rising to the 7th house cusp when we are around 21 years old. These are very different scenarios. To make this clear, let's go over how we might look at Saturn in various parts of the natal chart.



### **Saturn on the First House Cusp**

If Saturn is on the ascendant, starting at the first house cusp, or somewhere in that vicinity, this has been called the chart of an "Early Riser." This suggests that, during the first years of this particular life, Saturn will be in the Formative Sector and the life very inwardly-directed, as it moves through houses 1, 2, and 3. At around 7 or 8 years of age, Saturn will arrive at the fourth-house cusp, which always marks a major turning point upward in the chart. From this point forward, for the next 15 years or so, Saturn will be rising in the chart as it moves through the houses 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9.

## Transits

In fact, from the time Saturn crosses the fourth-house cusp (I.C.), there will be a gradual, ever-increasing sense of confidence building within the child, a turning away from a more inward and formative time and a turning toward a more outward and social experience. By the time Saturn reaches the 7th house cusp and moves into the upper houses, the child will be a teenager and coming into a more outward and aware time—becoming more social—at quite an early age. This young person may very well be socially prominent, perhaps a class leader, or be at the center of social attention. This is why this particular Saturn placement is called the "Early Riser."

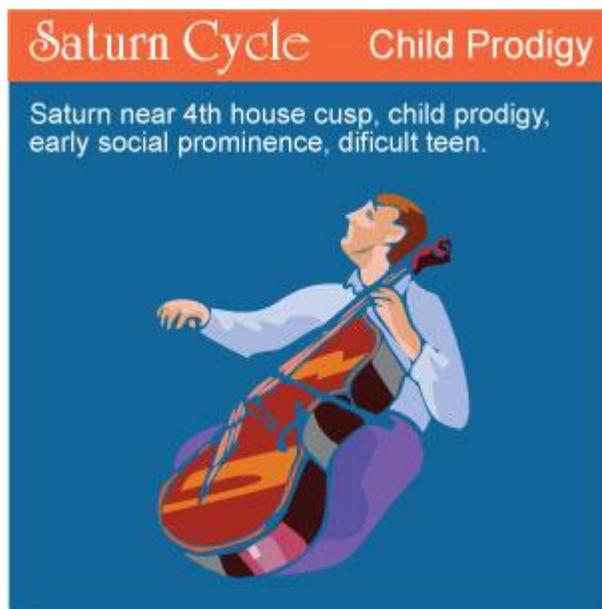
This social momentum continues until Saturn reaches the very top of chart; at around 21 years of age, therefore, this person is flying high, having risen to some kind of fruition and prominence early on; however, we should also point out that as Saturn crests the top of the chart, this marks a turning point, the end of the rising part of the cycle and the beginning of a new cycle, as Saturn moves downward through the chart. Many early-riser types have to be counseled to let go of the past and stop their attempt to drive forward, because things will not continue on as they had been—always rising.

Instead, there will a turning away from what was, the past successes, and, very gradually, of course, a learning to listen to a new and more inner message, a message that will grow stronger as Saturn moves downward in the chart. This listening to what is inner will lead, eventually, to an entirely new cycle of personal investment and eventual return.

So, it should not surprise us that at around 30 years of age, just as everyone else seems to be launched firmly in one direction or another, the early-riser types takes a turn inward—going back to school, so to speak; this

## Transits

person gets busy building or investing, while others seem to be harvesting the results of their work. The result stage of the early riser is delayed until later in their 30s, when Saturn crosses the 4th house cusp once again, and begins to rise through the chart, bringing a new cycle of social prominence and the results of all the more recent investment work.



### **Saturn on the Fourth House Cusp**

With Saturn at the bottom of the chart at birth, in or around the 4th house cusp, we have a somewhat different scenario, in that the child, from day one, is already on an upswing and moving upward through the right-hand side of the chart; therefore, at around 7-8 years of age, we have a very socially prominent child, one perhaps already reaping some sort of success at an early age, perhaps being some sort of child prodigy.

## Transits

By now, you should have enough understanding of how the Saturn cycle works so as to know that this early rise to 'outward-ness' is certain to peak in the mid-teens.

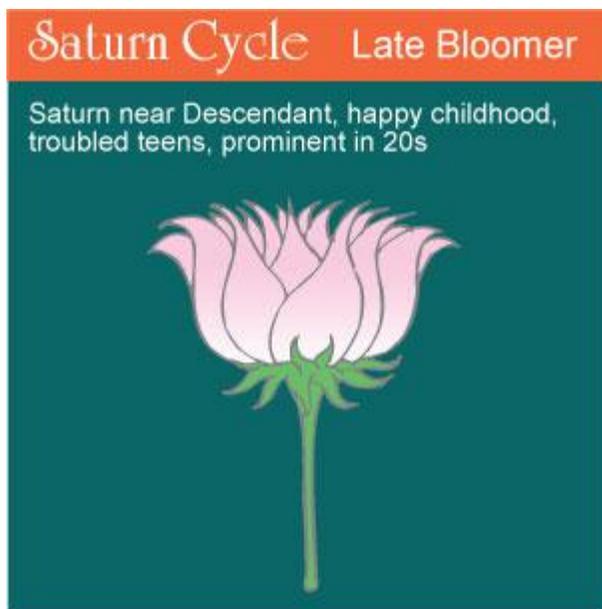
The young adult is then 14-15 years of age, and this may very well be the end of the prodigy phase and the beginning of a new phase of life for this young person.

They come up early, and they change their life direction quite early—heading off in a new direction, in this case, one that is more inward.

From the mid-teens until around the age of 21, this person is moving away from whatever it was that came before, during their early years, and taking up some new theme or idea—working with that. In fact, at around 21 years of age and after, a further deepening of intent and concentration occurs, as they plunge into the formative sector, pouring everything into the development of whatever is moving them—looking outside very little.

This time of serious study or investment concludes at around 30 years of age, as Saturn rounds the tip of the 4th house cusp and begins its climb upward through the chart once again. In this case, this formative period of years is the last possible time for new experience before that person is grown-up, that is: before the age of 30, which marks Saturn's return. This second rise through the 4th, 5th, and 6th houses should be very successful and pronounced, marking a period of quick increase in self-confidence and mastery.

This period will, of course, really take fire as Saturn crosses over the 7th house cusp and moves above the horizon of the natal chart, bringing a somewhat late but very accomplished section of time: bringing prominence, success, and the harvesting of those many years of investment. This middle section of life will be very successful.



### **Saturn on the Descendant**

When Saturn, at birth, is around the descendant (7th house cusp), either in the late 6th or early 7th house, we have what we will call a "Late Bloomer." Let's explain why that is. At birth, Saturn is not only on the rise already, but is crossing over (or is about to cross) the 7th house, and is moving into the most outward or successful (harvest time) part of the chart. For a toddler, this means a very happy early childhood, for sure, but other than that, there is not a lot a kid can do with early success; however, note that a happy early childhood is a treasure in itself and makes for a great start on life.

Saturn will cross the top of the chart at around 7-8 years of age, sending this youngster into the beginning of a much more inward time, comprising a series of years. This period will reach a major turning point at around 14-15 years of age, a time when most kids are looking to learn about others socially; in this case, however, we

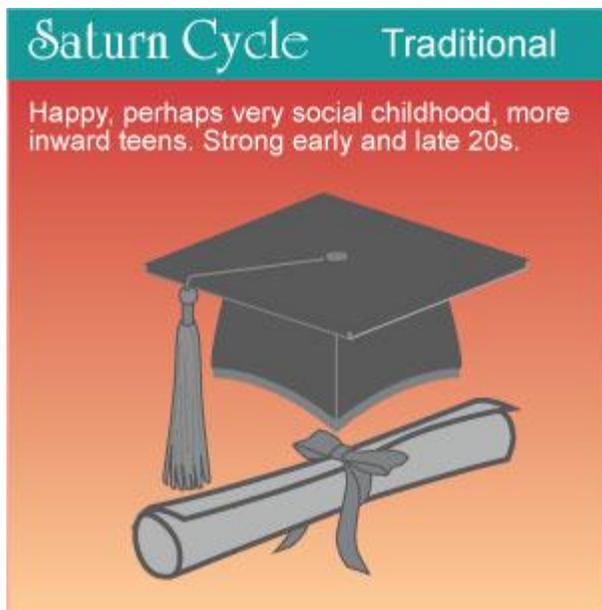
## Transits

have just the reverse happening; our late bloomer is entering the formative or obscure sector, while everyone else around them is enjoying some kind of social adjustment or success.

So, the years from age fourteen to around twenty-one will be more inward and, for a teenager, perhaps even very lonely, because they are zigging when everyone else is zagging. During this formative sector, each of us is very much on our own, sort of out of touch with our social sense, and just about as far away from being recognized and successful as one can get—notice the first sector is opposite the third or social sector. For this reason, because we don't even know ourselves at this point, it is hard for anyone to come to our aid. We are in an experience we are not yet out of enough to be aware of. That's the idea.

However, at 21 years of age or so, as Saturn crosses the 4th house cusp, all of this changes and a much belated process of self-discovery takes place, thus the title: Late Bloomer. Our late bloomer makes up for lost time and, in the strength of their early twenties, builds self-confidence at an increasingly rapid rate. This rapid growth takes greater fire as Saturn crests the 7th house cusp at around thirty years of age and moves into what astrologers have called the most successful sector, that of harvesting—getting a return for our investment.

More, we can look forward and see that, at around 37-38 years of age Saturn will cross the tenth house cusp, thus ending this part of the success cycle and marking the advent of yet another one.



### **Saturn on the Tenth House Cusp**

Saturn, when on or around the tenth house cusp, points to a quiet or more inward childhood, as well as early teen years. With no outward climb, the child, from birth, is more inwardly-directed. This tendency grows much stronger as Saturn crosses the 1st house cusp at somewhere around 7-8 years of age. So, all of the formative years, until around 14-15 years of age, are very much, as the old saying goes, formative—building infrastructure. They are not social or out-turned.

Of course, this changes as Saturn rounds the 4th house cusp at 14-15 years of age and begins its upward climb through the chart. What may have been a very inward child becomes an increasingly more outward one, and, with this type of Saturn placement, the child frequently becomes a class leader, or in other ways becomes very social—if not in the high-school years then in the college years.

## Transits

Saturn will cross the 7th house at around 21 years of age, bringing this person into what are the most socially outward and successful years up to that point. In their early to mid-twenties, things should be going great guns, and this will continue until around the age of 30, up until Saturn contacts its natal position and crosses over the tenth house cusp.

At this point, there should be a turning away from the more outward recent past, and the beginning of an interest in a more inward reality, something that should gradually assert itself over the next few years.

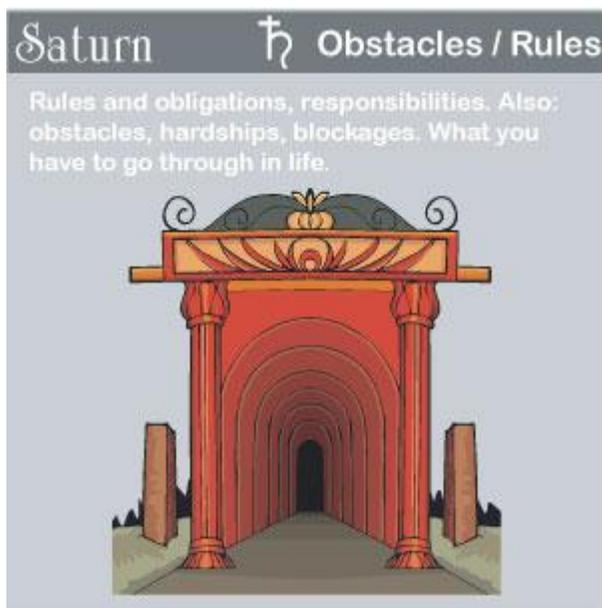


### Closing Thoughts

The above scenarios should give you an idea of how to interpret the Saturn in your own natal chart. Of course, Saturn in your chart may not be conveniently placed on one of the chart angles (1st, 4th, 7th, or 10th house cusps), but may be located somewhere else within one

## Transits

of the sectors. This means that you will have to adjust the dates and then compensate for how far off your natal Saturn is in relation to one of those four angles. Keep in mind that Saturn's cycle is roughly 30 years long—no matter where Saturn is in your chart; thus, about every seven years, Saturn will be about 90-degrees farther along in the zodiac than it was at birth. This should help you come up with the approximate dates as to when it will cross any angle.

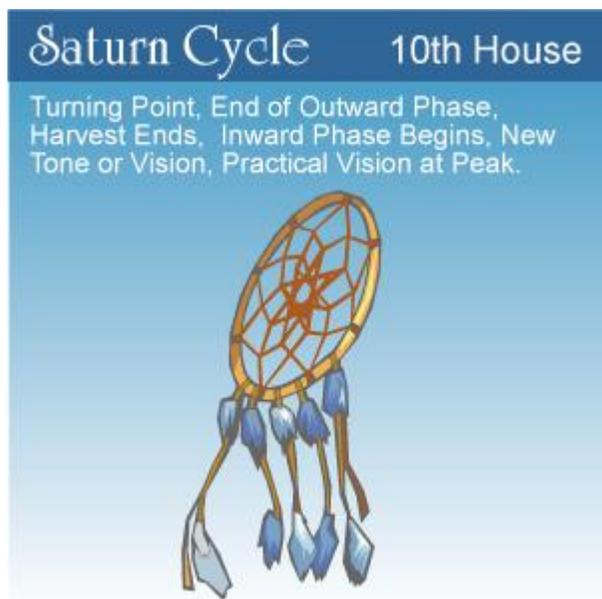


### ***Your Saturn Transits***

Transits are the key to what is going in the skies today, and how these transits reflect on your birth chart is important as well. For many astrologers, the most important transit to watch is that of the planet Saturn, moving through the twelve houses of your natal chart. Saturn, as the ruler of time and physical form, governs pretty much all that happens, at least as far as what happens on the exterior. It is worth a careful study.

## Transits

Saturn's 30-year trek through the twelve houses maps out the basic up and down flow of major life events. Since the cycle of the houses (and that of the signs, as well) is a circle, it has no absolute beginning or end point, so we could start anywhere. Here, we will start at the very top of your chart, the tenth house cusp, and move in the direction of the houses.



### **Tenth House Saturn Transit**

In Brief: End of rewards or harvest time; beginning of investment; a turning away from the public and a turning toward an inner voice.

This transit marks a major turning point, the end of the long cycle preceding it and the very gradual beginning of a new cycle of experience. The tenth house cusp, the tip of the top of the natal chart, marks the peak of Saturn's rise through the chart, which starts when it crossed the 4th house cusp. This transit marks the

## Transits

beginning of the descent to eventually meet that 4th house cusp again.

What is being left behind (which should be easy to see and understand) is all of the success or returns you have achieved over the last 14 years or so—whatever these may be. This last number of years saw you taking increasing control of your life and circumstances, as well as having the vision and clear-sightedness to make the right decisions—separating the wheat from the chaff and gathering together the rewards you earned. These should have been years of some success, with a harvesting of whatever seeds you had sown many years before; so, point one is that you are now done with this period and should not expect more of the same to continue. It's done. You have made your push, sown your seeds, and reaped your return or harvest, whatever it may be. While you can expect to continue to benefit from whatever it is you have put into motion up to this point, this is NOT the time to push on or to start anything new.

The second and most important point is that you WILL be experiencing something new, but this will be something coming up from within you, not from outside—as you have come to expect during these last number of years. You will absolutely want to take advantage of everything you have learned up to this point, benefiting from your success up to now, but it is crucial that you let go of what has driven you forward up to this point, and begin to develop and take a different and more receptive attitude.

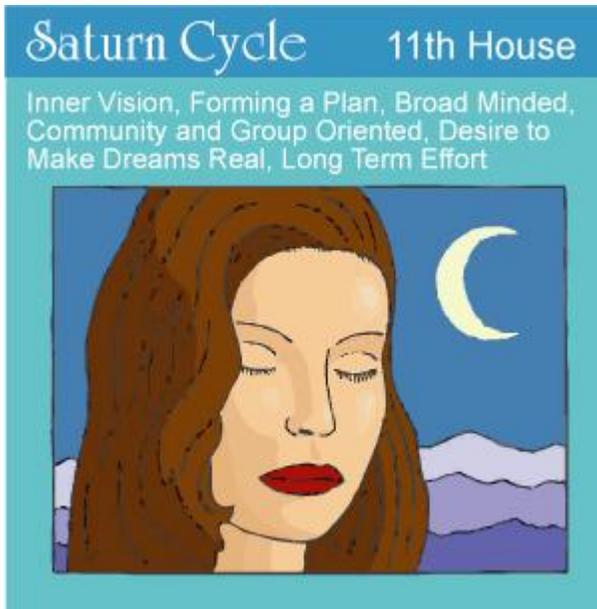
By receptive, what is meant here is that it is time to begin listening to your own inner voice. It can be easy to ignore this at first, but this inner message will grow increasingly stronger as time passes, so it is to your advantage to learn to hear it early on and to begin

## Transits

working with it. It will, in time, be persistent, and eventually, it will be unavoidable; you may as well willingly bring it forth—go meet your maker, which, in this case, is the new voice calling you from within. The outside world will increasingly become more bewildering as this inner voice grows stronger. The point: stop reading from the outside world and start reading from within.

In summary, there will be a shift of perspective away from the outer external world of success (and perhaps power) that you have enjoyed (or perhaps not enjoyed) over these last seven or eight years, and a shift toward taking a more receptive (and perhaps humbler) approach to life—acknowledging your own inner life. It is this inner life that will increasingly interest you, and it is this period that marks its advent.

## Transits



### **Eleventh House Saturn Transit**

In brief: A new inner direction takes hold and becomes a plan for action.

As Saturn comes into and passes through your Eleventh House, you should, by this point, be actively listening to the inner message that began reaching you as Saturn moved into the Tenth House. Above all, this inner message brings something new into your life, perhaps more of a feeling or a tone... or a simple vibration, but something that your whole being resonates to. More than anything, this new experience is something of a vision. Many people see a whole new life plan at this point.

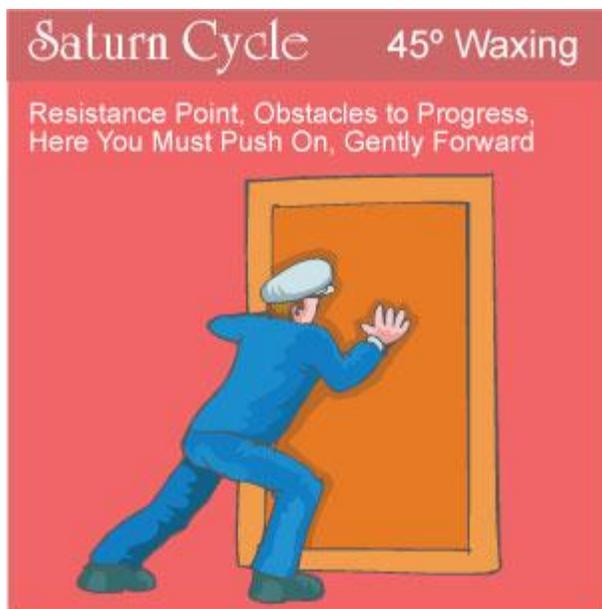
A vision is an experience or insight we have which is more real or important to us than our surrounding life—our life both before and after that event. In a moment of vision we take into ourselves or absorb seminal

## Transits

information, more than could be simply understood with our mind. It may take weeks, months or years to decipher and realize what it means to us. It is analogous to what we read about in some of the sacred texts, where they speak of receiving a secret scroll into the mind: although we read it devoutly more than once, we only understand it over time. We take in a vision, and then bring it to mind again and again, until we have absorbed its content—until we understand it.

Saturn's transit of the 11th house is a time when we are fueled and fired by something coming from within our own mind and self—an idea, thought or plan—a strong stimulus or message of some kind; and, in this house, that original stimulus or insight turns into a plan, some attempt on our part of implement whatever idea is moving us—to make it real. "For spirit must be made to matter" is a line I wrote years ago that describes what I am getting at here. We are inspired or driven to design a plan to make our inner vision real—to make it matter in our day-to-day life.

And to do that, we look everywhere around us for help—for anyone willing to move these plans forward. In this sense, we are very community-minded, and not that particular about who can help, rather, we embrace all and any means to make these dreams real. Here we are perhaps at our most visionary or altruistic, way beyond any selfish or personal motives; we are sincerely making an effort to help make something happen.



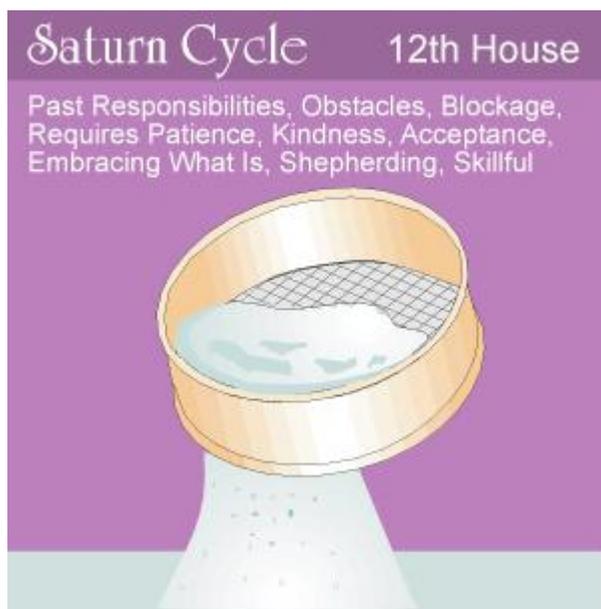
### **Eleventh House (Tomb-Sign)**

This is a point within the Eleventh House, at the 45-degree point from our starting point at the 10th house, which the Tibetan astrologers refer to as one of the four Tomb Signs, and the center of the fixed signs. This is the point where our dreams and plans meet up with some form of resistance—whether that resistance is material from our past that rises up to block us or whatever. The point is, here we are pushing forward, trying to implement whatever vision we have in mind and trying to make it real, and we run into some form of blockage that may slow our progress to a standstill. The question is: What to do at this point?

The answer is: push on. This is not a place to take "no" for an answer, nor a time to cease and desist, to perhaps give up our effort or try and go back the way we came. The resistance we encounter here is normal, and this is a point at which to gently but firmly push on—

## Transits

pushing past the resistance and onward, implementing our vision. This is a push point.



### **Twelfth House Saturn Transit**

In brief: Meet obstacles to action with patience and kindness—for the sake of moving forward.

Saturn passing through the twelfth house, sometimes called the "House of Undoing," marks a different kind of challenge, one that requires not force but rather patience and forbearance on our part. Ever since Saturn crossed into the tenth house, as well as during its passage of the eleventh house, we have been leaving the past—the previous cycle—behind us, and, increasingly, listening more to a different voice—one coming from within. We are now marching to the beat of a different drummer and have some life plan firmly in mind, as well as a will to carry that plan into action.

## Transits

This is the last house above the horizon, and we are about to move into the thick of the first house—the house of action, entering what is called the obscure or formative sector. The twelfth house can represent the test of our resolve to make our vision matter, to care enough to get beyond the planning stages (thinking about it) and actually start making it happen in the external world.

As you might expect, as we begin our move to action, we will have to get through whatever remains of our past that might rise up to block or distract us. For most of us, this means some form of compromise—for all manner of annoyances and distractions will surround us, like gnats, fighting for our attention. At this point, descending into the sphere of argument, justification, complaining and what-have-you, would be a major distraction, and would not move us toward our goal—the goal of making our dreams real.

Here, forbearance, calmness, and patience are required. All of the dues of the past rise up and want to be paid at once; it is best to handle these distractions one by one, as they emerge. It is a "Render unto Caesar that which is Caesar's" sort of thing. This transit typically requires not only patience but sacrifice, as well as the ability to embrace whatever our reality is, and this for the sake of trying to make our vision matter, to make a difference.

The twelfth house is the house of sacrifice and personal compromise, putting up, patiently, with all manner of indignities; also, a place for keeping our eye on the goal.

## Transits



### **First House Saturn Transit**

In brief: The first step in making our dreams real—doing it!

Saturn transiting the cusp of the first house is a major event. Astrologer Grant Lewi writes of this crossing as perhaps being the most portentous and earth-shaking one of the major angles. He goes on to write how, as Saturn moves into the first house, one enters what he calls the "obscure sector," seven years or so of a sort of minor oblivion. I have not found this to be true. It is a fact that, in this sector, we are about as far away from public praise and success as is possible; I have found, however, that in this sector we are, mostly, very, very busy. Let me describe my understanding of this transit.

As Saturn hits the ascendant, it leaves the realm of the outer or above-the-horizon houses (7, 8, 9, 10, 11 and 12) and plunges into what are called the "Personal

## Transits

Houses" (1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6), those houses under or beneath the horizon. We move from the world of ideas and plans to where plans are implemented and made real. Something happens!

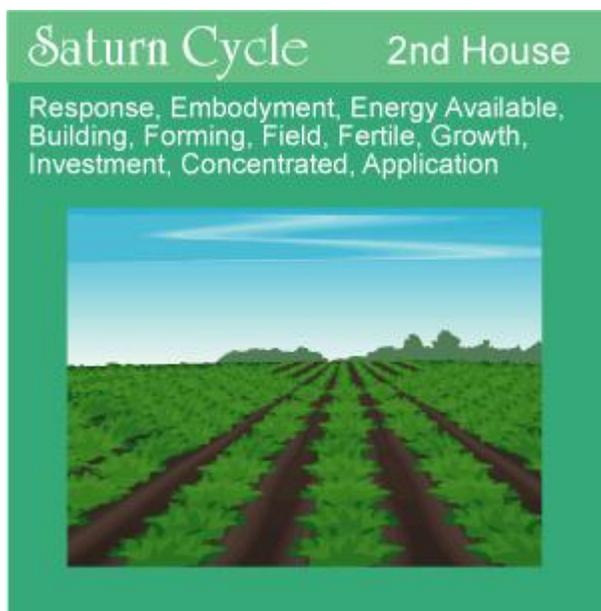
The seven years during which Saturn transited the 10th, 11th and 12th houses were years during which a new urge arose within us, and a giving way to ideas and plans we wanted to make real occurred. Everything that could possibly stop us rose up and blocked our way, and we had to negotiate through whatever these obstacles happened to be. We may have lost a lot of energy, and even some of our will to make a difference, during this journey, but the moment we enter the first house, whatever we have managed to hold together of our original impulse manifests—it appears and rises into view. This is why this point is called the ascendant or Rising Sign.

This result may be small, but it is a first step, and whatever action we have made flows over the detritus of our past and into the present as something concrete. This is the first concrete sign of our ability to make our dreams happen.

This point marks our plunge into doing something about our dreams; it is the point where we begin to walk the talk. It gets real here. And yes, this house and the next two do represent our turning away from our past, from what we have been and done, and from the social or outer environment we have been in; however, it is not really about our being lost in some minor form of oblivion—we are just busy, involved!

We are involved in doing something, and Saturn, through the first house, sees us totally involved in taking action—in making it happen.

## Transits



### **Second House Saturn Transit**

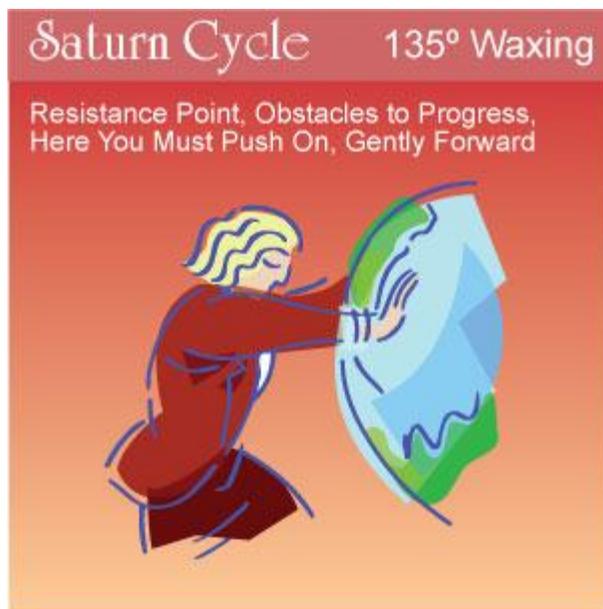
In brief: Building a vehicle.

The second house is one of real productivity, where the energy needed to proceed is at hand, and the momentum is in the direction of the fulfillment of our plans. This is the time to really lay into it, to put the pedal to the metal and drive things forward. It is another one of the formative houses (1, 2, and 3), where we are investing or putting something in, rather than one of the houses for social or outward success, for getting things out. We know how the rabbit gets out of the hat, but this is how the rabbit gets into the hat: through hard work and sustained effort, and through investment.

The second house is traditionally the house of possessions and possessing. This makes good sense, because it is here that the initial idea that was brought across into the world of action, at the first house, draws

## Transits

around it a response—whatever body of response is appropriate to the idea. This is where the building gets done and the body gets formed. As mentioned, this is the formative sector, where things are built and embodied. We are fashioning a new experience.



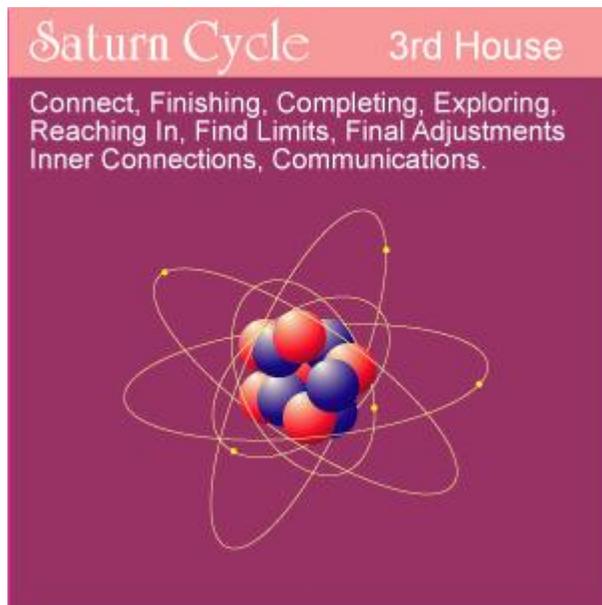
### **Second House (Tomb-Sign)**

As mentioned earlier, the 45-degree point of the fixed signs is what the Tibetan astrologers call a Tomb Sign. It is a sticking point, where some resistance to our efforts can be expected, so we should be prepared for it. The question is: how are we to respond to this blockage or resistance?

In this case—where we are already on about as much of a roll as we ever will be—the answer is simple: press on. This is the time to take control and gently press forward. It is not a time to give up or back off. A productive time like this will not come again soon, so regardless of what

## Transits

appears we should expect to continue to move forward. We are well past the point, however, where we should be making any major new starts. We did that. For better or for worse, we are already started. For the foreseeable future, we should be guiding and finishing up (correcting?) what we have already put in motion rather than looking to begin any major new undertaking.



### **Third House Saturn Transit**

In brief: Completing our inward push, making the connections, finishing up.

This is the 3rd and last of the houses in the formative sector, so it is mostly about finishing up and completing whatever it is we have going for us. This is not a time to undertake a major new effort, but a time to connect up and make the final adjustments, to put the finishing touches on what we have already been working on.

## Transits

This is about as far into a project as we will ever get, with about as much effort as possible having been made, and we are about as far away from receiving credit or acknowledgement as we can get. We are deep in there, working on the inside, from within the project, which is also our life. If we are thinking "lonely" or separated, then this is as far away from common kindness and recognition as we are likely to get. We are on our own here, fashioning our own future, for better or worse. We are too far in to see out, so we can feel very isolated.

Here is where we do the detail or finishing work. The main bulk of growth or productivity is over. At this point, we are making all of the connections, going into it as far as we will get, exploring our creation down to the last detail. This is as totally involved in something as we can ever get. We are nearing the 4th house cusp, which marks the end of development for us—the physical limit of our efforts.

## Transits



### **Fourth House Saturn Transit**

In brief: The living end or experience.

The fourth house marks the end work, the result of all our effort over the last 14 years or so. It has been one long period of investing on our part, of always putting more in and never getting anything back. And, the thing that we have most put in all of this time is our very self. "We" have gone in there, in person—gotten deep in there—and there has, so far, been no return from there, no return for us; the major return from this point onward will be our self. We will return from this very inward-directed period of time. That return starts here, as Saturn crosses the 4th house cusp.

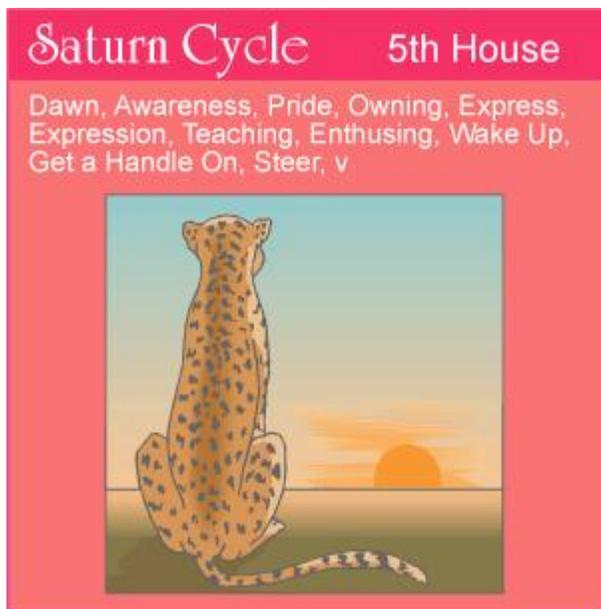
This crossing marks the farthest point of our complete involvement and our living experience of being deep in there. In the cycle of the signs, the tarot card for the fourth sign, Cancer, is called "The Chariot," and this

## Transits

fits—for here is the pure ride of the senses, the living end (our self) of all this investment and work—our experience. This is it, and this marks a major turning point upward in the chart. From this point on, we will gradually begin to emerge or come out, becoming aware of what we have been in and going through all of these last years. Awareness begins to dawn here... although very, very slowly, at first. Our life is changing.

And, although it tends to be very gradual, each passing day brings increasing awareness. It is like the Sun coming up, or winter turning into spring—very slow, but always it becomes lighter. This transition marks the end of all the years of our effort and investment. We have put the rabbit into the hat and now we can begin to take it out; above all, keep in mind that it is we who are coming out. If anything is coming out of all of this, it is our self. We begin to discover our self and what we have done—who we are.

Saturn, at this point in the chart, begins to rise, and that rise will take fourteen to fifteen years, until it crests at the 10th house cusp. These are years in which we can increasingly take charge of our own life, for, during this time, our understanding and awareness of our self and how to use what is available to us in the world grows. Our manipulating skills increase. We slowly learn to use the world and everything in it.



### **Fifth House Saturn Transit**

In brief: Growing awareness and ownership.

If the fourth house was more the pure thrill of experience, with perhaps a gradual sense of growing awareness and confidence in our self, then as Saturn passes into the fifth house that confidence grows into a real awareness, as we begin to get a better grasp of the nature our own experience: who we are and what we have just been through. Here we start to get a handle on and develop an awareness of what we had been going through all of the many years when Saturn moved down through the first three houses.

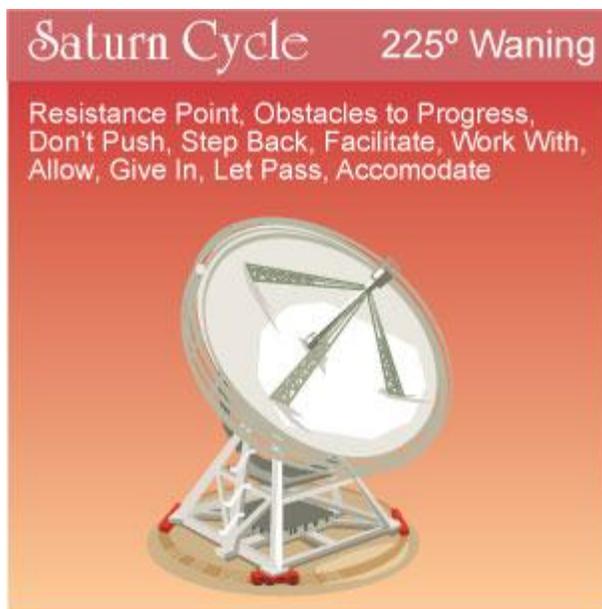
That experience is over and, as we move through the fifth house, our understanding and awareness of what we have been through continues to increase. This is a process of discovery—in this case of self-discovery; there is a growing awareness of our self and what we

## Transits

have been through the last seven or eight years. We are coming out of the previous period and just catching on to what it all meant. It is like waking up. We have a growing sense of confidence, of ownership, and even of pride in who we are and what we have done and been through. This new sense of confidence may not yet be apparent to those around us (the world can't see us yet), but it is very clear to the most important person—our own self. We feel a confidence that has been missing for many years. We know we are on an upswing.

All of this is very fresh and exciting for us. We are proud of what we have been through and who we are becoming; this is, also, something we may want to express and share with those around us. This can be a period of years when the teacher or enthusiast within us may reach a high-water mark, resulting in an outpouring of creative expression that may be expressed in some artistic form, or through teaching and sharing our experience with others. We are on fire, and cannot contain our enthusiasm.

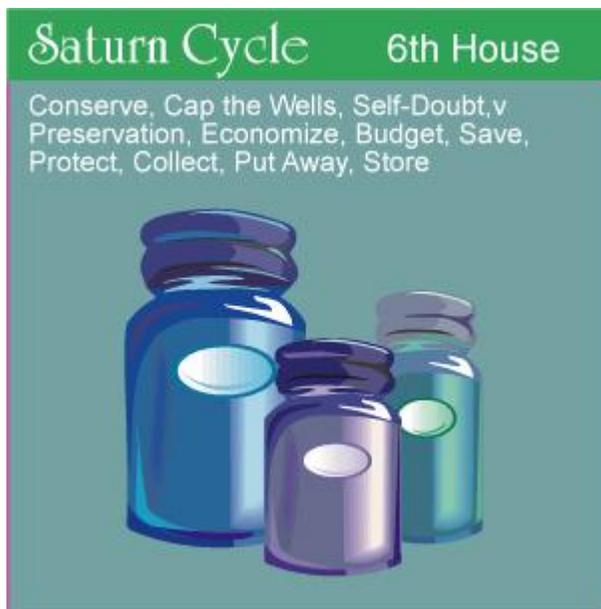
## Transits



### **Fifth House (Tomb Sign)**

The 45-degree mark in this sector, what the Tibetans call the Tomb Sign, is one of the four major resistance points in the 30-year cycle, where push may come to shove. Some obstacles may appear. And, this is a time for action but not a time to push on ahead. The push or move we want here is not a step forward but rather a step back. This is not a point to be aggressive or to force things forward when we feel blocked, but rather a time to give in and make allowances—to act by accepting and by facilitation. As the Bible says, "This came to pass." Well, here is a point to let whatever came to pass, just pass. Step out of the way. Don't confront it.

## Transits



### **Sixth House Saturn Transit**

In brief: Caring for our self.

As Saturn passes through the sixth house, the awareness that began to dawn in the fourth house, and the growing self-confidence that built through the fifth house, begin to be tempered and slowed down. The rabbit is out of the hat and that first flash of exhilaration has died away—it is not as strong now as it was then. The initial rush of enthusiasm we had as we discovered ourselves, which we shared so freely with everyone, is now more like a trickle than a geyser, and our thoughts turn toward maintenance rather than toward any further gratuitous outreach. It is not that we are in a downswing, but rather that the first flush of enthusiasm has passed. The bloom is off the rose.

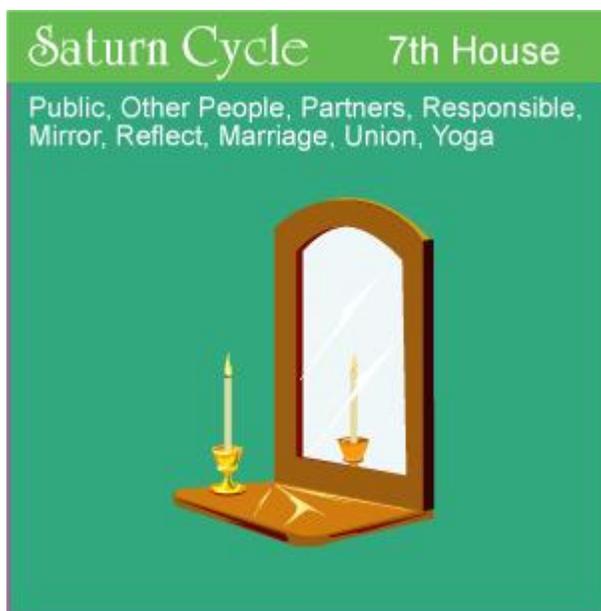
Saturn is still rising through the chart, and we continue to become more in control of our self with each passing

## Transits

day, but we have lost the initial rush of energy, which is only natural. It is like being at a party—you realize you are not having as much fun as you were an hour before, and you find your thoughts turning to more mundane matters, such as going home, or going out to get a cup of coffee. This is what is happening, but here on a much larger scale.

What was previously done with sheer enthusiasm is now being done perhaps quite methodically, it having become almost routine; it is much like when we experience a new-found sense of ourselves, some kind of breakthrough, and then assume we will have that new-found kind of strength from that day onward, only to find that, it, too, was a passing phase in an endless cycle—we come down from it, back to our old self. There is also a sense of coming down to earth here, of taking care of the details, and, in general, of being more conservative.

So, the overall experience is one of a growing awareness that the fullness of the experience, whatever it was, will not last, and that some attempt to preserve, conserve and protect our resources is in order, a "we won't live forever" sort of thing. All of the above gives way to an interest in healing, to the taking care of what we already have, and to a desire to stockpile or prepare for that rainy day.



### **Seventh House Saturn Transit**

In brief: Become less personal, more objective, and more embracing of others as the same.

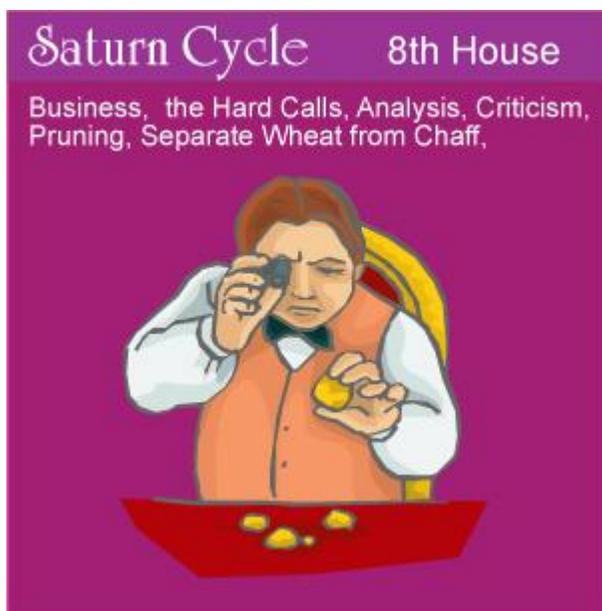
Saturn's transit of the 7th house cusp (the descendant) carries the upswing beyond what are called the personal houses (lower half of chart) into the impersonal or public houses (upper half of chart). This is one of the four angles, and thus a major turning point, a separation from a more internal and purely personal experience into an opening out toward a more public or outward time. From this point onward, as Saturn climbs toward the Midheaven, we move beyond our personal fears and history and begin to identify with what we share and have in common with all other beings. Here we begin to respond to others and to reflect others. This is the house of partners—of marriage and of union, for we have let go of our personal ties. We have gained the understanding that, by ourselves, we are not going any

## Transits

farther. We have pushed it as far as it will go and it is time to let it go, taking what we can from it and rising on. As we turn away from a purely personal focus we discover the world of other people and of cooperation. We take a less personal and a more objective view of life.

This is considered, by many, to be the favored sector, because it is here that we become objective enough to actually make clear and impartial choices—choices not based solely on our selfish interests. Here we begin to reap our rewards, for better or for worse. The outer and external world appears and our personal existence (the lower six houses) is somehow left behind, or, at least takes a back seat to a more public or cooperative life—we ‘partner’.

It is from this point forward that we draw whatever conclusions we can from this entire cycle of existence, for we are moving out and upward socially, ever more able to see what is useful compared to what is non-essential. This is the house of responsibility, and it is here that we can fully respond, perhaps for the first time, to whatever we have been and done. We take responsibility in that we can get our arms around and somehow step outside of our personality. This is the opposite point from the ascendant—which is considered, by astrologers, to be the most personal point in the chart—since this is so, then this point, here, is the most impersonal or public one in the chart, where everything is seen and shared, where we ‘reflect’.



### **Eighth House Saturn Transit**

In brief: Removing the excess.

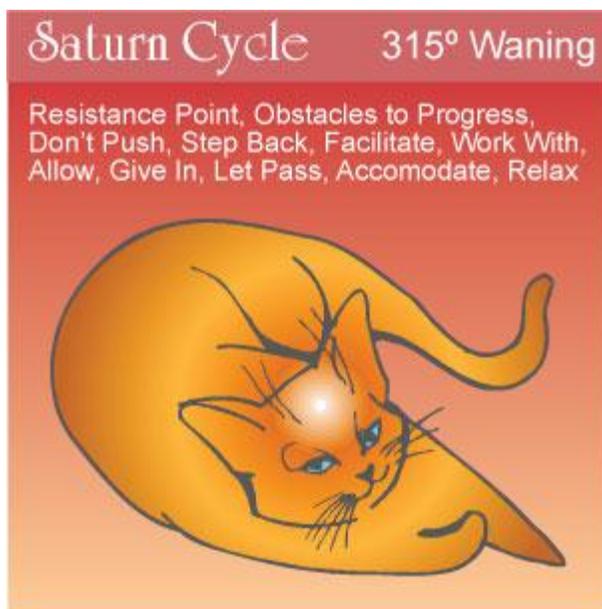
Saturn's transit of the eighth house takes us even farther from the body of our personal experience, giving us still greater powers of observation and analysis. This, indeed, is the house of business, if by business we mean making the right calls, picking the winners from the losers, and separating the treasure from the trash. This will be a time when we are at our sharpest—in a business sense—and when we have enough analytical powers so as to know what is good for us and what to avoid—a talent we may have sorely needed up to this point.

This is the point where we strip bare any misconceptions and illusions we may have had about ourselves, exposing the naked bare bones of whatever reality we do have. There is very little sentimentality

## Transits

here. This is about getting down to the nitty-gritty and making the tough calls.

This is not a time to start new things or to push for change but rather a time to withdraw wisely—to reap whatever we can, accrue the results, and to appraise our situation with a cold eye toward the future. We are talking Aikido here, not Judo; talking more about taking advantage of the forces already in motion rather than taking new initiatives. We are the manipulators here, not the manipulated.

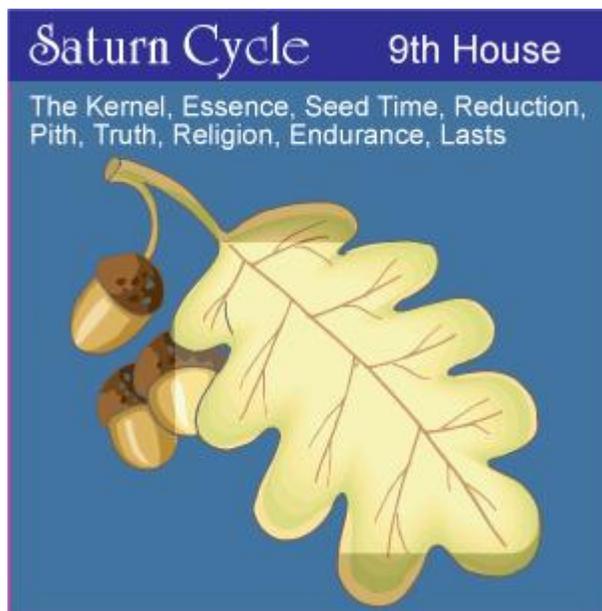


### **Eighth House (Tomb Sign)**

The 45-degree point in this house is what the Tibetans call a Tomb Sign, a point where we should expect to encounter some kind of resistance or obstacles in our path. Our response here (to being blocked) should be to become very passive, to make way (instead of oppose), to accommodate and make room for whatever is an

## Transits

obstruction—letting it pass out of the system. Give way. This is not a point at which to start new projects, or to take any action other than the action of helping things to pass.



### **Ninth House Saturn Transit**

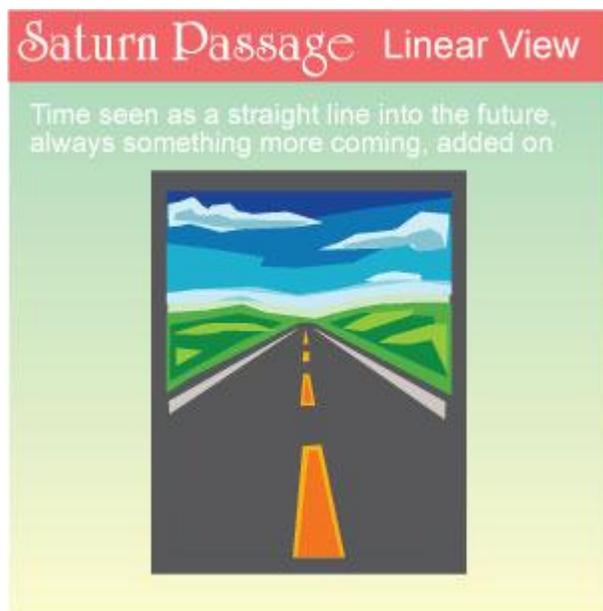
In brief: Encapsulation.

As Saturn moves into and through the Ninth House, we complete our withdrawal from the entire previous cycle. We have moved out of and beyond that experience and are drawing whatever conclusions we can from it. We are, in fact, concluding it, for it is winding down to the very end. We are beyond the observation that was so clear in the seventh house, and have finished using our analytical powers as we did in the eighth house. We are down to seeds and stems, as they say, picking the kernels of truth from the chaff and hanging on to these.

## Transits

We try to keep the essence here, be it wisdom or reality, of everything we have been through. Whatever remains, good or bad, will be seed for our next cycle. We are talking of essential things here, of things that endure—whatever lasts longest, the very truth (the truth for us) itself. This truth kernel we have accumulated is what must serve to start our future. It is the seed essence of our experience.

As Saturn crosses the 10th house cusp, this seed sprouts or releases its message; it is perhaps so very deep within us that we can, at first, only feel it as a vibration—like a bell ringing within us.



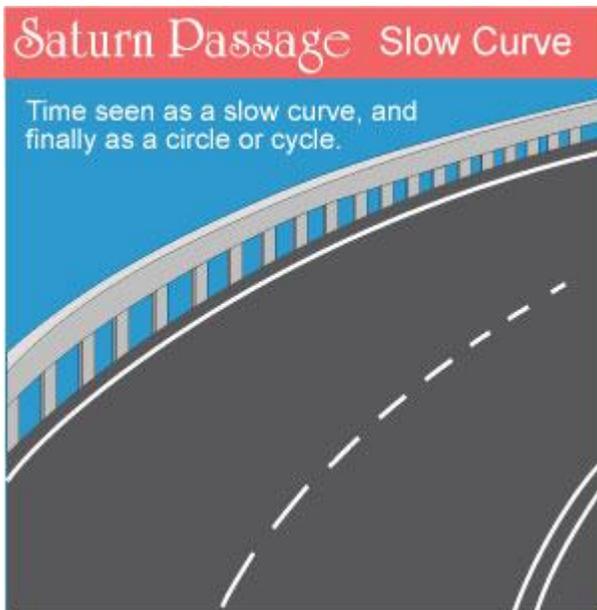
### ***The Saturn Passage***

There is nothing as fresh as "the first time," and it is the first round of Saturn, culminating at age 30, when all is—oh, so new. Until Saturn makes its first return, completing its cycle, and begins repeating that cycle, we

## Transits

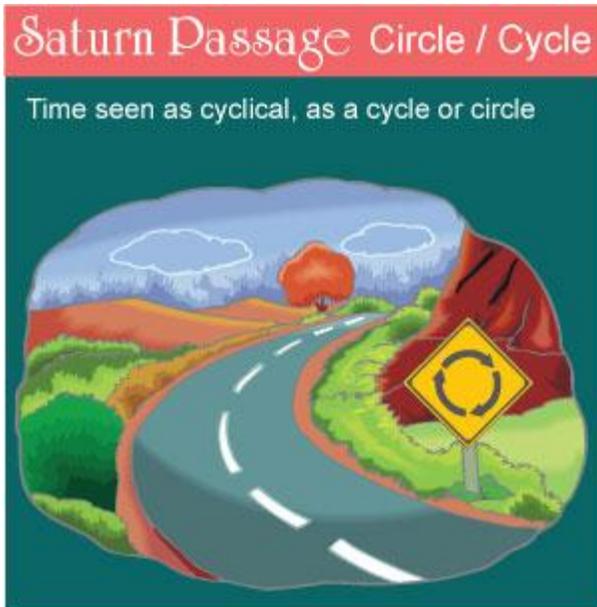
have no possible idea of limits—for Saturn is the limiter. Until Saturn completes its cycle, the limits are not obvious. Our sense of time before the first Saturn return is essentially eternal—this time has no limits and it seems to us that we can and will live forever—for time has not yet appeared on the horizon, much less has it touched us.

Each year of our life before that first Saturn return appears linear, and time stretches out toward the future in what looks to be a straight line. We cannot yet see that the straight line toward our future is a slow curve, one that will eventually come full circle. Once we gain that insight—the gradual knowledge there is nowhere in particular we are going— with it will come a sense of responsibility. Life and its circumstances for those less than thirty is somehow always new.



### **The Slow Curve**

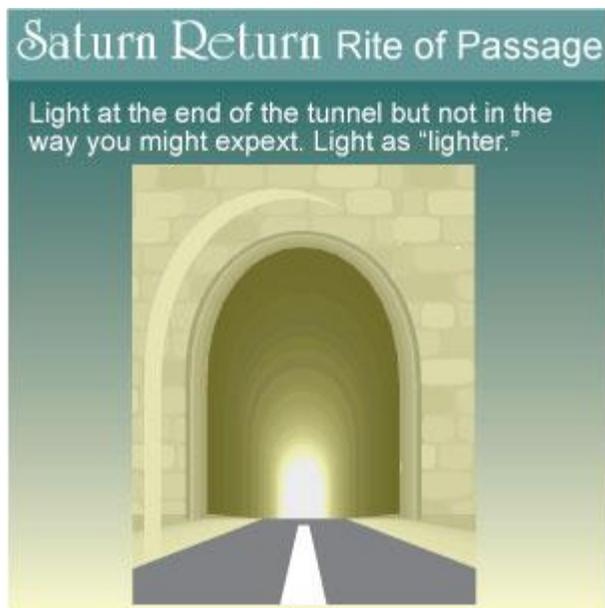
This appears true in regard to all the planets: that until any planet has completed its first circle or cycle during our life, we have no way to really "get it"—to understand the nature of that planet—for we have not yet seen or experienced (consciously or unconsciously), in this particular life, all that it represents; however, when it does make its circle, turning to repeat itself, and starts going over the same part of the zodiac again, we begin to get it. At that point, Saturn's entire orbit would become, for instance, now a part of our personal life experience—things are much more likely to crop up that we have seen or experienced before. This is when we begin to sense that we have been over this ground before. In a very real way, once a planet completes its cycle and begins to repeat itself, it becomes a part of our internal life experience; in fact, in a very real sense it IS our inner life. This is true of Saturn most of all, for Saturn governs the form and circumstances each of us face in our lives.



### **The Closed Circle**

So this Saturn return at around 30 years of age is a very important event, astrologically. In a very real way this is the turning point around which an entire life rotates. This is what is called a climacteric event, a true rite of passage we all go through. As my teacher told me, "Michael, we are ALL initiates. It is only a matter of to what degree." In the case of the Saturn return, since each of us does experience it, the only difference has to do with our individual awareness of this great life event.

Are we aware of what we are going through? If we passed through something years ago, can we develop, now, an awareness of what that event meant? These are questions worth asking.



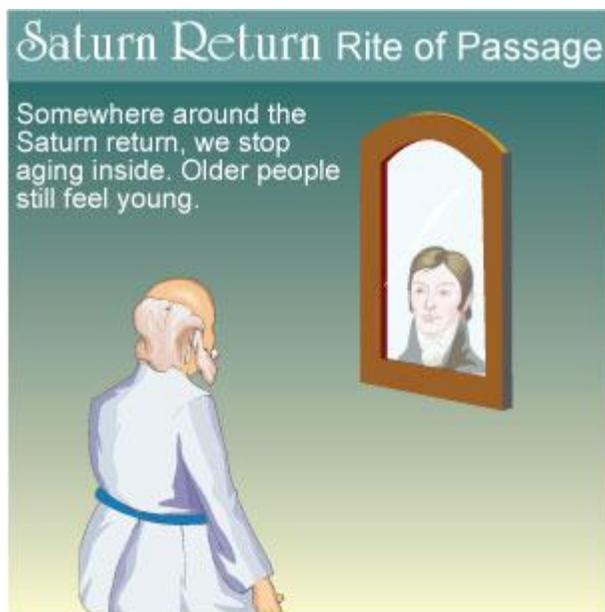
### **Awareness of the Saturn Return**

If we live long enough, we each have our Saturn return—rich and poor alike. Luckily, this is something we can learn about and become aware of before, during, or after the actual return itself. It is most difficult to explain this concept to people who have not finished their first Saturn return. Sure, they can grasp it intellectually, but they have no idea, really, of what one is actually talking about. It simply does not register. They may think they get it, but it is all intellectual.

When someone is approaching or going through their Saturn return, it is much easier to get his or her attention, easier to point out and have them understand what we have been describing here. Of course, easiest of all—although still not a slam dunk—is telling someone about this event later in their life. As with *The Tibetan Book of the Dead*, a book you read to the dead or dying, and one which describes possible travels in the after-life

## Transits

realms, one can only present the incredibly helpful concept of the Saturn Return, trying to point it out well enough so that the listener can 'get it'—eventually seeing for themselves the truth of it alive and all around them.



### Forever Young

This concept is useful for many reasons; chief among them is the fact that, once you understand the physical factory, so to speak, stops at thirty years of age, you stop looking so much for something else to come along in the future. You stop thinking linear. You begin to look a lot closer to home, somewhere near to or in the present, allowing for plenty of reality checks of the past. Just ask any older person; they will tell you that they do not feel as old as they look, but rather, inside, they stopped aging many years before—inside, they are still young, and always will be.

And you will find that different people stop aging at different ages. Some are still teenagers, others in their early or late twenties, and so forth. No one is over thirty—ever. That is the physical law of Saturn, remember? As for myself, I figure that, inside, I am still 25 years old—and have never aged a day over that. It is

## Transits

as if a part of me died or stopped aging back then, and that everything since then is a part of my afterlife—life after that point. Whatever the case may be, I am a *certain age* inside, and, although I am almost 65 in the mirror, I have not changed, in some ways, since a particular day back in 1967. When I think of myself, I think back then—to that day. Before that, I was different, and I didn't really know myself. After that day, I had at least some idea of who I was. When we begin to see our 'self', that event marks the time I am speaking of.



### **The Turning Point**

If you understood what was presented above, then you know that our view of life changes as we age. There is life before—and life after—our Saturn return. Before that return, we are always looking forward and we have very little sense of time being limited; we are young, and it seems as if we will live forever; ideas of death are very far off.

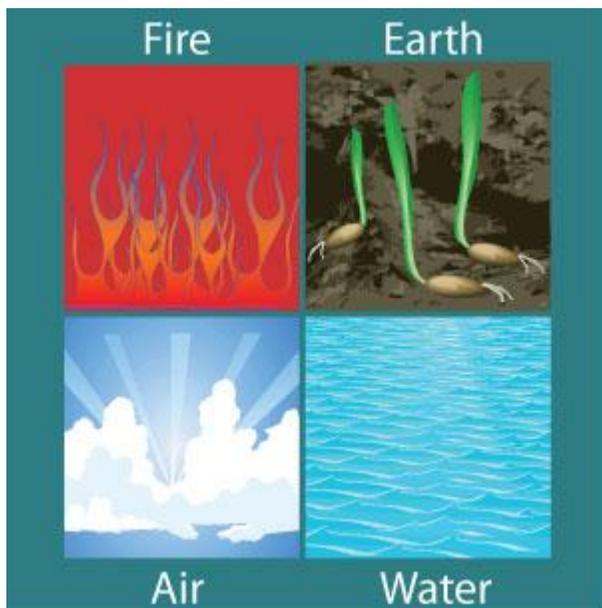
## Transits

After the Saturn return, as we move into our thirties and forties, all of this gradually changes, and, at some point, we will even find ourselves looking back at a time when we were physically in more perfect shape, and so forth. We do an about face, and begin to value things that we had always taken for granted before, such as health and physical strength—simple, but essential things.

So, there very definitely is, in life, what we can call a "turning point," and the Saturn return, at around the age of 30 years, marks where that point occurs. Up to that point, life has always promised us more, and by continuing in that line or direction, we got more. This simple fact leads us to the false assumption that life is a line, and that by traveling into the future we can somehow get more. After the age of thirty, this is not the case. As we peer along that line into the future, we can very clearly see that, in a physical way, we will not get more, but less. This is a fact.

This fact leads us to revision the idea of what life is and what it offers, and the straight line to the future no longer seems to hold all of the answers. It leads downhill. Soon or later, in our thinking, we reach a turning point, a point where we, ourselves, turn away from seeing life as a line going somewhere we want to go; we then begin to cast about for other perspectives, other ways of seeing all this.

## ***Basic Chart Factors***



### **The Four Elements**

The 'elemental balance' goes far back in the history of astrology and refers to the elements which are associated with the twelve signs of the zodiac: Fire, Water, Earth, and Air. There are three fire signs, three water signs, three earth signs, and three air signs. The lights (Sun and Moon), and the eight planets, are naturally placed in the twelve signs, each of which is also an element. When you tally up the total of the planets in the various signs (and the elements), you have the elemental balance.

In most cases, a person will have more of one element and less of another and this balance (or lack thereof) is traditionally interpreted. Here is how it works:

In a word, there are the haves and the have-nots. The element you have the most of represents what you

## Major Chart Patterns

HAVE TO DO, or have to use, in your life, and the quality of that element says something about the gifts or talents you have.

By the same token, those elements you lack or want for in your chart are areas where you may need more experience—these are the elements you ‘want’, and you most likely have a natural thirst for these qualities. So, we can say:

We DO WHAT WE HAVE TO DO

And

WE BECOME WHAT WE WANT.

Those qualities we are strong in are what we HAVE TO DO and those we are weaker in may interest us very much—we turn toward them, or, we BECOME WHAT WE WANT. We all want to become what we want.

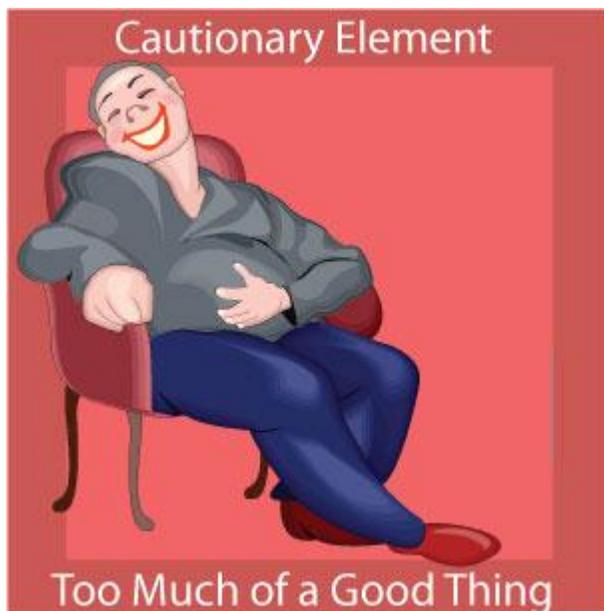
## Major Chart Patterns



### **Luck Element 7**

The element you have the least of is the one you "want" the most, and this is called your lucky or Luck Element. The reason why this element is the key to your luck or success is because only when you find or get this element into your life more, will your birth chart approach any kind of balance. It is only when there is a sense of elemental balance in the chart that real success or progress can be made. Getting this element into your life more can become crucial to progress. The things we don't have can be the keys to our success.

## Major Chart Patterns



### **Cautionary Element**

By the same token, one would think that having a lot of something was only a blessing, and never a problem. When it comes to balancing elements, this is not always the case. Every element is essential in order to have an overall balance. Having a lot of one element means, of course, that you are very strong in that element. At the same time—and this is the caution—one must be careful not to overuse or dominate with that element at the expense of the other elements one has less of. In fact, it is the weakest elements in your chart that are considered your Luck Elements because, without them, you can never reach a balance.

## Major Chart Patterns



### List of Signs and Elements

#### **FIRE SIGNS**

Aries

Leo

Sagittarius

#### **WATER SIGNS**

Cancer

Scorpio

Pisces

#### **EARTH SIGNS**

Taurus

Virgo

Capricorn

## Major Chart Patterns

### **AIR SIGNS**

Gemini

Libra

Aquarius



### **The Fire Element**

The element of fire brings just that, pure "fire" and forward motion, a spirited effort, into our lives—making a go of it. The Fire Element is what gets us in motion, moving us off the starting block and out into the midstream of any project, large or small. Fire is that light in our eyes, always signaling that we have the will and the energy to just jump in and forge ahead. Fire is our driving force.

## Major Chart Patterns



### **Want Fire - Your Luck Element**

This chart wants fire, so it may be hard for you to put the pedal to the metal and just get up and get going in life. You may tend to lay back and postpone taking action—not making continued effort, instead, just hoping good things will come to you.

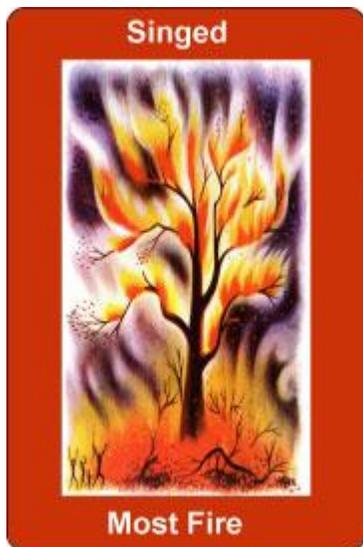
Sooner or later, this lack of fire is something you may have to come to terms with. And, this missing ingredient in your makeup makes it the Luck Element in your chart. Fire is lucky for you, because when you acquire this element, it will automatically bring your entire chart into balance. When a chart is balanced, all things are furthered, and progress and success assured.

So, to bring balance into your chart, you will want to find ways to invoke fire. You can read and study about it, ponder on it, and gradually learn how to capture some of that element and build it into your life. For starters, you may want to include fire's red color in your wardrobe or around the house. You could go to where

## Major Chart Patterns

the action is, whether this might be extreme sports or any other pursuits that will show you how start things—how to just jump in and go.

Whatever the case is, as you learn to incorporate fire, to literally *become* fire, then this element will be your key or luck element, unlocking your entire natal chart.

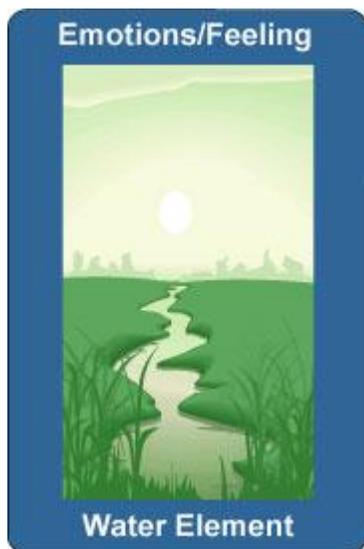


### **Have Fire - Your Cautionary Element**

You have an abundance of water and fellowship, more than the average person, enough probably for several folks. This is both a blessing and a curse, and here is why. On the one hand, you will never lack for friends, and your touchy-feely approach to things insures you always feel a part of the life around you. Your natural empathy and sense of compassion makes it easy for you to sense music, acting, and probably all of the arts. You are emotionally adept and always know just how you feel. This is, of course, a valuable quality to have—the ability to be compassionate. It is a natural for you.

## Major Chart Patterns

On the other hand, water can sometimes be a cause for caution, because with too much water you drown, which might just mean getting lost in a sea of your own making, so, easy does it! It can be good to have a lot of something, but too much of something can be just as challenging as too little. So, use awareness to control your aggressiveness, and, take a close look at the element you want most. Balance is the key to success—neither too little nor too much of something.



### **The Water Element**

The Water Element is what unites us, dissolving all our differences and bringing solutions to life's sometimes hard problems. Water means emotions and feelings—the ability to feel this way or that way about something. Compassion and kindness toward others, and perhaps even toward ourselves, belongs to the element water. Without water, we feel alone. “The dewdrop slips into the shining sea.”

## Major Chart Patterns



### **Want Water - Your Luck Element**

This chart wants water, so it may be hard for you to feel a part of things, to feel in contact and connected, close to those around you. You may often end up feeling isolated and alone—like an island. You may feel hard-hearted and cool when, inside, you want to let go and say "Yes!"

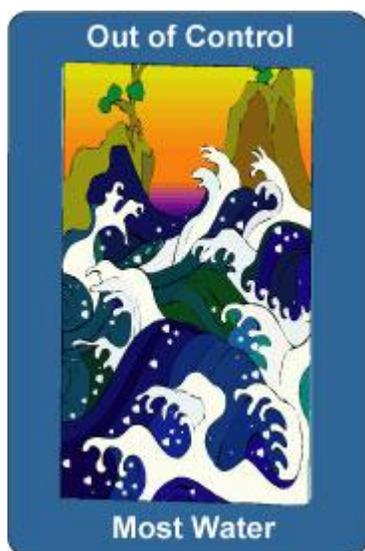
Sooner or later, this lack of water is something you may have to come to terms with. And, this being the missing ingredient in your makeup, makes it the Luck Element in your chart. Water is lucky for you, because when you acquire this element, it will automatically bring your entire chart into balance. When a chart is balanced, all things are furthered and progress and success assured.

So, to bring balance into your chart, you will want to find ways to invoke water. You can read and study about it, ponder on it, and gradually learn how to capture some of that element and build it into your life. For starters, you may want to include water's blue (or cooling) colors

## Major Chart Patterns

in your wardrobe or around the house. You could always do something as blatant as taking up swimming or sailing—getting out on the water. The key here is to find ways to let go, shoving off from where you may now be stuck, and trusting yourself to float out across the water.

Whatever the case may be, as you learn to incorporate water, to literally *become* water, this element will be the key or luck element, unlocking your entire natal chart.



### **Have Water - Your Cautionary Element**

You have an abundance of water and fellowship, more than the average person—probably enough for several folks. This is both a blessing and a curse, and here is why. On the one hand, you will never lack for friends, and your touchy-feely approach to things insures that you will always feel a part of the life around you. Your natural empathy and sense of compassion make it easy for you to be sensitive to music, acting, and, probably, to all of the arts. You are emotionally adept, and always

## Major Chart Patterns

know just how you are feeling. This quality is, of course, a valuable one to have—being compassionate. It is a natural one for you.

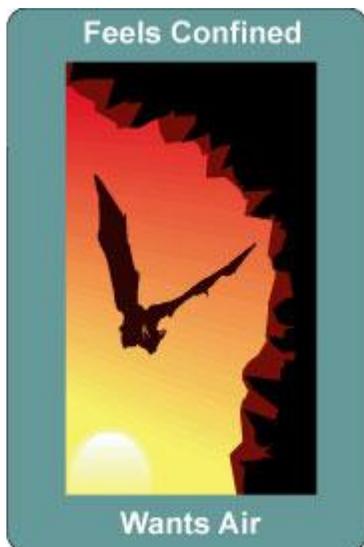
On the other hand, water can sometimes be a cause for caution, because with too much water you drown, which might mean just getting lost in a sea of your own making, so, easy does it! It can be good to have a lot of something, but too much of something can be just as challenging as too little. So, use awareness to control your aggressiveness, and take a close look at the element you want most. Balance is the key to success—neither too little nor too much of something.



### **The Air Element**

The Air Element brings space and understanding into our life; it is what allows us to grasp a situation all at once—to get the big picture. With air, we can step back from our personal musings and take a more objective viewpoint. This element puts the power of the mind—of ideas and thoughts—at our fingertips. Air understands.

## Major Chart Patterns



### **Want Air - Your Luck Element**

This chart wants air, so when it comes to having confidence in your ability to grasp so-called abstract concepts, you may encounter problems. You could be the one with the puzzled look on your face when others all around you are nodding their heads to the teacher. It can be hard for you to get the overall gist of things, to grasp the "big picture."

Sooner or later, this lack of air is something you may have to come to terms with. And, this missing ingredient in your makeup makes it the Luck Element in your chart. Air is lucky for you, because when you acquire this element, it will automatically bring your entire chart into balance. When a chart is balanced, all things are furthered, and progress and success assured.

So, to bring balance into your chart, you will want to find ways to invoke air. You can read and study about it, ponder on it, and gradually learn how to capture some

## Major Chart Patterns

of this element and build it into your life. For starters, you may want to include air's white or light colors in your wardrobe or around the house. You could always do something as blatant as taking up sky-diving, or even dare to climb tall buildings and look out at the space. When studying and learning, you may have to work hard to build confidence in your own ability to grasp concepts. You may find that half of the problem is your fear of *not* understanding, and, once you give up that fear, ideas will come naturally.

Whatever the case may be, as you learn to incorporate air, to literally *become* air, this element will be the key or luck element, unlocking your entire natal chart.



### **Have Air - Your Cautionary Element**

You have an abundance of air, and conceptuality, more than the average person—probably enough for several folks. This is both a blessing and a curse, and here is why. On the one hand, you have confidence in your own mind, and in your ability to learn and grasp what, to

## Major Chart Patterns

others, may be highly abstract subjects. You can use all of this learning and skill— skill at seeing the big picture—to better yourself. And, of course, this quality is a valuable one to have—being skillful mentally. It is a talent.

On the other hand, air can sometimes be a cause for caution, because too much air and you can over-intellectualize, get too picky, and end up making desert-dry land out of an ordinary conversation. The intellect is a good guide to action but no substitute for actual experience itself. It is good to have a lot of something, but too much can be just as challenging as too little.

So, use awareness to control your intellectuality, and, take a close look at the element you most want. Balance is the key to success, neither too little nor too much of something.

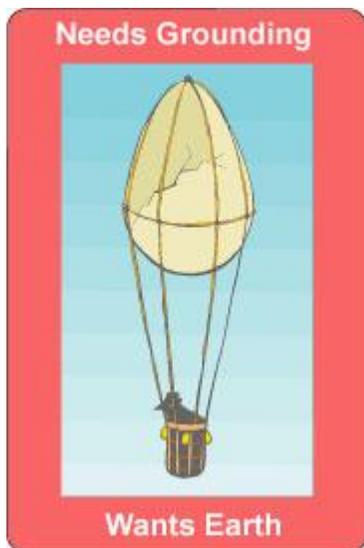


### **The Earth Element**

The element earth is all about being practical, getting down to the nitty-gritty, or, for that matter, just about

## Major Chart Patterns

'getting down to earth' period. With your feet solidly on the ground, you naturally have good common sense. You most likely always find a way of getting some use out of any situation. This brings a real talent for business of all kinds.



### **Want Earth - Your Luck Element**

This chart wants earth; so, when it comes to getting down to business, you are not naturally very practical and you could probably use a few pointers; this includes a need for something as simple as good old common sense. On the day-to-day level of getting things done and taking care of business, you may come up short.

Sooner or later, this lack of earth is something you may have to come to terms with. And, this missing ingredient in your makeup makes it the Luck Element in your chart. Earth is lucky for you, because when you acquire this element, it will automatically bring your entire chart into balance. When a chart is balanced, all things are furthered, and progress and success assured.

## Major Chart Patterns

So, to bring balance into your chart, you will want to find ways to invoke earth. You can read and study about it, ponder on it, and gradually learn how to capture some of this element and build it into your life. For starters, you may want to include earth's brown and red colors in your wardrobe or around the house. You might want to take a symbolic plunge and plant a garden, just to get your hands in the soil—get 'down to earth'. The idea here is to get your hands dirty working out very practical solutions—become the handyman around the house, that sort of thing—whatever the case may be. As you learn to incorporate earth, to literally *become* earth, this element will be the key or luck element, unlocking your entire natal chart.



### ***The Triplicities***

The division of the zodiac signs into three sets, called The Triplicities, is a part of traditional astrology. These three sets: the Cardinal, the Fixed, and the Mutable, contain four signs each, as follows:

## Major Chart Patterns

### **CARDINAL SIGNS**

Aries

Cancer

Libra

Capricorn

### **FIXED SIGNS**

Taurus

Leo

Scorpio

Aquarius

### **MUTABLE SIGNS**

Gemini

Virgo

Sagittarius

Pisces

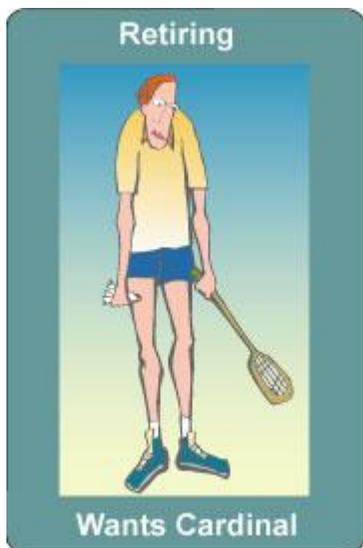
## Major Chart Patterns



### **Cardinal Signs**

The Cardinal Signs (Aries, Cancer, Libra, and Capricorn) mark the four corners of the zodiac, which, in turn, are marked by the two equinoxes and the two solstices. Cardinal signs are the initiators in the zodiac, always taking the initiative, being the first to move and start things. If you need a jump start or a kick in the pants, you can always count on a cardinal sign to come through for you. These are the leaders of the zodiac, the entrepreneurs.

## Major Chart Patterns



### **Want Cardinal Signs**

You have a shortfall of Cardinal signs; therefore, you naturally want for or lack them. This can manifest in many ways, such as you being somewhat slow to get things moving, or, not feeling it is up to you to make the first move and initiate things but preferring to let someone else start things, with you just following along.

There is nothing wrong with this; however, sooner or later situations will arise which demand that you take action. There is also another factor: this lack of cardinal signs throws your whole chart off balance to some degree. This makes the cardinal signs and qualities lucky for you, since, by invoking them and bringing them into your life, you also bring your chart into balance. Every step toward balancing your chart is a step toward progress and toward a successful (and yes, balanced) life.

So, you may want to consider how you can best bring these qualities more into your life. You could spend time

## Major Chart Patterns

with some self-starters, watching how they operate, or, perhaps you could make a point of trying new things, of putting yourself in situations where you have to reach out and make the first move. As unnatural as this may feel at first, each small step you take in this direction will be a giant step forward in regard to your life balance, and will also be the key to your success.



### **Above Average Cardinal Signs**

You have more than your share of get-up-and-go and you are probably a natural entrepreneur. You enjoy making the first move and starting things—this is natural for you. Having an excess of this only means that you may have to develop a little awareness, making an effort to be gentler and not always hog the show. Look to what qualities you want or lack, and see if you can bring them along.

## Major Chart Patterns



### **Fixed Signs**

The Fixed Signs (Taurus, Leo, Scorpio, and Capricorn) are the heart and hub of the wheel of the zodiac, the place where things stay or stick. The buck stops here. The Fixed signs are dependable, stubborn, and not afraid to block your way if you cross them. They are more like a closed door than an open window. These are the 'tough guys' of the zodiac.

## Major Chart Patterns



### **Want Fixed Signs**

When it comes to staying the course, with having plain old 'stick-too-it-ness', you may, at times, fall a little short; you may have difficulty with just planting your two feet in the ground and standing up against whatever the obstacle of the day may be. Rather than toughing it out, you may prefer to be skillful in finding ways to get around a one-on-one confrontation.

There is nothing wrong with this; however, sooner or later, situations will arise which demand you take a stand and go eyeball to eyeball...and...this may actually benefit you! There is also another factor, and this is that this lack of Fixed signs throws your whole chart off balance to some degree. This makes the fixed signs and their qualities lucky for you, since by invoking them and bringing them more into your life, you bring your entire chart into balance. Every step toward balancing your chart is a step toward progress and toward a successful (and yes, balanced) life.

## Major Chart Patterns

So, you may want to consider how you can best bring these fixed qualities more into your life. It may be as simple as closing your door to a few folk—those who take advantage of you. Or, perhaps in small ways, you can begin saying "No!" and start standing up for yourself. Go ahead, be a part of the problem for a change. As unnatural as this may feel at first, every small step you take in this direction will be a giant step forward in regard to your life balance, and, it is also the key to your success.



### **Above Average Fixed Signs**

When it comes to blocking the door, being stubborn, and perhaps even being a bit of a bully, you shine. You are naturally tough, and can take more of life's hard knocks than the average guy. When you say "No!" folks tend to get out of your way. All of this may work for you most of the time, but take care not to become more a part of the problem than a part of the solution. It is one thing to protect, but another to become something that

## Major Chart Patterns

has to be removed. Look toward what qualities you want or lack and see if you can bring them along.



### **Mutable Signs**

The Mutable Signs (Gemini, Virgo, Sagittarius, and Pisces) are the communicators and go-betweens in the zodiac. Above all, they are flexible and pliant, able to bend with the wind and still stand tall. They work around you, rather than through you, and use skillful means rather than brute force. Unless they want you to, you won't even know they are there.

## Major Chart Patterns



### **Want Mutable Signs**

You naturally lack or want mutable signs, and have less of these than others. This could manifest simply as a lack of flexibility or skillfulness on your part. You may, at times, be the bull in the china shop, or, lack in finesse and subtlety. In other words, you may appear too obvious—lacking some of the finer social graces. Look at what signs you have the most of for an indication as to how you might appear to others.

There is nothing wrong with how you are; however, sooner or later, situations may arise demanding that you exercise a more skillful touch, or, that you blend into the background just a little more. There is also another factor, and this is that this lack of mutable signs throws your whole chart off balance to some degree. This makes the mutable signs and qualities lucky for you, since, by invoking them and bringing them more into your life, you bring your entire chart into balance. Every step toward balancing your chart is a step toward

## Major Chart Patterns

progress, and toward a successful (and yes, balanced) life.

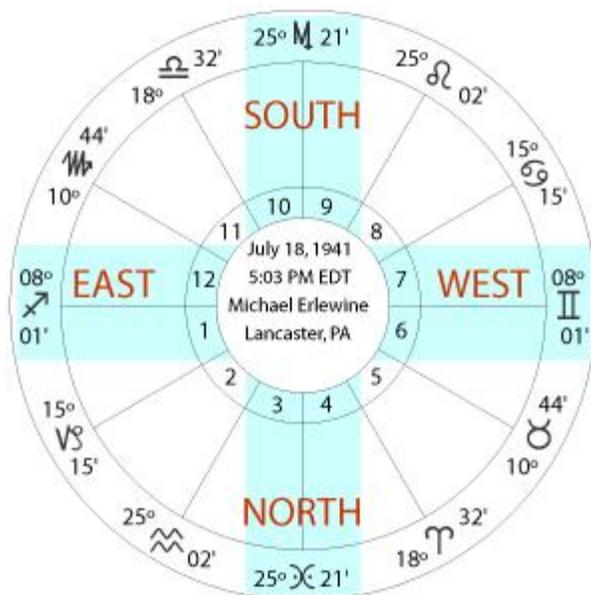
As far as getting more of what you want or lack, it could start with an awareness of what the possible problem is, and then efforts on your part to perhaps be more considerate—to tread with a less heavy foot. Perhaps adding a little refinement and a lighter touch to your style will bring more of these qualities into your life. Balance means success.



### **Above Average Mutable Signs**

When it comes to having a light touch, you are sometimes hardly there at all. You are perhaps too subtle, and can, at times, be just too refined for everyday life. You may appear to others to be floating by like the clouds above—hardly ever touching the ground. Obviously, the remedy for this is simply to invoke and develop some of the qualities you lack, in particular, the quality of the solidity of the fixed zodiac signs, and, the in-your-face quality of the cardinal signs.

## Major Chart Patterns



### ***Hemisphere Balance***

The astrological chart has traditionally been divided into halves: the East half and the West half, the North half and the South half, four halves in all: one half on the right side of the chart and one half on left side, one half at the top of the chart and one at the bottom. These halves are called hemispheres. What we want to know is, which of these hemispheres or halves have the most (or least) planets in them. In other words, we may have one or more of the hemispheres having more planets, and others having few or no planets; each configuration means something and is here interpreted.

The hemisphere with the least planets is considered the key as to how to bring balance into our chart. We would do well to study what qualities are needed and then learn something more about them.

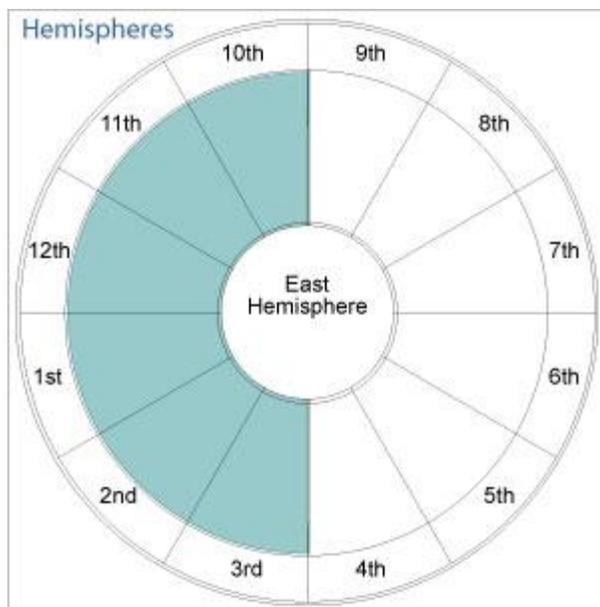
## Major Chart Patterns



### **East Hemisphere**

An emphasis of planets in the East Hemisphere suggests you are a giver more than a taker, one who takes the first step into action rather than one who responds to action; in other words, in your case, Mohammed goes to the mountain rather than the mountain coming to Mohammed. Don't wait for things in life to come your way—to fall into your lap—but rather, go out and get them. Take the initiative.

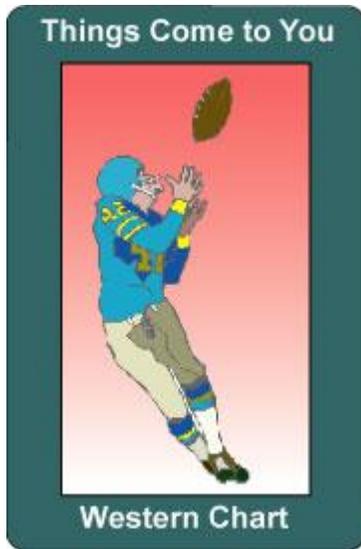
## Major Chart Patterns



### **Wants East Hemisphere**

You want or lack planets in the East Hemisphere; this suggests that you are more used to receiving than to giving. You let things come to you rather than going out to get them. To bring your chart into balance requires that you reverse this trend: that you learn to take the initiative and give rather than waiting to receive. The more you can be a giver, the more success and harmony you will have.

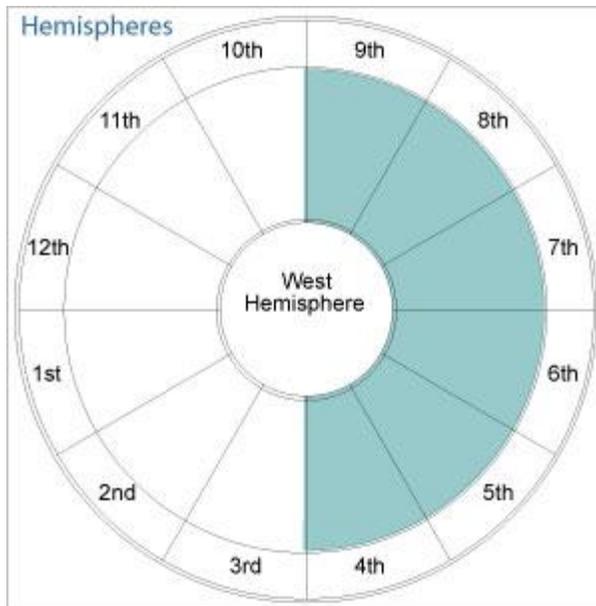
## Major Chart Patterns



### **West Hemisphere**

An emphasis of planets in the West Hemisphere suggests that you are more of a receiver than a giver, more passive than active. Things you need in life tend to come to you, rather than you having to go out and seek them. You practice aikido, rather than judo. In your case, the mountain comes to Mohammed, rather than vice versa.

## Major Chart Patterns



### **Wants West Hemisphere**

You want or lack planets in the Western Hemisphere; this suggests that you tend to be more active and more of a go-getter, perhaps even rushing or pushing things—seldom relaxing and letting things come to you. To balance this chart, you would have to reverse this process, learning not to demand or push so hard but rather to have patience and let things come to you.

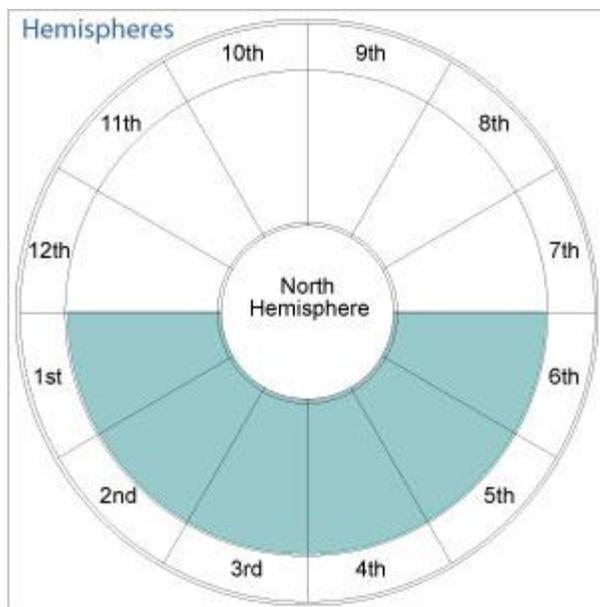
## Major Chart Patterns



### **North Hemisphere**

An emphasis of planets in the North Hemisphere suggests that you value your privacy, and that you tend to be more subjective—more to yourself—than a public personality. You may even feel uncomfortable out in the public. You would rather see than be seen.

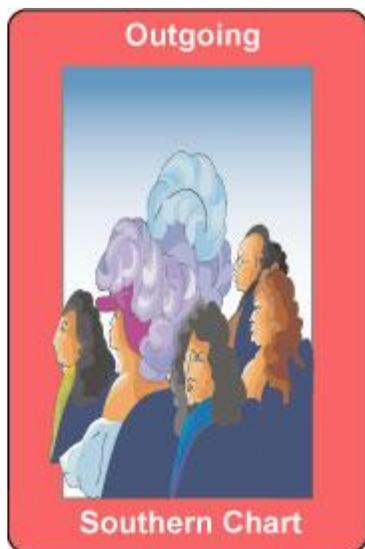
## Major Chart Patterns



### **Wants North Hemisphere**

You want or lack planets in the North Hemisphere, which suggests that your natural state is to be more outgoing, more public; you probably push aside or even close-off your more personal side. You keep private matters private—perhaps even in the closet. This is an imbalance, and to bring your chart into harmony, you would have to reverse this trend—learning to enjoy company and sharing your personal feelings and facts with others.

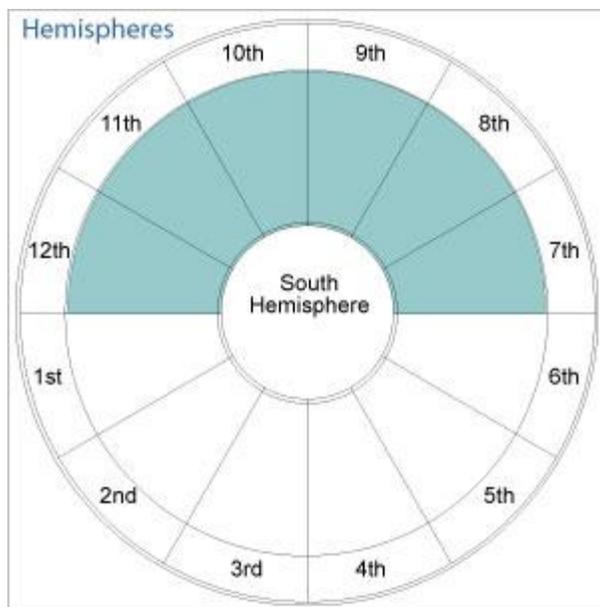
## Major Chart Patterns



### **South Hemisphere**

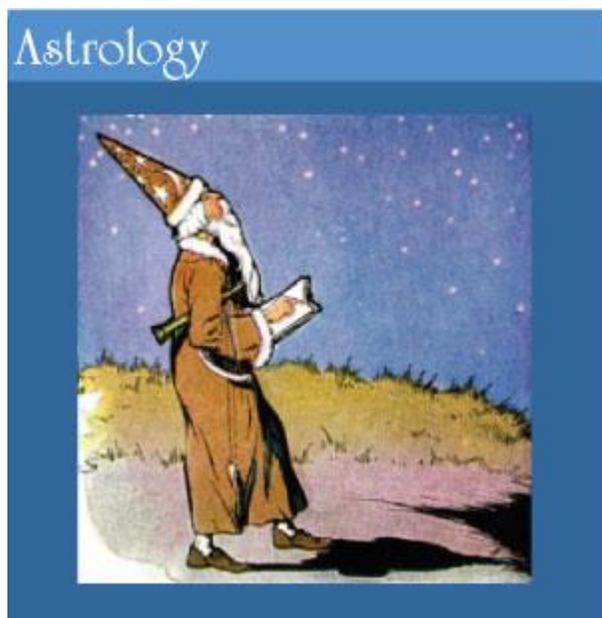
You have an emphasis of planets in the South Hemisphere and this suggests that, by nature, you are outgoing; you are probably very much a public person, used to being seen by others, and very much a presence in a social situation. You are not retiring or private.

## Major Chart Patterns



### **Wants South Hemisphere**

You want or lack planets in the Southern Hemisphere, suggesting you may be, by nature, a more subjective and private person, one more comfortable with seeing rather than being seen, someone definitely not at home in the public eye and when under scrutiny. To correct this imbalance requires that you make it a habit to venture out more, taking chances, and that you learn to be more comfortable in public—with being seen as well as seeing.



### ***Dignities***

Here we are entering a more contentious area of astrology, that of 'sign rulership,' of the essential dignities and debilities of The Lights, and the planets, in the various signs. The various planets are considered stronger in some signs than in others; in fact, there is a whole pecking order that is usually divided into four parts, which, together, are called the Essential Dignities and Debilities. Separately, these four parts are: Rulership, Detriment, Exaltation, and Fall.

## Major Chart Patterns

Sign Rulership	
♈ Aries	♂ Mars
♉ Taurus	♀ Venus
♊ Gemini	☿ Mercury
♋ Cancer	☾ Moon
♌ Leo	☼ Sun
♍ Virgo	☿ Mercury
♎ Libra	♀ Venus
♏ Scorpio	♂ Mars
♐ Sagittarius	♃ Jupiter
♑ Capricorn	♄ Saturn
♒ Aquarius	♄ Saturn
♓ Pisces	♃ Jupiter

(Ancient Rulership)

### Rulership

A planet is said to be dignified when it is in the sign that it rules. Like an emperor or dignity, a planet is strengthened or more powerful when within its own area of rulership; for example, of any of the signs it may be in, Mars in Aries is in its most powerful position—for Mars rules the sign Aries...and so forth.

## Major Chart Patterns

Sign Rulership			
♈	Aries	♂	Mars
♉	Taurus	♀	Venus
♊	Gemini	♁	Mercury
♋	Cancer	☾	Moon
♌	Leo	☼	Sun
♍	Virgo	♁	Mercury
♎	Libra	♀	Venus
♏	Scorpio	♂	Mars
♐	Sagittarius	♃	Jupiter
♑	Capricorn	♄	Saturn
♒	Aquarius	♄	Saturn
♓	Pisces	♃	Jupiter

(Ancient Rulership)

### The Ancient Rulership

To make things more complicated, there are two systems of rulership commonly used in Western astrology, the one called the original or "Ancient System," and the one termed the "Modern System." The difference between these two systems has to do with the introduction of the modern or outer planets: Uranus, Neptune, and Pluto. Where to put them in the rulership hierarchy?

## Major Chart Patterns

♈	Aries	♂	Mars
♉	Taurus	♀	Venus
♊	Gemini	☿	Mercury
♋	Cancer	☾	Moon
♌	Leo	☼	Sun
♍	Virgo	☿	Mercury
♎	Libra	♀	Venus
♏	Scorpio	♇	Pluto
♐	Sagittarius	♃	Jupiter
♑	Capricorn	♄	Saturn
♒	Aquarius	♅	Uranus
♓	Pisces	♆	Neptune

(Modern Rulership)

### The Modern Rulership

In the Modern Rulership, Pluto replaces Mars as the ruler of Scorpio, Uranus replaces Saturn as the ruler of Aquarius, and Neptune replaces Jupiter as the ruler of Pisces. Otherwise, the remaining planet's rulerships stay the same.

We should point out that, more and more modern astrologers do not use the rulerships at all; in particular, astrologers using the Uranian and Cosmobiology techniques do not. They don't even use the signs.

Another important astrologer, L.E. Johndro, declared that both the ancient and the modern rulerships were more or less rubbish; he then put forward his own and very complex system of sign rulership.

It is my understanding that more and more modern astrologers do not use rulerships at all.

## Major Chart Patterns

Sign Exaltation		
♈	Aries	☉ Sun
♉	Taurus	☾ Moon
♊	Gemini	♊ N. Node
♋	Cancer	♆ Neptune
♌	Leo	— — —
♍	Virgo	☿ Mercury
♎	Libra	♄ Saturn
♏	Scorpio	♅ Uranus
♐	Sagittarius	♁ S. Node
♑	Capricorn	♂ Mars
♒	Aquarius	☿ Mercury
♓	Pisces	♀ Venus

### Exaltation

Only slightly less important than sign rulership is when a planet is exalted, that is: in the sign of its exaltation. A table of exaltation is included in the diagram above. The very well-known astrologer William Lilly wrote that if a planet is in its sign of exaltation, in particular, if it is in an angular house (1, 4, 7, and 10), it is said to be especially strengthened, and may even give the possessor a haughty arrogance, as of one who “affirms more unto himself than is his due.”

## Major Chart Patterns

Sign Detriment	
♈ Aries	♀ Venus
♉ Taurus	♂ Mars
♊ Gemini	♃ Jupiter
♋ Cancer	♄ Saturn
♌ Leo	♅ Uranus
♍ Virgo	♆ Neptune
♎ Libra	♂ Mars
♏ Scorpio	♀ Venus
♐ Sagittarius	☿ Mercury
♑ Capricorn	☾ Moon
♒ Aquarius	☼ Sun
♓ Pisces	☿ Mercury

### Planets in Detriment

If a planet is in the opposite zodiac sign from the one that it rules, this is said to weaken the strength of that planet in the chart, and this condition is termed 'in Detriment'. Included above is a table of the signs and which planets are 'in detriment' when in them.

## Major Chart Patterns

Sign Fall	
♈ Aries	♄ Saturn
♉ Taurus	♅ Uranus
♊ Gemini	♁ S. Node
♋ Cancer	♂ Mars
♌ Leo	☿ Mercury
♍ Virgo	♀ Venus
♎ Libra	☼ Sun
♏ Scorpio	☾ Moon
♐ Sagittarius	♁ N. Node
♑ Capricorn	♆ Neptune
♒ Aquarius	— — —
♓ Pisces	☿ Mercury

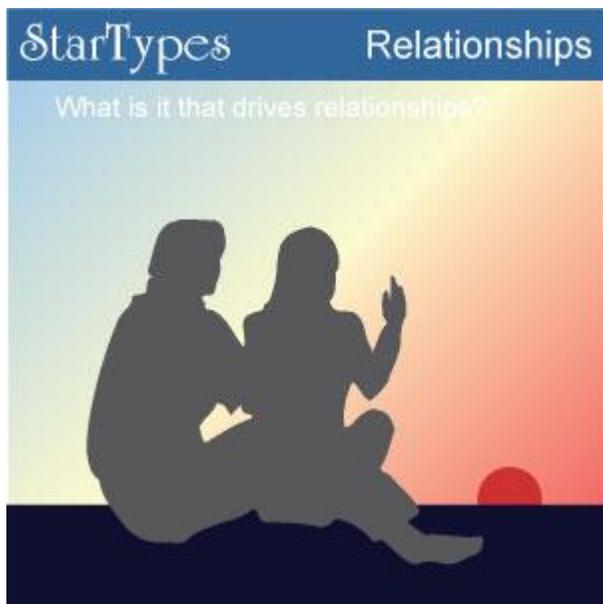
### Planets in Fall

If a planet is in the opposite zodiac sign from the one it is exalted in, this is said to greatly weaken the strength of that planet in the chart, and this condition is termed the planet's 'Fall'. Included above is a table of the signs, and which planets are 'in Fall' in which sign.

Rulerships and the Essential Dignities are something you will have to experiment with yourself to see if they are useful to your work or not.

## Major Chart Patterns

### **Major Chart Patterns**



### **StarType Patterns**

"Opposition is true friendship." - William Blake

"Sympathy constitutes friendship; but in love there is a sort of antipathy, or opposing passion. Each strives to be the other, and both together make up one whole." - Samuel Taylor Coleridge

"Conscious love evokes the same in response. Emotional love evokes the opposite. Physical love depends on type and polarity." - G.I. Gurdjieff

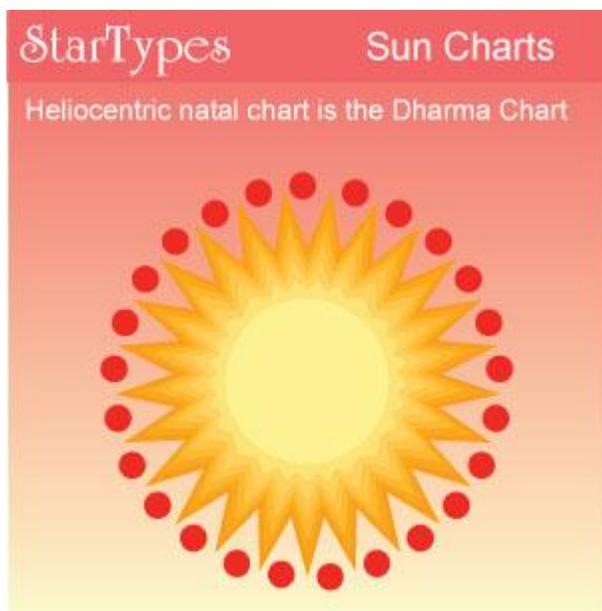
What is love? What is it that drives relationships? If we sift through the sands of the world's writing, we come up with quotes such as these above, and yet, surprisingly, there is little conjecture (and fewer things written) about the nature of that attraction—how, exactly, it works—and yet this is the force that keeps us endlessly relating, one to another.

## Major Chart Patterns

If we suggest that "beauty" is what attracts, this only leads to the question: What makes beauty attractive? What is the true nature and origin of beauty? Here is what I have come to understand:

The famous astrologer (and a Supreme Court Justice from Germany), Dr. Theodor Landscheidt, pointed out, many years ago, in his book *Cosmic Cybernetics*, that large-scale structures such as our galaxy (and everything in them...for instance, in our solar system: earth, us, etc.) can only cohere and continue to exist by circulating (in some way) information throughout the structure itself. This is what keeps these large structures together or coherent. Galaxies and all stellar structures circulate this vital information through some mechanism not presently known to us.

## Major Chart Patterns



### How StarTypes Came To Be

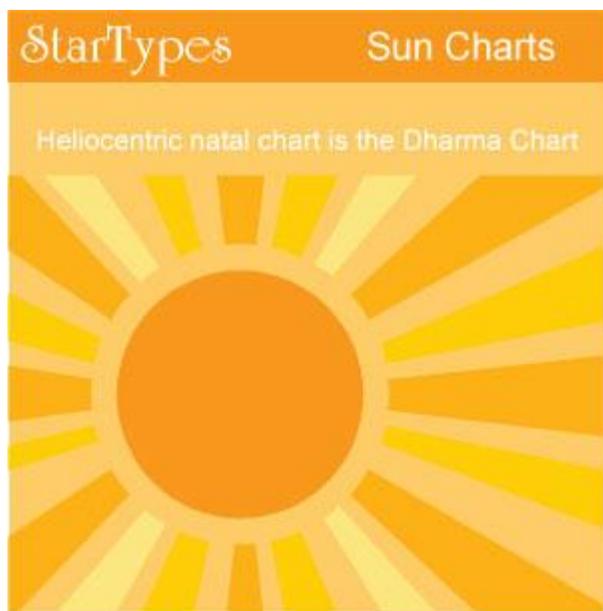
My own interest in *how* relationships worked quickened when I began checking out heliocentric (sun-centered) positions and charts. In the beginning, I approached heliocentrics just as I would any other astrological technique—it was just one more technique to be explored; however, I soon found out that it was markedly different from any astrology I had known up to that time. Not only did it provide me much better results, but the results referred to another order of information entirely. In other words, the helio or sun-centered chart is a ‘different-by-nature’ view of the birth moment, not just another extension of earth-centered astrology. I was getting a different order of information, something that I had long tried to extract from the traditional geocentric chart.

Of course, it took me quite a while to believe this. I tested it again and again, using thousands and

## Major Chart Patterns

thousands of charts, but sure enough—here was a different KIND of astrology.

And I tried all of the standard astrological techniques (aspects, transits, etc.) in this new sun-centered dimension and, of course, they worked, just as they work in earth-centered astrology; however, there arose through this bag of techniques something that completely caught my attention, something I had never experienced before: Large-scale planetary patterns in the sun-centered chart accurately described individuals as they knew themselves to be at their deepest levels.



### **Sun-Centered Astrology**

The standard earth-centered astrology chart, which was all I had known up to that point, began to resolve itself in my mind as being a chart reflective of the circumstances each of us is incarnated in, and of the psychology each of us is involved with—however you want to phrase

## Major Chart Patterns

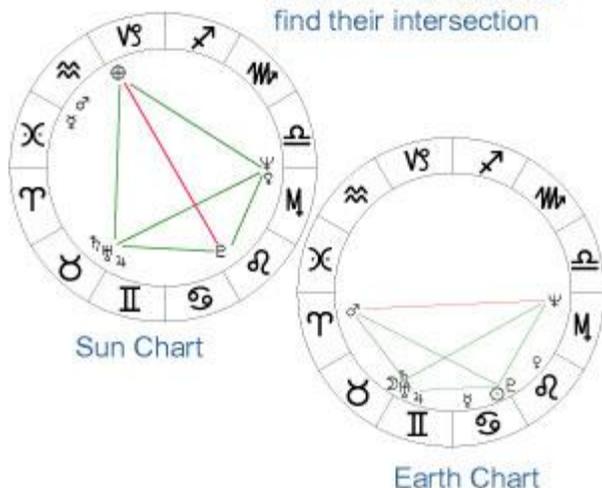
this—while the sun-centered heliocentric chart revealed itself as being reflective of the core essence of our individuality—what we are underneath the earth-centered chart, after we work through all of the outer appearances. I soon came to call this sun-centered chart the chart of one's 'Dharma': what we become when we get to know our self—when we become aware of whom we are. It is our Dharma Chart.

So, where before I had but one astrology chart and one notion of astrology, I now had two. What I had known up to that point—the earth-centered astrology chart—remained a map of how I appeared in the world and the various circumstances in which I was involved—it was my outer chart, whereas the sun-centered astrology chart became a map of who I was beneath all of what I was going through outwardly—it became my inner chart.

This was, for me, somewhat of a big deal, especially because, for the first time, I began to understand who I was—underneath it all, so to speak. Best of all, as I began to study the sun-centered charts of those in life around me, those heliocentric charts proved to be the key as to how I related to them. They accurately charted the nature of the relationships I had in the world. It was as if, suddenly, my understanding of relationships came into focus. Before, I had been seeing things, but only as “through a glass darkly,” as the saying goes. Suddenly, I could see clearly.

## Major Chart Patterns

Compare the earth-view and sun-view charts to find their intersection



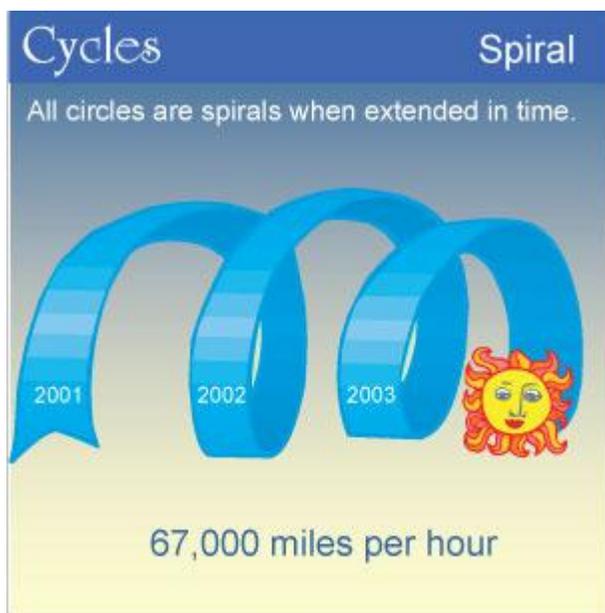
### Two Indispensable Charts

Over the years, I have heard all kinds of retorts from astrologers, from those who had never studied the sun-centered charts themselves—asking, “How could I abandon the standard geocentric astrology chart?” Of course, I never have abandoned it. Instead, I now have two indispensable charts, each of which provides me with invaluable information on an ongoing basis. Best of all, where these two charts intersect, I get a kind of stereo effect—much like the old stereopticons—because the two perspectives produce another single focus.

Remember, each of these charts is a map of the same exact moment in time and of the very same planets. The only difference is the perspective taken, or the view. And, to those astrologers too unwilling or too lazy to take a look for themselves, I say:

## Major Chart Patterns

If we can agree that the traditional astrological chart is a snapshot of the solar system, taken from the earth's perspective within that system (and this is a fact), and if we can agree that this snapshot is meaningful (proven within the history of astrology), then we should be able to agree that the solar system itself (that actual object of the earth's snapshot) is also be worth examining. It is that simple. And it is, therefore, even more worthwhile to examine the sun-centered map or chart. This is what StarTypes is all about.



### **StarTypes Examines Large-Scale Planetary Patterns**

Scientists and astrophysicists have speculated on how the universe may communicate within itself. They have examined the various possible carriers of information—such as light rays and other forms of radiation, including gravitational radiation. It has been suggested that information stemming from the ‘heart nucleus’ of the galaxy is probably streaming through us constantly.

## Major Chart Patterns

Experiments have been set up to detect what has been called the "Weak Force" —i.e. gravity waves. Gravity waves also travel at the speed of light, but they are very weak or subtle, and therefore hard to detect. Scientists point out that it would take antennae the size of our solar system to be an appropriate receiver. Hmmmm...

Well, this last phrase, about an antennae the size of the solar system, this rings a bell with me. Another interesting fact is that gravity waves are quadri-polar in nature, rather than dipolar—as are light waves. In other words, the proper antennae to receive and decode gravity radiation would be in the form of a cross. A very large cross-shaped antenna is what would be required to receive gravity radiation coming from a source such as the center of our galaxy.

Well, the solar system itself is just such a cross-shaped antenna! Every time the planets line up to create a cross—such as when the Grand Cross and T-Square aspect patterns are created—the shape is there...so, here comes the "What if?"

What if, during the times the planets create a cross in our solar system, there *is* increased receptivity to gravitational radiation? AND, what *if* persons born during that time SOMEHOW represent, contain, or incorporate that gravitational information in their very being? Those born with a cross in their heliocentric chart would share that information with the rest of us—throughout their lives—somehow.

Well, who knows how? but it is worth considering.



### **Green Lines and Red Lines**

Regardless of the above speculation, it is a fact that there is something driving all of our relationships, something that makes for attraction among people and which serves to fuel the myriads of relationships around us. Each of us can say things like "I am strangely attracted to that person." Well, what is that attraction? Could it be something inside of us that senses information of some sort, information that we personally need and desire, something that would somehow complete us?

Why not look at relationships, at least for a moment, as an endless balancing act, with some of us walking around effusing cosmic information that was embedded in us at birth, and others of us decoding and interpreting that same information. Some of us are carriers or transmitters of this information, and others of us are receivers and decoders. Together, it all works.

## Major Chart Patterns

Working with these sun-centered charts, I soon lost interest in applying standard astrological techniques to the heliocentric chart, because something much more significant was emerging, and this was the validity and integrity of the large-scale planetary patterns—what are now called StarTypes.

Of course, I started out examining all of the traditional aspects: the square or 90-degree aspect, the trine or 120-degree aspect, and so on. But it soon became apparent that what really proved significant was when these aspects linked together to form a pattern that went around the whole chart, such as a Grand Trine or T-Square pattern.

### Well-Known Chart Types



Grand Trine



T-Square



Mystic Rectangle



Grand Cross

## Major Patterns

Grand Trines, Grand Crosses and T-Squares have been a part of traditional astrology for centuries, but just not front and center. They are noted, but often only along

## Major Chart Patterns

with other aspects or configuration of aspects. And yet, here, in these sun-centered charts, they immediately took on an increased significance.

They were significant, because, as I began to understand these large patterns in individual charts and in individual persons, it became apparent that they accurately described the essential nature of each person. This was important. This was helpful to me.

Before long, I had dozens of these large-scale patterns I had become aware of, and was tracking them through the all and many charts I could manage to draw. Along the way, I ran out of accurate heliocentric ephemerides and had to create my own, which became my first book "The Sun Is Shining," a book showing heliocentric positions for more than 400 years.

Today, the above list of patterns has grown to around 60...and more could be added. Although 60 patterns seems complex, in reality, all of these patterns can be boiled down to answering a simple question: Is there or is there not a cross through the center of the solar system at the time of the birth?

## Major Chart Patterns

### The Love-One Chart Types



T-Square



Inset T-Square



Grand Cross



Offset T-Squares

### Sun Cross

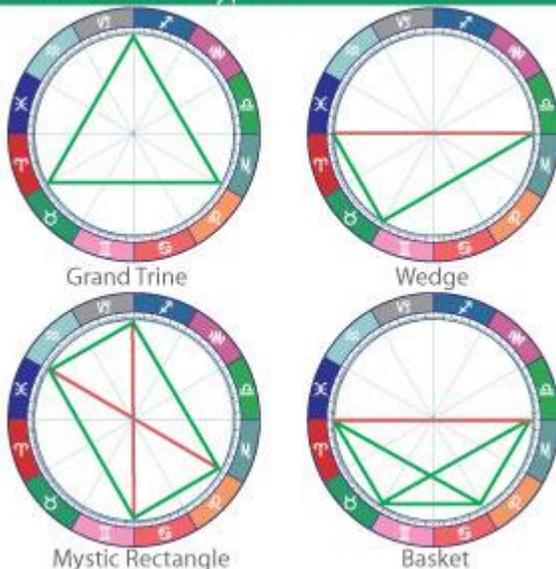
For some reason, it all revolves around these birth charts that have a cross through the sun. We are talking heliocentric charts here, not geocentric ones. While some of this effect can be tracked by looking at geocentric positions, it soon becomes clear that the geocentric chart is just a peek at what is going on heliocentrically, with the sun at the center. Why not take a full look at what we are peeking at? Three sun-centered patterns best represent what is going on in our solar system.

These sun-centered charts, with the cross through their center, for reasons we could talk about all night and still not fully know why, seem to have 'something' within them: people with these charts have something other people feel attracted toward; people want to be around those having these charts, to care for them, even to serve them. Now, here is something to note...

## Major Chart Patterns

These T-Square StarTypes exude some kind of energy—call it information or whatever—that others want to absorb and experience. They are, for all practical purposes, the 'beloved', the 'loved ones' fabled in poetry and verse throughout the ages. They are magnetic, and their charisma is undeniable.

### The Lover Chart Types



### The Receivers

Well, good for them, but what about the rest of us, those who were born without this T-Square in our helio charts? It appears that our job—those without the cross—is to care for and perhaps decode (if this makes sense) the information locked into these Square StarTypes. They have it; we don't. They are the "Haves;" we, the "Have-Nots."

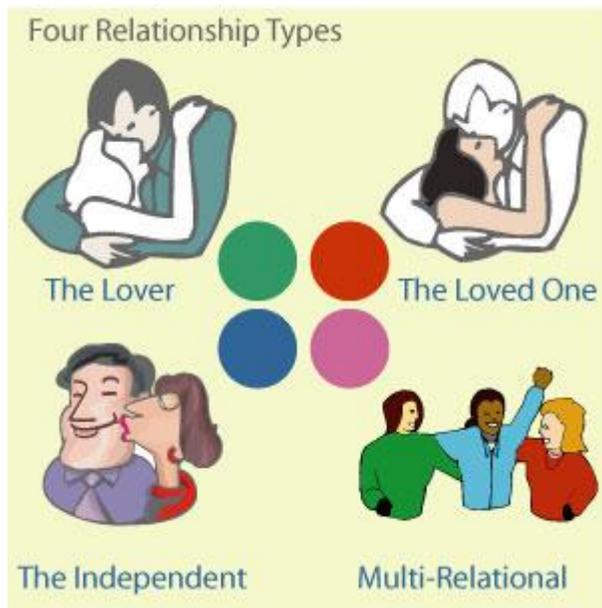
You see, it seems that the 'Haves' don't know what they have, and that the 'Have-Nots' can see what it is that the 'Haves' have—if this sentence will be allowed. It is as if

## Major Chart Patterns

the T-Square StarTypes have this attractive information embedded in their very being, and that the other StarTypes (without it) can read and decipher that information.

In fact, the single, whole-chart pattern, which most effectively AVOIDS sending a cross through the sun-center, is the Grand Trine; therefore, this StarType is perhaps best at reading the information embedded in the T-Square StarTypes.

Keep in mind: this is just an alternate way to look relationships, with one caveat: If you find that this method is useful, then you have a way to examine all of the relationships around you. This is what StarTypes is: a tool for analyzing relationships, and a good one at that.



## Major Chart Types

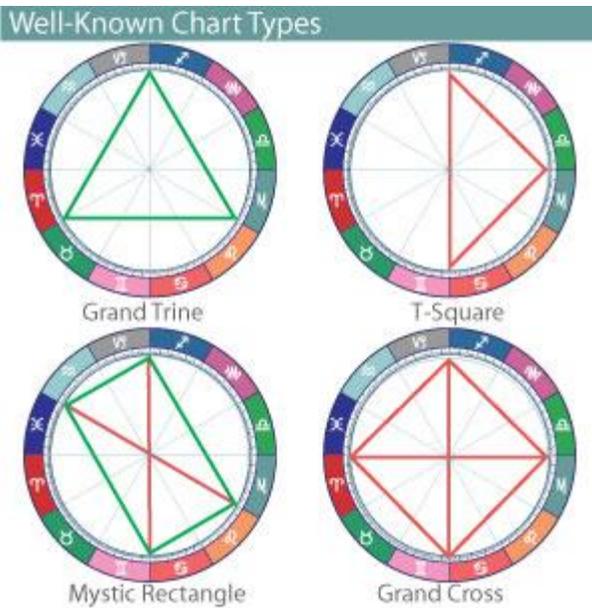
One of the first things I want to do when I see a new chart is to find out what relationship type it looks to be.

## Major Chart Patterns

Although there are all kinds of relationships between people— between friends, lovers, not-so-friends—most of these relationships can be boiled down into a handful of main types. The two best-known types, of course, are those of The Lover and The Loved One. Most relationships, romantic or otherwise, tend to end up with one partner taking on the role of the Lover, and the other partner taking on the role of the Loved One.

This is not to say that one partner does not love the other, or vice versa. The point is, as a relationship develops, partners tend to take on distinct roles. Usually one takes on the role of the Lover or caretaker and the other takes on the role of the Loved One—the one being cared for. The role of Lover or caretaker can be as simple as being the one who picks up the socks or wipes off the counters, and the role of Loved One as simple as being the one who tends to forget about that stuff, letting the partner do it. So, I always want to know right off the bat what type of relationship role a particular person likes to play, and to do this, I determine their chart type. This is not hard to do, so let's learn something about relationships and chart types.

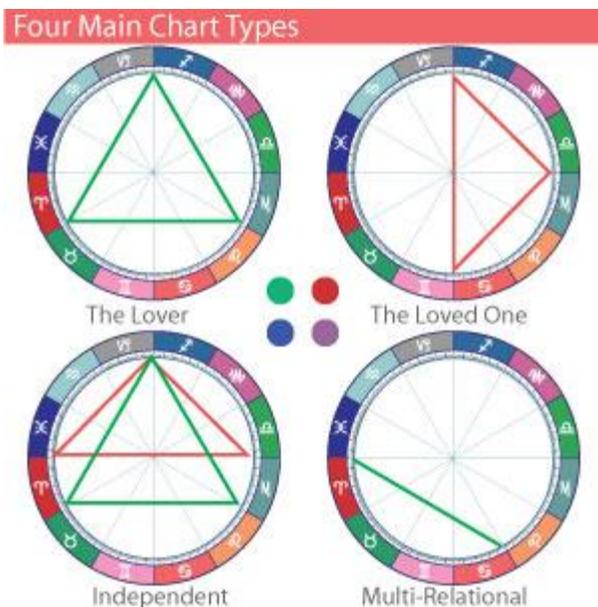
## Major Chart Patterns



### Relationship Types

A relationship type can be easily identified by looking at the overall patterns in a natal chart, at what have been called “whole-chart configurations.” Many of you are likely already familiar with such whole-chart configurations as the Grand Trine, T-Square, Mystic Rectangle and the Grand Cross shown here. If not, we are going to describe them below. These are examples of whole-chart patterns, or, what we will call here: Chart Types.

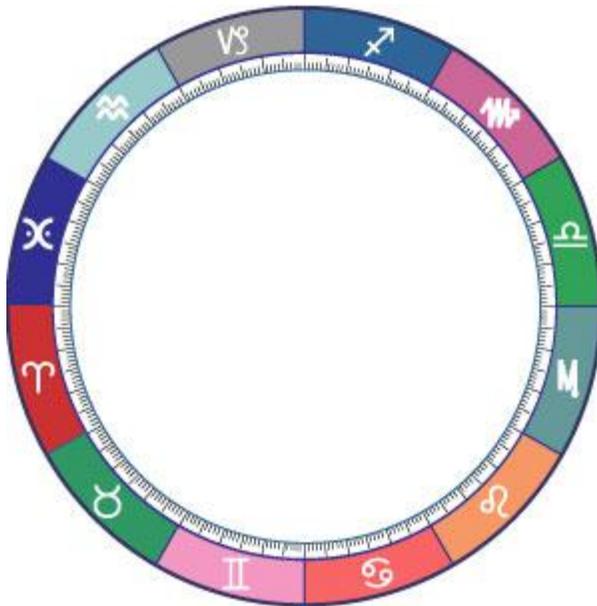
## Major Chart Patterns



### The Four Main Relationship Types

The diagram above shows examples of the four main relationship types: The Lover, The Loved One, The Independent and the Multi-Relational. These are four classic examples, but each of these main types may have other (similar) patterns. In fact, there are some 60 different patterns that I have tracked, yet they all boil down to one of these four main types. Once you are introduced to these main types, other specific types are easy to spot. To make it easier, we have color-coded these types, giving each type a different color—as you will notice when they are introduced. But first, let's learn how to determine your chart type.

## Major Chart Patterns



### Chart Types

Let's start out by examining your birth chart for any whole-chart patterns, as these will give us an idea of what the overall aspect configurations are. To do this, you will need a chart drawn out on the 360-degree wheel of the signs, not on the standard wheel of houses—for this analysis, we don't need houses. And, in fact, this technique will work quite well for charts without a birth time. What we are looking for here are large-scale chart patterns only. Here is what the 360° or Open Wheel looks like. Most astrological services and programs can produce this wheel.

## Major Chart Patterns

### Geocentric and Heliocentric Patterns



Geocentric

Basket Pattern



Heliocentric

Grand Trine Pattern

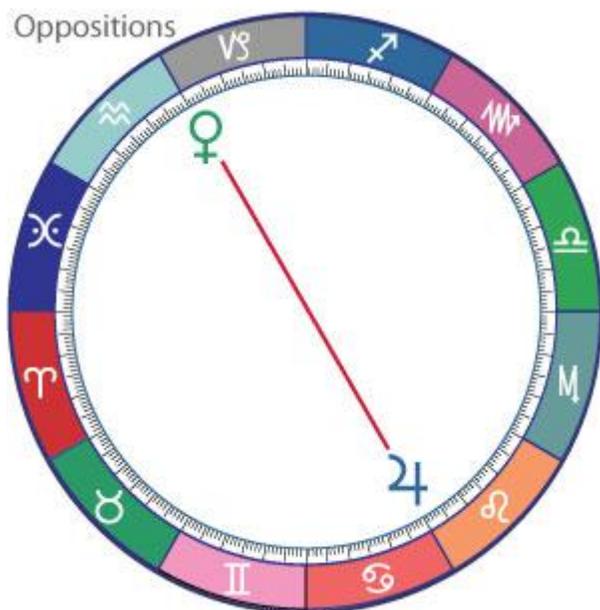
### The Two Views

You can look at either your standard geocentric natal chart or at a heliocentric natal chart. I always look at both. As you now know, the traditional geocentric natal chart tells you about the personality and circumstances of a person, as well as how this person appears to others. This is our outer chart. The heliocentric chart is calculated for the same time, but from the perspective of the entire solar system, of which the earth is only one part. The helio chart, what has been called the Dharma or Heart Chart, shows the inner self, who we are in essence, beneath all of the circumstances and appearances. This is our inner chart.

I have been doing chart readings professionally for some 35 years, and I always want to look at both the geo and helio chart patterns before I sit down with a client. Most astrological software will calculate both of these charts in seconds and print them out on the open

## Major Chart Patterns

360-degree wheel. Check out both. Keep in mind that the standard geo or outer chart will tell us how we appear on the outside and that the helio chart will show us who we are inside—who we will, eventually, know ourselves to be. Famous astrologers who recommend heliocentric charts include: Dane Rudhyar, L.E. Johndro, and Robert Hand. These helio charts are well worth looking at. They explain a lot of things and also give you a second opinion or perspective of yourself.



### The First Step

Scanning a chart for patterns is easy. Here is an easy way to do it. The first thing to look for is oppositions—any two planets more or less opposite each other on the chart wheel—180 degrees apart. Note: there can be more than one pair of planets opposite to one another. Now you will be able to see why we have to use the 360-degree open wheel for this work, as it can be very

## Major Chart Patterns

difficult to spot aspects when using the standard wheel-of-houses chart form.

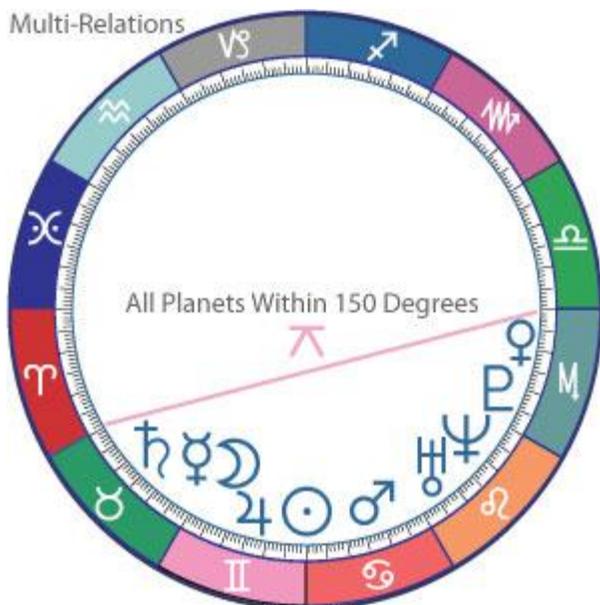
If you have trouble visualizing these patterns, you may want to mark the oppositions in red, drawing a red line from one planet across to the next. I still do this. If you have printed out a chart with aspects already drawn in, other colors may have been used to mark them, or even plain black ink. If this is the case, I draw in (over the other color or black print lines) with the colors I prefer to use, so that I can easily spot these patterns, later, at a glance. I use a straight-edge for this, along with colored pencils or pens. Many programs will mark these lines in color for you, on-screen. For myself, I use the following colors, you may want others. The colors I use for the main aspects are:

Red: Oppositions ( $180^\circ$ ), Squares ( $90^\circ$ )

Red: Semisquares ( $45^\circ$ ), Sesquiquadrates ( $135^\circ$ )

Green: Trines ( $120^\circ$ ), Sextiles ( $60^\circ$ )

## Major Chart Patterns



### Determining Your Chart Type

Here is a four-step process that will help you figure out which of the four chart types you are looking at. This is done by a process of elimination, one step at a time. Try it out.

#### (1) Multi-Relational Chart Type

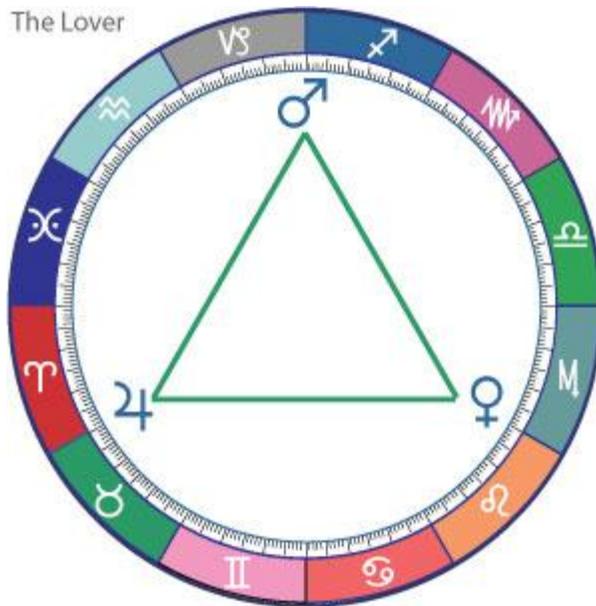
As mentioned above, the first thing to do is to determine if there is an opposition in the chart. After you have checked the chart for oppositions, you are ready to determine whether this chart is a multi-relational chart type. If there are NO oppositions AND all of the planets are bunched together on one side of the zodiac, then you are looking at a multi-relational chart type.

For a multi-relational chart type, all of the planets have to be on one side of the chart—all of the bodies within

## Major Chart Patterns

about 150 degrees of space. In other words, some seven signs—about 210 degrees of the chart—are completely empty. If this is the case, then you have a multi-relational chart type. There are a variety of these multi-relational chart types, so you will want to eventually drill down to an even more particular type, as explained later.

## Major Chart Patterns

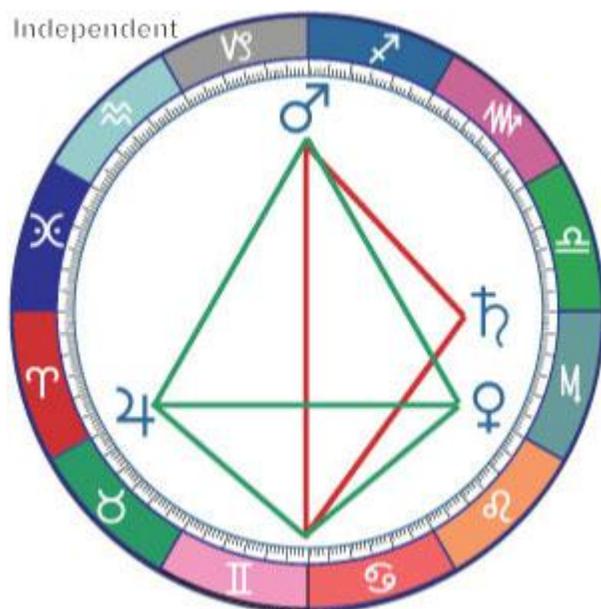


### The Lover Chart Type

If there ARE oppositions in the chart, the next most important question to ask is whether there is a third planet 90-degree to any opposition, what astrologers would call a "T-Square" or "T-Cross." Of course, these patterns can appear anywhere on the chart wheel, right side up, upside down, and so forth. The key thing to determine is the existence of an opposition, and then if there is a third planet 90 degrees from this oppositional pair.

If there is a T-Square in the chart of any kind, such as the Grand Trine pattern shown here, then the chart type you are looking at is that of "The Lover," or green-line pattern. There are many varieties of the green-line pattern or type, and these will be explained below.

## Major Chart Patterns



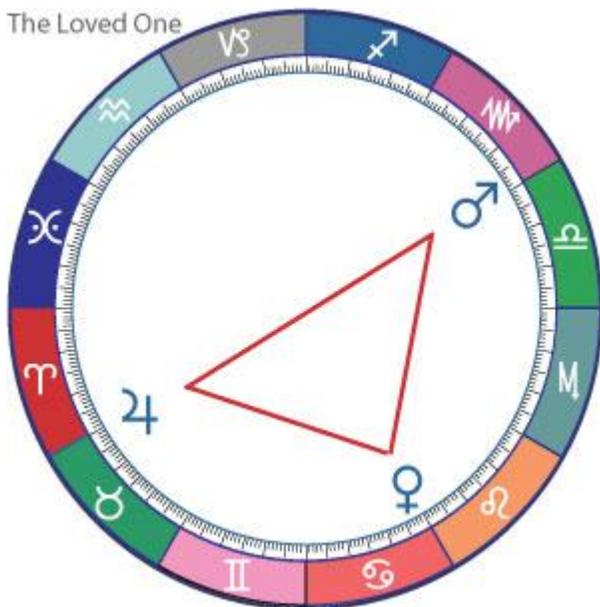
### The Independent or Blue-Line Chart Types

At this point, you have eliminated two of the four types, AND you have a chart that has a T-Square in it—perhaps one or more T-Squares. Next, we need to look and see if that chart has any of the major green-line patterns. These can be the Grand Trine, the Wedge, the Mystic Rectangle, or even one of the Trapezoid configurations, which function like an odd-shaped Grand Trine. These are patterns that link green lines all around the chart (as the Grand Trine does), or, link green lines to that opposition. These whole-chart green patterns may or may not be attached to the T-Square that you have already found, so keep this in mind.

If you find any of these patterns, then you have both a T-Square and a major green-line pattern in the same chart, and this makes a person (perhaps you, in this instance) what we call an Independent Chart Type (blue Line), because both of these major elements are

## Major Chart Patterns

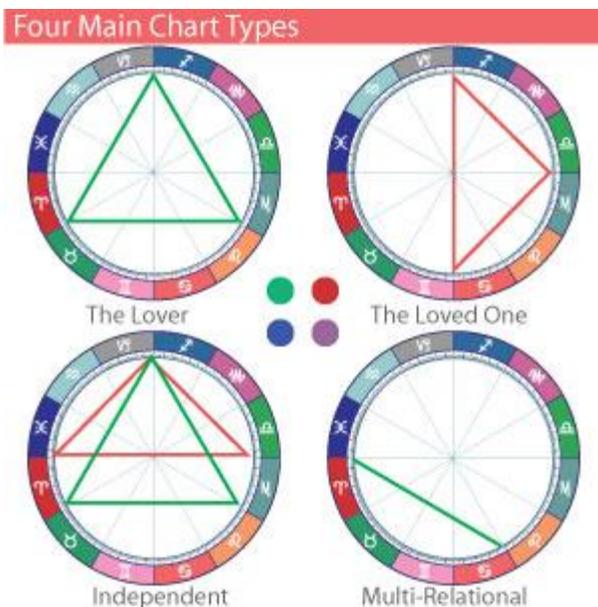
present. This person can be both the Lover and the Loved One. They are independent.



### The Loved One Chart Type

If you are not one of the above chart types, you are automatically the 'Loved One' Chart Type, which means that you ONLY have one of the T-Square patterns in your chart and no major green-line types.

## Major Chart Patterns



### The Four Chart Types

Now that you have found your Chart Type, you are ready to learn something about what that type means, and how that type behaves in a relationship. There are four main types of relationships covered here, and they represent the most common kinds of partnerships we encounter in day-to-day life. We will color-code them, so as to make it easier to recognize them, marking them green, red, blue, and maroon/purple. These colors will appear on the border of each chart-type card, so you will never have to wonder what sort of relationship-type you are encountering. They are:

"The Lover" (green color): This is the classic archetype of the Lover, the one who loves and cares for his or her partner, the one in any particular relationship who cares the "most."

## Major Chart Patterns

"The Loved One" (red color): This goes with the one above—the Lover. The Loved One is the one who is loved, the one who receives all the attention and care—the object of care.

"The Independent" (blue color): This type is pretty much independent and self-sufficient. This is not to say they don't enjoy relationships, only that they are not as dependent on them. They can more or less entertain themselves—at least from time to time.

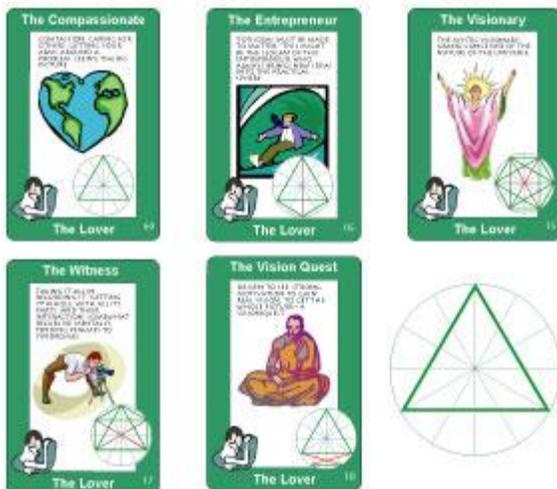
"Multi-Relationship" (maroon color): This type can play either Lover or Loved One, but they are not independent. They are dependent, but dependent on relationships in general, as a way to learn about themselves.

These four main types make the world of relationships go round. There are many ways of looking at relationships, and using astrology to do so is just one of those ways. This is not an attempt to claim that this is the only way or even the best way to examine how we relate to one another; it is, however, an alternate view—a 2nd opinion, so to speak, and only you can decide whether it has value for you.

Astrology is NOT something to believe in or not believe in. It is something that is either helpful and useful or not. Check it out for yourself, to see whether you find this method of looking at relationships useful. Here are the four main relationship types in more detail.

## Major Chart Patterns

### Star\*Types



### Major Grand Trine Star\*Types

#### The Lover

This group of chart types, easily recognizable by their green lines, represents the archetype of "The Lover," the one who cares the most and thus is, as regards all practical concerns, the caretaker of the relationship. These are the ones who endlessly care for (and worry about!) the Loved One, running here and there to provide for their well-being. They are the eternal hosts—seldom the guests—of any relationship. They are the ones who jump up and get you a glass of water, who happily do any organizational work and planning. They pick up your socks.

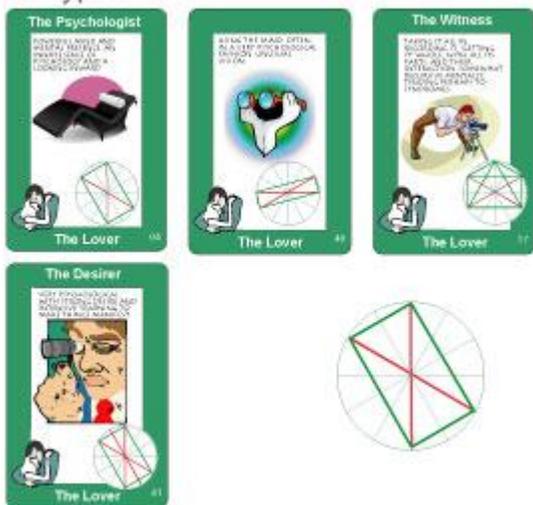
Not at home in a crowd, this type can be found around the edges of a group, watching, perhaps criticizing, but always taking it all in. They run cool, while others run warm (or hot). They think, while others do. They serve, while others are served. They care, when care is

## Major Chart Patterns

needed. In the East, they could be said to represent the Bodhisattva path—living to serve others.

In the West, this concept of serving others has been downgraded, and often refers primarily to ‘menial labor’; it is considered much more “cool” in the West to be served than to serve; but this meaning is changing, as America becomes more service-oriented.

### Star\*Types



### Mystic Rectangle Star\*Types

## In Service

Not all of us are miniature rock stars, fit to shine in the heart of a crowd. Some are quite happy to watch, comment on, and care for others. Since both types (both the ‘Lover’ and the ‘Loved One’) occur in almost equal numbers, not everyone can always be the one who is getting served—some of us must do the serving! Moreover, you may even find that you like serving others. Many green-lined types, once they understand what their type is all about, manage to get past the

## Major Chart Patterns

social stigma of "serving others" and discover that they actually enjoy taking care of others. It is natural for this type. Once they understand who they are, their ability to care for and serve others becomes a feature, not a liability.

### Star\*Types



### Wedge Star\*Types

#### Green-Bordered Types

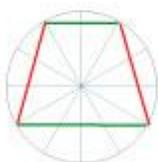
All of the green-bordered chart types are born to serve and care for others. All reach for the mind before they reach to press the flesh. They think before they act. All are (at heart) shy, eager for experience, and glad to be included. Not much into hugs, they all secretly love to be hugged, and physical contact is an exciting event for them. Sounds like E.T., eh?

Well, not quite from outer space, but they are very much at home in the great space of the mind, and they all tend to make their living using their wits and mental capabilities, rather than their charisma and warm

## Major Chart Patterns

presence. They can think, they can see, and many of them really get the big picture—seeing the forest as well as the trees. They are great providers of advice to the rest of us. They are wicked critics, and are as sharp with their mind as others are physically fast. Very little escapes them.

### Star\*Types



### Trapezoid Star\*Types

## Compassion

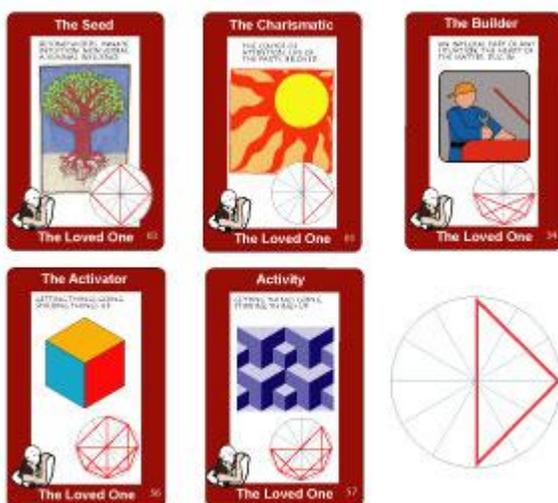
Here is another form of the green-lined charts. As a rule, this type of chart is very compassionate, always appreciating a situation for what it is, making room for others, making allowances, being kind.

So, what can you know when you meet one of the green chart types? You can expect a sharp mind, perhaps very broad in scope, but probably at least facile and detail-oriented. If you will let them—that is, if you can assume the role of an object, someone to be cared for—they will probably assume the role of protector and

## Major Chart Patterns

caretaker. If you meet them with criticism and mental arguments, you are in for a tussle, because this is their turf. They own it.

However, if you sit still and let them look after you, as mentioned, more often than not they will do just that. On the outside they may appear tough, or even wrathful, but on the inside they are easy, and will always give way. Giving is their gift.



Major Cross Star\*Types

### The Loved One: Red Lines

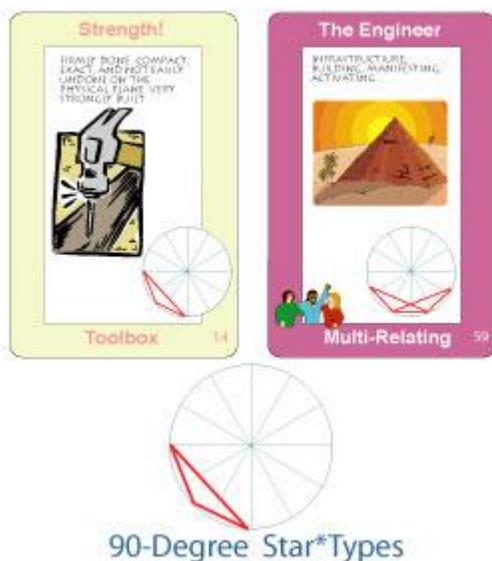
With the red-line types, you have the classic form of the "Loved One," the object of everyone's affection, the one who demands and gets a lot of attention, the one who is provided lots of service; and, this is as it should be, for these types are warm and exude charm; they are always the centerpiece of any group. Everyone loves to be with the red line charts because they are not self-conscious and they love to have fun—which pretty much

## Major Chart Patterns

guarantees you a good time. I always say, if you are in trouble and need advice, seek out a green chart type, but if you want a dinner partner, or just to have fun, grab yourself a red chart type, for they are where the fun starts.

These red types are, above all, 'people persons', and they like to get right in there and work a crowd, glad-handing with the best of them. They radiate charisma, and shine in almost any setting. Of course, they make the best salesmen, because they sell themselves just by being with you—who could resist?

Moreover, they are eminently so 'watch-able'. This does not mean they have to be the best-looking, but regardless of how they look, they are magnetic. They shine, and everyone just loves to be around them and to spend time with them.



## Major Chart Patterns

### **The Other Side**

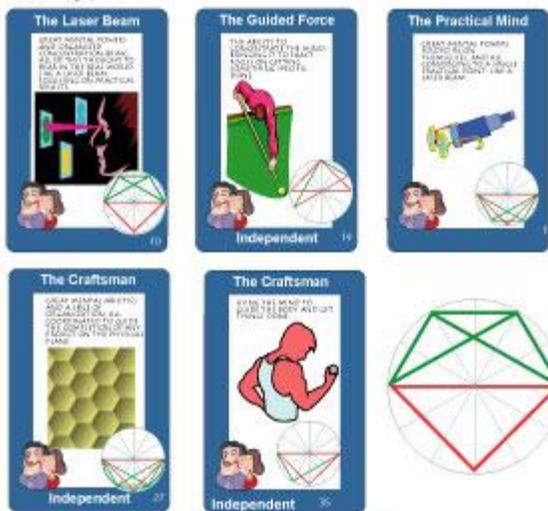
Lest we think life is all roses for these red chart types, let's go over some of their darker side. For all their social qualities, they are still very private, and enjoy their privacy. They don't like to be crowded and hate to be boxed in. In their own way, they are claustrophobic.

And, they worry about their intelligence, perhaps because they are so simple and direct in their appeal. They feel everyone loves them for their shine and sparkle, and yet not for their intellect. This can be a real problem—because they are afraid of appearing stupid. In fact, they will often go to great lengths to collect diplomas and degrees—whatever might make them appear sophisticated. They like fine and frilly things, and are quick to put on airs—to appear more sophisticated than, in fact, they are. This can be a lifelong problem.

They may also lack common sense at times, seeing the trees but not the forest. They may have real problems getting the big picture; it would be wise of them to seek out the advice of the green chart types, who can give them some direction in life—helping them see more clearly where they are going.

## Major Chart Patterns

### Star\*Types



### Wedge-Cross Star\*Types

#### The Independent (blue-borders)

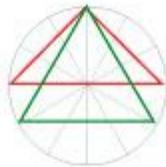
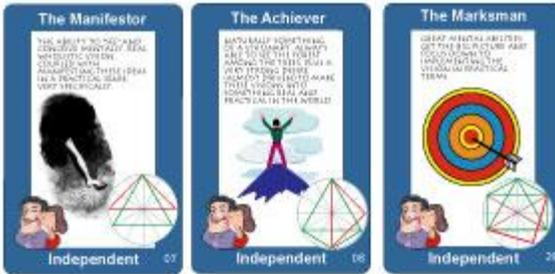
With this group of chart types, the ones with blue borders, we have a combination of the Lover and the Loved One in a single type. We could say that they are capable of loving themselves, and this is so true. They truly are self-sufficient and even, from time to time, independent of relationships. This is not to say they do not have or enjoy relationships, for they most certainly do; however, they are not as dependent on relationships as, let's say, the red and the green types are. They can enjoy relationships, but they can also be quite content being out on their own.

And, perhaps because they contain within themselves all of the elements of a basic relationship, the Lover and the Loved One both, they can play either role with an external partner, giving care and love to the red chart types and receiving care and attention from the green



## Major Chart Patterns

### Star\*Types



### Trine-Square Star\*Types

#### An Island to Themselves

As they are a bit to themselves and not dependent on others, this lack of dependency can make them appear aloof, even a little cool. Although perhaps they pay some small social price for this condition, mostly they are quite content with themselves; this is what others may find annoying. You get the idea.

## Major Chart Patterns



### Multi-Relational Chart Type (maroon)

This is rather odd style of relationship, at least as compared to the other three. This maroon-bordered chart-type is truly a different type. The other three chart types consist of planet patterns that take up the whole 360-degree wheel, made up of the red and green lined whole-chart patterns, alone or in combination. This is why they are sometimes called "Whole Chart Patterns."

However, the maroon Multi-Relational type does not have a whole chart pattern, rather just the opposite. These chart types have all of the planets grouped in just one little corner or part of the wheel—all jammed together. Most of the wheel is completely blank.

So, they are not, simply, natural care givers (Lovers) or simply the object of attention (Loved One); instead, they are more like objects of affection that also care—if this makes sense. In other words, they need attention as the

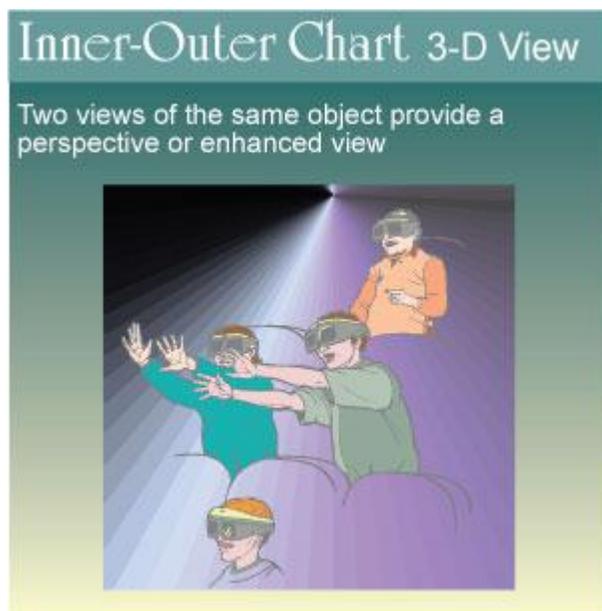
## Major Chart Patterns

red Star\*types do, but are much more mental, as the green chart types are. Mostly, they are very compact and detail-oriented types who, rather than just radiating charisma, use their minds to get around.

They are, though, so compact and dedicated that they *do* in fact radiate a kind of charisma all their own. Most of all, they have a great thirst and need for experience, and this often takes the form of a need for relationships, of which they have many. They really grow through meeting and maintaining friendships of all kinds—through having a sort of endless chain of friends. They need relationships to exist, unlike the two types who assume a particular role (red and green Star\*types), or the type who is indifferent (the blue chart type).

These maroon-bordered chart types are very hard workers who use their minds in often very detailed and highly emotional ways to move through life; they move from friend to friend, from relationship to relationship, like a monkey swinging through the trees. This chain of friends is how they learn about themselves, and the other three types are all grist for their mill—because each of these other types presents areas of experience which are of interest to them.

### ***Different Views of You***



### **Inner and Outer**

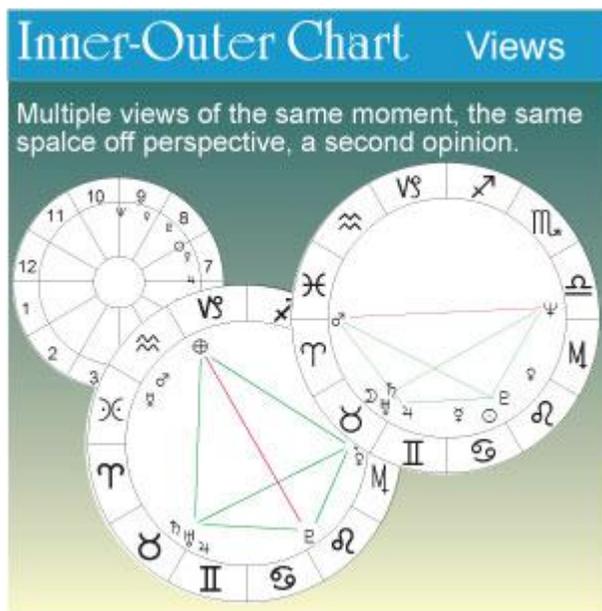
You might think you have only one natal chart and that's 'you', but actually, astrologers use a number of different natal charts, each of which gives a slightly different perspective of you. It is like those 3-D glasses that were a temporary fad when I was a kid. When you looked through them, the movie was suddenly in 3-dimensions, not two. Your different natal charts bring you the same effect. When used together, you can see your self, astrologically speaking, in three dimensions.

Of the several different astrology charts available for your birth: geocentric, heliocentric, Local Space, and equatorial, the two most important ones are the geocentric and the heliocentric. The geocentric chart is the standard astrology natal chart, as you know. It is a

## Major Chart Patterns

chart telling of the circumstances of your life, and of basic external talents or qualities you have. It is your Outer Chart.

The heliocentric chart is more a chart of your inner self, of how you are inside when someone really gets to know you. This is your Inner Chart. If you don't already know how to use these two charts, then the following may help.

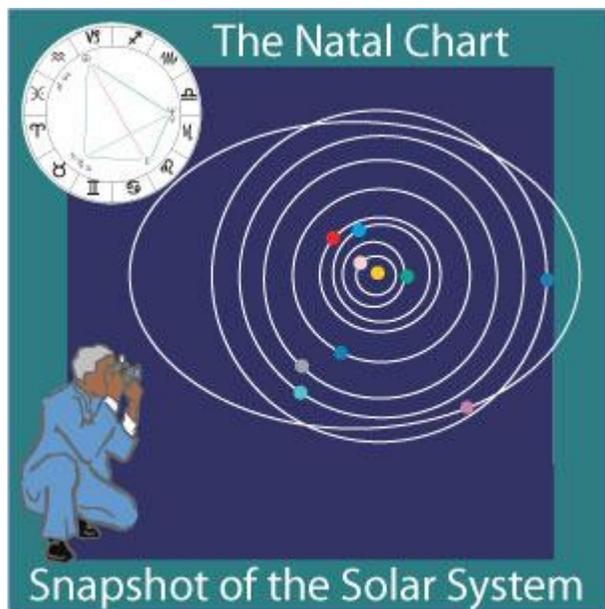


### Geocentric or Heliocentric?

In the 20<sup>th</sup> Century, most astrology books referred to—and the majority of astrologers used—the standard geocentric natal chart almost exclusively. Very few astrologers looked at the heliocentric chart also. Today, all of this is changing, as astrologers have found that it is useful to look at several natal charts, rather than just one, in regards to a birth—there are different perspectives. Sometimes a second (or a third) opinion

## Major Chart Patterns

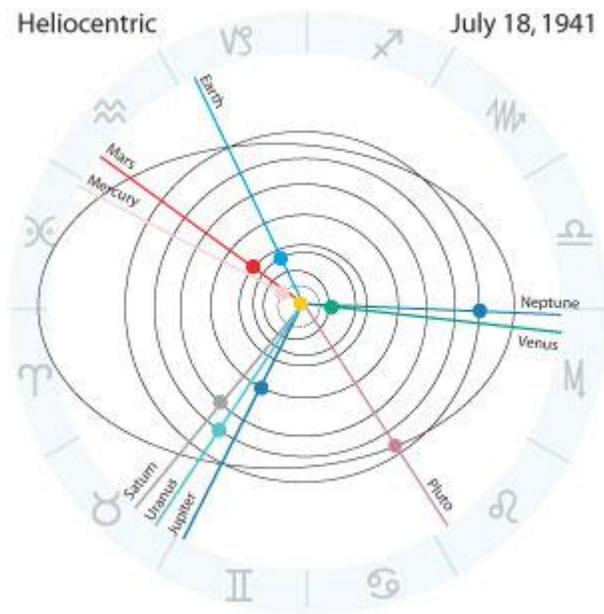
makes a huge difference, and different perspectives are almost always helpful. Let's consider what the benefits are of looking at the geocentric and heliocentric charts side by side. First, let's be clear about what we are discussing here.



### **The Geocentric Natal Chart (Outer Chart)**

Geocentric charts are charts of your birth as seen from Earth, which is, of course, where we all live. If you order a natal chart from an online service, what you will get is a geocentric chart, which is a snapshot (from Earth's perspective) of the solar system at the moment of your birth.

## Major Chart Patterns



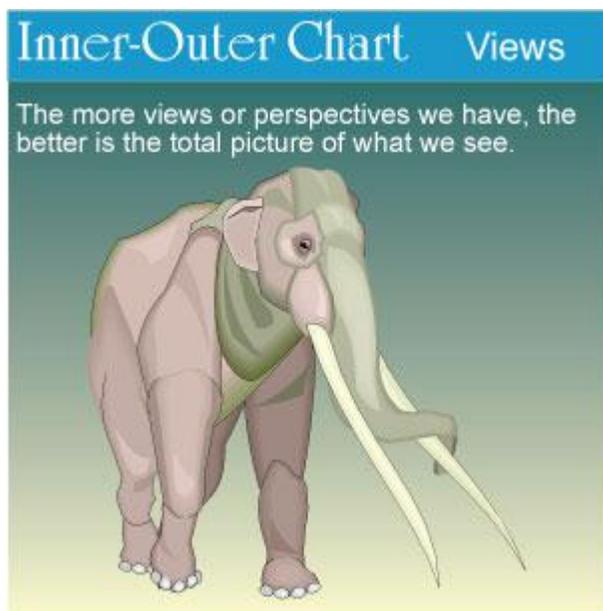
### The Heliocentric Chart (Inner Chart)

We just pointed out that the geocentric chart is a snapshot of the solar system from Earth's perspective at the time of your birth. The operative words here are "from earth's perspective." If the geocentric chart is a picture of the solar system from the perspective of Earth, how is this different from a snapshot of the solar system itself? If a particular perspective on the solar system is what we have used for centuries to do astrology, what will a chart of the overall actual system provide us?

Your outer or geocentric chart is—what? It is a snapshot of the entire solar system, of which the earth is just one planet, but it is a snapshot taken from the earth's perspective somewhere within that system. If we were at the Daytona 500 speed track and took a snapshot of the track and the other racing cars from within one car—during the middle of a race—this would be analogous to a snapshot taken from within the system itself.

## Major Chart Patterns

Sooner or later, we are bound to wonder about the system that we have taken a snapshot of—what it is our inner or heliocentric chart might provide. As it turns out, this inner chart does provide quite a lot: for starters, it can provide an alternate view of the same moment—of our birth—in time and space.



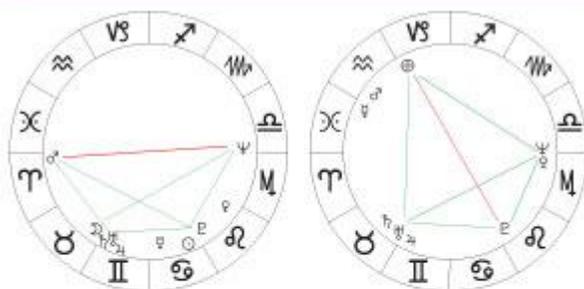
### Two Views

I am reminded of the old story of the elephant—with a group of blind people each feeling a different part of the animal and describing their experience. From the collection of descriptions we might get a pretty good idea of what an elephant is, while if all we had was the description given by whatever fellow had felt the trunk, we would come up with quite a different picture. This is why getting two perspectives on the same moment in time, on the same planets and the same space in time, is a real help.

## Major Chart Patterns

More and more well-known astrologers, such as Hugh McCraig, L.E. Johndro, Robert Hand, and Dane Rudhyar, have all told us about the value of the heliocentric chart in giving us an enhanced picture of ourselves. I have found this to be true in my own work. I would never think of doing a reading for a client without both charts sitting before me, side by side. The benefits of looking at both views are great, and it only takes my computer a couple of seconds to print out both. You have nothing to lose.

### Geocentric and Heliocentric Patterns



Geocentric

Heliocentric

Basket Pattern

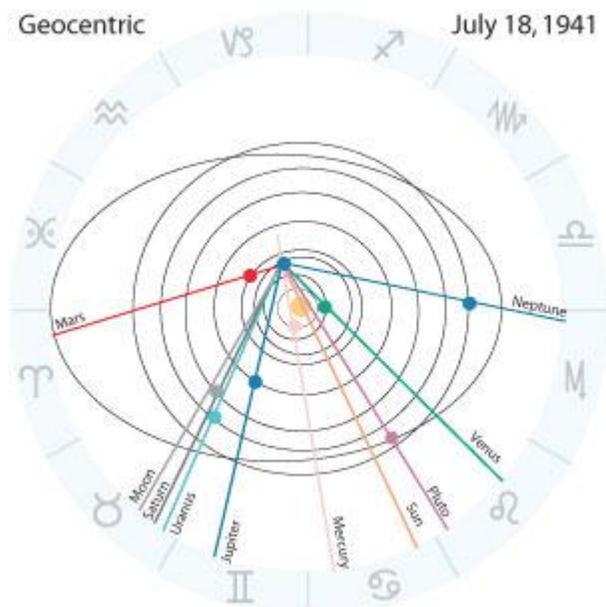
Grand Trine  
Pattern

### The Perspective

For those of you wishing to understand the astronomy of these two charts, read on. Others may want to go straight to the section which details how to interpret these two charts. The diagram above shows my natal chart, in both geocentric and heliocentric formats. As you can see, they are quite different. The geocentric charts has all of the planets on one side of the chart

## Major Chart Patterns

wheel, while the heliocentric view is spread out to the point of having a very exact grand trine pattern— involving six of the nine planets. To see just how this works, you may want to switch back and forth between the next few pages, until it becomes clear. Let's start with the familiar geocentric chart, the chart we already know and use.



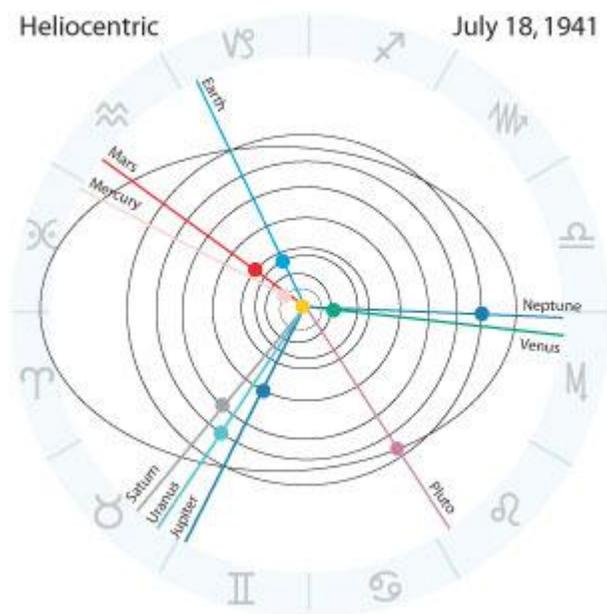
### The Geocentric Chart (Outer Chart)

Here is a diagram of the solar system at the time of my birth, on July 18, 1941. As you can see, the Sun is in the center and the orbits for the planets, from Mercury all the way out to Pluto, are shown as much to scale as we could fit on this page, and are at least roughly accurate. The planet in the third ring from the Sun is Earth, and is marked by a blue dot.

From that blue dot of earth, I have drawn lines through all of the planets to show how earth sees the planets on

## Major Chart Patterns

that day, from within the zodiac where it sits—third stone from the Sun. The point here is that the standard geocentric chart is Earth's perspective or view of the solar system, and not a view of the solar system itself. Of course, it is a most significant view, because it is *our* view, but we must ask: what is this a view of? And, the answer is: it is a view of the solar system...so...we might like to look at a chart of what the solar system looked like—at our birth—from a more overall perspective, and this would be the heliocentric chart—your inner chart.

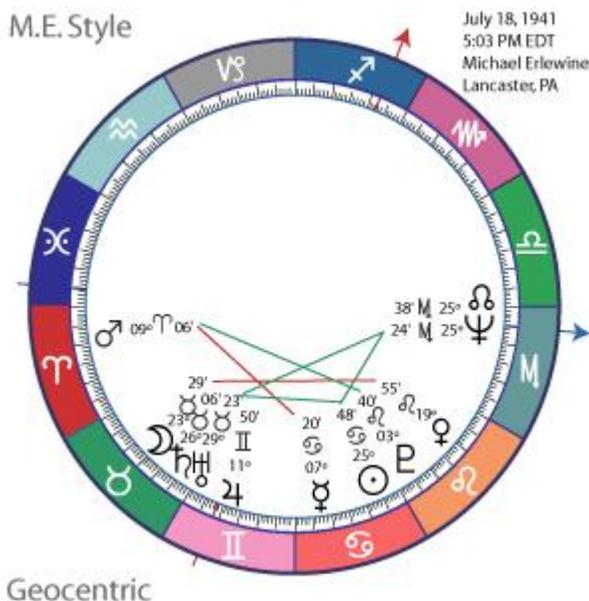


### The Heliocentric Chart (Inner Chart)

Here is the heliocentric chart for my birth. This is a chart of the same moment, the same space, and of the same planets, but as seen—not from Earth's perspective, but rather from the perspective of the actual center of the solar system—from the Sun's perspective. The difference is considerable, and we will get into the interpretative

## Major Chart Patterns

difference between the geocentric and heliocentric charts more, later in this section. The point here is that the heliocentric natal chart is a diagram of the solar system and the actual planetary patterns that were in effect at our birth. The geocentric chart is a snapshot of those same patterns, but from the earth's perspective only, and that perspective often warps—or rather, only offers a limited (although important) view, of what was actually taking place at that time in the solar system. It is to our advantage to know what was actually taking place according to a more overall perspective—the true patterns—as well as having knowledge of earth's snapshot view of them.



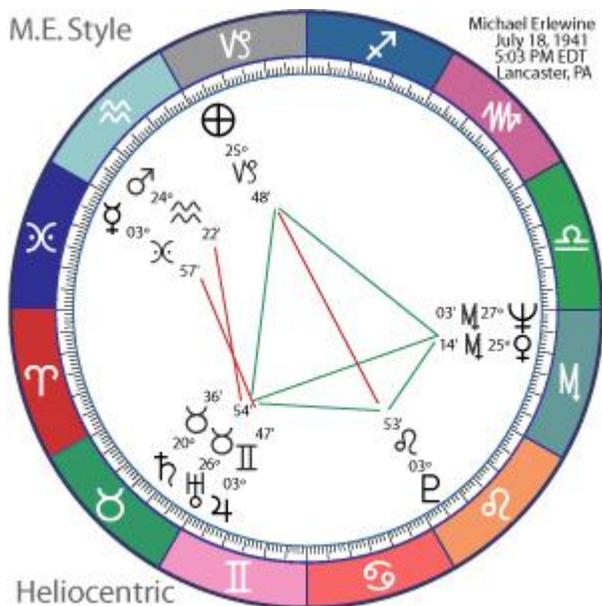
### The Comparison

Now, let's compare the geocentric natal chart to the heliocentric natal chart and examine what the meaning of both. How are we to interpret these two views of the same moment?

## Major Chart Patterns

### The Geocentric Chart

The geocentric or outer natal chart, the standard one used during past centuries, is a chart of our personal self, of our particular life circumstances, qualities, and talents. It is how we appear to ourselves and to others in this day-to-day world we all live in. The geocentric planetary patterns, houses, cusps, angles and what-not, all point to who we are, and this chart has been well documented for at least 1000 years. There is nothing I can add here about the geocentric chart that you do not already know or at least will have access to in the literature of astrology, except for the fact that this chart is not the only chart of your birth—it is not the only picture of you—there is a second opinion, and it is one well worth examining.





## Major Chart Patterns

### Differences in Chart Patterns

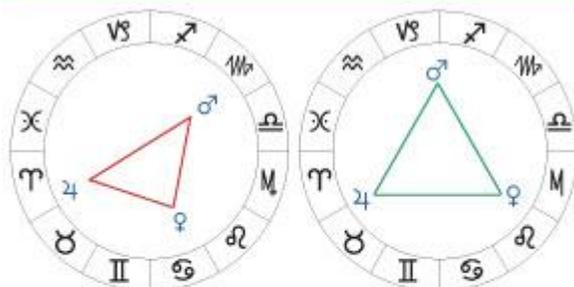
One of the most obvious differences between the geo and the helio chart can be seen by just looking at the whole-chart patterns of the two charts. They can be visually very different, as is the case with my own chart. The concept and the interpretation of whole-chart patterns are explained elsewhere in this course, so you may want to brush up on that topic at some point. Here, let's just say something about the patterns.

My geo chart type is the basket pattern, where all of the planets are on one side of the chart. This is very true in my case: all of the planets and the lights (even the node, which is not a planet) are on the western side of the chart—it is very one sided. My helio chart shows quite a different chart type: that of the grand trine, which encompasses the breadth of the entire chart. This is a very different pattern, and the difference between these two charts is dramatic. What are we to make of this?

Using the standard chart-pattern analysis (detailed elsewhere), we can say that I appear (in my geocentric chart) much more one-sided than, in fact, I am—were you to get to know me better. Both of these chart patterns are what we call green-line charts and belong to the same chart pattern family—the relationship type of "The Lover"; however, my heliocentric chart's grand trine points to a much broader sense of vision than does my geocentric basket type. Both are hard-working types.

## Major Chart Patterns

### Geocentric and Heliocentric Patterns



Geocentric  
T-Square Pattern

Heliocentric  
Grand Trine  
Pattern

### Inner and Outer Comparison

The difference in chart-pattern type between the geo and helio types may or may not be dramatic. In my case, the difference is a little dramatic, as the two chart types are not exactly similar. Just as easily, the difference could be much more dramatic, for instance, if one chart represented the red-lined patterns for "The Loved One" and the other chart the green-lined patterns of "The Lover." A person could appear in the geo chart to be of the relationship type "The Loved One," but actually be, at heart, as shown in the helio chart—the relationship type "The Lover"—really wanting to give attention and care more than receive it.

All of this can appear complicated, but it actually isn't. To put this concept to work, you need to learn about the four main relationship types, and then look to see what type your geo and helio charts have. They either have the same or different types. If your geo and helio charts



## Major Chart Patterns

both of these qualities are part of the geocentric chart—they belong to Earth.

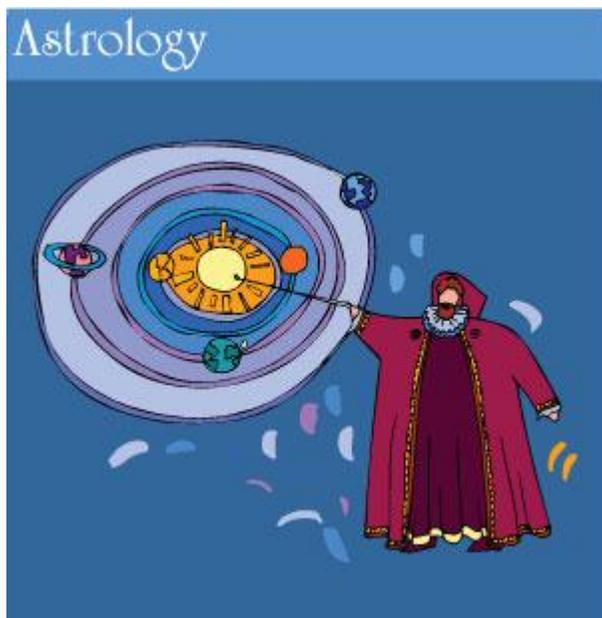
However, we can use almost every other kind of analysis. Let me give you an example from my own chart. In my geo—or standard astrology—chart, I have the planet Mars in Aries, which is said to show a very aggressive, strong drive. Furthermore, in that same geo chart I have Mars Square Mercury—in a pretty tight square. A traditional interpretation of this might be "Strong words, sharp tongue...", that sort of thing. There is some truth to this, as folks have pointed out to me. But let's look at my helio chart.

In my helio chart, I have Mars not in Aries, but in Aquarius, and it is not square Mercury, but rather in a fairly wide conjunction. This is a very different kettle of fish—so how are we to understand the difference between the two charts?

We might say that, while I have Mars in Aries in my outer or external chart, in my inner chart (helio), my Mars, although strong and aggressive (on the outside), manages to accomplish Aquarian tasks, like benefiting groups of people. I won't point out how this might be so, but it should give you an idea of how to use these two charts to better understand yourself.

Or, I could take my geo Venus in Leo and contrast it with my helio Venus in Virgo. You get the idea. Check it out.

## Major Chart Patterns



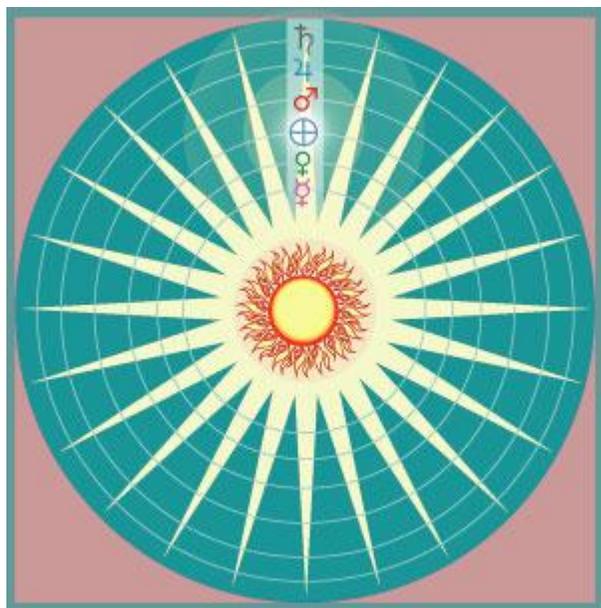
### The Other Shoe

Let's close this section on heliocentric vs. geocentric astrology by pointing out something about the history of the change from geocentric astronomy/astrology to heliocentric astronomy. We know that Nicholas Copernicus was the man who first demonstrated that it was the earth which circles around the Sun, and not vice versa. Before this, everyone assumed it was the Sun that circled the earth—and this notion extended to astrologers also.

In fact, before the Copernican revolution (as it has been called), astronomers were astrologers and astrologers were astronomers. This gradually ended when it was agreed upon that it was the earth which orbited the Sun, and not what they had so preciously imagined beforehand.

## Major Chart Patterns

Astronomers quickly held fast to the new heliocentric view, and this view, in fact, answered perfectly the scores of questions which had been outstanding up to that point. With one fell swoop, centuries of belief fell away and were replaced by a view that proved true enough to eventually get man on the Moon, and beyond.



### **Astronomers and Astrologers**

However, a schism developed between the astronomers and the astrologers, who had previously been of one mind. The astronomers moved on into heliocentric (still using geocentric) calculations, but the astrologers never adopted the heliocentric perspective. They acknowledged the truth of it—as science, but never added the heliocentric astrological chart to their toolbox or applied it to their astrological techniques.

This state of affairs still exists to some extent to the present day, although a growing number of widely

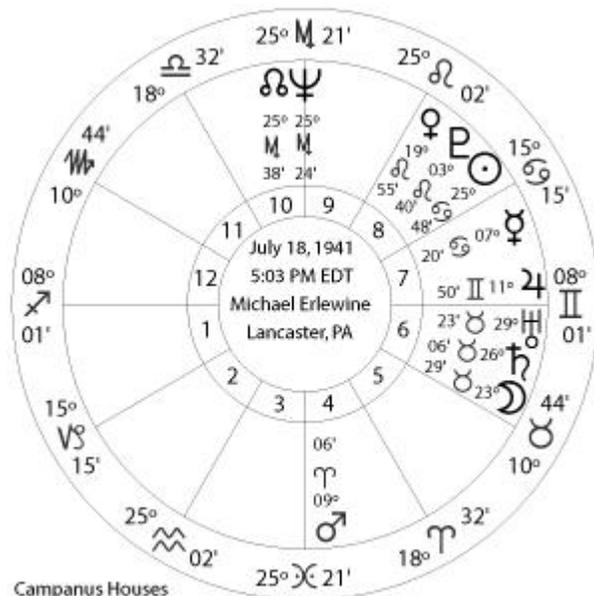
## Major Chart Patterns

recognized astrologers, such as Dane Rudhyar and L.E. Johnro, have pointed out the need for astrologers to study the heliocentric chart. We are working on that now.

What I am pointing out here is that, if the heliocentric chart is as people such as Dane Rudhyar has said, a chart of our deeper self or soul, then we might like to have a peek at it, instead of trying to derive all of our astrological information from a single chart—from the traditional geocentric chart wheel. Each perspective of our birth—each type of astrological chart—best brings out a particular view. We have, for centuries, been trying to extract all of our information from a single chart, from the geocentric natal chart.

This is fine, if all we need is a roadmap of our life circumstances and outer path; if we want, however, a glimpse inside, at our deeper or more spiritual self, then it is much more beneficial to look at the heliocentric chart also, as this is the chart that brings out or shows the information concerning our inner path—our Dharma.

## Your Astrological Toolbox



### The Toolbox

- (1) Chart Wheel
- (2) 12 Astrological Houses and House Cusps
- (3) Planets in the Houses

Let's get familiar with the various tools of astrology. Right now, all you need is a copy of a natal chart, preferably your own. There are many online services which will provide one. Using my own chart here, as an example, the standard astrological wheel-of-houses chart form looks like this. Your form may differ slightly, but it should look quite similar otherwise.

What you have is the circular chart form, divided into twelve equal divisions of 30-degrees each, much as you would cut a pizza. These are the Twelve Astrological Houses, or the "houses," as they are usually called.

## Your Astrological Toolbox

In the various houses are the planet symbols, with their astrological sign, and the degrees and minutes of position within that sign. Around the outside of the wheel (on the outer rim) are the twelve house cusps, one for each of the twelve spokes of the wheel, again in zodiac sign, degree(s), and minutes. If you don't yet know the symbol glyphs for the zodiac signs and the planets, I have included them here for easy reference.

Planets and Angles			
	The Sun		Uranus
	The Moon		Neptune
	Mercury		Pluto
	Venus		Pluto
	Mars		Nodes
	Jupiter		Ascendant
	Saturn		Midheaven

### The Lights, Planets, and Angles

Here are the symbols or glyphs for The Lights (Sun and Moon), the planets, the lunar node, and the two main angles, Ascendant and Midheaven. There is general agreement as to what these symbols are, with the exception of the planet Pluto; with Pluto there are two symbols currently in use; here, I have shown the original symbol for Pluto as created by astronomers—the P-like symbol, as well as the other version, which is also used

## Your Astrological Toolbox

by astrologers, particularly in Europe. Both are acceptable.

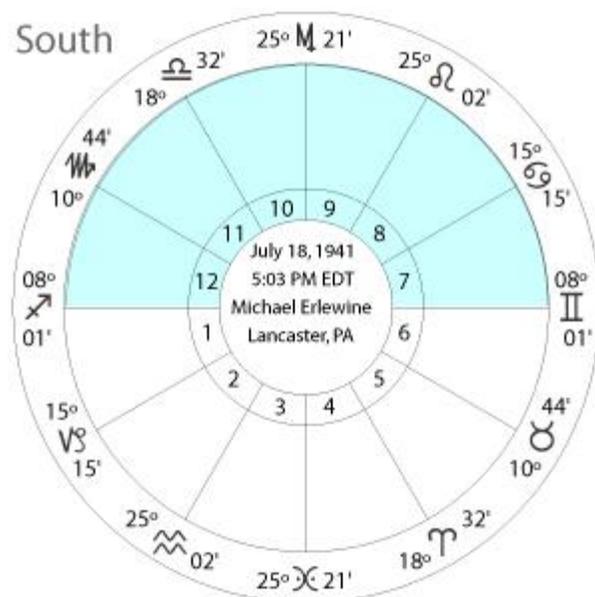
### Signs of the Zodiac

 Aries	 Libra
 Taurus	 Scorpio
 Gemini	 Sagittarius
 Cancer	 Capricorn
 Leo	 Aquarius
 Virgo	 Pisces

### The Signs of the Zodiac

Here are the twelve signs of the zodiac, along with their astrological glyph or symbol. These symbols can differ a little—there are some variations; for example, here, for the signs Virgo and Pisces, I show the original Greek version of these glyphs, which I feel are more revealing in that Pisces looks like two fish, head to head, and that Virgo has the cross of matter hanging from its upper part. You can decide which you like and use those.

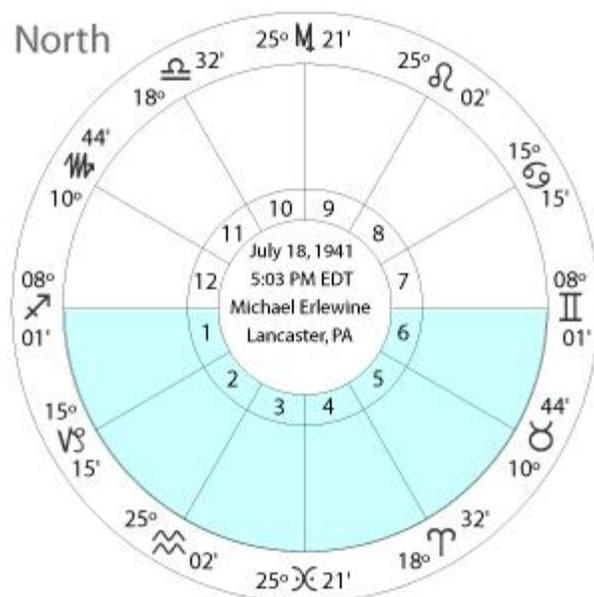
## Your Astrological Toolbox



### The South

In temperate climates, such as in the U.S., the upper half of our astrology chart maps the area of the sky above us (Zenith) and to the South. This is the most open part of the chart, since it includes the very top of the chart (the Midheaven, in the zodiac) and all of the sky and heavens above us. The top of the chart includes the six houses: 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, and 12. Later in this course, we will see that this very open upper area of the chart represents our outer or public aspect—out in the open—and those who are born with most of their planets in these upper houses (7, 8, 9, 10, 11, and 12) are said to have a more public destiny—some outward show.

## Your Astrological Toolbox

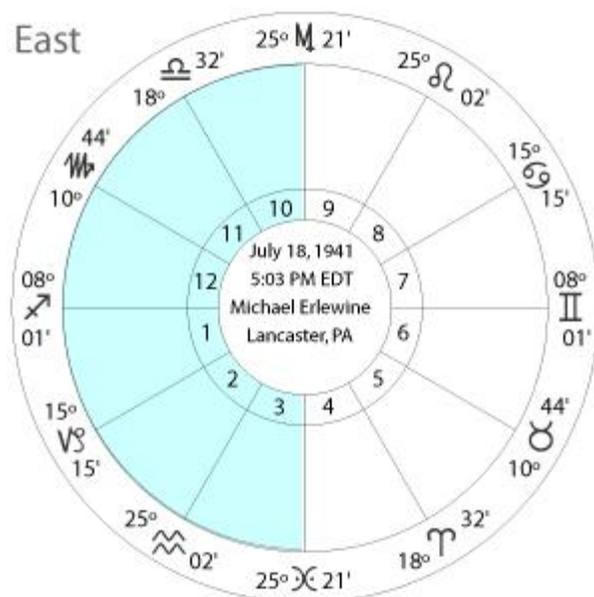


### The North

In temperate climates, as in the U.S., the lower half of our astrology chart maps the area of the sky beneath us and to the North. This is the most closed or private part of the chart, since it includes all of the heavens beneath our feet, and on the other side of the earth from where we are. This lower point in the chart and, in the zodiac, is called the I.C. (Immun Coeli), which means, literally, "bottom of the sky."

This bottom of the chart includes the six houses: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6. Later in this course, we will see that this very closed (and lower) area of the chart represents our inner or more personal aspect—not in the open—and those who are born with most of their planets in these lower houses (1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6) are said to be more private, inward, and family or home-oriented.

## Your Astrological Toolbox

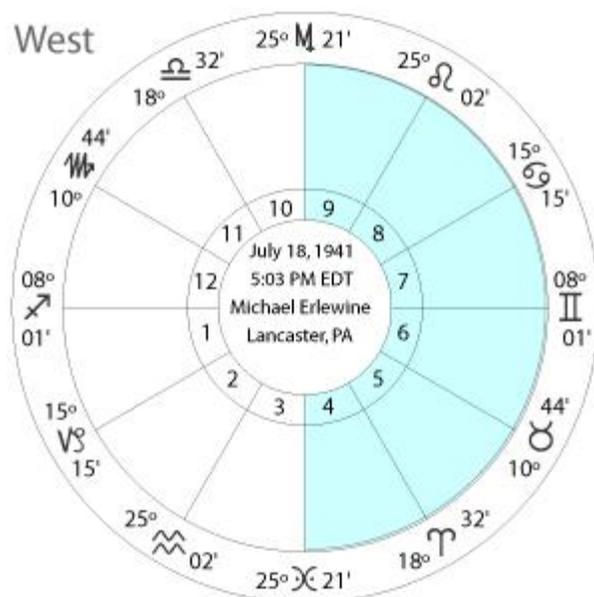


### The East

In temperate climates, as here in the U.S., the left half of our astrology chart maps the area of the sky to the East of us. This is where the Sun comes up each day and where all of the planets rise; this part of the chart is called the ascendant—the ancient Greek term is: horoscope.

The eastern part of the chart includes the six houses: 10, 11, 12, 1, 2, and 3. Later in this course, we will see that this area of the chart, where everything rises or comes up, represents a very active and forward-moving part of our chart. Those born with most of their planets in these eastern houses (10, 11, 12, 1, 2, and 3) are said to be energetic, self-starting, and initiators of action.

## Your Astrological Toolbox



### The West

In temperate climates, such as in the U.S., the right half of our astrology chart maps the area of the sky to the West of us. This is where the Sun goes down each day, and where all of the planets set. This part of the chart is called the descendant. .

The western part of the chart includes the six houses: 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9. Later in this course, we will see that this part of the chart, where everything sets or goes down, represents a very passive and accommodating part of our chart, and those who are born with most of their planets in these western houses (4, 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9) are said to be very receptive, and are working with an existing situation rather than starting something new. We are talking Aikido, not Judo.

## Your Astrological Toolbox



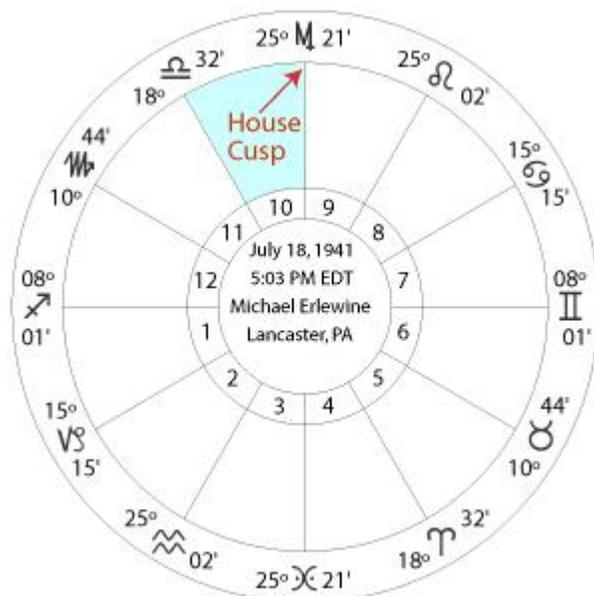
### The Twelve Houses

Recap: Traditionally, astrologers have divided the chart wheel and space around the birthplace into twelve pie-shaped sections, each taking up roughly 1/12th of the zodiac circle; each section is about 30 degrees. We have said something about the four main directions and the various halves of the chart, such as what they might mean for those born with a lot of planets in any particular section. Dividing the chart space/circle into twelve parts is just a further refinement, and each of these twelve sections has a particular meaning, especially if you have certain planets sitting in a specific house.

We will get to this a little later on. Right now, we are just pointing out that the entire heavens surrounding the birth place is divided into twelve sections plotted on a circle or a wheel, so that we can easily see what planets or points (roughly speaking) are in any given geographic

## Your Astrological Toolbox

direction and within which astrological house. The entire 360-degrees of the zodiac (all twelve signs) are divided into these twelve sections.

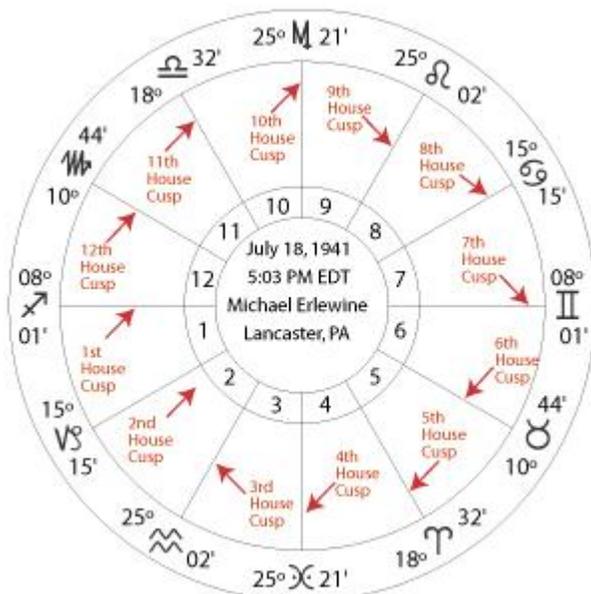


### House Cusps

The twelve astrological houses divide the circle of the zodiac into twelve roughly-equal pie-shaped houses, and each of these twelve houses, in most cases, has one of the signs of the zodiac on what is called its "Cusp." A house cusp marks the beginning of that particular house. In the above diagram, we see the house cusp for the 10th House. This house cusp is, as you can see, in the zodiac sign of Virgo. In fact, as the chart wheel shows, the 10th house cusp starts at 25-degrees and 21 minutes of the zodiac sign Virgo, and goes to 18-degrees and 32 minutes into the zodiac sign Libra, which marks the end of the 10th house and the beginning (the cusp) of the 11th house. House cusps

## Your Astrological Toolbox

follow one another along the regular (counter-clockwise) motion of the zodiac, as it appears in the chart wheel.

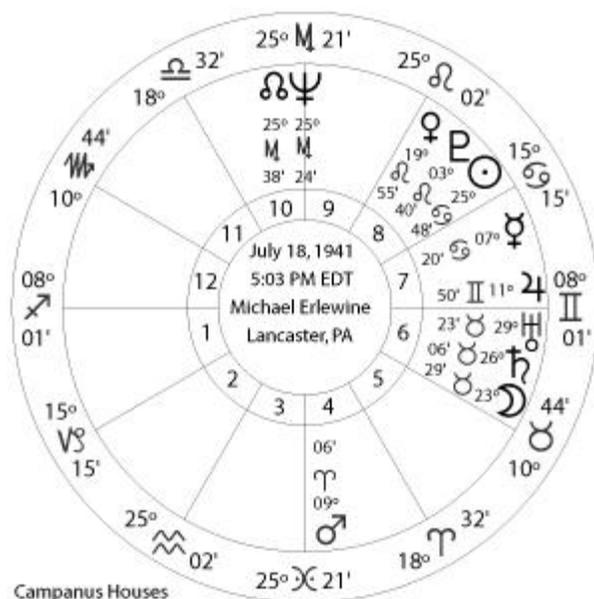


### The Twelve House Cusps

In this diagram, we show the house cusps (the beginning of each house) for all twelve houses. The 1st house cusp (on the far left of the chart wheel) is the ascendant or rising sign. Here, the ascendant is in the zodiac sign Sagittarius. To be exact, the ascendant is 8-degrees and 1 minute of Sagittarius. The Descendant or 7th house cusp is on the far right—at 8-degrees and 1 minute of Gemini.

The 10th house cusp (also called the Midheaven) is at the top of the chart, at 25-degrees and 21 minutes of the zodiac sign Virgo. The opposite point or 4th house cusp (also called the I.C.) is at 25-degrees and 21 minutes of the zodiac sign Pisces.

## Your Astrological Toolbox



### Putting in the Planets

We now have the chart wheel and the twelve house cusps drawn in. The only thing missing are the planets, which are then placed on the chart wheel—in whatever houses they belong.

At any given moment, the Sun, the Moon, and the planets are located somewhere in the zodiac, moving along at their various speeds. For example, at my birth the Sun was in the zodiac sign Cancer, at 25-degrees and 48 minutes of Cancer.

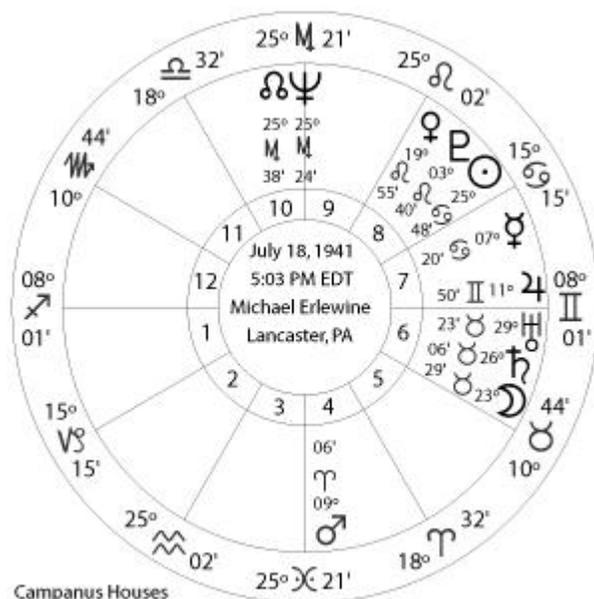
We can see by looking at my birth chart that the 8th house cusp starts at 15-degrees of Cancer and ends at 25-degrees of the sign Leo. My Sun, therefore, at 25-degrees of Cancer, falls within the 8th house, and can be penciled in. If you have a computer program, then all of this is done for you. Each planet is put in its appropriate house. If more than one planet is in a house

## Your Astrological Toolbox

(as often happens) then every planet in that house is placed in the regular zodiac order.

In my chart, I have the Sun, Pluto, and Venus in the 8th house. All three are placed in the 8th house, the Sun first, then Pluto, and then Venus, since that is the order they are in the zodiac.

I hope all of this is somewhat clear. We will go into greater detail on these matters later in this course; all you are expected to understand here is the basic circular shape of the chart wheel, the twelve house cusps as they occur around the outer edge, and how the planets are positioned in the correct house. Look at your own chart and verify these three items.

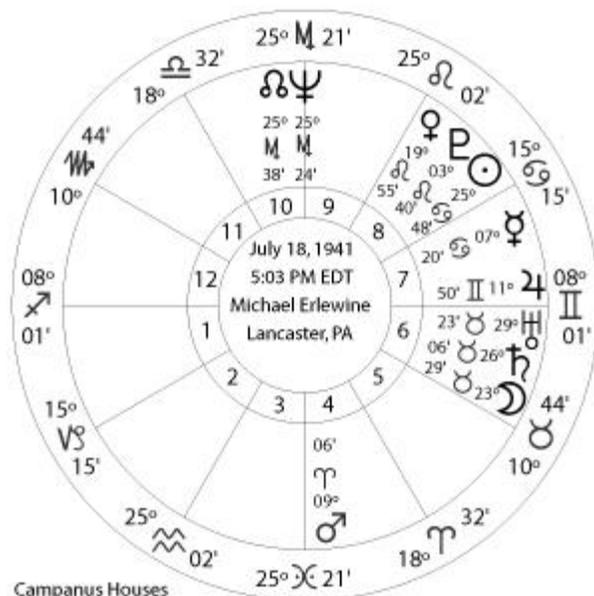


## Astrological Chart Forms

The standard chart wheel, as shown above, is not the only way astrologers look at their astrological data. In fact, the circle with twelve equal houses is probably no

## Your Astrological Toolbox

longer even the most popular format that professional astrologers use. Each of us settles upon what works best for us. Let's go through some of the more popular chart forms and point out their pros and cons. Here goes:



### The Standard Wheel of Twelve Houses

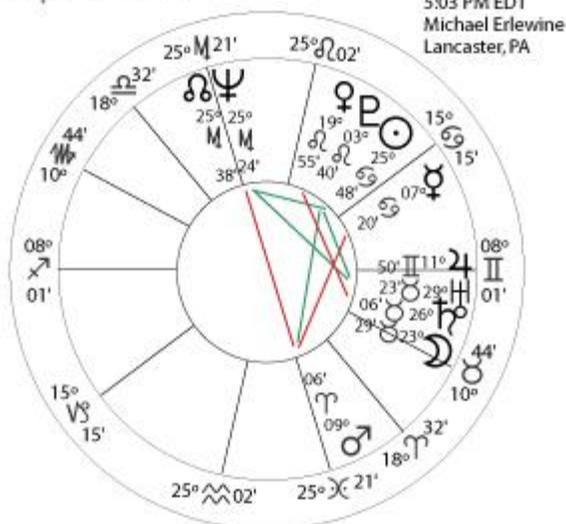
Ancient astrologers, particularly those in India and the Far East, did not even use round chart wheels. Most of their forms were square-shaped. The format shown above, a round chart wheel—with twelve equally spaced houses—has been, however, the most popular form used in the 20th Century.

This chart form has twelve 'equal-sized' houses, even though almost no astrological house system, aside from the Equal House System, has houses that are actually an even 30 degrees in size—so, why use it?

## Your Astrological Toolbox

The simple answer seems to be that it looks neat, and it provides equal room in each house to write in the planets. When I was first learning astrology, in the early 1960s, this was just about the only chart form available, it was, therefore, the one I grew up with. It comes in fancier varieties also—having scalloped houses, lotus-shaped chart wheels, and so forth. The one pictured above is the most common form of the astrological chart wheel.

### Unequal Houses



### Unequal Wheel of Houses

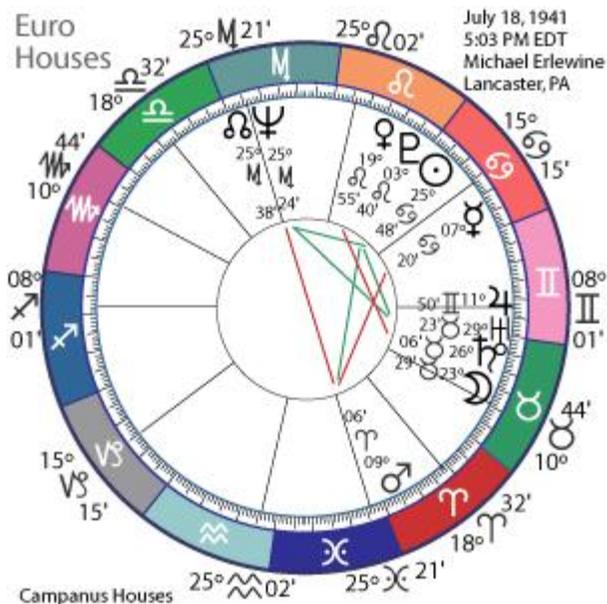
The astrologers who were interested in house system that more accurately represented the actual space of each house developed a wheel of houses exactly like the standard chart wheel, except that it showed the actual space each house took up. In this house system, some pieces of the zodiac pie are larger than others,

## Your Astrological Toolbox

and this chart form above shows that. The ascendant or first house cusp is still on the left; however, as you can see, the 10th house cusp (Midheaven) and the other house cusps are staggered, showing the actual amount of space allocated to each house rather than having all of the houses shown as having an equal 30 degrees of space.

A side benefit of this kind of chart is that a small aspectarian can be drawn in the center of a chart, which shows at a glance something about the aspect patterns making up the chart. With unequal houses, this means that the planet positions are roughly where they should be on a 360-degree wheel, so it is possible to draw out such an aspectarian. In the standard wheel of houses, this would not work, as the planets are restricted spatially to the equal 30-degree houses, and these, then, are seldom true enough to bring out the patterns. This chart format, above, is still quite popular.

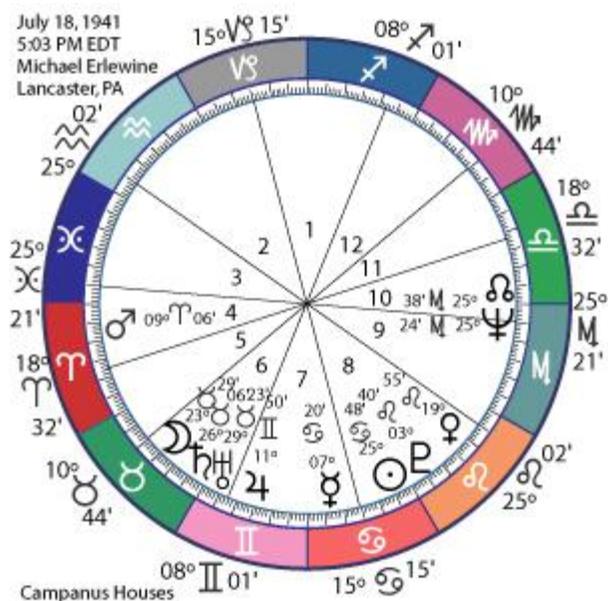
## Your Astrological Toolbox



### The Euro Wheel

European astrologers liked to see the planets drawn in at the correct degree in the circle of the zodiac; they did not like squeezing a bunch of planets into the equal-sized house systems. The so-called Euro Wheel was the result. As you can see, we still have the twelve houses, with the ascendant or first house cusp on the far left, but there is more emphasis on the twelve signs—the band of the zodiac. They even added color to give each sign a distinctive feel. Here we are using a variant of what is called the Queen's Color Scale. The space in the chart wheel center is perfect for drawing a small aspectarian, in color, which helps to show the major chart patterns at a glance. In some versions, the twelve house numbers are also drawn in as well. This chart form has many variants, and today, this is one of the most popular chart formats used, both here and in Europe.

## Your Astrological Toolbox



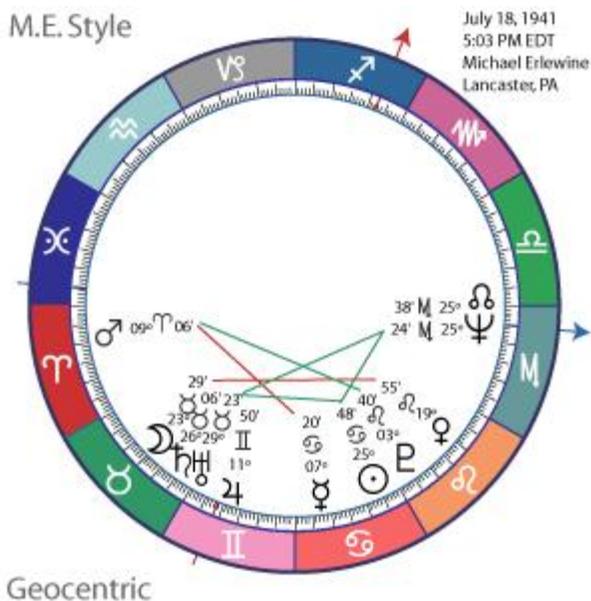
### The 360-Degree Open Wheel

Another very popular chart style in use today is that called the "Open Wheel" or "360-Degree Wheel" chart. This format is also a step closer to accenting the band of the zodiac. Notice that it puts the twelve signs in the traditional position, with Aries at the left, Capricorn to the top and so on, all around. The twelve houses are then drawn in where they belong in the zodiac—in unequal mode. In this format, the houses are de-emphasized in favor of the fixed position of the zodiac in space. This type of chart form is excellent for keeping track of everything out there in space, such as the various fixed stars, and also the important points, such as the Galactic Center (G.C.), which is around 26 degrees of Sagittarius. Instead of having to look through the chart wheel to see where a point such as the G.C. occurs, you can look right at 26 degrees of Sagittarius, since this is where it always is.

## Your Astrological Toolbox

This format is disadvantageous to the extent you have to find out where the first house cusp is—or any of the other cusps—and this can be distracting. But for those astrologers such as myself who are more interested in the large-scale patterns in the chart and less concerned about house position, this chart form, or a variant of it, may be the chart wheel of choice, which leads me to what is coming up next—the chart form I actually use.

## Your Astrological Toolbox



### My Favorite Style Open Wheel

This is the chart form that I have used for the last thirty-some years. As you can see, it is an open wheel, and each planet is placed exactly where it goes—or, as near as possible—in the zodiac. In the center of the chart the major aspects (opposition, trine, square, sextile, etc.) are drawn in with colored lines, so as to illustrate the main patterns.

Note that the houses are de-emphasized further still. Here, only the ascendant-descendant axis is drawn in (red line), as well as the Midheaven-I.C. axis (blue line). The red arrow marks the ascendant, or first house cusp, and the blue arrow marks the Midheaven, or 10th house cusp. The other house cusps are not even shown.

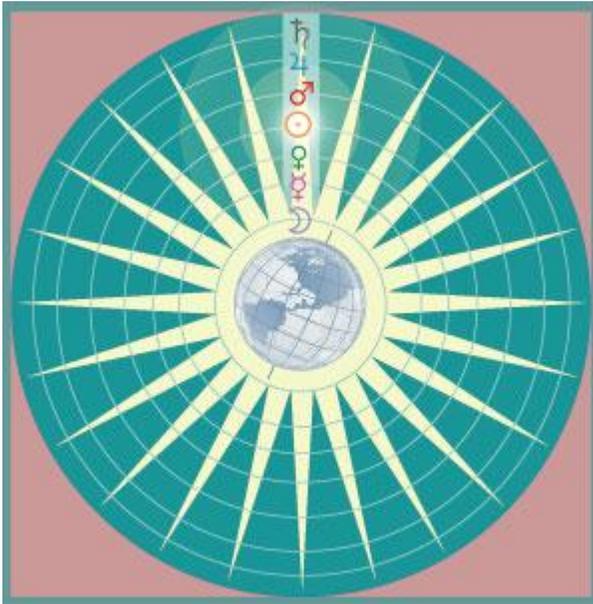
My reason for preferring this is that I am more interested in the two chart axes than I am in the intermediate cusps. The intermediate cusps change depending on

## Your Astrological Toolbox

what house system you are using, and there are dozens of house systems now, but the two axes (ascendant and Midheaven) are the same for most all major house systems. My interest is more in the four major quadrants than in the houses between. Also, I can use a standard wheel of houses when I want to look at the houses separately, although I seldom do so.

In summary, we have looked at what are probably the most popular chart wheel formats being used by both amateur and professional astrologers today; keep in mind, however, that there are literally hundreds of wheel variants out there.

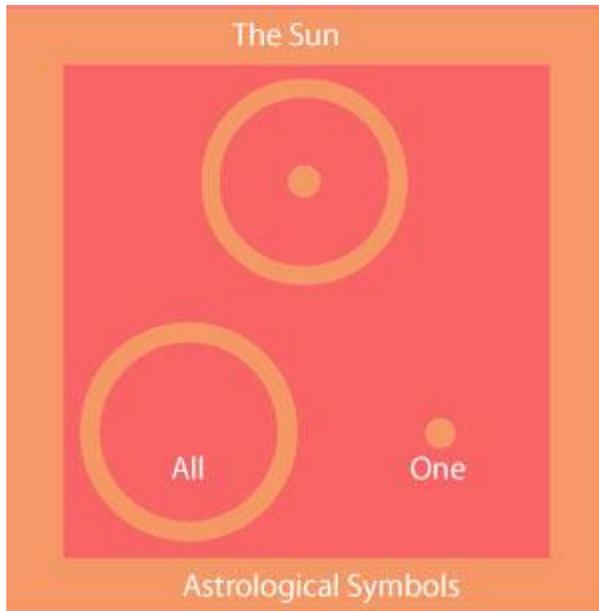
## ***Astrological Symbols***



### **The Planets**

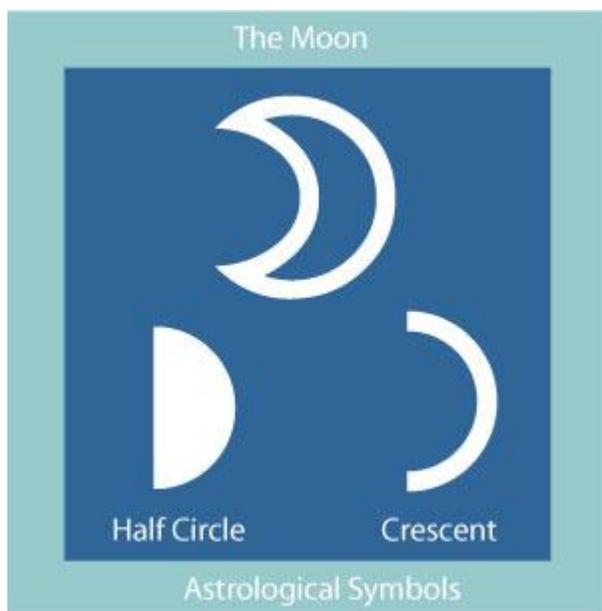
The astrological glyphs or symbols tell a story entirely their own, and one worth hearing. Let's take the time to go through some of the main symbols and examine some brief commentary on them.

## Your Astrological Toolbox



### **The Sun Symbol**

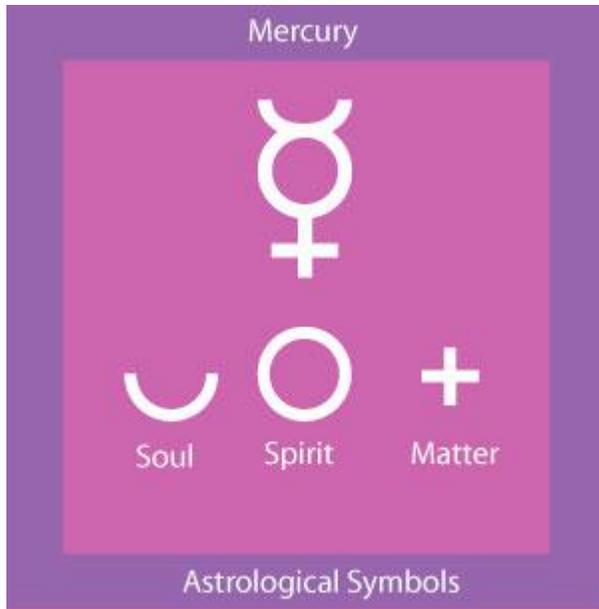
This one is pretty simple, a point and a circle combined. The point, or dot, represents matter, and the circle—spirit. Or, here is the ultimate symbol of a cycle—full expansion (circle) and complete contraction (dot). This is the symbol of the most powerful heavenly body we know—the Sun, source of all light and warmth. This is the Alpha and Omega, the one and the all—you name it. What a perfect symbol!



### **The Moon Symbol**

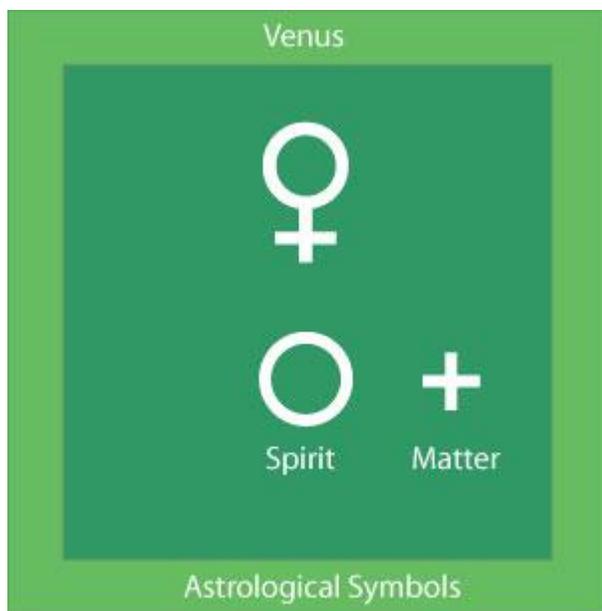
Here is the symbol of the crescent—symbolizing the soul, the receiver, open arms, and the cup waiting to be filled. The Moon glyph also indicates the whole idea of phases—of going through a cycle—and it is the Moon which distributes the light of the Sun to the earth during its monthly cycle.

## Your Astrological Toolbox



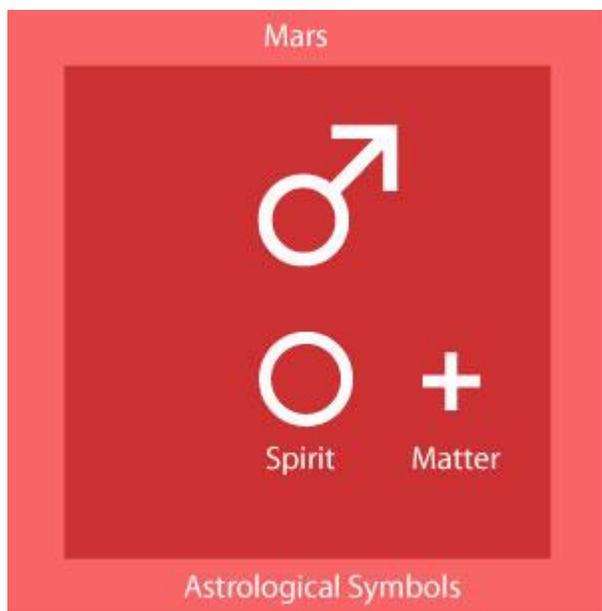
### **Mercury Symbol**

The symbol for Mercury is threefold. It is the circle of spirit, crowned with the soul of the crescent, and carrying the cross of matter beneath. The crescent receives from above and the cross of matter tugs from below. The circle of spirit is that which all are connected to.



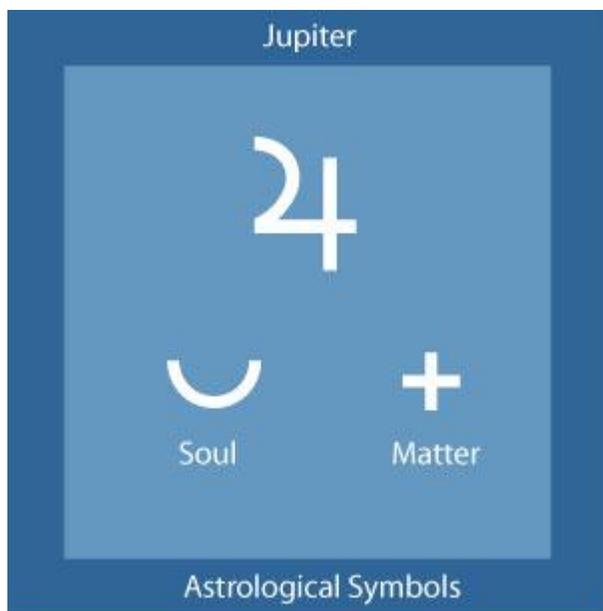
### **Venus Symbol**

Very simple, it is the circle of spirit above the cross of matter. The cross is pulling down, toward matter, but the circle of spirit is dominant. Matter is subservient, here, to spirit.



### **Mars Symbol**

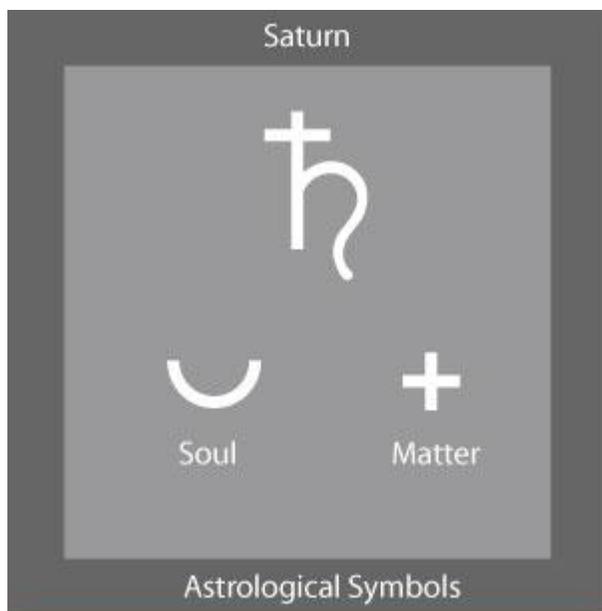
Here we have the circle of spirit dominated by the cross of matter, and the cross is more like the point of a spear. Here, matter is dominant over spirit. The direction indicated by the spear allows us to recognize the outward flow we associate with Mars.



### **Jupiter Symbol**

Here is the cross of matter, combined with the crescent of soul, and the crescent is on top and faces outward. Soul dominating matter is a sign of a benefic, rather than a malefic.

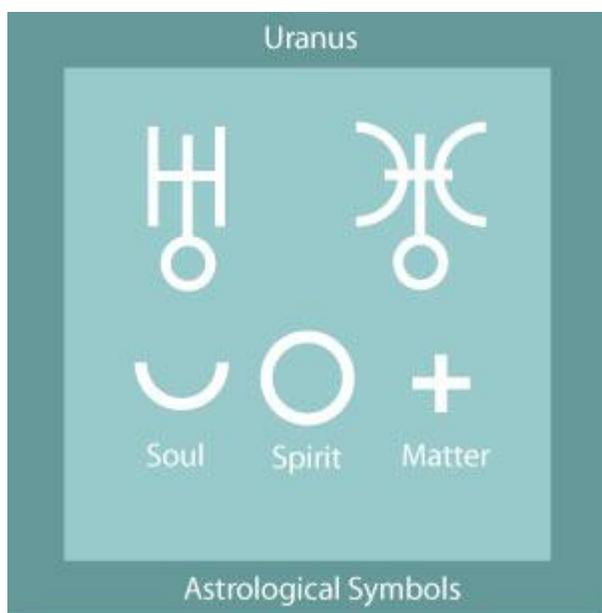
## Your Astrological Toolbox



### **Saturn Symbol**

Here we have the cross of matter and the crescent of soul, with the cross very much on top and dominating: the soul is under the control of matter. How fitting for Saturn, the ruler of form and often considered the major malefic.

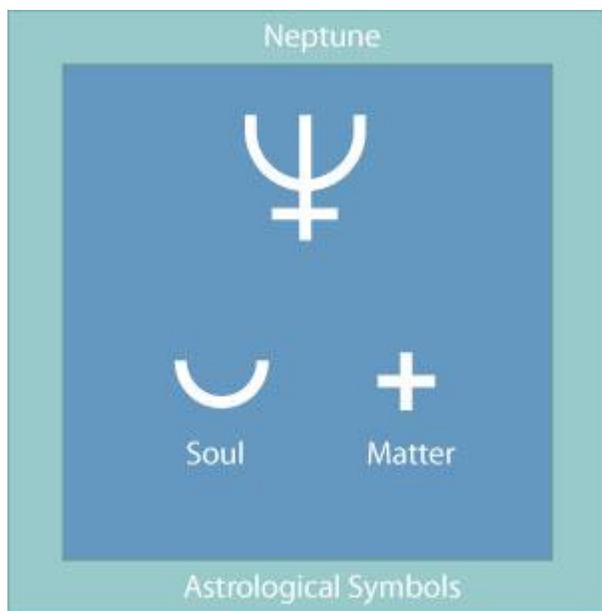
## Your Astrological Toolbox



### Uranus Symbol

Here is the circle of spirit and the cross of matter, with the spirit beneath the matter; however, it is not your typical cross of matter on either of these Uranus symbols—one of which also has the crescent of soul on it. Matter is dominant, but is more like an antennae or a capacity for feeling—very fitting for the planet that uses matter as a way to insight—via inventions, insights, etc.

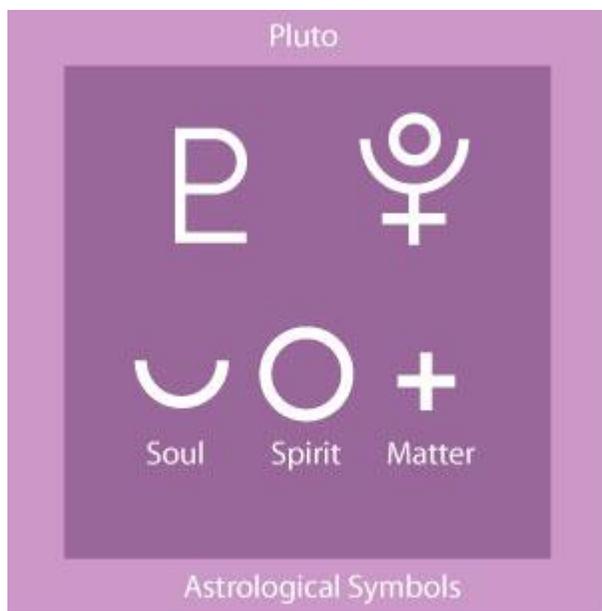
## Your Astrological Toolbox



### **Neptune Symbol**

Here we have the crescent of soul, and very wide at that, above the cross of matter. In fact, the cross kind of extends up and is embraced or enclosed by the crescent.

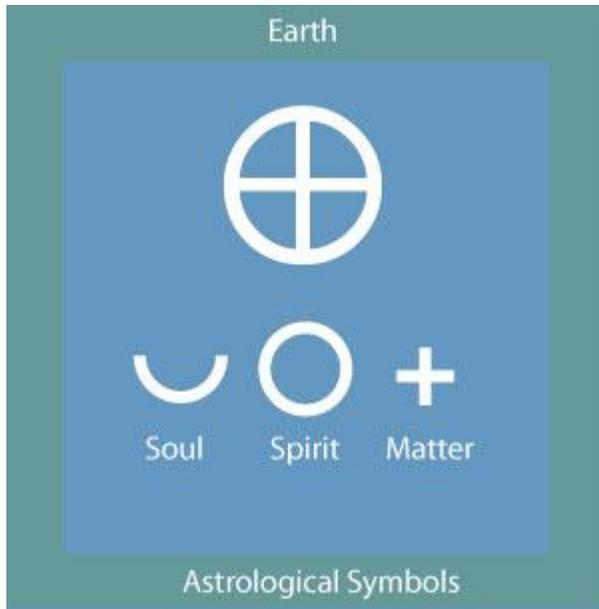
## Your Astrological Toolbox



### Pluto Symbol

There are two popular symbols for Pluto, both of which include some form of crescent. The one on the right is probably the more telling as a symbol, for, in it, the cross of matter is dominated by the crescent of soul, which then embraces the circle of spirit. How appropriate for a planet that represents the door to the underworld and to rebirth. It looks like a womb, with a baby in it. The older form of Pluto looks like a fetus. Both are perfect.

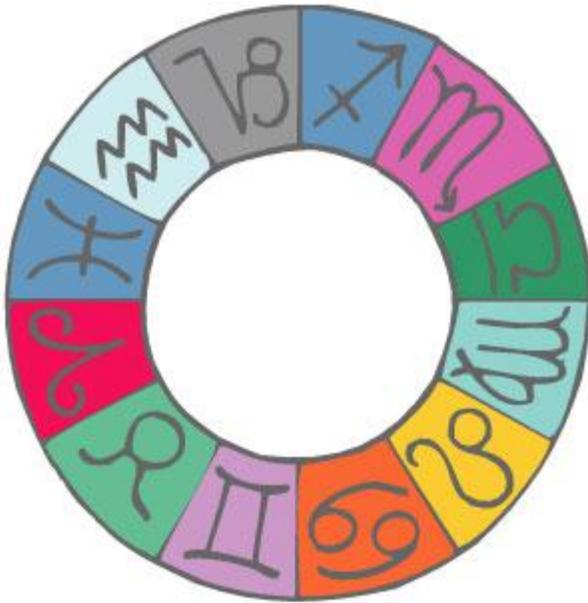
## Your Astrological Toolbox



### **Earth Symbol**

Here we have it all—the circle of spirit, the crescent of soul, and the cross of matter. The circle embraces the cross, and the cross divides the circle into crescents. This is the symbol of earth, where matter and spirit meet.

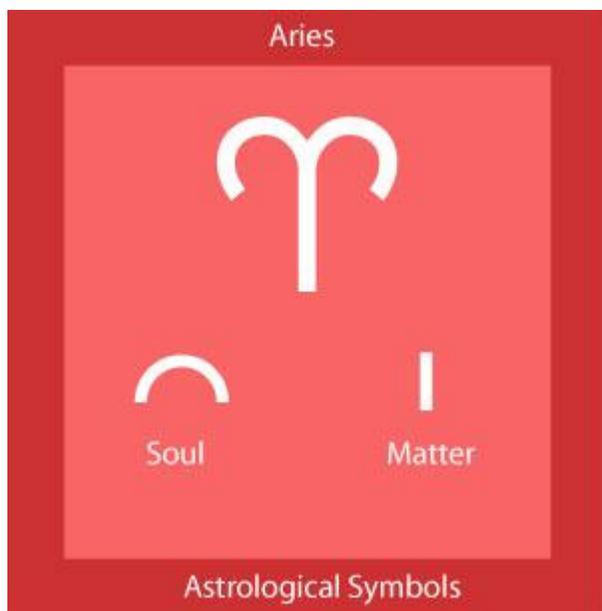
## Your Astrological Toolbox



### **The Signs**

The astrological glyphs or symbols tell a story entirely their own, and one worth hearing. Let's take the time to go through some of the main astrological symbols and examine some brief comments on them.

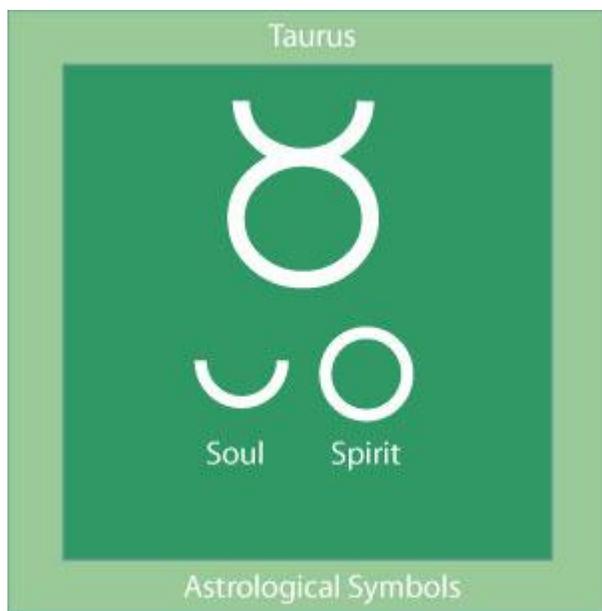
## Your Astrological Toolbox



### **Aries Symbol**

The crescent of soul, upside down, on a single shaft that can be seen either as a sprout arising or as a tool for digging or puncturing. It traditionally represents the horns of a Ram.

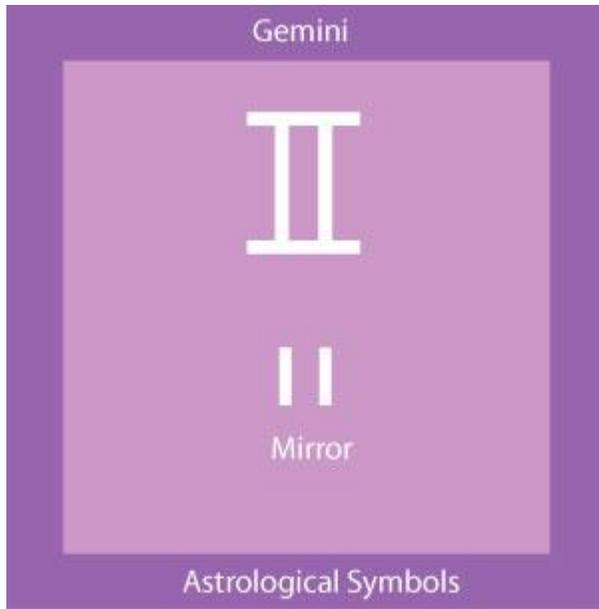
## Your Astrological Toolbox



### **Taurus Symbol**

The circle of spirit, with the crescent of soul on top open and receiving; perhaps it is supposed to look like a Bull, but it is the perfect sign for the most receptive Taurus.

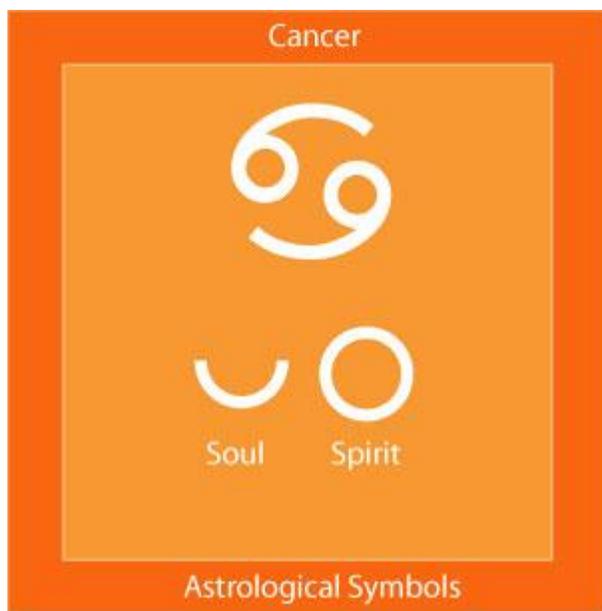
## Your Astrological Toolbox



### **Gemini Symbol**

Obviously this simply represents the number two—Twins—and a mirror-like image.

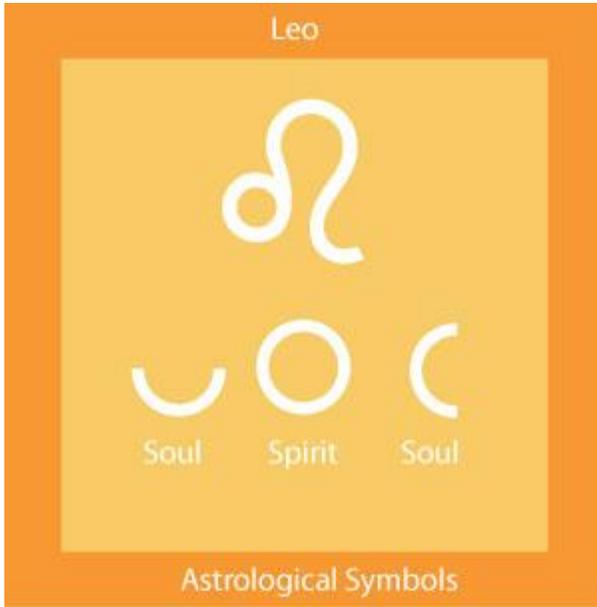
## Your Astrological Toolbox



### **Cancer Symbol**

The circle of spirit and the crescent of soul, doubled, and interfaced with one another. Yes...Cancer, the Crab, but aside from that—a very powerful symbol of being.

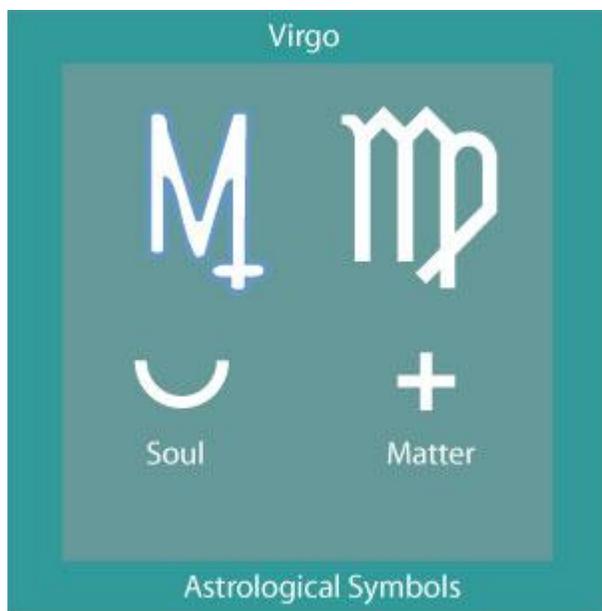
## Your Astrological Toolbox



### **Leo Symbol**

Here we have the circle of spirit, and with it, what we might call two forms of the crescent of soul; these are combined to create a form looking almost like something unfolding or unrolling.

## Your Astrological Toolbox



### **Virgo Symbol**

Mostly this symbol has variations of the cross of matter; with the V-like shape, however, there is an unusual form of the crescent of soul. Shown here are both the Greek form of the glyph (on the left) and later form of it (on the right).

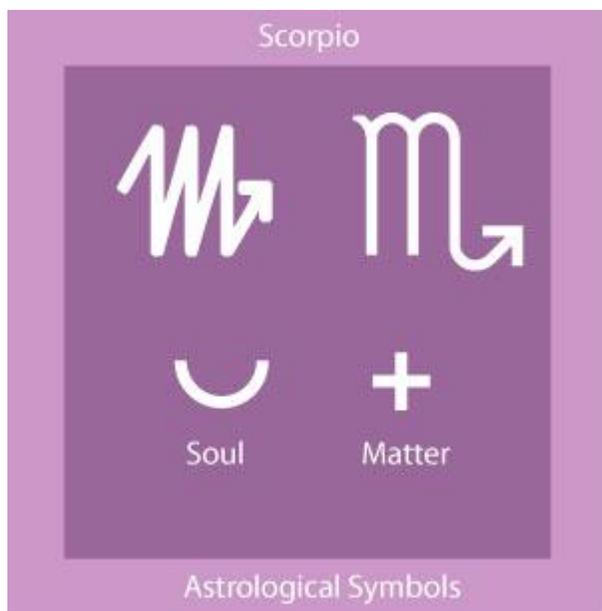
## Your Astrological Toolbox



### **Libra Symbol**

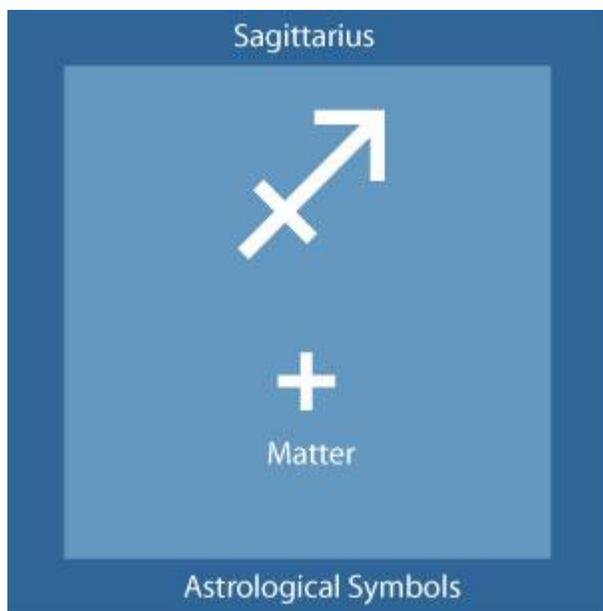
An odd symbol, obviously representing 'The Scales' traditionally associated with it, but also interesting in its combination of the circle of spirit with the crescent of soul—forming an almost closed circle; this part of the symbol is then placed above parallel horizontal lines—rather representing a separation from matter above and below.

## Your Astrological Toolbox



### **Scorpio Symbol**

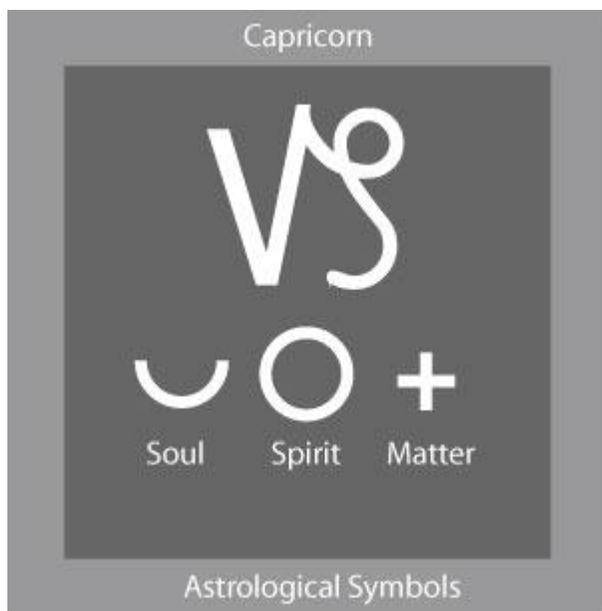
Shown here are a couple different forms of the Scorpio glyph, both of which show the cross of matter as very prominent and pointing upward, with an arrow tip, as in the Mars symbol. Perhaps we can see some kind of angular crescent of soul in the "M" shape. I tend to use the left glyph for my work, as I like the coiled and almost spring-like feeling of it: The Scorpion.



### **Sagittarius Symbol**

Here are two forms of the cross of matter, both sharing a real sense of direction. This is, of course, the Archer, but aside from that, directionality is the key here—getting to the point.

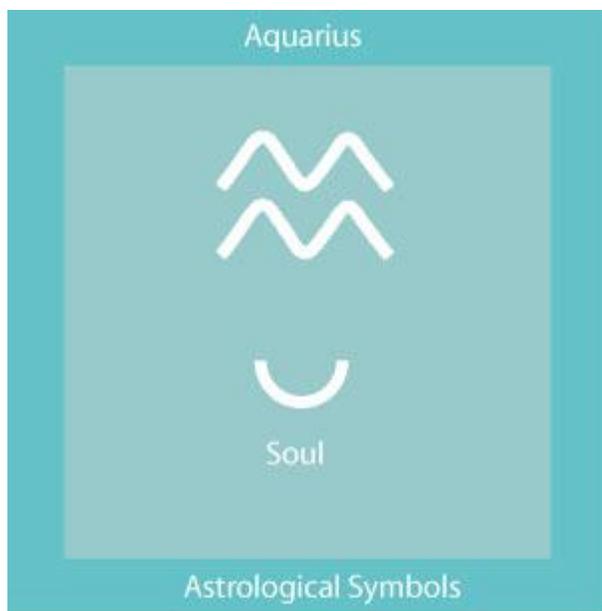
## Your Astrological Toolbox



### **Capricorn Symbol**

Capricorn is a strange combination of the crescent of soul with the cross of matter, along with a couple of 'crescent of soul' curves. It represents the Goat, but is a fascinating design in and of itself.

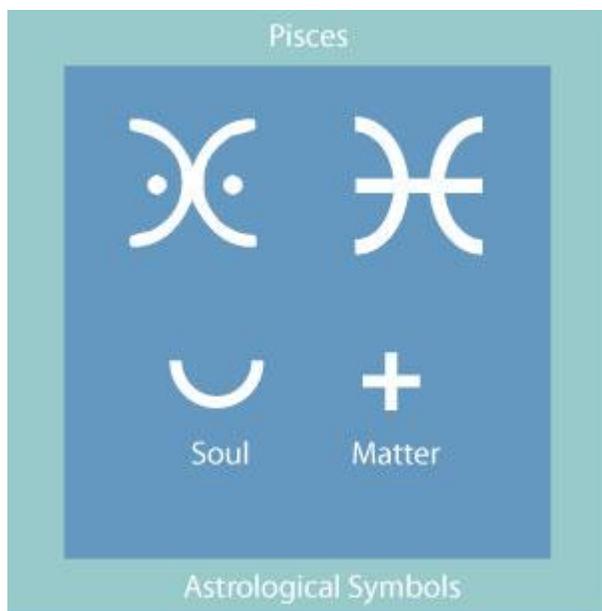
## Your Astrological Toolbox



### **Aquarius Symbol**

Here we have mostly variations on the crescent of soul, creating a sense of waves and water, which goes along with Aquarius, the Water Bearer.

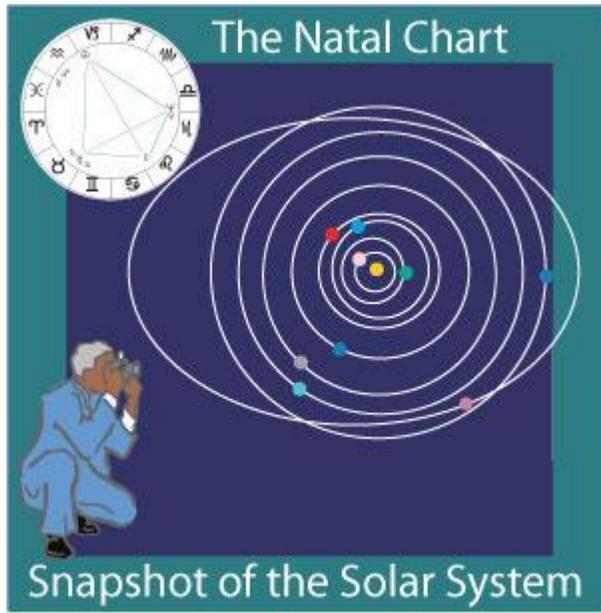
## Your Astrological Toolbox



### **Pisces Symbol**

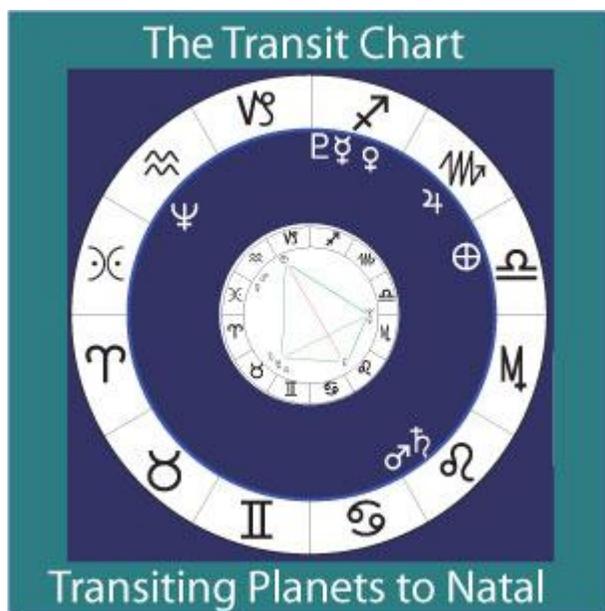
Here are two forms of Pisces, the Greek version on the left, and the more modern version on the right. Both have the crescent of soul clearly shown, and in duplicate. The cross of matter is only seen in the right-hand version. I use the Greek version, myself, because it actually does look like two Fish.

## ***Astronomy for Astrologers***



### **The Solar System**

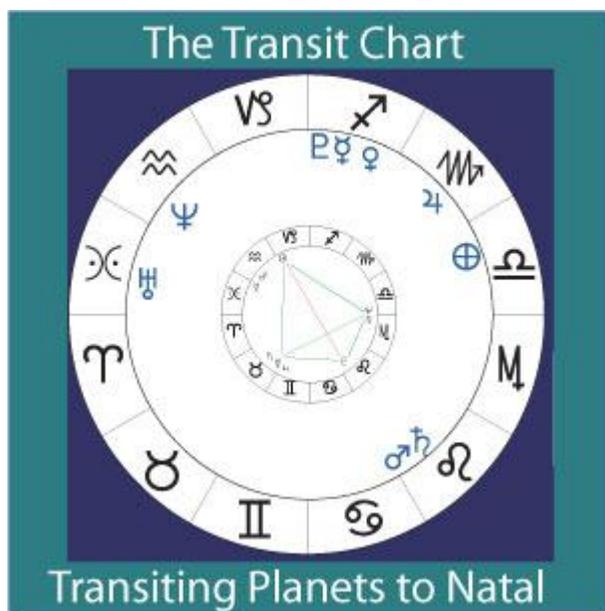
The astrology chart is a snapshot of the solar system at the moment of your birth, but the Sun, the Moon, and the planets don't stop moving. They are not frozen in time as is your birth chart. They continue moving in the heavens, day by day, and year by year. Today, as you read this, they are out there, somewhere, moving steadily ahead through space and time. Do they still affect us? How do they impact our natal chart? This is what we will cover in this section.



### The Natal Chart

At this point, you should now be familiar with your natal chart, whether the geocentric one or the heliocentric one does not matter. The natal chart is fixed in time—freeze-framed—a snapshot of the solar system at your birth. In the diagram above, we see my own helio natal chart in the center. Around it, on the outer band, are the planets right now, as of today, April 7<sup>th</sup>, 2006. The familiar band of the zodiac is shown on the outside, so that you will have some reference point.

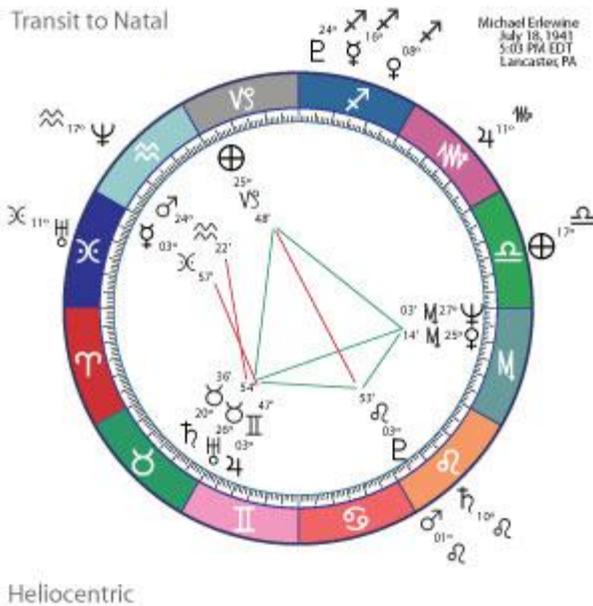
We can see my natal planets (chart center) and the transiting planets (outer band), as they are placed against the zodiac, for April 7<sup>th</sup>, 2006



### **Natal and Transit**

Here are both sets of planets placed in a single chart form, which is how astrologers like to look at transits and natal positions. This is called a bi-wheel chart form. The natal planets are in the center, the transiting planets (of the current day) are on the outside. For clarity's sake, I have not drawn in the degree, zodiac, sign or minutes for the Sun, Moon and Planets, or for the house cusps, but in a standard chart they would be present.

## Astronomy for Astrologers



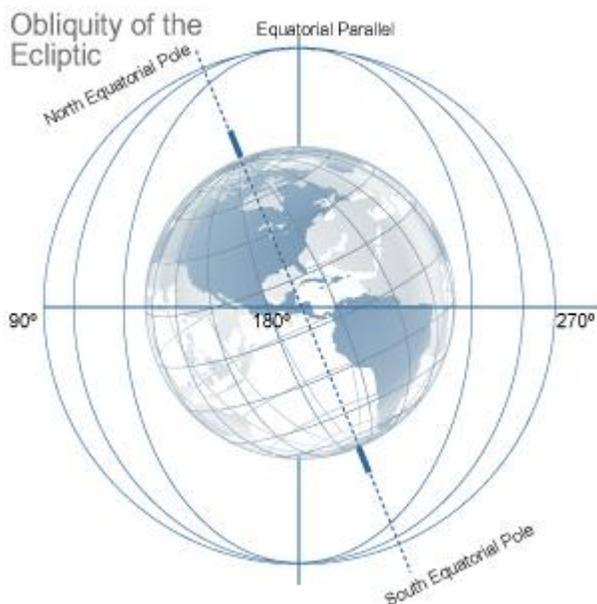
### The Bi-Wheel

Here is a typical bi-wheel chart, with the natal chart on the inside and the transiting planets on the outside. Here we are using the heliocentric natal chart of my birth as an example. Note that on the outer ring of transiting planets we have only drawn in the planet symbol, the sign the planet is in, and the degrees. We have left out the minutes, as they tend to clutter up the chart too much. This is the usual method of displaying transits—not showing the minutes.

As you can see by looking at any of the transiting planets (outer ring), you can note where they are today in relationship to the natal or birth chart. For example, we can see at a glance that transiting Mars is about to conjoin (make a conjunction aspect) with my natal Pluto. Or, we can note that transiting Neptune is forming a waning square with my natal Saturn. In fact, we could note all kinds of aspects. That is what a transit to natal

## Astronomy for Astrologers

bi-wheel chart is all about, letting us see how what is happening, today, affects our natal chart.



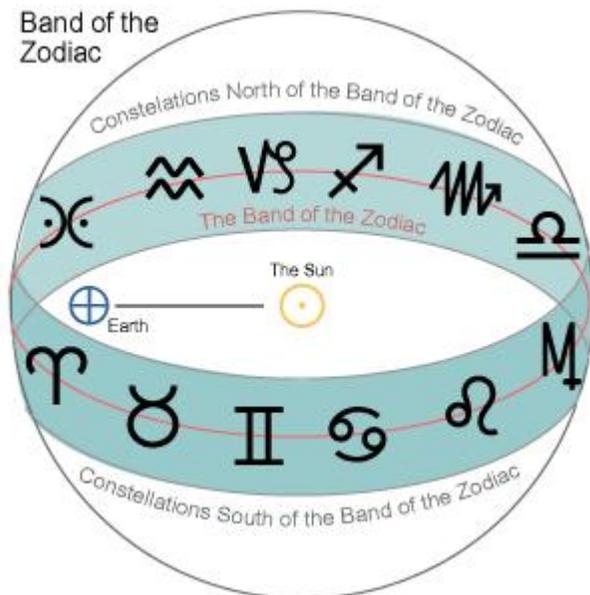
### The Obliquity of the Ecliptic

The angle between the ecliptic and equatorial systems, some 23.5 degrees, is called the Obliquity of the Ecliptic, and this angle creates the difference in perspective between the two systems. Let's go over some of the main points of difference between these two systems.

1. The celestial equator and the ecliptic plane intersect to form the two equinoxes and the equinoctial axis.
2. The Vernal Equinox, or 0° Aries node or point, is the ascending node of the ecliptic plane to the equatorial plane.
3. The Autumnal Equinox, or 0° Libra point, is the descending node of the ecliptic plane to the equatorial plane.

## Astronomy for Astrologers

4. These points and these two coordinate systems are FIXED in space.
5. AT ANY MOMENT and AT ANY PLACE in the Earth's orbit, the ZERO° Aries point is ALWAYS in the same direction—and at an infinite distance.
6. The measurement of longitude along the ecliptic or the equator is only identical at the four Cardinal points, which is, at the two equinoctial and the two solstitial points.
7. At any of the other points, there is a difference between a degree of longitude as measured along the ecliptic and the same degree as measured along the equator.
8. Each system is simply tilted at an angle, one to the other.

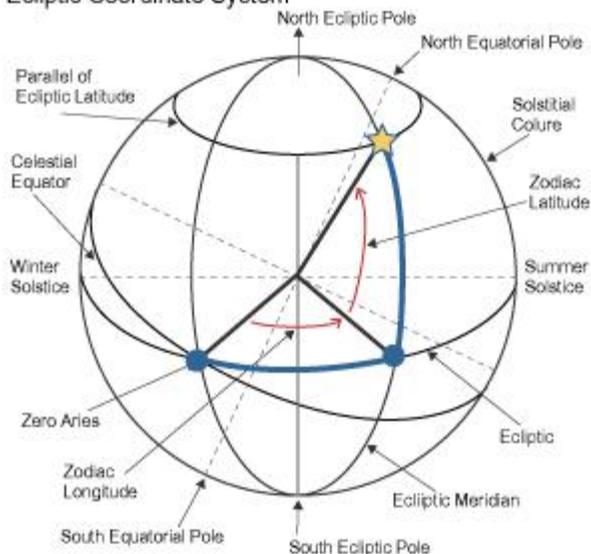


## The Band of the Zodiac

In fact, this great plane divides the entire universe in two sections or hemispheres, one containing the constellations of stars above (north) of the zodiac plane and the other containing the constellations of stars below (south) of this plane. The ecliptic plane is also commonly divided into twelve equal  $30^\circ$  sections—called the signs of the zodiac. We will ignore, for now, the argument as to whether the 12 signs of the zodiac fit the star constellations bearing their names. Of the 89 common constellations, these 12 zodiac signs have received much more attention than the remaining 77 or so other constellations that are scattered about—both above and below the ecliptic plane.

## Astronomy for Astrologers

### Ecliptic Coordinate System



### Ecliptic Coordinate System

**Ecliptic Coordinates** - In this system, the ecliptic, or plane through the Earth's orbit, is taken as the plane of reference. The co-ordinates used are **Celestial Latitude** (the perpendicular distance of the object from the ecliptic in angular measurement) and **Celestial Longitude** (the angular distance along the ecliptic—between the plane, through the object and the First Point of Aries). The **Solstitial Colure** is the great circle which passes through the summer and winter solstices (the hour circle of R.A.  $90^\circ$  and  $270^\circ$ ).

**Ecliptic Sphere** - Also called the **Zodiac Sphere**, this is the sphere resulting from projecting the plane of the Earth's orbit, and the points (its poles)  $90^\circ$  north and south of that plane.

**Ecliptic Plane** - The ecliptic is a plane that passes through the centers of the Earth and the Sun. It

## Astronomy for Astrologers

represents the path the Sun's center takes each year on the celestial sphere, as seen from the Earth, or the Earth's path around the Sun, as seen from the Sun.

North Ecliptic Pole – Is the point on the ecliptic sphere that is 90 degrees from the plane of the ecliptic to the North—or 'above' it.

NEP -- North Ecliptic Pole

South Ecliptic Pole – Is the point on the ecliptic sphere that is 90 degrees from the plane of the ecliptic to the South, or 'below' it.

SEP - South Ecliptic Pole

Obliquity of the Ecliptic – Is the  $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  angle ( $23^{\circ}27'$ ) that represents the inclination of the ecliptic to the celestial equator. This also marks the maximum angular distance that the Sun can reach, north or south of the celestial equator, at the time of the solstices.

Celestial Latitude (Ecliptic Latitude) - The angular distance of any object measured, north or south of the plane of the ecliptic to the poles, from  $0^{\circ}$  to  $90^{\circ}$ .

Celestial Longitude (Ecliptic Longitude) - The angular distance of any object as measured from zero Aries to a plane through an object.

Zodiac - From a Greek word meaning the 'circle of animals'. It is a belt about  $18^{\circ}$  wide ( $9^{\circ}$  above and  $9^{\circ}$  below the plane of the ecliptic) within which the planets travel. This circle is divided into 12 equal  $30^{\circ}$  sections, containing the signs of the zodiac: Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Leo, Virgo, Libra, Scorpio, Sagittarius, Capricorn, Aquarius, and Pisces. At one point (over 2000 years ago), the signs of the zodiac corresponded with the constellations of the same name; however, due to precession, the signs have drifted westward

## Astronomy for Astrologers

(backward), until today, they are almost an entire sign (30°) off.

**Solstices** – Are the longest and shortest days of the year, times when the Sun reaches its greatest angular distance from the equator. The longest day is the summer solstice (around June 21), and the shortest day is the winter solstice (around December 22). These two are reversed in the southern hemisphere.

**Solstice Points** – Are the instances when the Sun is at either the summer or the winter solstice.

**Equinoxes (Spring and Fall)** - These are the instances when Sun crosses the celestial equator at either its ascending node (Spring Equinox, about March 21) or at its descending node (Fall Equinox, September 23). At the Spring Equinox the Sun moves north of the ecliptic plane, while at the fall Equinox it moves from north to south.

**Spring Equinox (Vernal Equinox)**

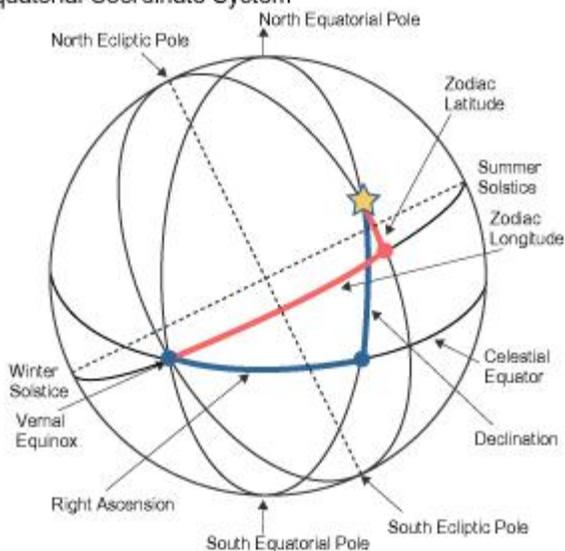
**Fall Equinox (Autumnal Equinox)**

**Zero Aries** - The intersection of the celestial equator and the ecliptic. This point undergoes a very slow backward movement.

**Colures** - There are two, the equinoctial colure and the solstitial colure. The equinoctial colure is the hour circle that passes through the vernal and autumnal equinoctial points (RA 0h and 12 h). The solstitial colure is the hour circle that passes through the summer and winter solstices (0° points of the tropical zodiac signs Cancer and Capricorn at RA 6h and 18h).

## Astronomy for Astrologers

### Equatorial Coordinate System



### Equatorial Coordinates

Equatorial Coordinates - In this system, the Earth's Equator is the plane of reference. The poles are at the intersection of the Earth's pole and the pole of the celestial sphere, an imaginary surface, at an infinite distance, with the Earth as its center. This is true for all points on the Earth—latitude and longitude both. The poles are the North Celestial Pole (NCP) and South Celestial Pole (SCP). The circle at the intersection of the plane of the Earth's equator and the celestial sphere is the Celestial Equator.

The great circle through the celestial poles and an object (such as a star) is the object's Hour Circle and the great circle which passes through the celestial poles and the zenith is the Meridian Circle. The coordinates in this system are given by Declination (angle between the celestial equator and the object) and the Right Ascension (angle measured from an arbitrary reference

## Astronomy for Astrologers

direction - the Vernal Equinox - to the object's hour circle). In Figure C, the darker lines express the position of a star (S) in both ecliptic and equatorial coordinates.

Equatorial Sphere - Also called the Celestial Sphere, this is the sphere resulting from projecting the Earth infinitely into space; it is defined by the celestial equator, and the north and south celestial poles.

Celestial Poles - These are directly overhead the Earth's geographic poles and are the poles of rotation of the celestial sphere of right ascension and declination.

NCP - North Celestial Pole

SCP - South Celestial Pole

Celestial Equator - A great circle projected from the Earth's equator into the heavens—an infinite projection. The celestial equator has, as its poles, the celestial poles, and all points on the celestial equator are equidistant from these two poles. As the Earth's equator rotates each day, it exposes each city on the equator to every degree of the celestial equator.

Equinoctial - Another term for the celestial equator.

Celestial Sphere - An infinite extension of the sphere of the Earth in space.

Hour Circles - Hour circles are great circles passing through any celestial object and through the celestial poles. All hour circles are at right angles to the celestial equator.

R.A. - (See Right Ascension)

Right Ascension (R.A.) - The angle between an hour circle passing through an object and the meridian plane—in the case of equatorial coordinates, zero degrees of Aries. R.A. is measured eastward on the celestial equator from what is called the True Equinox,

## Astronomy for Astrologers

to the body in question. R.A. is expressed in either degrees ( $0^{\circ}$  to  $360^{\circ}$ ) or in Hours-Minutes-Seconds (0h to 24h).

Declination - The angular distance of any object measured north or south of the plane of the celestial equator, from  $0^{\circ}$  to  $90^{\circ}$ .

Declination Circle - Parallel circles of declination, either north or south of the plane of the celestial equator.

Parallel of Declination -- Parallel circles of declination, either north or south of the plane of the celestial equator.

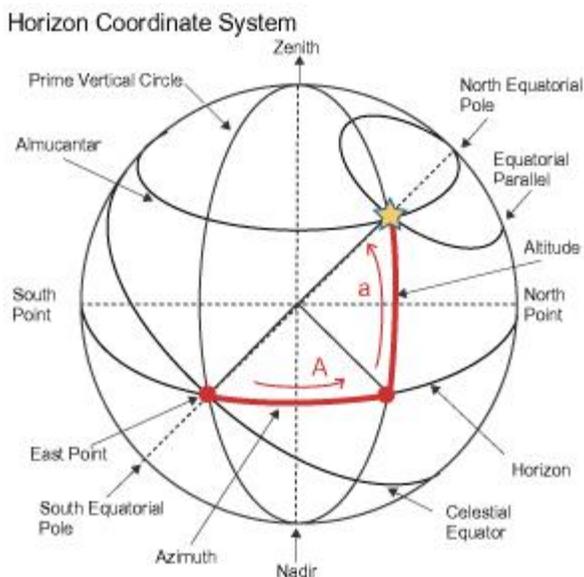
Equatorial Plane – Is the infinite extension of the equator of the Earth, in all directions.

Meridian – Is a great circle on the celestial sphere, which goes through the celestial poles, the zenith of any place or locale, and the north and south points on the horizon.

Prime Meridian - The point of zero longitude measurement for any celestial body. In the case of the Earth, the prime meridian is considered to be, Greenwich, England.

Transit - The passage of a celestial object across a particular meridian.

## Astronomy for Astrologers



### Horizon Coordinate System

In this system, a plane through the observing point, parallel to the horizon, is the plane of reference. The poles are the Zenith (point overhead) and the Nadir (point underfoot). The vertical circle through a celestial object (such as a star) and the zenith is the Object Circle. The coordinates are given (for the object) by Azimuth (horizontal angle measured from an arbitrary reference direction—East in our case—counterclockwise to the object circle), and Altitude (elevation angle measured upward from the horizon to the object). The great circle through the north and south points and the zenith is the Meridian, and the great circle through the east and west points and the zenith is the Prime Vertical. Circles of parallel altitude to the horizon that are not great circles are called Almucantars.

## Astronomy for Astrologers

Horizon Sphere - A heavenly sphere based on the plane of the observer's local horizon ( $90^\circ$  from both the zenith and the nadir) but taken from the center of the Earth.

Zenith - The zenith is the point directly overhead any spot on Earth.

Nadir -- The nadir is the point directly beneath (opposite the zenith) any spot on Earth.

Altitude - The angular distance of any body above or below the plane of the local horizon. Altitude is measured from  $0^\circ$  to  $90^\circ$  from the plane of the horizon to either pole.

Azimuth - The angle measured around the  $360^\circ$  circumference of the horizon, either east or west (there are different practices). The azimuth of an object as measured from the meridian plane of the observer and a vertical plane through any body.

Prime Vertical - A great circle passing through the zenith (the North Pole) and the nadir (the South Pole), and the east and west points on the horizon.

Altitude Circles - Parallel circles of altitude, whether north or south of the plane of the horizon.

Almuncantar - Parallel circles of altitude, whether north or south of the plane of the horizon.

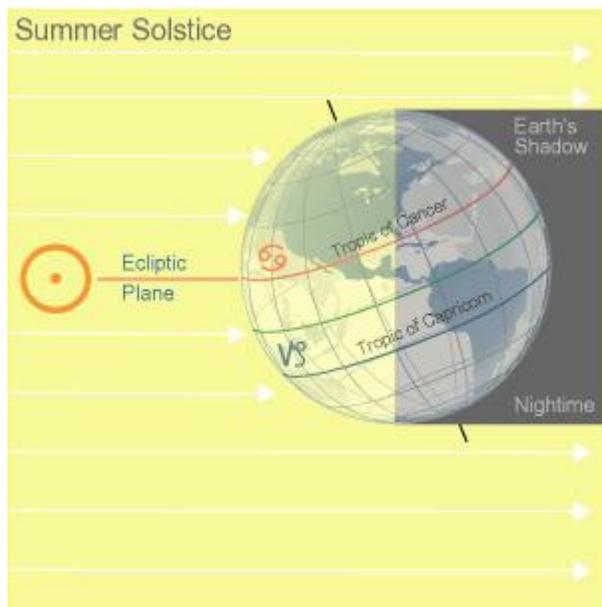
North Point – Is a point on the horizon, to the north of the observer, where the meridian plane intersects the horizon.

South Point – Is a point on the horizon, to the south of the observer, where the meridian plane intersects the horizon.

East Point - A point on the horizon, to the east of the observer, where the prime vertical plane intersects the horizon.

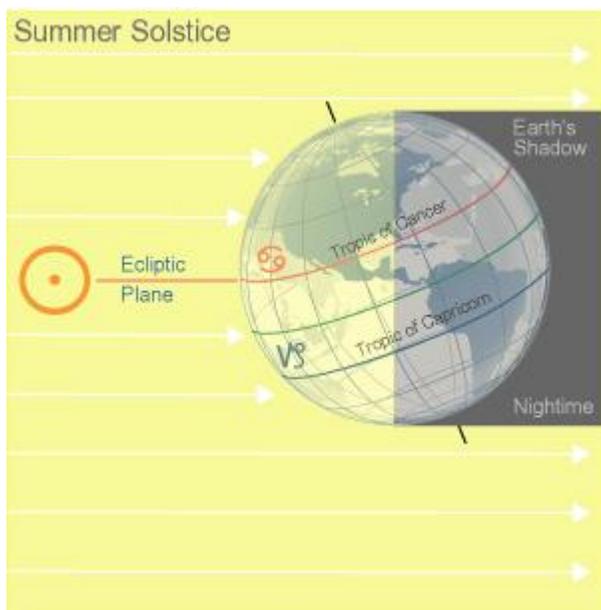
## Astronomy for Astrologers

West Point - A point on the horizon, to the west of the observer, where the prime vertical plane intersects the horizon.



### **Astronomy of Astrology: The Earth's Tilt**

The Earth moves, in the plane of the ecliptic, around the Sun center. The diagram shows the earth at the moment of the summer and winter solstices—at the two equinoxes. You will notice that the Earth does not 'sit-up-straight' in its own orbit. The polar axis (the line of the North and South Poles) is forever tilted away from the plane of the Earth's orbit. This 'tilt' or angle is the whole of the difference between the ecliptic (zodiac) system of coordinates and the equatorial system. If the Earth were not tilted, the two systems would be identical. As it is, there is a difference between longitudes measured along the ecliptic and longitudes measured along the equator in right ascension.



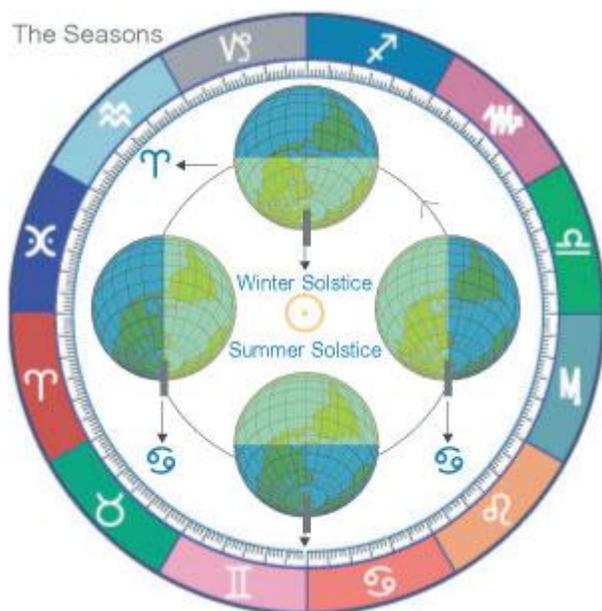
### The Tropics of Cancer and Capricorn

The diagram on this page should help you see the difference between these two systems. Be sure you can understand the following statements:

1. The Earth always stays in the plane of the ecliptic.
2. The North Pole of the Earth is tilted toward the plane of the ecliptic, by an angle of  $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  in the direction of zero-degrees Cancer.
3. This polar tilt is permanent, although it changes somewhat over a long period of time.
4. As the Earth moves around the Sun, the North Pole always points in the same direction.
5. That direction amounts to the zero-degrees of the zodiac sign Cancer.
6. The North Pole of the Earth is tilted at a  $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  angle toward  $0^{\circ}$  of Cancer (tropical zodiac).

## Astronomy for Astrologers

7. In fact, the direction of 0° Cancer is defined by the direction toward which the North Pole is tilted in the Tropical zodiac.



### The Earth's Tilt

The important idea so far is that the axis of the Earth is frozen or fixed in space, no matter where the Earth happens to be in its orbit around the Sun. Here are some other facts to consider in relation to these same diagrams:

1. The seasons result from the 'tilt' of the North Pole into or toward the Sun.
2. At the moment of the summer solstice, the North Pole is tilted most toward the Sun and therefore is aligned with a vertical light ray coming from the Sun.

## Astronomy for Astrologers

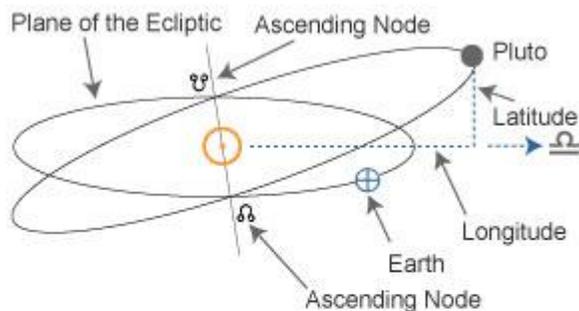
3. The polar axis of the Earth is in line with a vertical light ray from the Sun only twice a year—at the summer solstice and at the winter solstice.

4. At the equinoctial points (occurring in the Spring and Fall) the polar axis of the Earth is at right-angles, or 'square', to a vertical light ray coming from the Sun.

5. At all other times of the year—times besides those marked by these four cardinal points—the angle between the polar axis of the Earth and a vertical light ray coming from the Sun will be somewhere between  $0^\circ$  and  $90^\circ$ . This angle gradually and constantly changes through all time.

## Astronomy for Astrologers

### Planetary Longitude and Latitude



### Planetary Longitude (from above)



## Planet Longitude and Latitude

Examine the diagram until you understand the following:

1. The plane of the ecliptic (the orbital plane of Earth) is different from the orbital plane of, for example, Pluto.
2. However, both planes pass through the Sun center.
3. While the orbits of two planets are, in distance, larger and smaller, the planes of the orbits ignore this distance factor and are considered as "infinite."
4. These planes are inclined one to another by an angle or inclination. This is shown, here, by the plane of the earth's orbit (horizontal) and the plane of Pluto's orbit, which is inclined or tilted at an angle to it.
5. The orbital plane of Pluto intersects the orbital plane of the Earth (ecliptic) at two points, called the 'nodes'.

## Astronomy for Astrologers

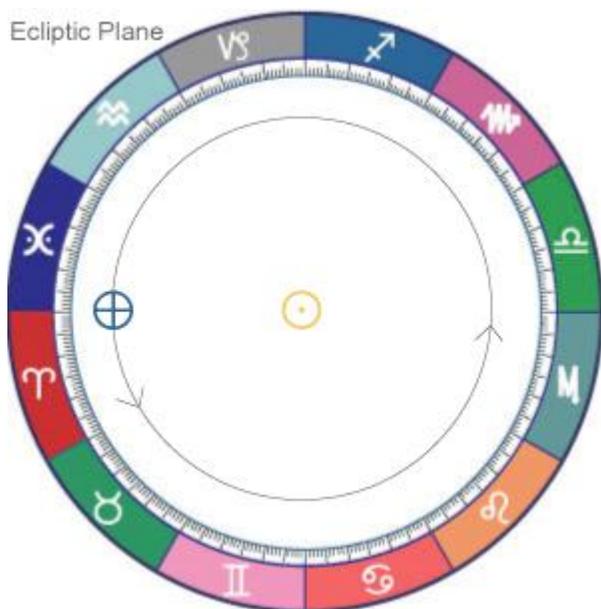
6. The north or ascending node refers to that zodiac point where Pluto passes from under to above the plane of the ecliptic, while the south or descending node refers to where Pluto passes through the zodiac plane from above (ecliptic north) to below (ecliptic south).

7. The diagram shows Pluto and Earth at different points in their orbit. If Earth were also at the point where Pluto is (horizontal dotted line), then this would be a conjunction of the Earth and Pluto, an alignment of the Earth, Pluto, and the Sun center in zodiac longitude, although not necessarily in zodiac latitude. How might a conjunction in both longitude and latitude take place? The answer is, if both the Earth and Pluto were at one of their nodes. At that point, there would be no latitude for Pluto.

8. Be sure to note that most astrologer's charts ignore the latitude factor in planetary positions, and just list the longitude...

## From the Sky to the Chart Form: Part 1

Our astrological 360° chart form (open style chart wheel), represents the plane of the zodiac along which our Earth moves in the course of a year. In addition, the fact that almost all of the planets move in planes that are almost (but not quite) identical or coincident with our ecliptic, gives the zodiac plane even greater importance than it would otherwise have. In fact, most astrologers use only the zodiac longitude of a planet's position on the plane of the zodiac and ignore the latitude—the elevation of a planet either above or below the ecliptic plane.



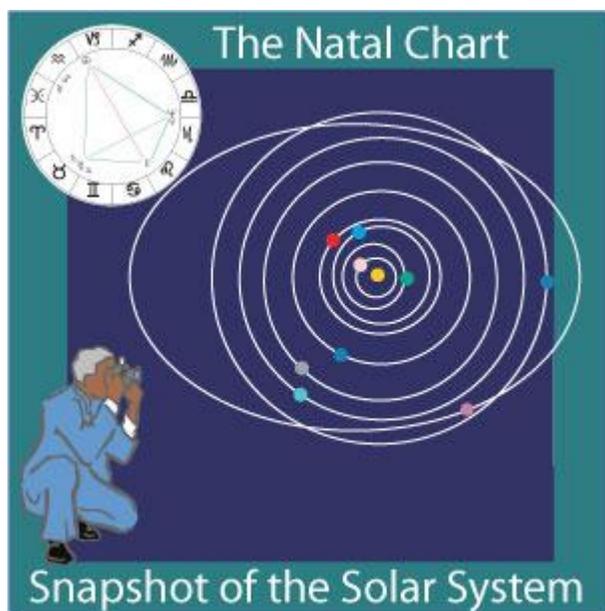
Here you can see the "band of the zodiac."

## Astronomy for Astrologers

### Projecting the Zodiac Onto A Chart Wheel



This diagram shows how the ecliptic sphere is projected on the paper chart form used by astrologers.

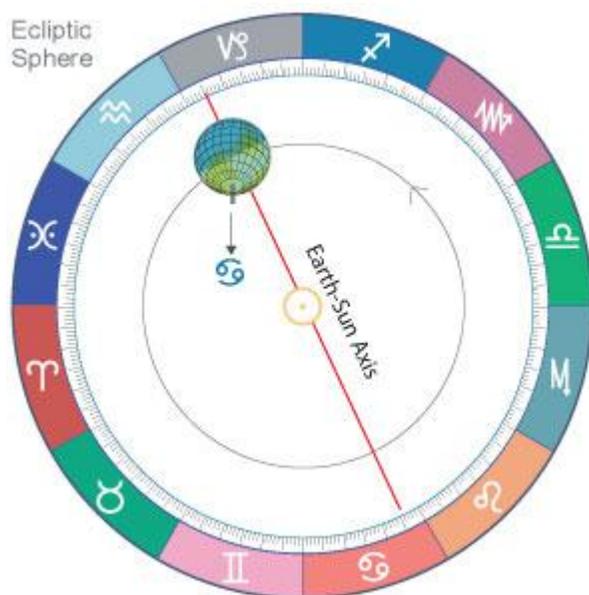
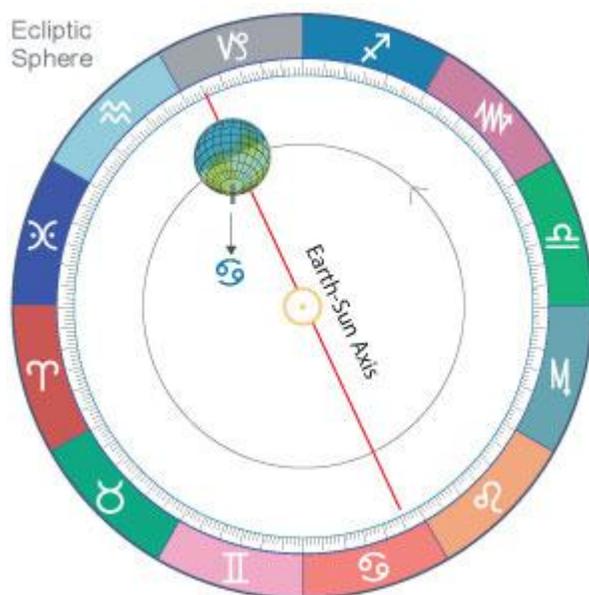


### **Snapshots of Earth at a Birth**

Although many students of astrology are only aware of the zodiac sphere and the zodiac coordinates (longitude and latitude), there are actually three separate sphere/coordinate systems that make up a birth chart. These are the Ecliptic (zodiac) Sphere, the Celestial Sphere (equatorial), and the Horizon Sphere (azimuth and altitude). Each is oriented differently in space, so it is worthwhile to take the time to understand them.

Much of this will be clear through study on your part. I have found that it is very difficult to explain these different coordinate systems in words. Illustrations help a lot, and drawing out your own horizon helps most of all. I apologize for the awkwardness of this short presentation. I can imagine a small book devoted solely to a careful presentation of these three coordinate systems.

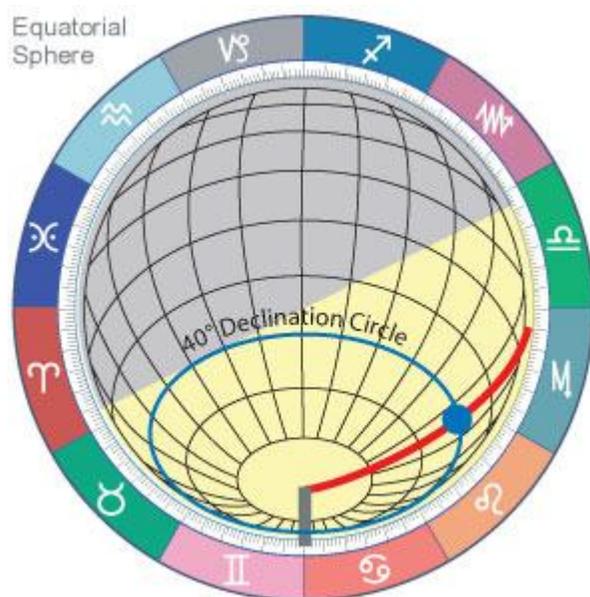
## Astronomy for Astrologers



### **Ecliptic Sphere**

Let us review these systems once again. We will examine some diagrams that represent the systems at work in a natal chart. Be sure you understand each of the following statements:

1. The birth day in this chart is July 18, and the Earth is at  $295^\circ$ , or  $25^\circ$  Capricorn along the plane of the ecliptic.
2. The Sun in this natal chart is at  $25^\circ$  Cancer, or  $115^\circ$  of Absolute Longitude. The Sun and Earth are always opposite each other, so if I am a Cancer Sun, this means that the earth was actually in Capricorn on that day. This is clear from the diagram.
3. It is summer in the Northern Hemisphere, since the Arctic Circle is exposed to the Sun. Notice the North Pole is facing the Sun, pointing at zero-degrees of Cancer.
4. Half of Earth is in darkness, half in light.
5. Noon is that point on the Earth in line with the Earth/Sun axis—the red line.
6. The time of birth is in the later afternoon.



### The Celestial/Equatorial Sphere

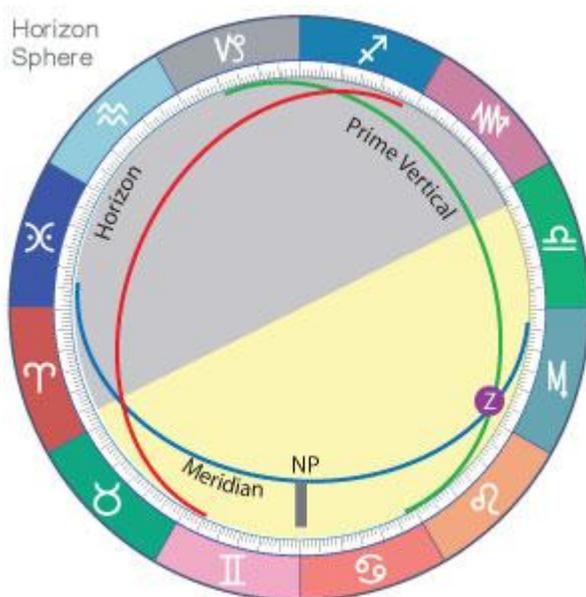
This diagram represents the Earth and/or the celestial sphere. The zodiac or ecliptic is surrounding the Earth, and the North Pole is tilted toward the solstice point. Then:

1. A late afternoon birth puts the birthplace to the right of the Earth/Sun line and toward the twilight region of the globe.
2. The birth geographic latitude is 40°.
3. A line from the North Geographic Pole (or celestial pole) through the birthplace and on to the South Pole represents the RAMC (Right Ascension of the Midheaven) for this birth.
4. The point where it cuts or intersects the zodiac is the M.C. (25° Virgo).

## Astronomy for Astrologers

The earth is floating in space, in the plane of its orbit (of course), with its pole tilted toward zero-degrees of the zodiac sign Cancer. It rotates (in this diagram) in a counter-clockwise motion. Therefore, the birth place (blue dot here), is turning into or toward the dark half of the earth, which is night. The latitude (both geographically and celestially) is 40-degrees north—this is marked on the diagram by the blue oval.

## Astronomy for Astrologers



### The Horizon Sphere

This diagram shows the third (and final) coordinate system that makes up a birth chart, in this case, the local horizon measured in Altitude and Azimuth. Here we are looking at the exact spot on the earth where the birth took place, using the most local coordinates.

Please note:

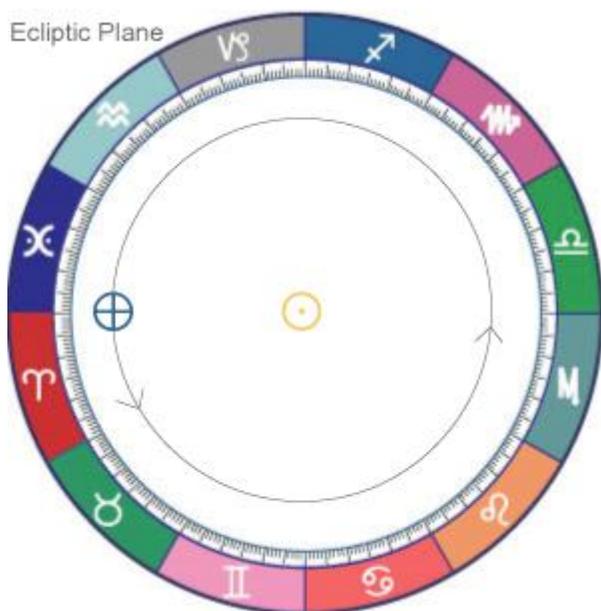
1. The Zenith (Z), which is the point directly above the birth place, extends out above the birthplace (purple dot).
2. The plane of the horizon is  $90^\circ$  from the zenith. This is shown by the red semi-arc in the diagram, extending from the ascendant (top) to the descendant (bottom).
3. The intersection, of the horizon to the zodiac, at  $8^\circ$  of Sagittarius and Gemini, marks the ascendant and descendant axis. The ascendant is where the local horizon intersects the zodiac.

## Astronomy for Astrologers

4. The horizon system is oriented or tilted toward about  $8^\circ$  Virgo. This point is called the Nonagesimal, a point on the ecliptic  $\pm 90^\circ$  from the ascendant/descendant axis and near the zenith.

5. The Prime Vertical (East-West plane) intersects the ecliptic to form the vertex and anti-vertex. This would be about 23-degrees of the sign Cancer.

6. The North Pole (NP) is shown, which is the same on both the geographic globe and on the Celestial Sphere.



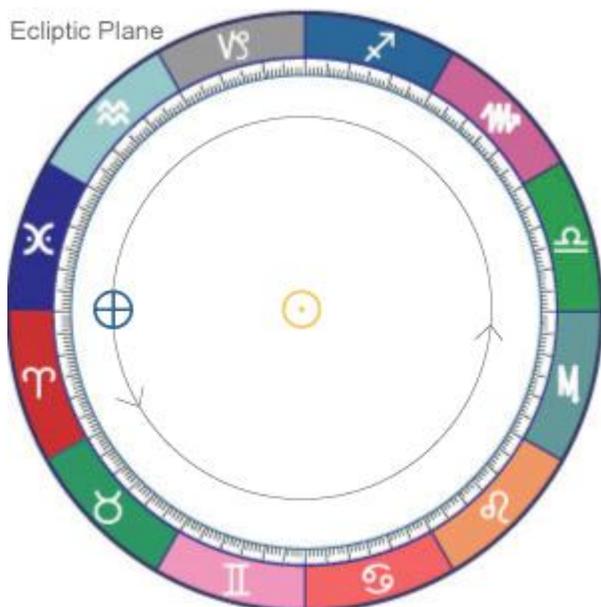
### The Tropical Zodiac or Ecliptic

The term 'ecliptic' is the astronomical word for what astrologers call the plane of the zodiac. Although, as astrologers, we all use the zodiac or ecliptic in our work, let us review just what, in fact, it is.

The Ecliptic, or zodiac, is the plane of the Earth's orbit, and, like a vast sheet of glass, it can be considered to extend infinitely in all directions. In other words, the

## Astronomy for Astrologers

360° orbit of the Earth around the Sun describes a plane that passes through the center of the Earth and through the Sun. By definition, our Earth moves only within this thin plane, in its endless orbit around the Sun. In the diagram, the Earth revolves in a counter-clockwise direction (as seen from looking down from the north pole of the ecliptic).



### Tropical Zodiac

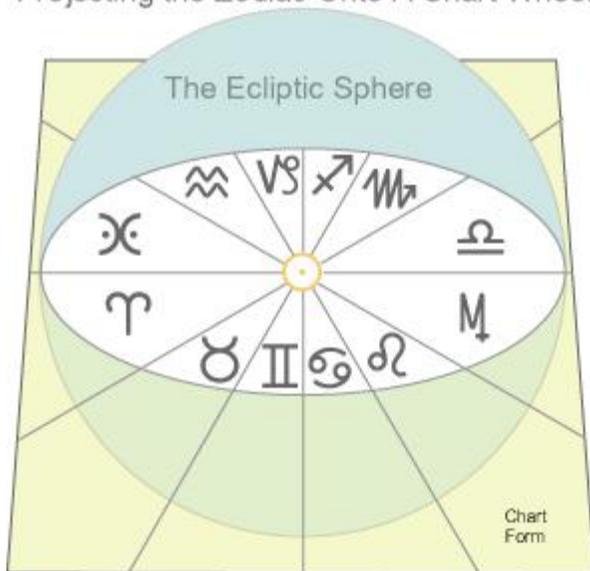
#### The Ecliptic Plane

Let's examine what the zodiac or ecliptic coordinate system is and how we use it in our work. All reference coordinate systems (such as the ecliptic) must have a center. For what we are talking of here, that center will be either the Earth or the Sun. We use the Earth as a center for traditional geocentric (Earth-centered) astrology and the Sun as the center for heliocentric (Sun-centered) astrology. As far as the zodiac is

concerned, there is no difference between these centers because of the infinite distance the zodiac is considered to extend. In other words, the geocentric and heliocentric zodiacs are the same, because the zodiac is considered to extend an infinite distance from both. The differences between geo and helio planetary positions are due to differing perspectives—how the Sun and planets are seen, whether they are seen from the Earth or from the Sun—and not due to differing zodiacs. Since every center for a coordinate system is surrounded by 360 equal degrees of space in any direction, we must have a plane to which all objects, stars, planets, etc. may be referred—a reference plane. Every coordinate system must have a plane of reference which passes through the center of its system, and which divides all space into two equal halves or hemispheres.

We have mentioned, when speaking of the zodiac, that it is the plane of the Earth's orbit that is used as the fundamental reference plane for the ecliptic system of coordinates. We may specify the position of all objects as either above (north) or below (south) of this plane by a number of degrees of arc ranging from  $0^\circ$  (the plane itself) to  $90^\circ$  either above or below this plane—the north and south poles of the ecliptic. We must also choose (and this is the most arbitrary factor) a point or direction in space (somewhere along the plane itself) from which to measure longitude of arc from  $0^\circ$  to  $360^\circ$ —the zodiac longitude. In the tropical ecliptic system used by most Western astrologers, this point is the zero-degrees Aries point, or the Vernal Equinox (to be explained elsewhere).

## Projecting the Zodiac Onto A Chart Wheel



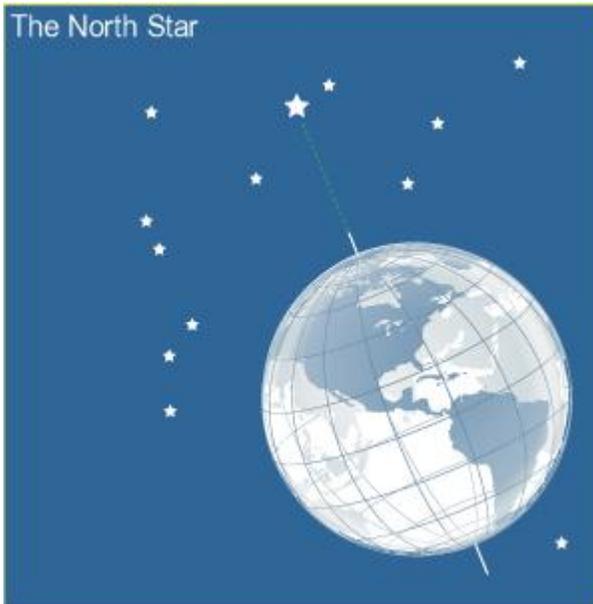
### The Ecliptic Sphere

Be sure to gain a sense of what a system of coordinates is and how such a system is defined. All coordinate systems will have a center, a plane of reference (i.e. a North and South Pole), and a point along the plane from which to measure the longitude factor. The latitude factor is measured above and below the reference plane.

There are many useful coordinate systems in astrological work besides the zodiac, or ecliptic, one. The two other outstanding systems that must be understood, for competent astrological considerations, are the Equatorial System of right ascension and declination and the Horizon System of azimuth and altitude. Yet other systems include the Galactic System, Super Galactic System and the Local System (the system of near stars, of which our Sun is one member); all this, in addition to the various orbital planes of

## Astronomy for Astrologers

planets other than Earth, each of which has its own "ecliptic" based on the inclination of its particular orbital plane. Still other systems exist, based on the equatorial inclination of the planets, the equator of the Sun, and the Invariable Plane of the solar system. It can get complex.



### **The North Star**

The earth is endlessly revolving, exposing us, wherever we are, to the entire circle of the heavens. At night we can see the stars, planets, and constellations as they change every few hours or so; there are, however, two places in the heavens that do not change, and that is the part of the heavens directly above and below the north and south geographic poles, respectively. Everything revolves around those two points.

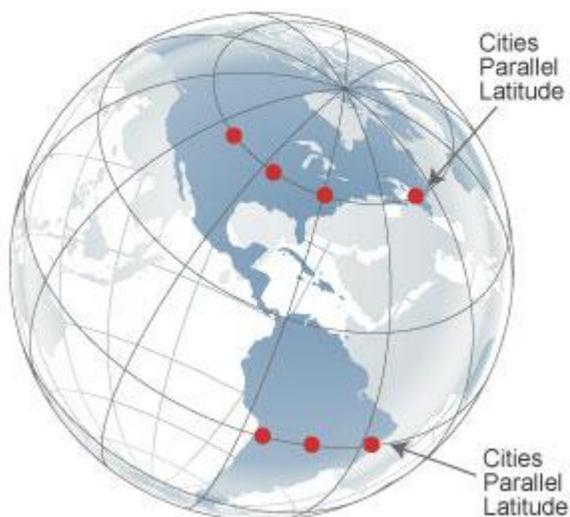
In the Northern Hemisphere there happens to be a star right above the North Pole, and this is called (obviously) the Pole Star. It is also called the North Star. This star

## Astronomy for Astrologers

has been used—forever—as a guide star for travelers and seamen, because it is the one celestial object in the Northern Hemisphere that is always there. It does not change.

### Geographic and Celestial Latitude

Parallels of Latitude - Geographic/Celestial



### Latitude

#### Circles of Latitude

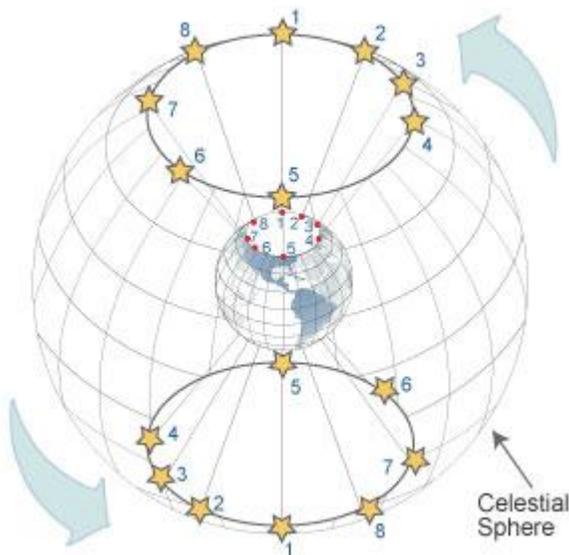
Each place and city on Earth is located at a specific latitude somewhere between the equator and the North and South poles. Ann Arbor, Michigan, where I used to

## Astronomy for Astrologers

live, is located at some  $42^\circ$  latitude north of the equator. In fact, there is a circle of cities at  $42^\circ$  latitude that stretch across the U.S.A. and on around the Earth. Thus, there are many cities on the globe also located at  $42^\circ$  north geographic latitude.

Now, an interesting fact about the relation between geographic latitude and declination in the equatorial sphere is that there exists a circle of stars on the celestial sphere located at a declination that matches the geographic latitude of your home. This circle of declination and the stars at  $42^\circ$  of declination are the only stars that ever pass directly (by zenith transit) overhead your town. Thus, each parallel of geographic latitude on the Earth has a matching parallel of declination on the celestial sphere. The diagram below illustrates this fact.

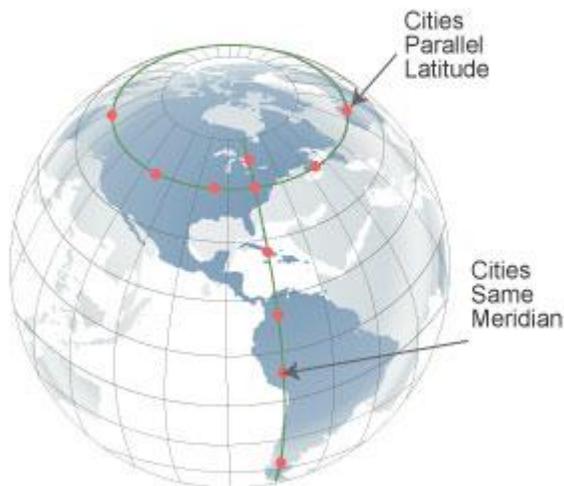
Northern and Southern Declination



## North and South Circles

Ann Arbor is located at point '5' on the rotating Earth. Star 'a' is directly overhead at what is called the zenith. As the Earth turns, it will carry Ann Arbor to point '6', '7', and on around in a circle until point '5' is reached once again. There is also another circle of stars that pass exactly under Ann Arbor on the far side of the Earth, each day. This circle would be those stars located at a declination circle of  $-42^\circ$  (42 degrees south declination). Every city on Earth could be described in terms of the kind of stars and other objects that make up the declination circles that equal the circle of geographic latitude at which they are located.

### Parallels of Latitude - Geographic/Celestial



## Cities on the Same Meridian

What we have done for the declination factor on the celestial sphere we can also do for the right ascension or longitude equivalent in this coordinate system. Right

## Astronomy for Astrologers

ascension is similar to zodiac longitude in that it is measured from  $0^\circ$  to  $360^\circ$ , but it is measured along the equator and not along the ecliptic or zodiac. We shall return to the difference between these two systems later on. Right now, we will investigate the relationship between right ascension and the geographic meridian that runs from the North Pole on the Earth, through your birthplace, and on to the South Pole.

## Astronomy for Astrologers

### Parallels of Latitude - Geographic/Celestial

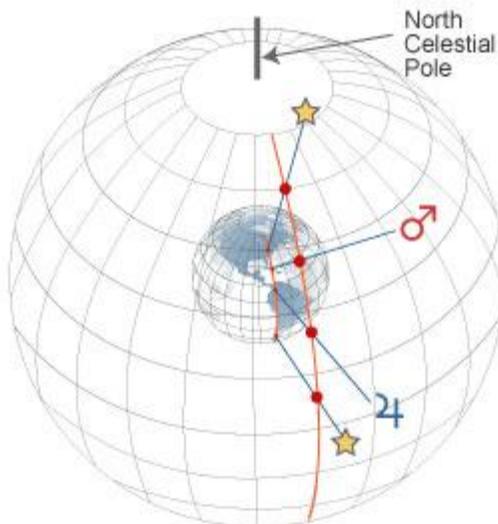


### Longitude and Latitude

This diagram shows the Earth, and on it we have drawn both parallels of geographic latitude and north/south geographic meridians of longitude. The arrow pointing to one of the red dots illustrates a city located somewhere along this geographic circle of latitude. Any atlas will allow you to find other cities (by geographic longitude and latitude) located along the parallel of latitude where you are, and also cities located along the north/south geographic meridian that passes through your location. We have illustrated this with small circles in the diagram that represent other cities located along these two directions on the globe.

## Astronomy for Astrologers

### Geographic and Celestial Meridians



### Longitude Meridian

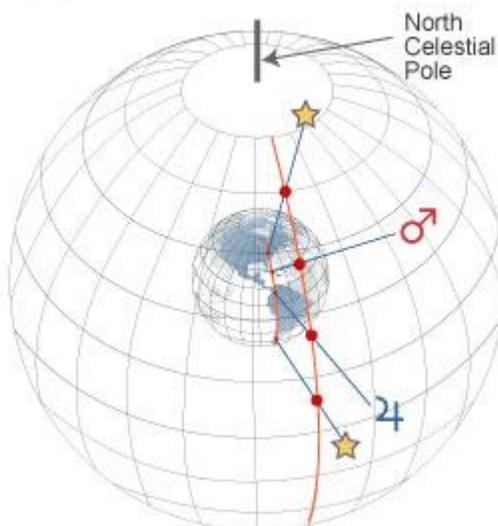
We have seen how there is a circle of stars on the celestial sphere that equals the circle of geographic latitude for any spot on Earth. We can do the same for the geographic longitude factor. In fact, we do this each time we cast a natal chart and locate the Local Sidereal Time (LST) or Right Ascension of the Mid-Heaven (RAMC). We stop the Earth's motion and hold it still (frozen in time) to see what part of the heavens is overhead at our birth place. Another way of saying this is: we determine in what direction, in relation to the heavenly sphere, the Earth was pointed or oriented.

Once we have found the LST or RAMC for a birth, we can look up the equivalent Midheaven (M.C.), ascendant and house-cusps in any Table-of-Houses. We can also look up the direction of the heavens "out-

## Astronomy for Astrologers

there" or overhead, on the star maps elsewhere in this section. Your LST (Local Sidereal Time) may be expressed in Hours-Minutes-Seconds (HMS), which you will find along the edge of these maps, or in Degrees-Minutes-Seconds (DMS) of arc (rather than time). These, also, are given on the maps. (HMS may be converted to DMS simply by multiplying by 15, and DMS may be converted to HMS by dividing by 15).

### Geographic and Celestial Meridians



### Meridian Alignment

For those of you with access to a standard star map, you might like to look up your RAMC or LST and locate the right-ascension meridian that was overhead at your birth, which gives you the direction in space to which your birth location was pointed or oriented. All of the stars and points along the line of right ascension, running from top to bottom on this map, were in line with the geographic meridian for your birth. The diagram will illustrate this.

## Astronomy for Astrologers

1. Ann Arbor is located along the 42nd parallel of Earth latitude.
2. The North/South geographic meridian (red arc) passes through Ann Arbor.
3. This geographic meridian equal is then projected onto the Equatorial Celestial Sphere.
4. All points located along this celestial meridian will be aligned with and in conjunction with the North/South geographic meridian for Ann Arbor.
5. However, only the upper star is also conjunct by declination (= latitude) for Ann Arbor.
6. The planet Jupiter (shown) would be overhead but to the South of Ann Arbor, while directly overhead a city in South America.
7. However, all of the points/objects shown would be conjunct the Midheaven for this chart.

At this point, it is hoped that the reader has some notion of how the geographic sphere fits or matches the equatorial sphere. Perhaps it is clear to you why the equatorial coordinates—right ascension (RA) and declination—are so important in mundane astrology (politics, etc.). For one, any planetary position can be matched to a spot on the Earth by both longitude and latitude, and this is what is done when we trace eclipse paths on the globe. There is not available space here to go into great detail on this subject; however, if the reader understands the simple relationship between the geographic and mundane (equatorial) spheres, many interesting ideas may occur.



## Astronomy for Astrologers

Horizon Sphere -- A heavenly sphere based on the plane of the observer's local horizon ( $90^\circ$  from both zenith and nadir), but taken from the center of the Earth.

Zenith -- The zenith is the point directly overhead any spot on Earth.

Nadir -- The nadir is the point directly beneath (opposite the zenith) any spot on Earth.

Altitude -- The angular distance of any body above or below the plane of the local horizon. Altitude is measured from  $0^\circ$  to  $90^\circ$  from the plane of the horizon to either pole.

Azimuth -- The angle measured around the  $360^\circ$  circumference of the horizon, either east or west (there are different practices). The azimuth of an object is measured from the meridian plane of the observer and from a vertical plane through any body.

Prime Vertical – Is a great circle passing through the zenith (North Pole), nadir (South Pole) and the east and west points on the horizon.

Altitude Circles -- Parallel circles of altitude, whether north or south of the plane of the horizon.

Almuncantar -- Parallel circles of altitude, whether north or south of the plane of the horizon.

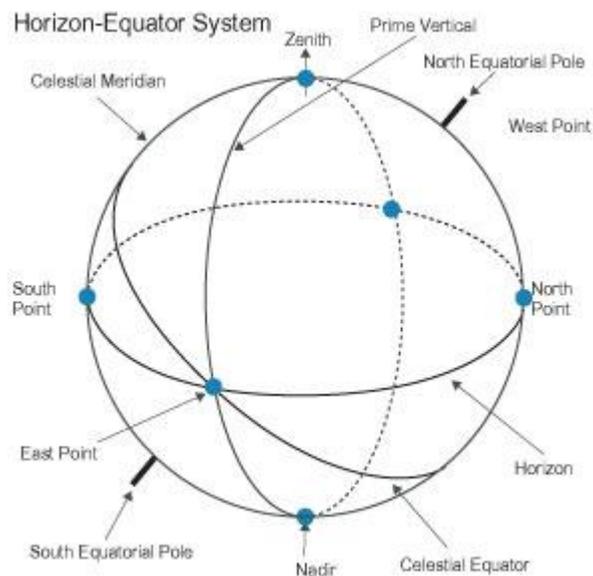
North Point – Is a point on the horizon to the north of the observer, where the meridian plane intersects the horizon.

South Point – Is a point on the horizon to the south of the observer, where the meridian plane intersects the horizon.

East Point -- A point on the horizon to the east of the observer, where the prime vertical plane intersects the horizon.

## Astronomy for Astrologers

West Point -- A point on the horizon to the west of the observer, where the prime vertical plane intersects the horizon.



### The Horizon System

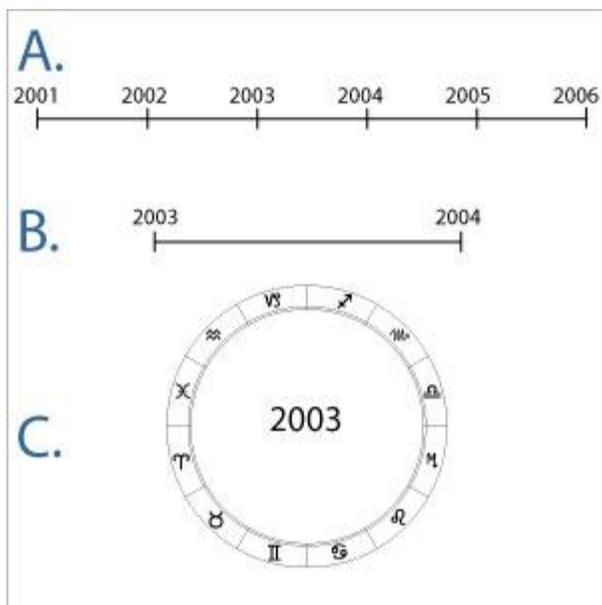
We will return to some additional ideas about the relationship between the equator and the ecliptic after introducing the third major astrological system of coordinates, that of the Horizon system.

The Horizon system of coordinates represents the third and last of the spherical systems used in constructing a natal chart. In this system, the reference plane is one that goes through the birthplace or observing point, parallel to the horizon. The poles of this system are the Zenith (point overhead) and the Nadir (point underfoot). The latitude-type coordinate in this system is called Altitude, and is measured from  $0^\circ$  to  $90^\circ$  from the plane of the horizon to either pole. The longitude coordinate is called Azimuth, and is measured from  $0^\circ$  to  $360^\circ$  along

## Astronomy for Astrologers

the horizon (starting, for astrological use in this book, from the East point and moving in a counterclockwise direction through the North point and on around, in the same way that we are used to measuring the houses or signs).

The Horizon System is built around a specific place or event on earth, and all other objects—such as planets, stars, cities, etc—are then expressed in terms of how they were oriented to or appear from the perspective of that place or event. The horizon system is most like the standard road map in that it has a North-South-East-West orientation. The North-South axis is identical to the Celestial Meridian running from the North (geographic or celestial) Pole, through the observer, and down to the South Pole. The East-West circle is called the Prime Vertical, and runs due East or West from the observer. It does not follow the East-West geographic parallels of latitude. The horizon system can be used anyplace on earth.



### The Straighter the Line, The Finer the Curve

We are right in the middle of a seeming endless line of years stretching back before we can remember and stretching on into the future as far as we can imagine. This is illustrated, in Fig. A. in the accompanying diagram, as a long line of years. This is what is called a linear representation—a simple line.

In most respects, every year is the same—exactly 365 days of sunlight and darkness. Fig. B. shows the year 2003 as a segment taken from the endless line of years. The dictionary has this to say about what a cycle is:

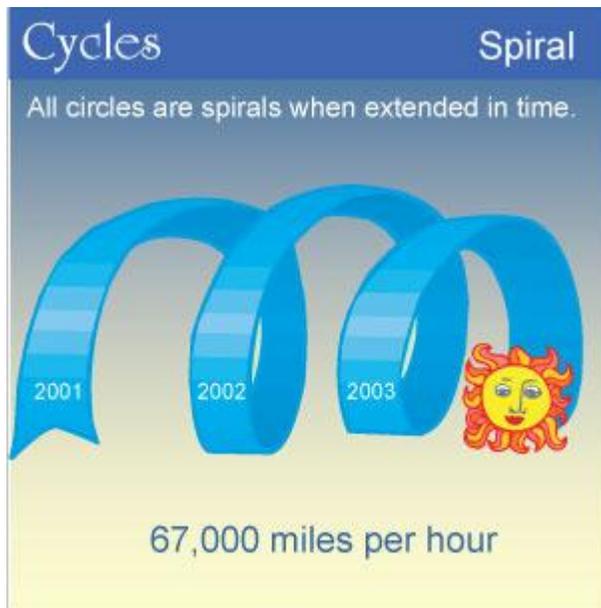
“Any process or sequence of states, in which the initial and final states of a system are the same.”

Well, this makes sense. The end of one year (a particular day) is the exact beginning of the next year... and so on...and all 365 days in between each year are also more or less equal. This ‘cycle of the year’ is

## Astronomy for Astrologers

commonly represented as a circle, as in Fig. C, and this is the familiar zodiac chart form used by astrologers. The beginning and end points of the year are wrapped around to meet, and this illustrates the cycle of the year—all represented in the form of a circle.

As mentioned, in Fig. C we have the standard zodiac chart, which represents the path of Earth in the course of a year—365 days. It may interest you to know that we are traveling, with the earth in its orbit around the Sun, at some 67,000 miles an hour, so, if you have been having trouble controlling your mind while meditating, this could be the reason. <g>



### Time Spiral

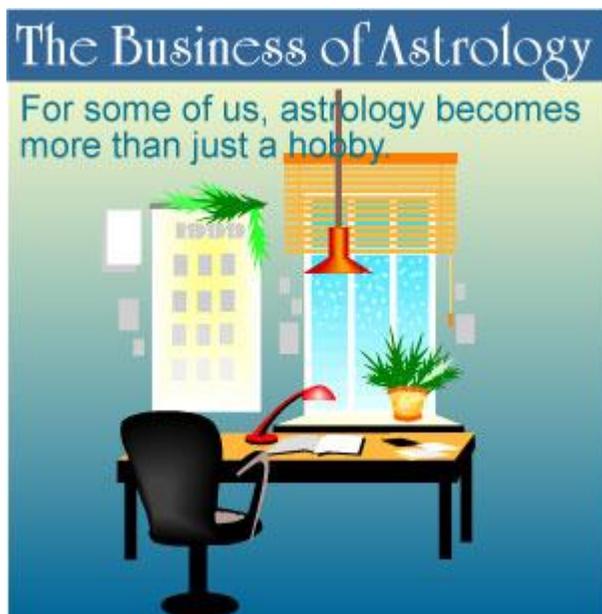
This diagram shows how the earth—in its yearly orbit, cycle or circle—is actually always moving forward (we mentioned the speed!), so it really ends up making more of a spiral than only a simple circle. The circles spiral.

## Astronomy for Astrologers

Summary: All that ‘is’ circles, and, in fact, everything that ‘is’ repeats or returns on itself, again and again—cycles—and these cycles are spirals. Examples of common cycles are: the cycle of the earth around the Sun in a year, the cycle of the Moon around Earth in a Month, the cycle of the revolution of the earth in a day, the cycle of our breath—breathing, the cycle of our heart beating, and so on, downward to cycles so small that they are invisible to us—such as the cycle of electrons orbiting an atom.

On the other hand, cycles on the longer side—beyond our imagination—include the cycle of our Sun orbiting the center of the galaxy, a cycle taking some 230 million years to complete, and so on. In other words, we are bound on one hand by endless cycles too small for us to measure, and on the other by cycles too vast for us to grasp. In astrology, we study the cycles that fall within our life's awareness—the ones within our ability to measure and understand. Astrology primarily, in many ways, involves the study of cycles such as these.

### ***Astrology as a Business***



### **Setting Up an Astrological Practice**

At some point in our study of astrology, many of us realize that astrology is not just a passing fancy but a real avocation, something we do not only for ourselves but also something we can do for other people. Making the transition from viewing astrology as a casual interest to a full- or part-time avocation (perhaps a business) is what is being presented here.

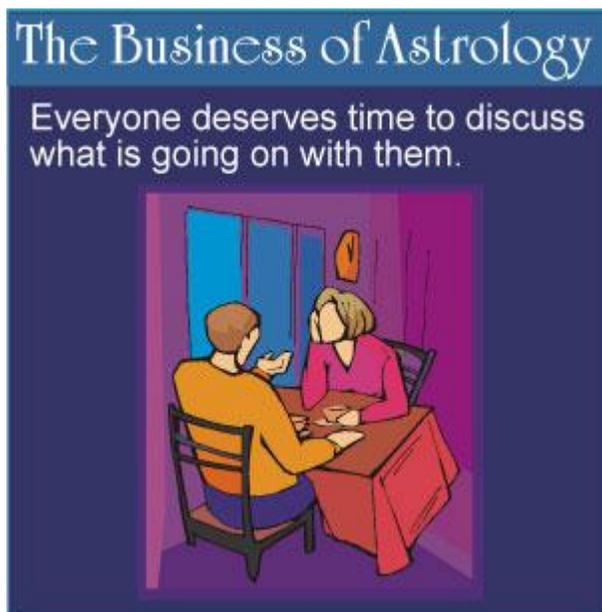
### **Signs of Success**

I have pointed out many times that astrology is not a belief system, as in: something you "believe" in. Rather, like any other self-knowledge tool, astrology is either something you find useful in your life, or not. You may just as easily have chosen the tarot, meditation, yoga—or any number of other oracles—or all of these. The deciding factor is whether astrology is useful in your life.

## Astrology as a Business

Do you get more out of it than you must to put into it—in the way of effort?

If you do, then astrology becomes an alternate way to view yourself—who you are—and what your life is all about. And, if you find that astrology is working for you, then it is but a hop and a skip to doing it for others. In fact, for many of us, others beat a path to our door once they knew we were "astrologers."



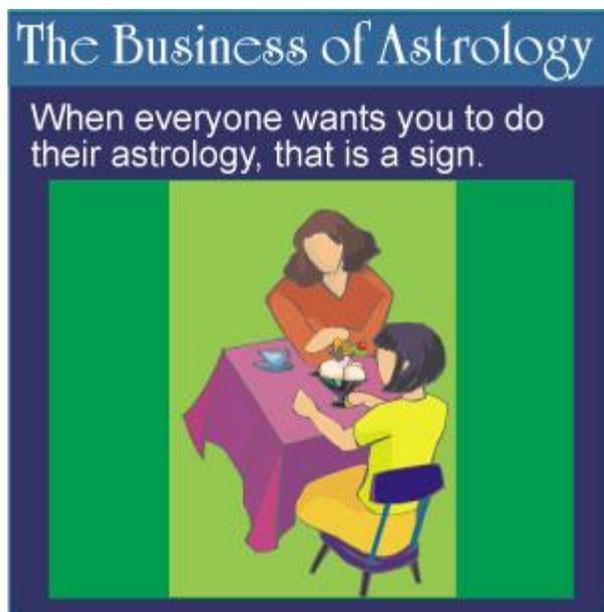
### Rites of Passage

In this world, with so many tools and resources available to us, where even a plethora of knowledge (via the Internet) is often only a button away, many people still have so little means to learn about themselves—about their personal self. I am not exaggerating when I say that, by and large, everyone, at some point in their lives, is secretly waiting to be found, to be discovered for the wonderful being that (at least on the good days) they

## Astrology as a Business

know themselves to be. For a great many of us, there is no one who seems to recognize us, or who can celebrate with us the simple passing of our lives. As we see happening with celebrities, many of us wish that we, too, would be discovered and cherished—here, in the middle of our lives—if only in a small way.

Since most of us are not suddenly found and recognized for who we are—delivered from what can be our loneliness—we have to discover our own selves as best we can. This process of self-discovery is age-old. Astrology is, for many people, a valuable tool for this sort of self-discovery: it is a kind of do-it-yourself kit for developing awareness, and, once you have figured out how to find out about yourself using astrology, you may be in a position to assist others in the same sort of thing. In other words, you may be able to do for others what you once wished and waited for someone to do for you. You may be able to shine some light on their inner selves, giving them a little space and time in which they can discover themselves. At the very least, you can share with them, and help celebrate their life. Psychological birth is every bit as important as physical birth, and, in a very real sense, an astrologer can become a midwife of the psyche.



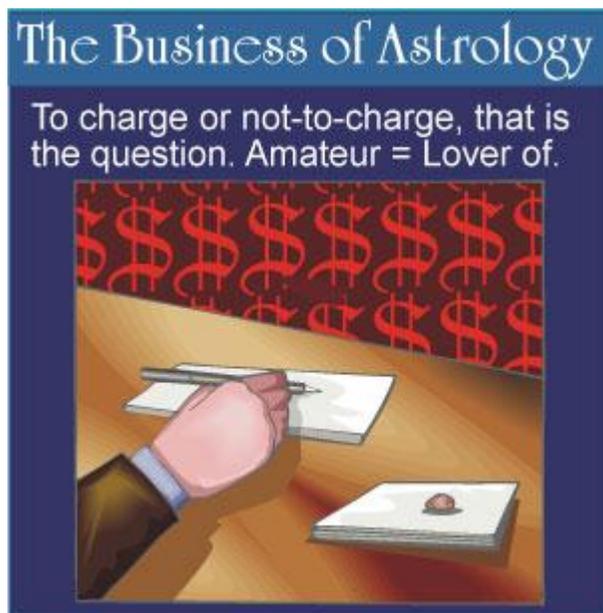
### **You know you are an Astrologer when...**

As mentioned above, if astrology has turned out to be a useful tool for self-discovery and is now something you depend on as one of your life guides, usually it will not be too long before others begin to hear about it—probably just from knowing you. Astrology is not the easiest oracle to learn; it can be quite complex, and not everyone is cut out to handle that complexity. This is why astrologers are needed who, in their turn, can do readings for others: in this way they can share their hard-earned expertise.

If you have somewhat of a gift for interpreting astrology, that trickle of interest others have in what you do will gradually grow into a small river of folks wanting to learn more about themselves—folks willing to sit with you and look at their lives through the prism of astrology. At this point, you are a serious amateur—perhaps you are

## Astrology as a Business

even considering becoming a professional. Let's talk about this for a moment.



### **Amateur or Professional?**

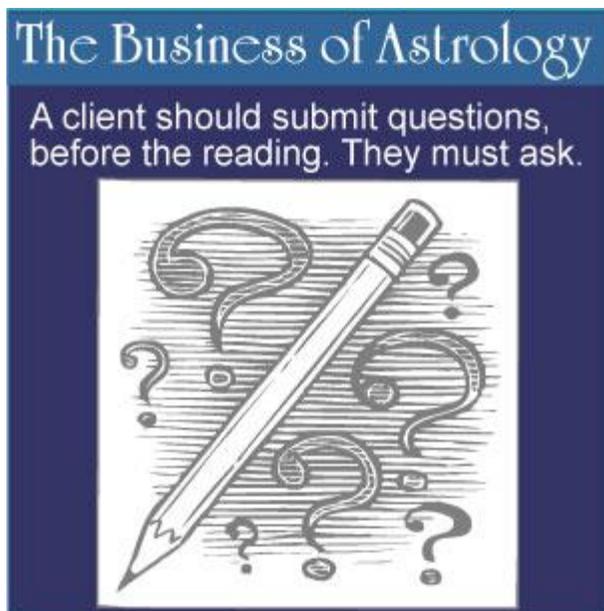
I am a strong advocate of amateur astrology; I have, however, practiced as a professional as well as an amateur, for many years. In the best of possible worlds, this kind of work—that of self-birthing, psychological midwifery—is best practiced by someone who loves and cares about you, just as our mothers—who care for us—are the ones who bring us into this world. There is, in my opinion, something lost when we charge money to do what is essentially a spiritual process.

Don't misunderstand me. I am not a business prude. I have worked for many years as a professional reader, so I am not averse to charging a fee. I just want you to know, that, given a choice (and enough income), I don't charge for a reading; however, I should also add that

## Astrology as a Business

(these days) I only tend to do readings for those I have come to know or otherwise bumped into along the road of life, or, if someone asks me to—in my opinion, there is something un-cool about turning down a request for some astrological help, no matter who is doing the asking. That's just me.

I am familiar with but not persuaded by the argument that readings are not valued by the client unless they are paid for—unless something is exchanged—and that putting up cash is a sign of sincerity on the part of the client. I understand this argument—the argument that we tend to value something more if we have sacrificed something for it, and that what is freely given may not be appreciated—for just that reason. My answer to this, however, is I would hope that the astrology I do is more effective than that.



### **Clients Must Request**

It is true that it is essential for the client to request a reading and to state the questions they may have. That alone is an offering. That is enough, in my opinion. They must ask for the reading if they are to receive one. Without that, the astrologer is being asked to simply perform and entertain, or, to prove to the client that astrology works—which is beside the point. The point, rather, is to see if astrology can be *useful* or not for any one individual.

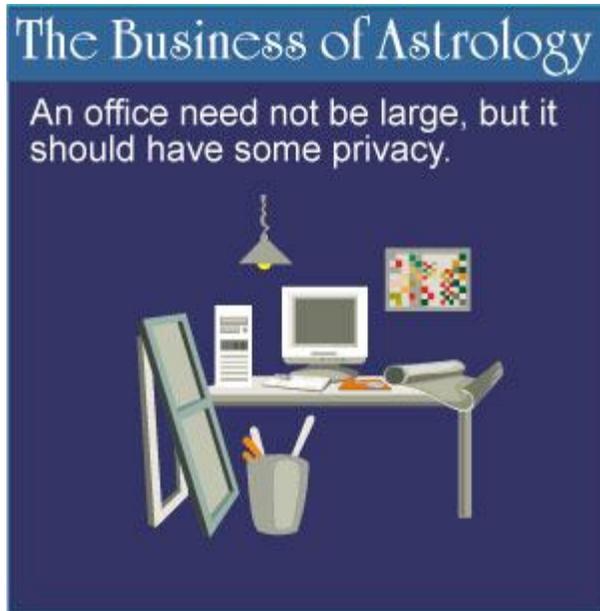
What is my bottom line here? If my life is such that I need to make money doing astrology, I charge. If I have other things going for me at the time—I do not charge. And, if I do charge, it is not always money that is exchanged. The exchange of goods and services is a wonderful way to handle this. In my experience, it seems true that, if the client can exchange something, this does leave them in a better place—a place where

## Astrology as a Business

they can take or leave what you may have had to say to them; they are not so much at your mercy. The reading, then, is something they bought and paid for, and, therefore, they can do whatever they wish with it. I know this is slightly contradictory to what I wrote earlier.

I guess I am of a mixed-mind about all this fee business. In a perfect world, I would have the astrologer play the role of the mentor, and the client the role of the student, with the subject being: discovering your 'self' through astrology. In that scenario, I don't see the need for money, or any kind of barter. The experience itself is an exchange, plain and simple.

I understand that the world is not quite that simple, and that the mentor/student exchange is somewhat rare; therefore, rather than giving much more advice on the subject, I will leave you to decide when and how much you charge for your services, or how you decide to implement whatever method of barter you might come up with.



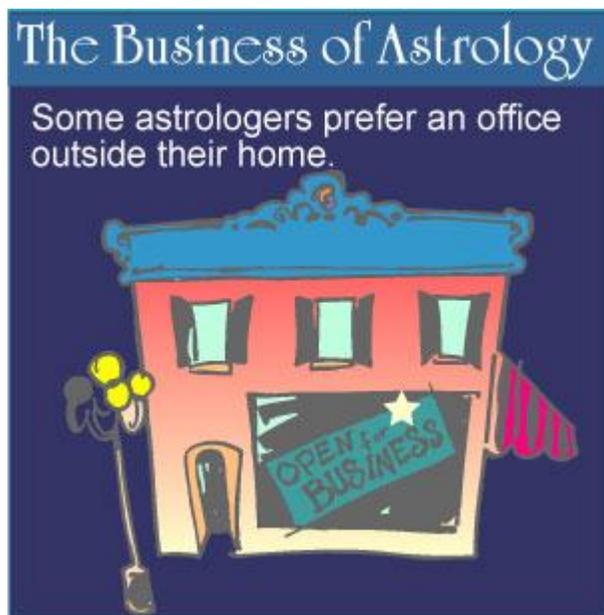
### **The Home Office**

Many of us start doing astrology wherever we can, here and there, as time and place permit, sort of a "Have Charts, Will Travel" sort of affair; sooner or later, though, most of us find that having a special spot to do our readings in is better. It could just be me, but for me there is something appealing about setting aside an area of one's house, or the corner of an office, for doing astrology. It just feels right.

Besides, astrology requires a fair amount (and sometimes a lot!) of preparation work—what with many charts, lists of transits, maps, and so forth. In the years during which I was doing readings or consultations full-time, I had a separate office just for this kind of work. Even today, when I am involved in many other things, I still like to do readings in a corner of my current office. You get the idea. But then again, I may just as easily grab up all of the charts and go sit out on the grass if it

## Astrology as a Business

is nice out. That is how I do it. I have always worked out of my home and have never felt that it made me look less than professional. For some reason, I am not able to see myself in a commercial office.



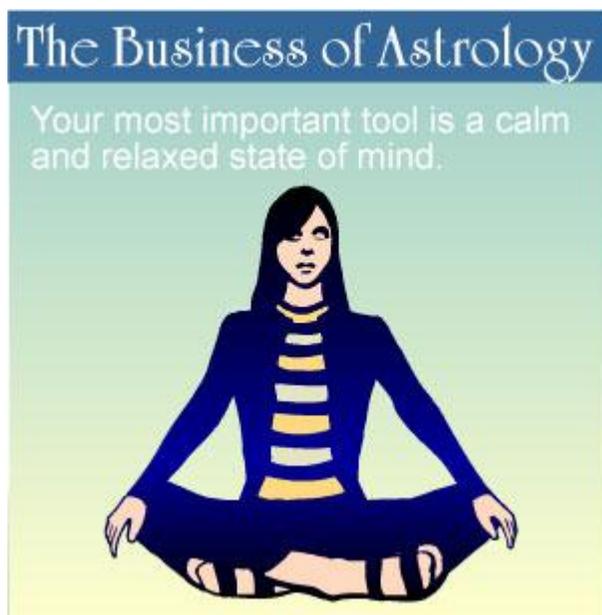
### The Downtown Office

Many astrologers I have known, and I have known many, do not want to work out of their homes. They like to keep their home and business lives separate: they feel most comfortable having an office outside their home. There are many ways to do this. You can simply rent an office—although this can be expensive; many astrologers and spiritually-oriented readers share an office space; still others have a special spot, be it a quiet coffee shop or a park bench, where they prefer to do readings.

I should point out, that, wherever you decide to do your readings, it should be quite private, since, as you

## Astrology as a Business

probably already know, due to the nature of the reading process, emotions typically run high, and the client may vent tears or anger—and often both. You want to give them some privacy so that they can have that letting-go experience with as little added self-consciousness or social pressure as possible.



### **Most Important Tool**

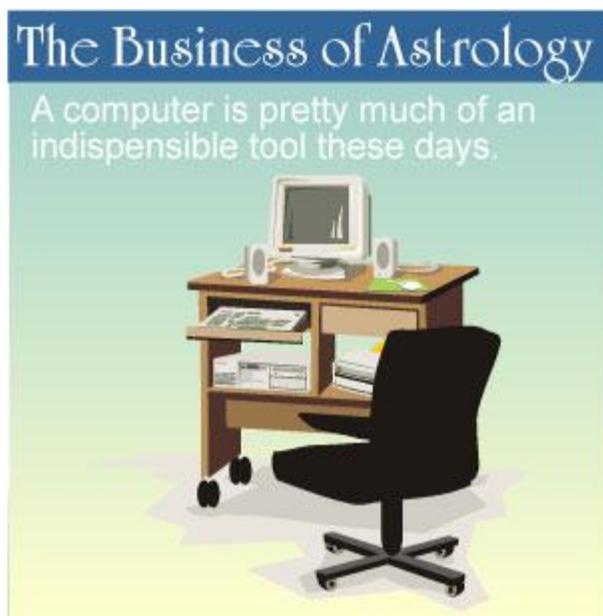
It goes without saying, but I will say it again here, that the most important tool you need to do astrological readings is a calm and tranquil mind—receptivity. You must be able to listen. If you have just had a fight with your kids or spouse and are way off your contacts, do everyone a favor and just reschedule. Readings and upset don't work well together.

Also, I am assuming, here, that if you have come this far with astrology, you have some way of working with your own mind, be it through meditation, yoga, or according

## Astrology as a Business

to some other form of mind training. Receptivity and a calm mind are imperatives for astrological counseling, not options. If you have never received proper instruction on how to meditate, then, please, get some. By meditation, what is meant here is that simple practice of sitting quietly and observing your own mind, as is taught in many of the Asian religious cultures, such as in Zen, Theravadin, Tibetan, Chinese and Japanese Buddhism. The goal of this kind of meditation is not relaxation, but rather getting to know your own mind and recognizing how it operates. Relaxation therapy is *not* what I mean here by "meditation."

If you don't know where to get this type of instruction, email me ([Michael@erlewine.net](mailto:Michael@erlewine.net)), and I will try to find a competent meditation instructor in your area. I will then email you back that information.



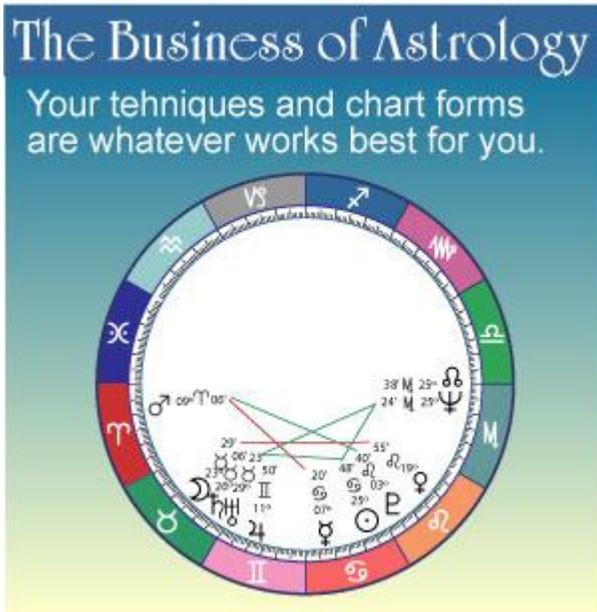
### **Other Tools You Need**

Next to an awareness of your own mind, probably the next major tool to have, these days, is a computer and some astrological programs. Software programs that 'do' astrology are available for both the PC and the Mac, and there is a wide selection. Since I founded Matrix Software, I am biased towards these programs; however, there are other major software companies having professional-level programs as well—including Esoteric Technologies and Cosmic Patterns. Software from any of the above mentioned companies has been developed for the PC. For software developed for the Mac, the company you want is: TimeCycles.

If you are just beginning, you can find many freeware or shareware astrology programs on the web offering a lot; when you decide to become a professional and to offer professional astrology services, however, you are probably better off investing in a professional-level

## Astrology as a Business

program, one offering a wide range of options, including the ability to print out charts and reports in attractive formats, with your name and contact numbers engraved on them. Even the best programs cost only a couple of hundred dollars, so this is not too much of an investment.



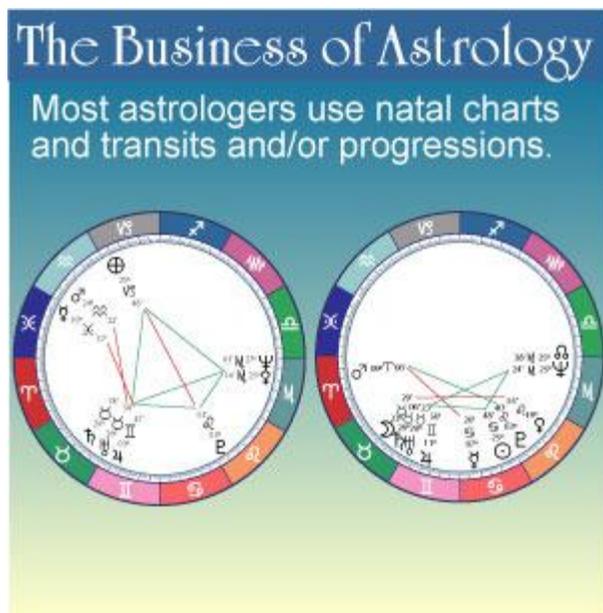
### Techniques

What kind of astrology you use is up to you, and this is an important point: Astrology is an oracle, not a science. Astrology is a way for what is happening out there in the heavens to be recognized as happening down here on earth also—the heavens speaking and we listening—it involves the recognition of these heavenly archetypical events in our day-to-day life here on Earth. I liken it to star-writing in the sky—writing we can learn to read. And.... there are all kinds of astrological techniques.

## Astrology as a Business

It took me years to figure this out and to accept it as true: that there is no single astrological technique that is necessarily better than others. There are only the techniques that work or are most useful to you. I used to believe that there were "good" and "bad" techniques, and, of course, I had the good ones and some other astrologers used the bad ones—too bad for them! That is overstating it, but you get the idea. In other words, I would try out techniques that others had told me about in glowing terms, and yet, they did nothing for me; therefore, I assumed they were of no value. In this assumption I was mostly wrong.

Again: astrology is an oracle through which the heavens speak to us, and what they speak about is our life in its unfolding. Oracles are all about letting the message come through—not about the particular vehicle or technique the message comes through. All astrological techniques are meaningful, to some degree. The only question to answer is whether a particular technique is meaningful or useful to you. We cannot (and therefore we probably should not) judge another astrologer's technique, even as to whether or not it really works for him or her. We can only know whether one works for us—and those are the techniques we will use, the ones that work for us.



### **Popular Techniques**

Now that we have made it clear you can use whatever astrological technique that works for you, and not have to justify it to anyone, what are the techniques used most by professional astrologers? Here we are only going to mention a few of the major ones, as you can read about the others elsewhere.

### **Birth Charts**

Sure. The place to start in astrology, for most people, is to learn about their selves through their birth chart; by doing this, they will find out pretty quickly if astrology catches their interest or not; moreover, there are several birth charts available that are worth looking into: there is the traditional geocentric natal chart, the heliocentric natal chart—the inner, or what is called the "Dharma Chart" and there are others as well, including the equatorial natal chart (helpful in aligning oneself with

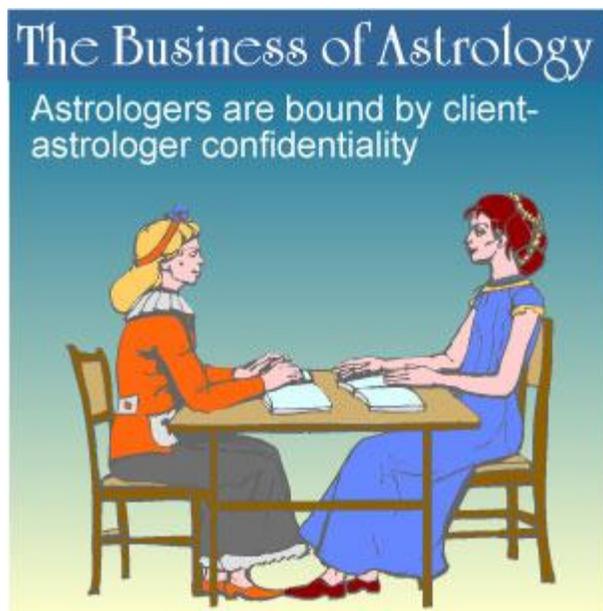
## Astrology as a Business

geographic places and world events) and what I call the Local Space Chart—a snapshot that combines the earth and the planets in a very local sense, in the space surrounding your birth.

### **Transits, Directions, and Progressions**

Our natal chart is a snapshot of ourselves at birth, at the beginning. Once we learn something about our natal chart, we want to keep it updated. The planets keep moving after our birth, and astrologers like to know how this onward movement relates to the natal chart. How does astrology affect us today? To do this, astrologers employ a variety of techniques (chiefly transits, directions, and progressions) to chart what is happening in the sky now (at this time) and compare it to our natal positions.

There are many other astrological techniques, and these will be detailed in another section, but the natal charts, and some form of ongoing analysis of planetary movement, are the two major techniques that almost all astrologers use on a regular basis.



### **Client Confidentiality**

As an astrologer, what you hear in an astrological reading is private; perhaps not as protected as what is heard in a confessional, but still—for your ears only. As with lawyers, doctors, psychiatrists, and other professionals, the astrologer-client privilege should be honored and protected. This is universally recognized by all astrological groups and organizations.

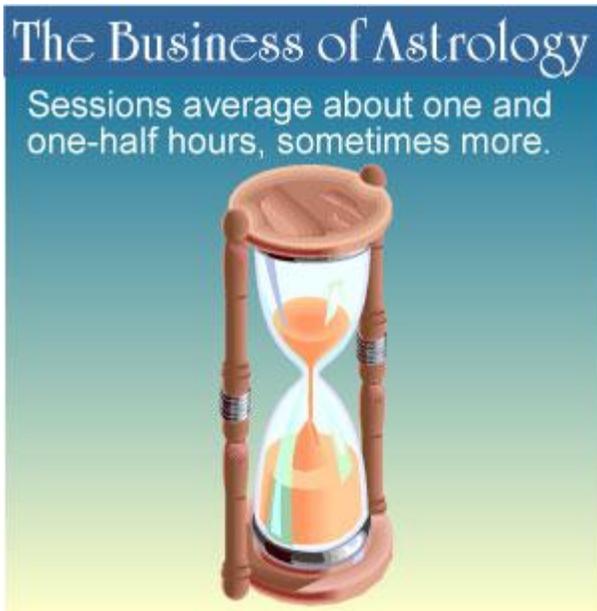
As a counselor, I have had just about everything (and more than) I could conceive of, laid out before me at one time or another—more than I ever could have imagined. Compared to what goes on out there, my life is very boring and uneventful. What I hear in a consulting situation is not something I repeat or pass on in the social scene, or even discuss; it is deeper than that. It really cannot be discussed.

## Astrology as a Business

In fact, one of the things you soon learn in counseling is to just drop it. After the reading is over, with its tempests and sea changes, it is best to just forget it—as I try and do. One good reason for doing this (dropping it) is because it is way too much to try and keep in mind, much less process. All kinds of experiences take place during a reading, and your mind is often stretched far beyond what you, personally, are used to. This occurs as part of the accommodation process—that of listening to the client. A client can easily take you on what amounts to an acid trip, bending the limits of your mind and pushing you into realms you would otherwise never see or go near.

So, there is no figuring out later what went on during the session, and, as mentioned, I have learned to just let it pass—to think nothing of it. I don't want to belabor this point, but I would like to prepare you for what you will experience. Let me say it one more time:

The client, whom you don't know, may have material so pent up that it has not seen the light of day for many years, if ever. Neither you nor they know what may erupt from some deep areas of the psyche. It can be so powerful that you won't be able to (or want to) remember just what did transpire. It is that powerful. I don't know how to put it, but you may well be standing at the very edge of the void with your client, gazing into the eternity—or damnation. When that experience closes, and you both come back down into what we could call normal consciousness, the mind closes after it. It is not even much of a memory. You can't remember or reconstruct it, and, trying to, only further strains an already exhausted state. My point here is that we learn to just let some things pass. They make no 'sense' in the ordinary meaning of that word.



### **How Long a Session?**

How long to spend with a client? This is an area where you can expect a wide range of answers, everything from one-half hour to three or more hours. In my experience, and in talking with other professionals, I would say that the average reading takes about one and one-half hours, seldom more than two hours. Most astrologers would probably agree with this number.

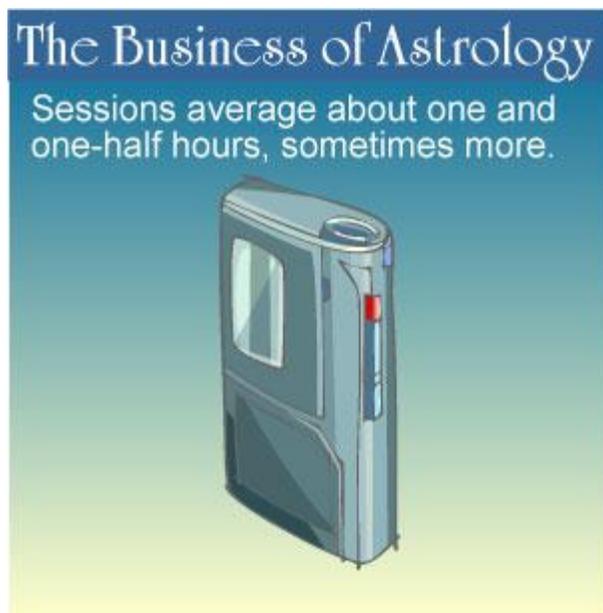
However, I know of some astrologers who take three or four hours to work through the material, and I know of a few who take less than one hour to do so. Elsewhere I have a section on the nature of conducting a reading—what a reading actually is. I don't want to repeat that information here, but I can summarize and say:

Regardless of what astrological techniques are used, the essential theme of any reading usually involves a process of emptying out and an opposite process of

## Astrology as a Business

taking in—as in breathing out and then in. Perhaps a better analogy would be the process of letting go of a grip (like we might grip a baseball) and the taking of a new (and more relaxed) grip. That's it. This is quite a physical process, and it takes a certain amount of time: time for venting or emptying out, and time for relaxing and taking in—time for taking a new hold or grip on life.

I have found about 1 1/2 to 2 hours a reasonable time frame for all of this to take place in and, once this emptying out and its response takes place, the reading is essentially over; it can continue on, but it is just small talk after that point. The physical part of it that I am referring to can only take place once, and when that is over, the reading is over. If that emptying out and taking a new grip has not taken place, you should continue for as long as necessary—in my judgment. If it never takes place, I don't charge for the reading, because I feel nothing significant has happened. You be your own judge of that.



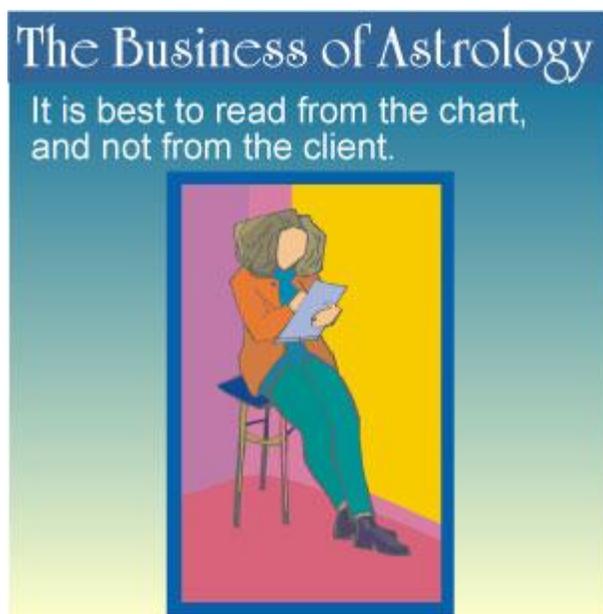
### **Documenting the Reading**

This is up to you. Most astrologers tape-record the reading, either in person or over the phone, and then see that the client gets the tape or a copy of it. A taped interview gives the client a chance to go over the areas of the consultation that interest them most, areas that perhaps went over their head during the moment of the reading and thus were missed. It also protects you from being misquoted, and it can save on the necessity of follow-up phone calls made to verify with you whether they heard something right. In particular, hard to remember things, such as dates, can be pulled off the tape. Taping seems to be a good thing, and is almost universally done.

With this said, I will point out that I am one of those astrologers who also like to write out interpretations for a client. I got into this habit way back at the beginning, when there were not enough 'knock-on-my-door' clients

## Astrology as a Business

and therefore I advertised ‘through-the-mail’ readings. I have done hundreds of these and do not mind doing them. They do not take any longer than a sit-down reading and are self-documenting; however, they do depend on you having a clear astrological vision, and one that is not dependent on the ebb and flow of the sit-down client situation. In other words, you cannot play off the client, adjusting the reading according to how and where things are going with them. This leads me to the next point.



### **Tell It Like It Is**

Astrologers are very different when it comes to this topic. When looking at a chart, do you present what you see there—whether or not the client seems to respond to it?—or, do you constantly tailor and alter your message based upon the feedback you are getting from the client as things progress? Bluntly, if the client tells you that

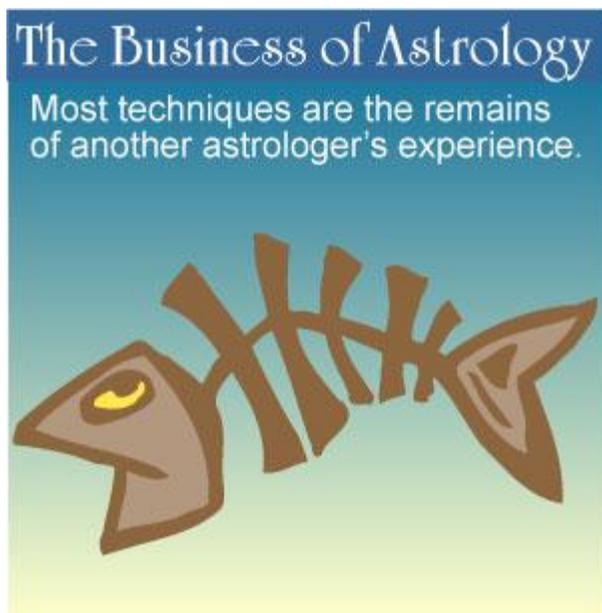
## Astrology as a Business

what you are presenting does not fit them, how do you alter the message—if at all?

We could have a long discussion on this issue, and there would be many points of view to consider. In actual practice, a skillful counselor does all kinds of adjusting in order to achieve some kind of resonance with the client. This is a continuous process, and it is to be expected. You want to maintain some kind of dialog and connection with the client—but not at all costs. And now for my two cents; my general take on this is:

I have learned, over many years of counseling, to stick with what a chart says and not bend over backward to make it fit my client's expectations or demands. I cannot tell you how many times a client has rejected something I have presented as simply "not true," only to acknowledge that same information as true later in the reading—often after some sort of 'letting-the-hair-down' experience; had I followed their lead, that lead would have led elsewhere and probably they would not have gotten there—"there" being what I had originally presented. As the astrologer, you must direct or lead the session, which does not mean you don't listen to and adjust to the feedback you are getting from the client. Of course you do.

You must be well trained in the techniques you use. By "well trained", I mean that the techniques you use must be ones you have tried, tested, and found to be true in your work. As I like to say: your techniques must work for you, and not you for them. Here is a short sidebar about techniques that may be worth your consideration.



### **Techniques as Experience**

Just what are astrological techniques, anyway? To the best of my understanding, any technique is but the residue of an astrological "Aha!" realization that has occurred. All techniques were discovered by some astrologer, somewhere, even if it was way-back-when. The discovery of a new astrological technique is a big deal, at least for the astrologer who discovers it. It lights up his or her life and can be a turning point.

When that experience of discovery passes, what remains of the experience, in many cases, is the technique, a somewhat (by definition) mechanical way of remembering or recreating that experience. A person cannot pass on the *experience* to another, because each of us must have our own experience, but one can pass on the technique—whatever steps or processes one remembers as to how one got to that experience. Astrological techniques are like this, the steps or

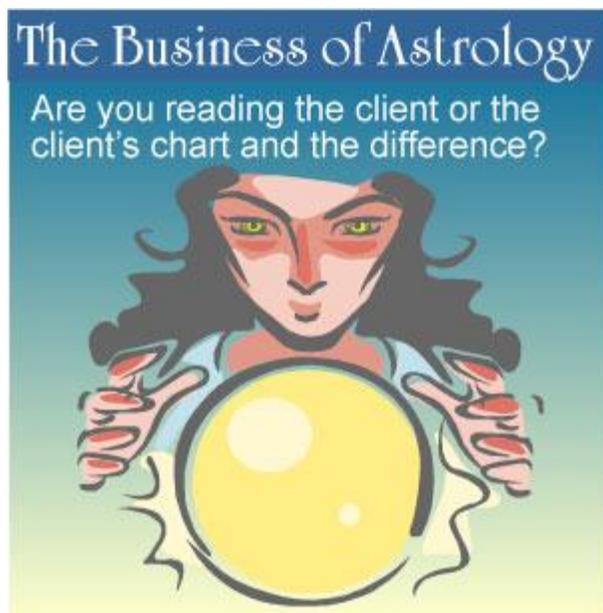
## Astrology as a Business

remains of a realization. Astrological techniques, as found in a book or even on the lips of a teacher, are, by their intrinsic nature, incomplete. They leave out the "you" factor, which is why you must take the technique and make it real for yourself—realize it!

Each of us must, as astrologers, 'realize' whatever techniques we use, to the best of our ability. Blindly using the various steps of a technique, as passed down through books or from a teacher, will not cut it; in fact, it is the teacher's job, when presenting a technique, to empower the student—enabling their realization of it—and not just pass on its bare bones.

My point here is that whatever techniques you end up using with a client should be ones you not only understand as a mechanical technique (calculation) but ones you have also been able to realize (vitalize, make alive) within yourself. This is the only real way astrological knowledge can be passed on—through each of us realizing what we are doing; otherwise, it is just rote learning and the passing on of knowledge for knowledge's sake—although this does occur also.

In some eras, it is all we can do to pass on the technique, without the realization. It remains for another generation, hopefully, to re-vitalize that technique and make it real again, so that it lives and walks on the earth. That is realization. Enough said.



### **Read from the Client or the Chart?**

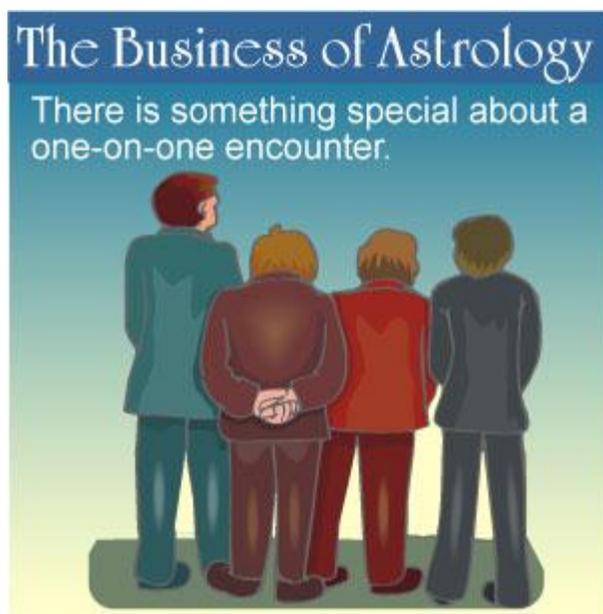
To return to the subject of techniques in a reading: The techniques you use with a client should be ones that you have realized and can depend on, even when the mental or emotional waters around you get rough. They should be like fixed stars or lighthouses in your mind—they should guide you and keep you on track—which brings me to my personal point here:

I have learned to stick with my techniques and to read from the chart, not from the client. It can be tempting to read from the client, particularly if they are very transparent; this amounts to gathering the low hanging fruit. My opinion is: don't be tempted. It's a slippery slope.

It is much better to stay with the chart, guided by the realization of whatever techniques you use; otherwise, you are not doing astrology, but something else, which,

## Astrology as a Business

in many cases, may be fine. For my own work, I read from the chart, not from the client, and this is one reason I find it just as easy to write out a reading as to have one in person. What I am going to say, in either case, will be more or less the same. This is not to say I don't respond to feedback coming from the client; I do, always—but I tend to use that feedback to get to the point of communicating what is in the chart, not to wander into more intuitive or psychic areas. In other words, I am an astrologer, not a medium or a psychic.



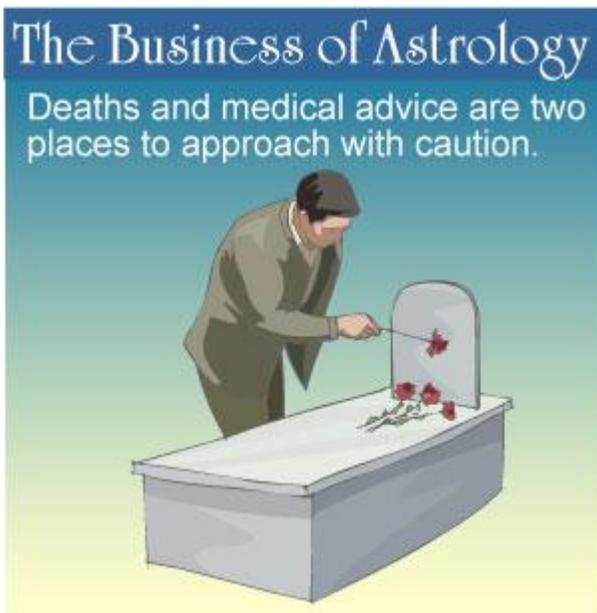
### **Other Persons Present**

The readings I have done are almost always done one-to-one, with no others present—no children, no spouses, and no friends. It just does not unfold properly when more than two are involved in the chart of one person. Of course, this does not apply to relationship questions: with these it can be very helpful to have both partners

## Astrology as a Business

present; in fact, since my specialty happens to be looking at relationships, I often have both partners there.

While I don't encourage anyone other than the client to be present, I do encourage the charts of anyone/everyone close to or critically involved with the client to be looked at as well. Charts of the spouse and the kids, the friends and not-so-friends, and of the co-workers are all very helpful when looked at, and some thought must be given to encouraging the client to provide the necessary birth information for these prior to the reading; otherwise, what happens is I end up doing those charts on the spot, which is not as good as having had more time beforehand to consider them carefully.



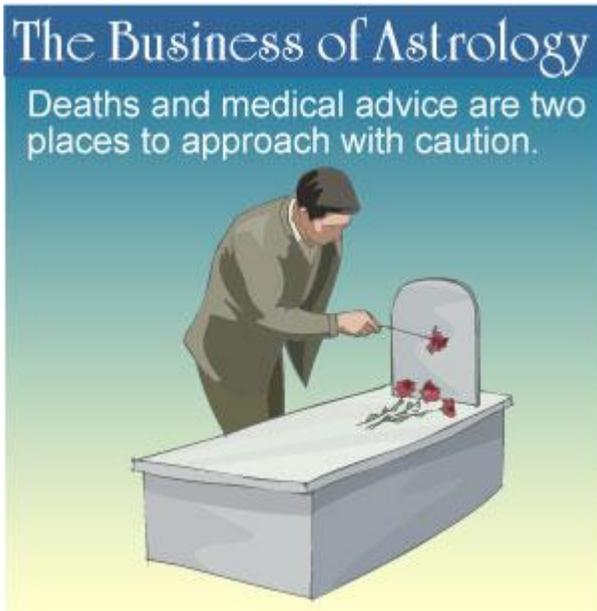
### **Death and Medicine**

I don't predict death, if for no other reason than I don't know how to determine it accurately, and I would not, even if I could. The same goes for medical advice. I am

## Astrology as a Business

not a medical astrologer, and I caution you about giving medical advice in a reading—unless you are a doctor—lest it turn around and bite you. What you CAN do is to offer any amount of preventative health suggestions that might be warranted: exercise, mediation, supplements, nutritional advice, whole foods—all that sort of thing.

I know that many astrologers do offer medical advice, but I don't go there.



### **Astrological Jargon**

I have never understood why astrologers try to explain or teach astrology to a client during a reading; statements such as: "Your Mars is conjunct Saturn" are meaningless to the average client, and will only serve to muddy the waters. I did some of this when I was first learning astrology, but it was usually to stall for time, or to cover up for the fact that I did not know enough yet or perhaps was not very sure of what I was talking about,

## Astrology as a Business

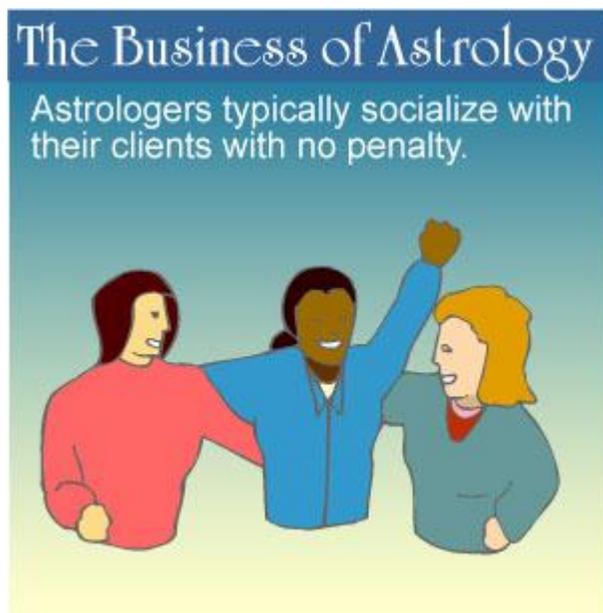
or maybe I was running out of material; in fact, this is a sure sign of an amateur—the dependence on astrological jargon as a means of communication within the reading situation.

In the classroom, sure (and I have taught thousands of students over the years) that is where jargon has its place. In the reading: not appropriate. The client has no idea as to what astrological phrases and lingo mean. It may sound impressive, but the best astrologers I know do not use it. What do we do?

We concentrate on what the astro-jargon is pointing to. For example, we don't say: "You have a grand trine in your chart." Instead, we say " You have the ability to get the big picture, to see the forest AND the trees." Or perhaps we first tell them about the forest and the trees and THEN tell them that they have a grand trine. That is the idea.

The point of a reading is to assist the client, using astrology as a lens or a filter—not as a feature. When we use excessive jargon, we only cloud the lens, and confuse the mind of the client with words they cannot yet understand. We are the astrologer, and we are supposed to know what a grand trine means, and it is that *meaning* we want to communicate to our client.

Another suggestion: Many clients come in with a smattering of astrology in mind, and they want to ask you things like "What does my Venus Conjunction Mars mean?" Again, this kind of question belongs in an astrology class and not at a reading. If you start to answer such questions in a reading, you are opening up a can of worms. Before you know it, the client will be directing the reading, fueled by what little they do know, and the general course of the reading will be aborted. Do this at your own peril.



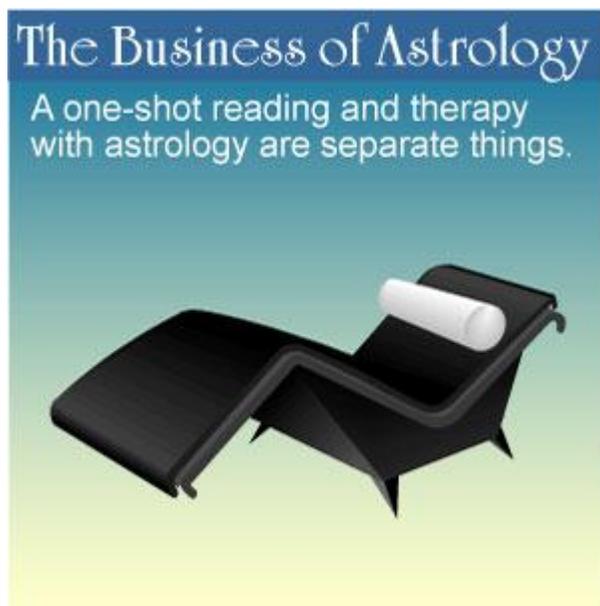
### **Friendship with Clients**

There are differing viewpoints on whether you should fraternize with your clients, some say you should not. I am of the opinion that—of course you can fraternize with your clients. For many astrologers (at least in the learning stages), if they did not do so they would have no friends (or clients) at all! Friends are usually among the first to want to have a reading with you.

We pointed out earlier that we don't discuss what takes place in a reading with any third person, but I have never had any problems being friends and maintaining friendships with clients. In the circle of friends I have, I am an astrologer, just like someone else is a doctor or a lawyer. Who says I can't be friends with my own doctor or lawyer? In fact, I would trust my friends to practice on me more than I would others in that field, every time.

## Astrology as a Business

What we don't do is initiate an emotional or romantic relationship with a client, at least during the reading. That is a big "no, no." Clients are typically very vulnerable during a reading, and the last thing they need is someone hitting on them or in any way trying to take advantage of their condition. This is not only professional protocol, it is just plain common sense—and to do otherwise is most likely illegal as well.



### **Astrological Therapy**

And, last in this group of lessons, it is important for you to be aware of when a client needs not just astrological counseling but actual therapy. This is not difficult to determine.

When you have the first reading or counseling session with a client, in that hour or so, you are pointing out what you can, astrologically, about their chart. They are taking it in, and will take it home and digest it—thinking it through. You are pointing out what you see, and they

## Astrology as a Business

are absorbing what they can of it. This is all straightforward.

Where it can become complicated is when additional sessions are required. Astrologers do have follow-up sessions, but they should not (in my experience) take place for some period of time after the initial reading—for a matter of months after, at least. If you receive a call from a client, let's say a week after their first reading, and they want to have another one, this is a sign they may need a special kind of session, one which will be more like therapy.

For one, you have just met with them and may not have that much "new" to say them only a week or so later. If this is their way of saying that they liked the whole experience of the reading, or they can't remember what you told them, this is perhaps a sign that repeated sessions may be needed—something like therapy.

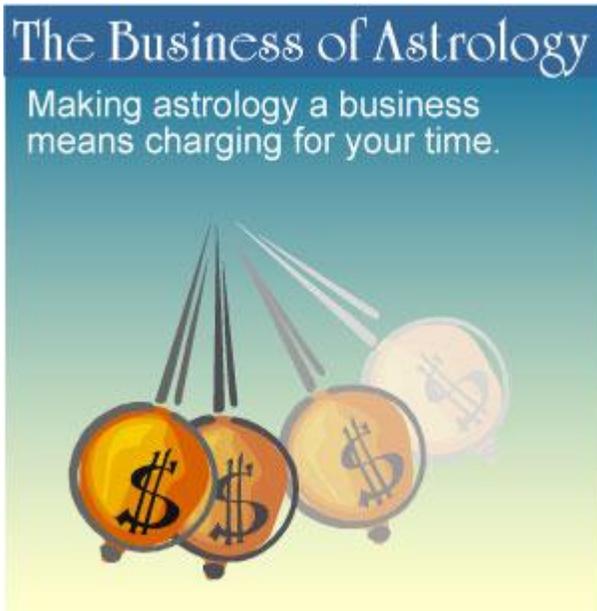
They may also want to repeat the experience just because they liked it and also have plenty of discretionary income. We all know that you can't repeat anything exactly the same. First and fresh go together. If you do have another session, in the same time period, you can count on it being different from the first one.

For myself, I don't do this kind of therapeutic work. You may think or feel differently. I point out, in that first reading session, what I can, and make sure they take it in—and that is it. The client must decide what to do with this information, and take it from there. If they want to come right back, I have nothing very different to tell them a week or a month later; and, whatever cathartic experience they had the first time usually cannot be repeated so soon. This is when I tell them that what they actually may need is therapy—repeated doses of whatever it is they are looking for. I typically recommend

## Astrology as a Business

them to an astrologer who does these types of repeated sessions, or, to an actual therapist. I often recommend the latter.

Therapy is not something negative, but it is somewhat laborious, a going over and over again of the same material, with little improvement being made each session. You will have to decide if you want to do this kind of work or not. I tend not to.



### **Setting up a Business**

When astrology becomes a business, our business, we had best become more businesslike. If you have taken the plunge and turned professional, how do you make a living with astrology? This is a good question.

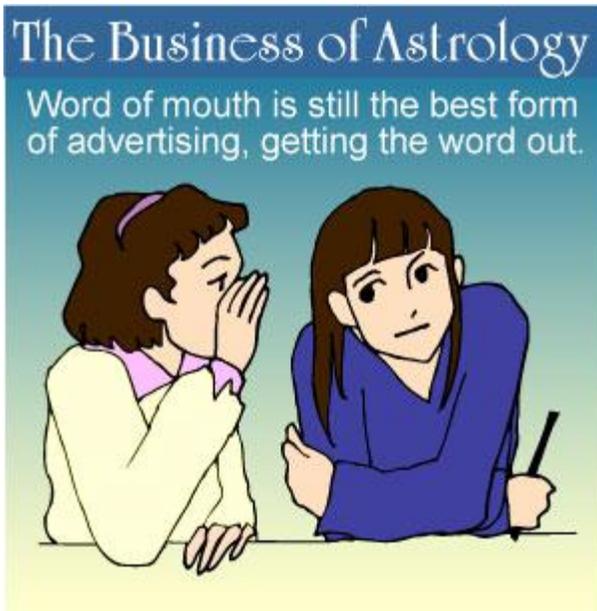
I must tell you that, as a group, astrologers tend to be on the lower end of the economic scale. Years ago, when I first went to a bank to take out a loan, to buy my first programmable calculator, I was told by the loan

## Astrology as a Business

department that astrologers appear just above migrant workers on their list of loan risks. That was sobering.

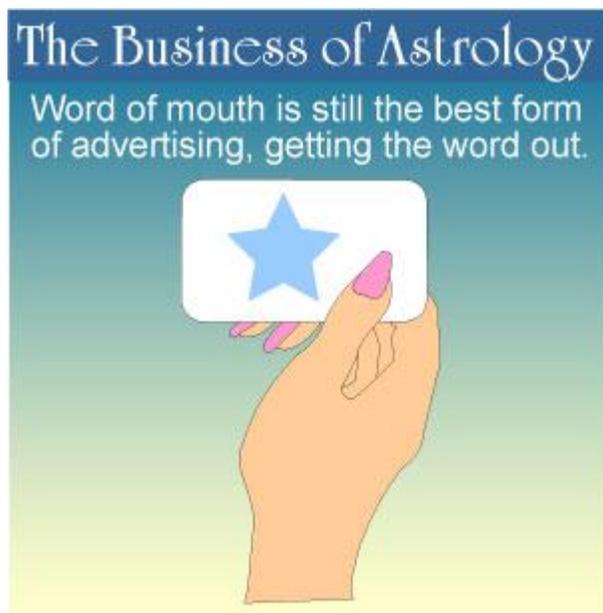
In other words, in this society, astrology is not considered a 'right livelihood'. It is well off the beaten path. This is not true in Asian societies, such as in India and Tibet, where it is perfectly proper to be an astrologer. An astrologer is a respected person in their societies. Not so in the West. Astrologers are considered fortune tellers here, and fortune tellers are, in the popular mind, akin to gypsies, and gypsies are considered...well, you get the idea.

My point here is that you may have to do everything you can to build up your own business, and this is what we are looking at here—so don't mind me if we concentrate on how to make a living. So far, we have discussed your office, and whatever private space you have and can use to have your consultations in. Now, let's look at different ways astrologers can make income.



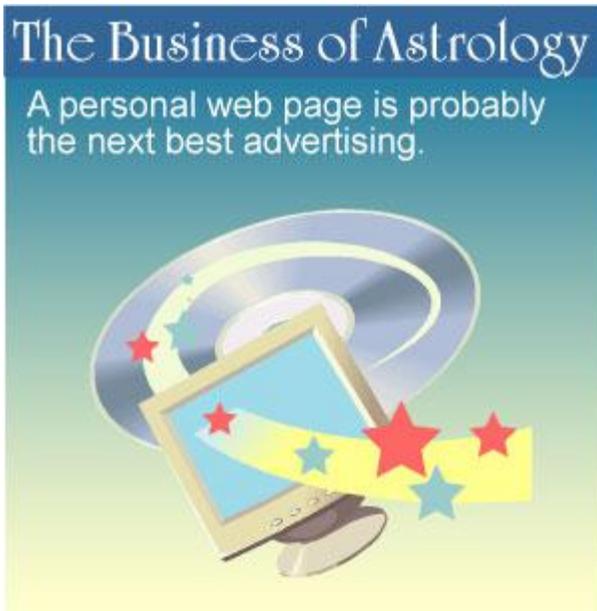
### **Word of Mouth**

You know what I am going to say. Word of mouth is still, and by far, the best form of advertisement, and the price is right. If you take good care of your clients, giving them the best you have every time, and helping them get a handle on their lives, they will do your advertising for you. This is as good as it gets. In lieu of this, you can work with other forms of advertising.



### **Business Cards**

You need these, although they do not have to look all starched and white, as corporate cards do. As astrologers, we can take liberties with color, design, and even shape, but an easy-to-read and pleasing-to-the-eye card is important, and can be used in many situations—as I assume you already know. You can give one (or several) to each client, you can give them to people you meet, and you can leave little stacks of them in metaphysical bookstores, food co-ops, and so on. This is a no-brainer: be sure to put your email address and web page URL on the card.



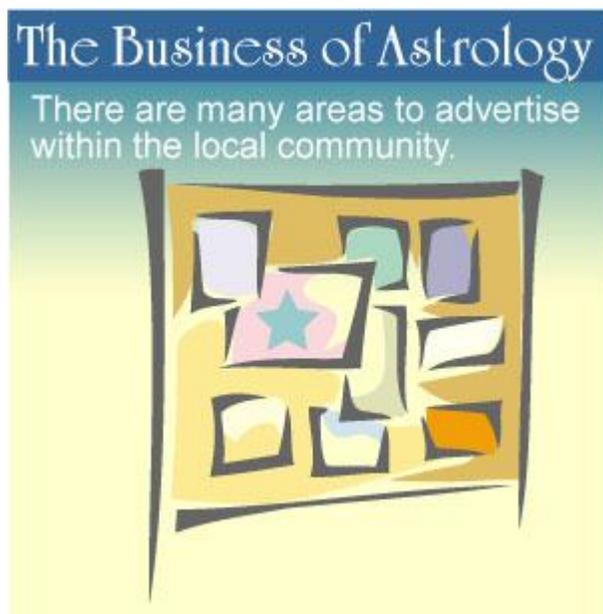
### **Your Web Page**

Perhaps there is no more inexpensive advertising available today than that of having your own web page. Web page services are available for \$10 or less a month. For that money, you can put up one or dozens of full-color pages, telling anyone about yourself, your background in astrology, your qualifications and history. Then, all you need to do is get the URL—the web page address—into people’s hands, and this should be on your business card.

Most of us have a friend who could help us design and implement a simple web page, and many services have a do-it-yourself web page kit that you can just follow along. Before web pages, most of us had to struggle to create various 4-color printed pieces that were always out of date by the time we could afford to print more. With a personal web page, one can have and keep everything up to date; and there are other free services

## Astrology as a Business

available, such as "MySpace.com" which can also be used as advertising tools.



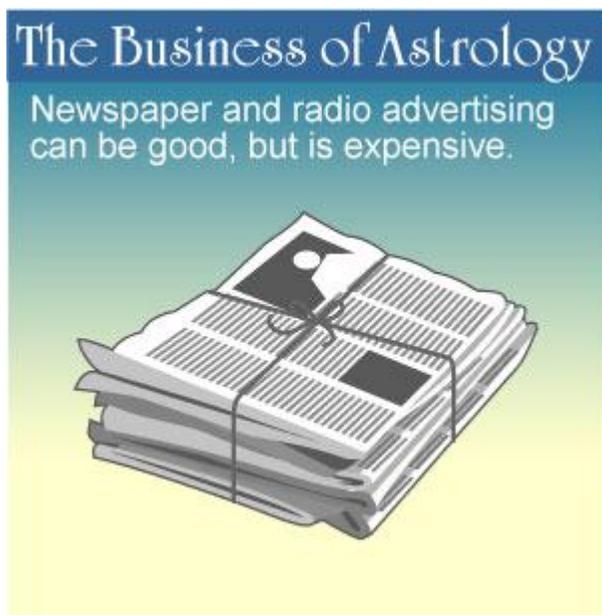
### **Other Advertising**

Advertising can be very expensive, so take advantage of the many inexpensive ways to get your name around. Health food stores, clinics, coffee shops, groceries, bookstores, libraries, etc. often have bulletin boards or other areas where you can post flyers—with their blessings. If you post them anywhere without permission, they may be torn down as fast as you can put them up.

Also, many colleges have authorized spaces for flyers, and some (for a small fee) will even take a stack of your flyers and post them for you. Be respectful of where you post, because it is your name that is going up, and, if you post where you are not wanted, they know just where to find you—at the least, they will take note of who is posting against their wishes.

## Astrology as a Business

Whatever form of flyer or circular you post, be sure to take care in designing it. If it is in a loose scrawl—as lost-cat flyers often are—you are doing yourself, and astrology in general, a disservice. You can be artsy and even funky and still have good design sense—still look cool. If you are not good at artistic design, then pay to have it done, or barter a reading for some art work. One well-done flyer can serve you for months, even years.

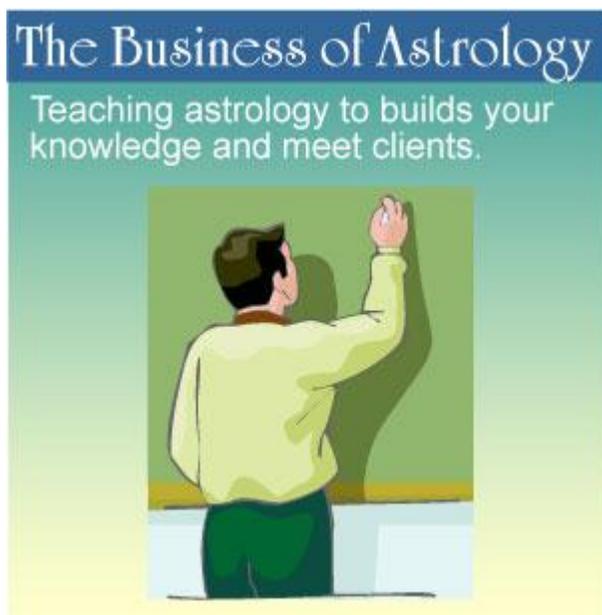


### **Paid Advertising**

Be careful with paid advertising, as in newspapers, and particularly with radio. It is easy to spend a lot of money and not have much to show for it. A small classified ad is not too expensive, and may do the same job as a much more expensive display advertising piece. With radio and TV advertising, be doubly careful; it sounds good and is tempting, but the cost is very high and it does not always pay off well—going in one ear and out the other.

## Astrology as a Business

Your resources, especially when you are just starting out, are precious, so use them wisely and sparingly. Remember, the best advertising of all is still word of mouth.



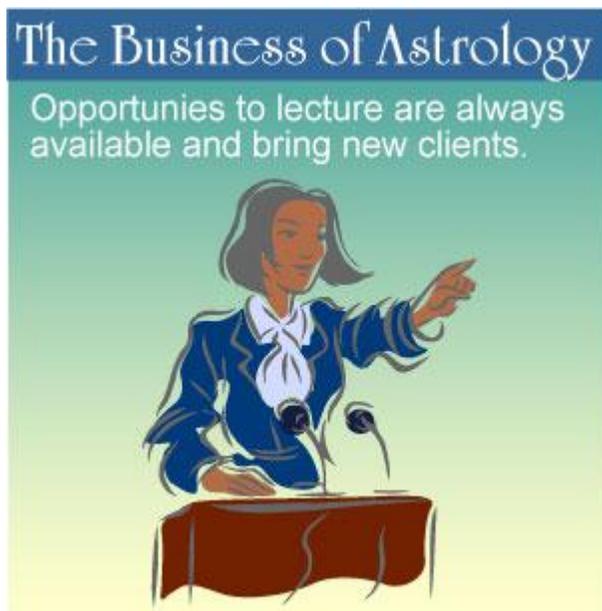
### **Astrology Classes**

Classes are another way to bring in extra income, and are also a way to meet new clients. You may be able to offer classes through the W.M.C.A., through local bookstores, community colleges, and through many other venues. I gave classes in my home for many years. Teaching introductory astrology classes brings you into contact with new people; it is also a good way to learn to communicate with others about astrology, to share the astrological knowledge you have.

Classes are typically six weeks in length, meeting once a week for about two hours each session. If you charge for these classes, which most astrologers do, it is best

## Astrology as a Business

to get the entire 6-week fee up front, no later than the start of the 2nd session. If you don't, you will subject yourself to the whims of people changing their minds, dropping out, putting off payment, etc. I have seen it all—trust me. Just have them pay you up front, after the first class. People's lives are too unstable to stake your rent payment on their unpredictability.



### Lectures

Over the years, I have given the one-off lecture at about every place you can think of: at colleges, high-schools, secretary meetings, various clubs—the list goes on and on. At these places, you almost always get a speaker's fee, and you also meet a lot of potential clients. Be sure to take a stack of your business cards, and don't be afraid to pass them around.



### **Newspaper and Radio Astrology**

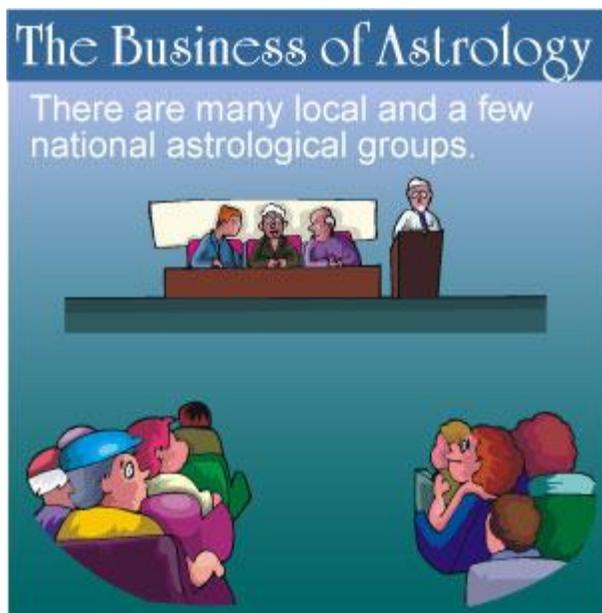
You may live in an area where there is an alternative press; there may be one or more publications that would love to have a weekly or monthly astrology column done by you, and you would have your name and contact information on each installment. I would not be worried about being paid for this kind of work. It is advertising you would otherwise pay for. The same goes for radio columns, which you might look for.

I had a daily radio column called "Star Time" in Ann Arbor, Michigan, for quite some time. Each day, they would play a recorded message of mine, describing what the psychic weather was going to be for everyone—what we call transit-to-transit aspects. I believe I did it for free—or for very little, but everyone in town knew who I was, which was the point. This reminds me of a funny story.

## Astrology as a Business

Some days, I would listen in when they played my astrology spot, just to hear my own voice. One day, I had a shock. As "Star Time" came on, I heard the opening music and sat back in my chair, ready to listen to my favorite astrologer. Suddenly, a new voice came on over the air. It was not my voice, but I could tell that this guy knew his astrology, and his voice was so deep and resonate compared to my squeaky voice! And, his use of words and astrology was spot on. I was crestfallen. They had not even bothered to tell me I had been replaced!

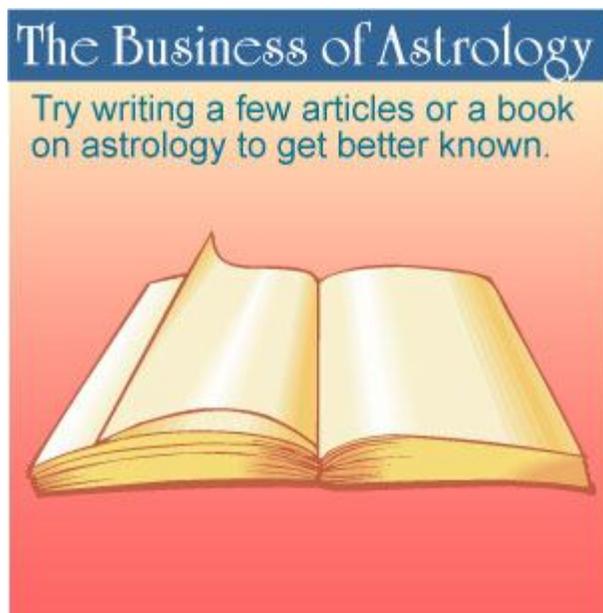
Of course, I had to call the station to find out what had happened—only to find out they *had* played my piece *and* with my own voice, but mistakenly, at a slower speed—making it sound like a completely different person—how funny!



### **Fellow Astrologers**

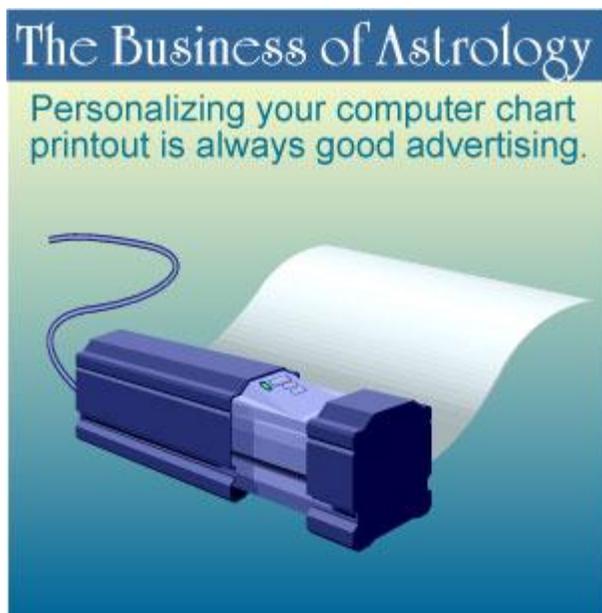
Astrologers tend to be on the lonely side, perhaps because astrology is not considered kosher by society. Astrologers, in my experience, enjoy getting together and mixing with their own kind. There are several national organizations worth looking into, including the American Federation of Astrologers (AFA), the National Council for Geocosmic Research (NCGR) and the International Society for Astrological Research (ISAR), all of which can be found on the web. There are also scores of state and local astrology groups all across the U.S., so, if astrological friends look good to you, check these out. Most of them hold some sort of convention every year or so, with many more regional and local activities offered. AFAN, the Association for Astrological Networking, is another organization worth looking into.

## Astrology as a Business



### **You the Author**

If you like to write, another way to become more recognized is by authoring articles or books on astrology. Even a short article for a local paper or for a news magazine can do wonders for your client list.



### **Your Computer Printout**

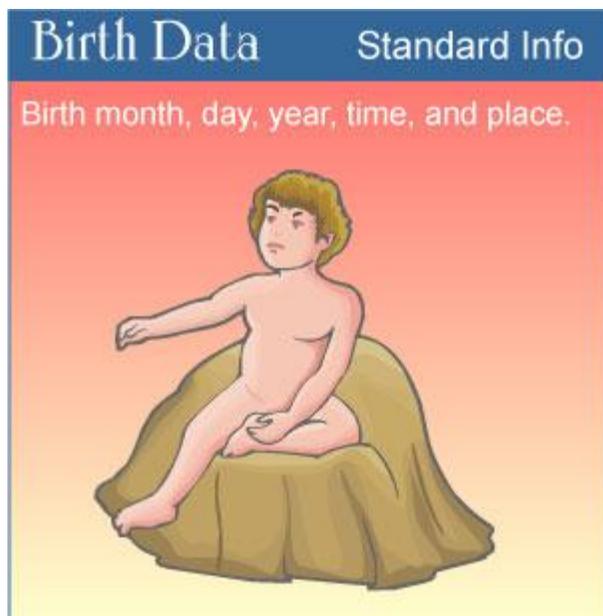
And, don't forget your computer printout! Most of the better programs have a place on every printed page where you can put your name, address, phone number, and whatever short message you would like. Every chart wheel and transit list you send home with a client should contain your contact information; you have no idea how many people may end up seeing it.

### **Summary**

In summary, if astrology is your business, then be businesslike. Pursue any and all avenues and don't only focus on whether you get paid. What you want to do is build up your reputation and get your foot in whatever doors you can. I know this may not sound very spiritual, but we have talked about the spiritual part of astrology elsewhere in this course. Here we are discussing

## Astrology as a Business

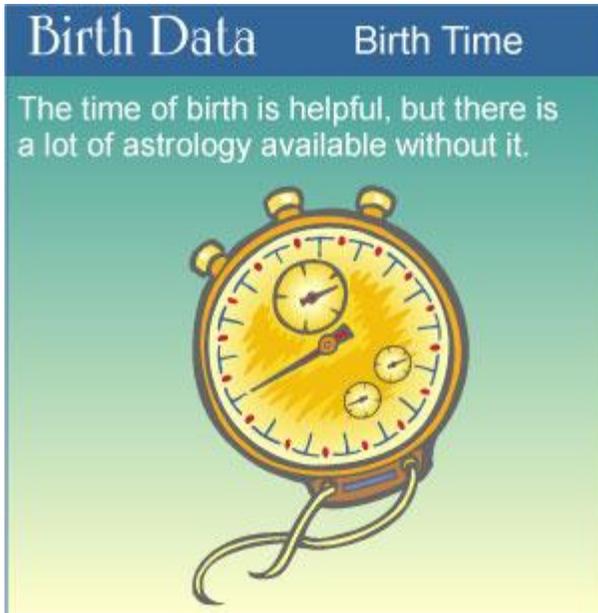
astrology as a business, and, as far as that goes—  
business is business.



### ***Birth Data***

The basic birth information you need to use astrology you already have, which is simply the month, day, and year of your birth; if you have a driver's license or social security number, then you have this much. I presume you know the place or town where you were born, so this leaves only the time of birth—what time of the day or night you were born?

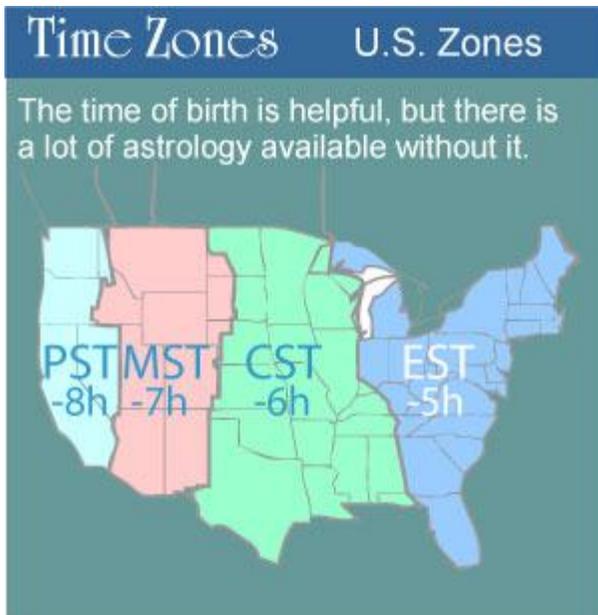
For many people, this is written on their birth certificate. If not, perhaps your mother or some other family member remembers the time you were born. How important is it to have your birth time?



### **The Birth Time**

A great amount of astrology can be done when only the month, day and year of birth are known; however, if you know or can find your birth time, there are benefits that accrue from knowing this. A birth time allows you to calculate your ascending or rising sign, that is, what sign and degree of the zodiac was rising at the moment of your birth. It also allows you to calculate the astrological wheel of houses for that moment, and provides for a more accurate position of the Moon.

If you have your birth time, great; if you don't, don't sweat it, for there is still plenty of astrology you can do without it; it would be worth the effort, however, to locate it.



### Time Changes

The various countries and cities on the globe are located in different time zones, so this is something you have to keep in mind. For example, my home here in Big Rapids, Michigan, is at the extreme western edge of the Eastern Standard Time Zone (EST). Time zones are referenced by the number of hours an area of land is away from Greenwich, England, which is used as the standard time marker for the entire earth. For example, Eastern Standard Time is five hours away from Greenwich, which is five hours earlier. When it is 7 A.M. in Big Rapids, it is already Noon in England.

Many computer programs automatically adjust your birth time for the time zone in which you were born, while others have you pick the correct time zone and/or put it in. We have four major time zones in the continental United States: Eastern Standard Time (EST = 5 hours), Central Standard Time (CST = 6 hours), Mountain

## Astrology as a Business

Standard Time (MST = 7 hours), and Pacific Standard Time (PST = 8 hours). This looks fairly simple; however, in places along the borders, between time zones, it can become quite messy, with one town on EST and another (only a few miles away) on CST. There are whole books available addressing just these variances.

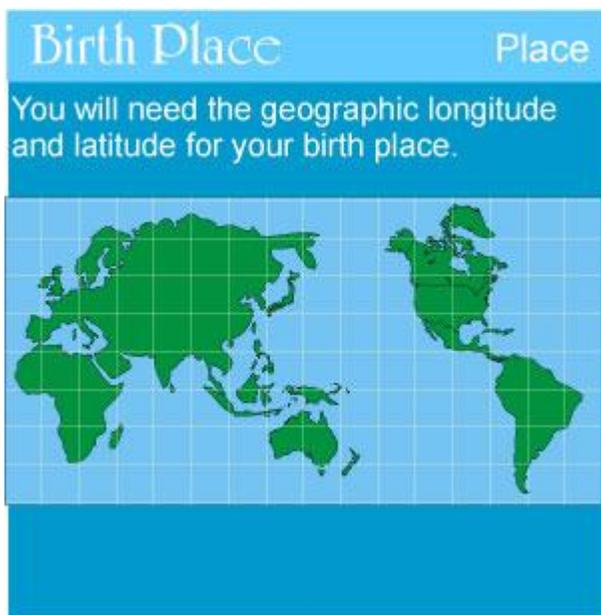


### **Daylight Savings Time (DST)**

Then, as you know, twice a year in the U.S., we turn our clocks forward one hour (in Spring) or backward one hour (in Fall). We have to keep this in mind. Thus, if it is Daylight Savings Time here, in the summer in Big Rapids, I need to subtract one hour from the time zone—so instead of 5 hours, I use 4 hours, and so forth. Many computer programs have a built-in time-change atlas so that all of this is taken care of automatically. For the rest of us, we have to keep this in mind.

## Astrology as a Business

Just subtract one hour from your time zone if we are on summer Daylight Savings Time, and leave it as it is if we are into the winter. This is pretty straight-forward for most calculations.



### The Birth Place

We all know where we were born, and, unless one was born on a ship, that location is pretty much fixed in space. Most of the popular astrological programs have a built-in atlas containing the geographic longitudes and latitudes of, at least, the major cities in the U.S. and those of the world. Using a computer program allows you to automatically select the correct town and coordinates. No problem.

And you can always look at a detailed map of where you were born and thus determine the geographic coordinates (longitude and latitude). These are usually listed every so often along the very edges of the map.

## Astrology as a Business

You may have to interpolate between two listings to come up with the approximate location, but this is fairly easy to do.

The location or birth place is a fixed spot on earth, and this spot is used to calculate the rising sign and astrological houses.

Time Zones		World
Here are the major time zones for the world, as measured from Greenwich, UK		
0 GMT Greenwich	-12 IDL Dateline	
- 1 WAT West Africa	+11 Magadan	
- 2 AT Azores	+10 GST Australia	
- 3 Brasil	+ 9 JST Japan	
- 4 NST Atlantic	+ 8 CCT China	
- 5 EST Eastern	+ 7 SST Indonesia	
- 6 CST Central	+ 6 USR Russia 5	
- 7 MST Mountain	+ 5 USR Russia 4	
- 8 PST Pacific	+ 4 USR Russia 3	
- 9 YST Alaska	+ 3 BT Moscow	
-10 AH Hawaiian	+ 2 EET Easter Euro	
-11 NT Nome	+ 1 CET Central Euro	

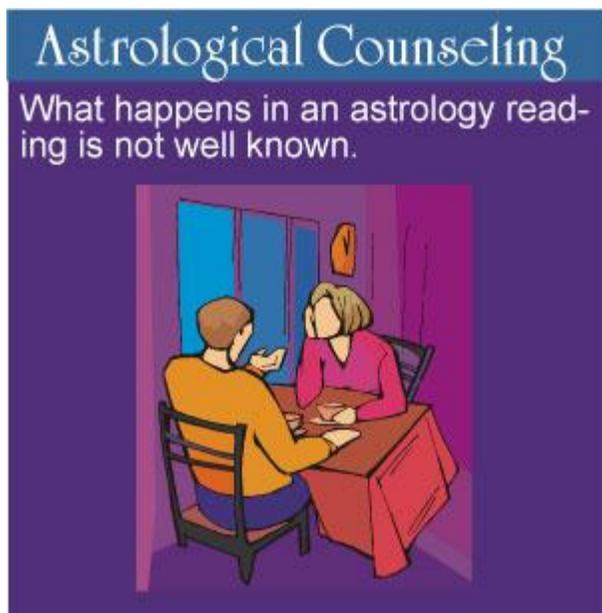
### World Time Zones

Time zones are measured from Greenwich, England according to one-hour intervals: hours are added when going to the east (toward Russia) and hours are subtracted when going to the west (toward the U.S.). This list represents the major time zones and their acronyms.

- 0 GMT Greenwich
- 1 WAT West Africa
- 2 AT Azores

## Astrology as a Business

- 3 Brazil
- 4 NST Atlantic
- 5 EST Eastern
- 6 CST Central
- 7 MST Mountain
- 8 PST Pacific
- 9 YST Alaska
- 10 AH Hawaiian
- 11 NT Nome
- 12 IDL Dateline
- +11 Magadan
- +10 GST Australia
- + 9 JST Japan
- + 8 CCT China
- + 7 SST Indonesia
- + 6 USR Russia 5
- + 5 USR Russia 4
- + 4 USR Russia 3
- + 3 BT Moscow
- + 2 EET Easter Euro
- + 1 CET Central Euro



### ***The Astrology Reading***

Many professional astrologers make a large part of their income from astrological counseling or readings, and yet, in the entire literature of astrology, there are only a mere handful of books that even mention the particulars of the counseling process. The subject matter of what takes place in a reading is seldom discussed by professional astrologers. In this sense, the reading process is, in fact, somewhat of an occult subject.

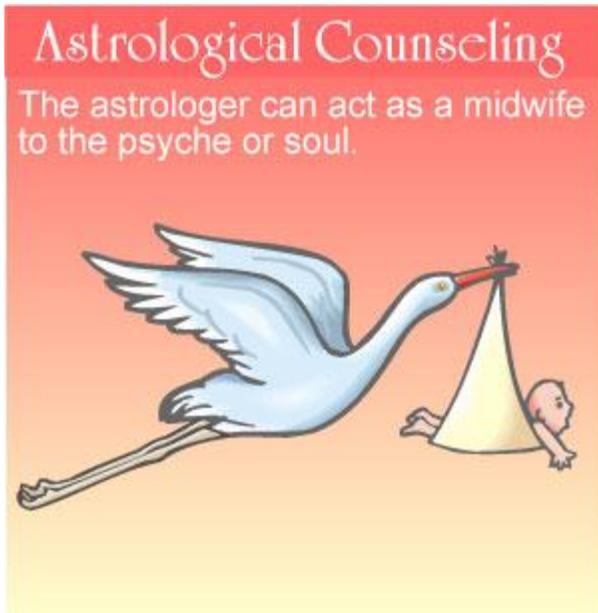
Astrologers are not the only professionals who offer readings or counseling sessions: psychic, tarot, and palm readers do also, not to mention those of the psychological profession. There are perhaps as many styles and techniques of giving readings as there are practitioners. In this section, I would like to describe what it is that goes on—or what it is that happens—during a reading, regardless which of the many astrological techniques are used. A very definite, and

## Astrology as a Business

quite a physical, process takes place through the counseling session, and insight into this process can benefit all of us.

Beneath the many words and social conventions of a reading something very akin to a massage is happening; however, it is the psyche or psychological body that is being exercised, not the physical. This process is seldom, if ever, referred to during the actual reading. Even though most clients are aware of experiencing a strong change, or release, the process itself does not often reach the conscious level.

The popular image or assumption of what happens during a reading is that it is the astrologer's role to tell the client something about his or her self, to give that person some information, to "lay it on"...and so forth. An even more common image or assumption is that the astrologer will be able to pluck from the client's most intimate life some fact that no one else could have known, and this will be a sign that the astrologer is a good one. This sign will guarantee the truth of the rest of what is going to be told to them! This popular misconception bears little resemblance to what actually does happen in the counseling session.



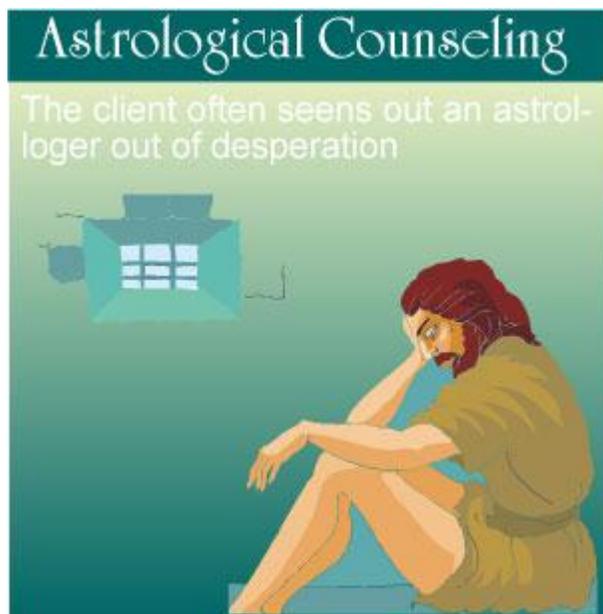
### **Midwife of the Psyche**

In trying to think of a way to communicate what does happen in the counseling process, I came upon what is an almost perfect analogy—that of a midwife. The function of the midwife is to assist both the mother and the child through the birth process. Her entire role is to facilitate a process that is already unfolding, rather than to initiate or do anything herself. The counselor or reader also functions as a midwife—a midwife of the psyche or soul, a midwife of the Spirit. It is not the function of the astrologer-counselor to embed or fill the client with knowledge, facts, or direction; instead, the counselor, as a midwife, can but assist in the unfolding of a natural process.

Keep in mind that what I am detailing here happens through or behind all of the social conversation and astrological technique that is also taking place in a

## Astrology as a Business

reading. The reading process can be divided into several distinct phases.



### **Locked In**

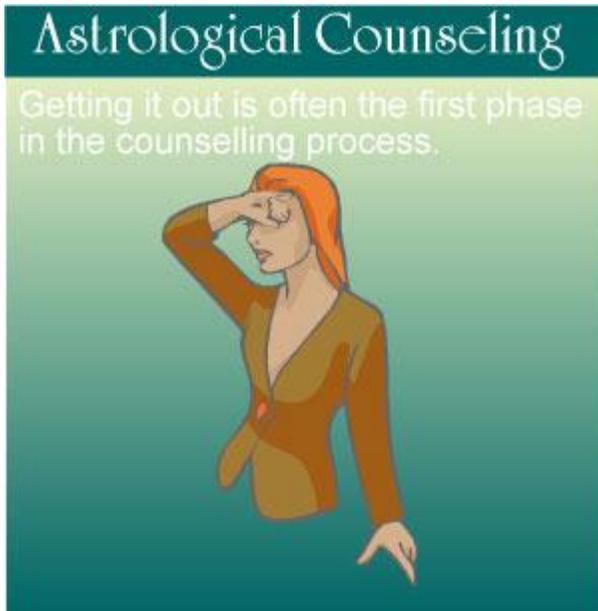
The first phase reflects the condition or attitude in which most clients arrive. Clients seek out astrologers when they find themselves in a state of inquiry (often confusion) in their lives. They have nowhere else to turn.

In general, clients find themselves locked into a routine set of habits and have forgotten how in the world they ever got in that particular situation. Their life commitments and circumstances have reached some crucial point and are now so confining that their lives appear to be rushing towards some foregone conclusion with no further options, opportunities, or choices left open. They are not only uptight, but most of them are at their wit's end. And, here is the key: they no longer can

## Astrology as a Business

respond to their life situation. They have lost their ability to respond to events—they have lost their 'response-ability'. The first step in any reading, then, involves dealing with this condition.

The majority of clients not only have lost all flexibility, they are often seeking to escape from a particular set of circumstances. They have replaced whatever flexibility they may have had with a series of "musts," ultimatums, or conditions that must be met if they are to go on: they must get out of this marriage, they must find a better job, they must find some sympathetic person, and so forth. Most are seeking release or relief from what they feel to be an unbearable situation. They have lost all of the appetite or "gameness" that once led them to take on their responsibilities in the first place. They have ceased to respond to the demands of their own particular set of circumstances. They have had enough, are fed up, and are in the process of shutting down—closing down their minds. Beneath whatever social veneers they necessarily have, this is the state of mind of the average client.



## Venting

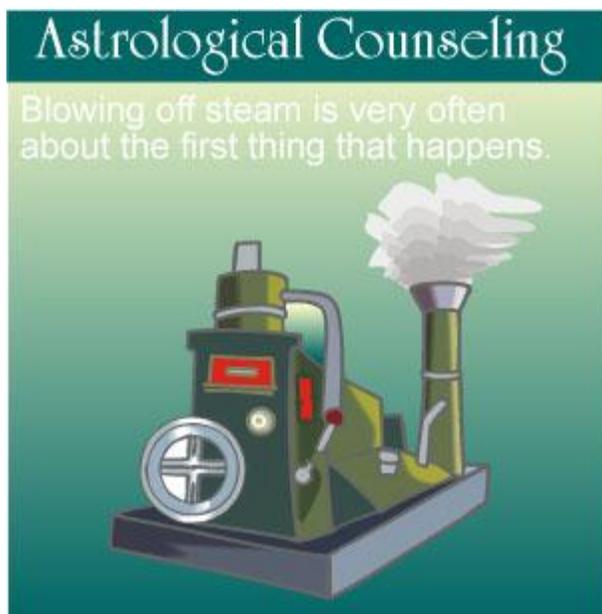
It should be clear why the first stage of most readings involves allowing the client to vent some of this pent-up material. Criticism, complaints, and outrage are at a peak here. The air can be filled with complaining, criticism, and anger as the client expresses dissatisfaction—as he or she gets it out. In time, tears and welling emotions can replace these more acrid, bitter, and even venomous outpourings. It is very important that the counselor know how to facilitate this emptying process. The basic idea here is that the client has moved (in the life situation) from an open, game, and inquiring attitude, to a closed and concluding frame of mind. The client is passing judgments and jumping to all kinds of conclusions at the expense of the life process.

In summary, the situation that leads most individuals to make an appointment with an astrologer is a crucial

## Astrology as a Business

pressure-filled one; they are at a period in their lives where they have ceased to respond to the demands of their particular circumstances, and a place where they cannot seem to gain any reflection pertaining to their present condition. They no longer know what is happening to them, and they are reaching outside of themselves for a response, for some feedback, or for confirmation (one way or another) as to what is going on.

The important thing to note here is that, in the majority of cases, the clients are at a breaking point or turning point in their lives: something has to give since they have nothing more to give—and since they have ceased to respond to their conditions. They are at the point of saying, "the hell with it," and are forcing themselves (or perhaps they feel they are being forced) to continue with whatever situation or responsibilities they may have. With some exceptions, this is the general condition of the average client when they enter my office. This condition dictates or defines my approach. The average client is in no mood to benefit from any "words of wisdom" I might have about the possibilities of their natal configurations. They are not quite ready for philosophy.



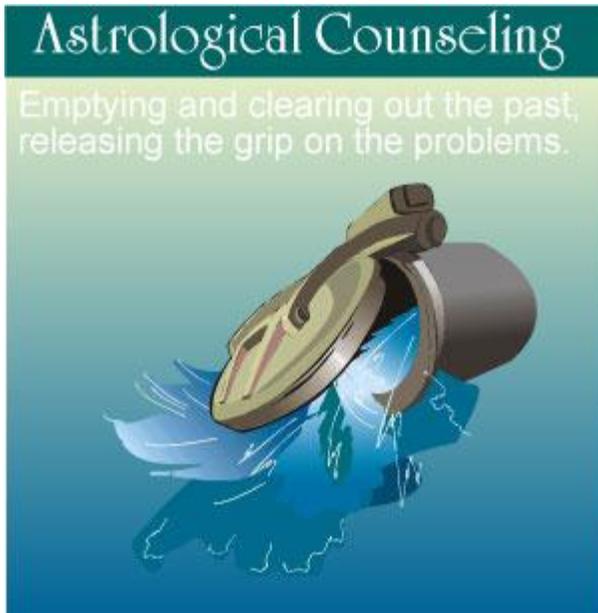
### **Blowing Off Steam**

Given these conditions, the obvious first stage in a reading is to allow the venting of this pressure. Let them blow off some steam. The last thing clients need at this point is for me to put something else on them. What I do at this point is ask the clients to detail the general questions or areas of their lives (and selves) in which they would like me to work. What I am saying is, the sub-text is— "talk a bit." My concern is to get them talking, and to let them talk long enough to unload some of this built-up pressure. As a rule, I do not confront the client at this point with any particular demands—I don't question them. They may describe several areas of interest, some of which are obviously filled with intense concern; I do not, however, focus on these areas at this point, but instead pass over them. I acknowledge each question and area of interest and then pass on. I wait. By not confronting them in regard to the areas of real

## Astrology as a Business

intensity, by offering them no resistance, I do not enforce whatever defensiveness they may feel or expect.

For example, I am not opposing their decision to leave their husbands and children and run off with the local musician. I am not shocked that they cheat on their wives or admit to having hit their children. I am taking it all in and just accepting what they are presenting me with—and that's all. When they push, I give. In general, my passiveness, or listening to, has the effect of drawing them out further—often in a bitter criticism, complaints, and so on. My lack of opposition or resistance tends to induce them to spill out even more than they ever intended, and this spilling out and over is very important. It also marks the end of the first stage of a reading.



### **Getting It All Out**

Some of the reasons for the above process should be clear. Clients have been under great pressure, and, as often as not, are very defensive of their right to do whatever they are doing—or thinking of doing: "I'm going to leave my kids and no one is going to say otherwise." They have lost their balance and flexibility and have replaced these with a hard, resistant attitude. They are desperate to some degree. When I don't oppose them, but instead accept whatever they say, this tends to throw them off balance, and the result is an even greater release or unloading. During all this, I am telling them nothing, and keeping our conversation to the social minimum necessary—astrological or otherwise—to assist in the emptying process.

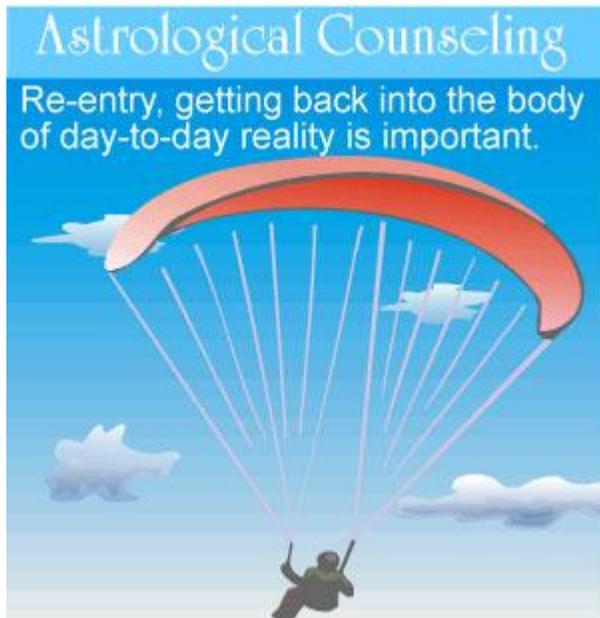
I can be talking all the while, but I am saying nothing. It is a simple fact that they are, at this point, unable to listen to someone else or engage in dialogue so long as

## Astrology as a Business

they themselves are holding their breath, so to speak. I am coaxing or allowing them to breathe out, to expire, and to let go of whatever it is they have locked onto with a death-like grip—whatever it may be. This emptying process takes about 10-20 minutes in most cases, but it may take an hour or more! The process must be allowed to take its course, until no more is forthcoming. Only when this stuff has been expelled or let go of will they be in any position for inspiration, ready to take a new look or get a new grip on themselves. Only then can I get their attention.

After this emptying has taken place, it is then time to begin to draw attention to the various areas of concern, and to ascertain the "facts" of the matter. The client has achieved some release at this point, has let go of things to some extent. It is here that a real dialogue can begin between the client and the counselor. Around this time, the bitter accusations and criticism often turn to tears and sobbing. There is a letting down—a getting down from the "high horse." At this point, something very interesting happens. Let me try to put it into words.

Clients have let go to some degree. They have stopped trying to insist on how it must be and are somewhat relaxed and kind of floating—somehow out-of-the-body in relation to their circumstances. They are free of the pressures of the moment. Somewhere about this time an event of great importance occurs.



### **Coming Down: Re-Entry**

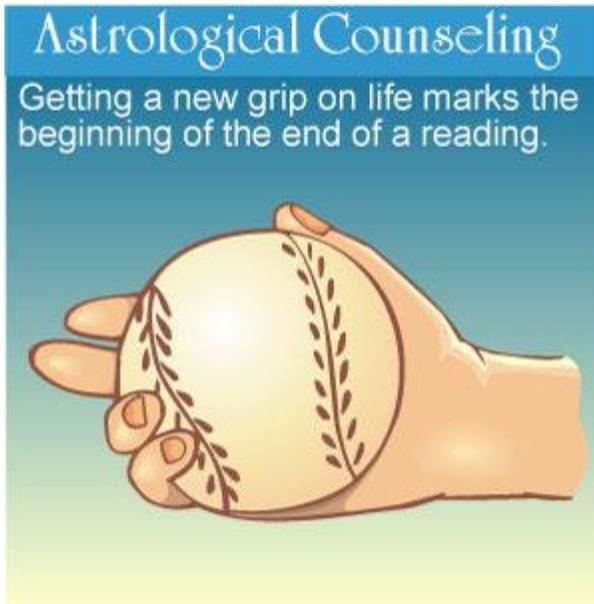
There will come a point in time when the client is no longer letting go or going out, but, instead, begins to return or come down. My teacher used to say, "We know how to take the rabbit out of the hat, but do we know how the rabbit gets into the hat in the first place?" It is not enough for the counselor to assist the clients in getting away from their problems. Getting some release from their situation is something the clients were dying to do anyway. Clients will also require assistance in going back—re-entering the body of circumstances that make up their life, and, in taking a new grip on those circumstances.

If there is any art to counseling, it is in assisting clients to take a more realistic or natural attitude toward their situations at the moment they come down to or begin to re-enter their bodies. The counselor can facilitate a better attitude or approach—offer a better way to take

## Astrology as a Business

these same circumstances and turn them to some advantage. It is not enough to help clients out of their circumstances onto some lofty plane where their life somehow falls into perspective for a few hours. As with the spaceman leaving and orbiting earth, about the only thing that is absolutely obvious when we leave the body is the body itself—the spaceman, leaving earth, sees earth as never before. What goes up comes down, and what goes out, comes back in.

When we stand back or get outside our circumstances, we have an opportunity to see our condition in a larger context. It is at this point that philosophical discussion is possible. And, it is here that the astrologer may facilitate a clearer or more comprehensive vision, and perhaps an acceptance of what is. It is at this point in time that some sort of insight or imprinting takes place. We can see well enough to set our sails toward more worthy goals, to assume a different attitude or stance, and to prepare to take our life in a different way. It is at these clear moments that we take or retake our vows, never to forget what we are now seeing. No doubt, for the client, this is a beautiful and favorite part of any reading.



### **Getting a Grip**

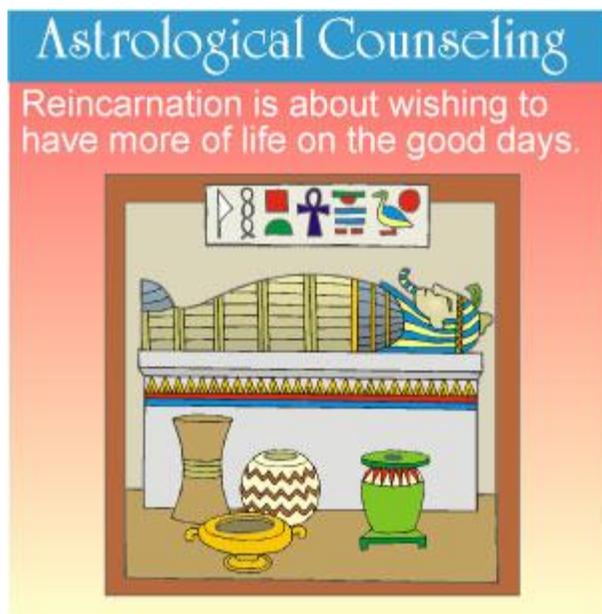
The resistance of clients as far as returning to their body of circumstances, and accepting their particular situation, will vary. At one extreme is the individual who has seen the light and obtained enough insight into his or her own self so as to again feel responsible for his or her own condition. Such an individual is glad to go back armed with this new vision. He or she can't wait to "have at it." However, there are many individuals who may require some form of therapy before they can come around to feeling responsible again, and able to take possession of their own affairs and life.

The critical idea here, is that the future of any client (any of us, actually) depends to a very great extent on what one can do with the present personal situation. It is an age-old maxim that one cannot change, or even work with, what one refuses to acknowledge, nor is one able to accept that which one ignores; so, the idea of what

## Astrology as a Business

takes place in a reading is simple: there is a letting go of, and an accepting or taking hold of. It is similar to releasing one particular grip in order to find a more natural one; it is like breathing out and then back in. This is what happens in most readings. The client is able to let go and suspend his or her hold on things, and then, is able to find a more acceptable attitude and perhaps a better way to handle these life situations. There is a release and a letting go. There is a new acceptance. There is a new grip.

We need to say something more about this new grip, this process of acceptance. Of course we mean self-acceptance, but that acceptance must be extended to include the conditions in which the self happens to be. The client must find a way to accept his or her very conditions, because this is all that he or she has got. This is what is happening. **We Cannot Change What We Refuse To Accept.** We must first ascertain and accept the facts of our life in order to change them. We must acknowledge their existence, whatever they may be. Acceptance is the very essence of what counseling is about. Not the acceptance of a lousy situation for its own sake, but the acceptance of 'what-have-you' as the only means or vehicle we have to alter that condition. We must *respond* to the situation in which we find ourselves. The crucial part of any reading has to do with this acceptance of what is and not focusing on what might be or what ought to be.



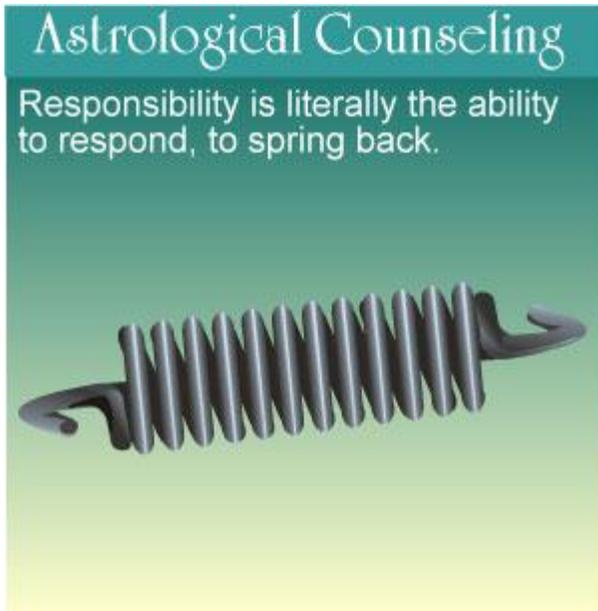
### **The Counselor's Role**

What is the counselor's role in this process? It is *not* his or her role to tell the client what to do. Clients must and will do what they can see clear to do. I am reminded of the Eastern religious text, *The Tibetan Book of the Dead*, in this regard. This book consists of a series of verses that are read by a priest to the dead or dying. I don't make claims to understand all of what it means, but what interests me most is that the text consists of a whole series of levels, called "bardos," which extend from the "clear, white light" of perfect understanding, through all of the shades of material existence, and end at the door of a womb, where one is ready for another birth. Apparently, each soul experiences this clear, white light in all of its fullness, but many souls are unable to hold on to this experience, and, instead, begin to slip back into their old ways and habits.

## Astrology as a Business

If the soul slips far enough, it ends up at the door of a womb, ready to be reborn again, and to face the same questions it was unable to grasp before. What is remarkable is that at each level the priest proceeds to assume that the soul has experienced the clarity at that highest level and has embraced this light, preventing any further backsliding—down through the bardos, toward the womb; however, at the beginning of each lower level and verse, the priest states something to the effect that if the soul has been unable to keep the clarity of the experience of the previous level in mind, then it will begin to have certain experiences—experiences that signify it has slipped into the next level, and is taking on the qualities of that level.

This is fascinating, because each of us goes through something like this in everyday life. We all experience cycles in our lives—cycles of ups and downs. When we feel up and clear, we can see the ‘why’ of who we are and why we are doing what we are doing—we embrace our life and retake our vows, so to speak; however, when this clarity fails or wavers, we often find ourselves slipping back into previous habits—habits which we thought we had risen from; then, we are forced to go through and repeat the cycle all over again. In this way, each of us is reincarnated in a continuous fashion throughout our lives. This is not something that happens at the tail end of our lives, but something that is happening repeatedly, right now—here in the middle of our life.



### **After the Release**

What does this have to do with the counseling process? After the release experienced in most sessions, clients are often free enough from at least some of the pressures of their own life so as to be able to see and consider their lives in a broader perspective. There is often a moment when they perceive that this is their life, and that they are the authors of it—the only ones who can do something about changing it; in other words, they accept or respond to what is happening and become more responsible. The counselor, similar to the priest reading *The Tibetan Book of the Dead*, may be in a position to facilitate an acceptance of what the client now sees. It is here that the astrologer may describe some of the many possibilities the natal configurations suggest. If the client is, for some reason, unable to grasp and use these opportunities to accept his or her actual situation for what it is, or, if he or she persists in

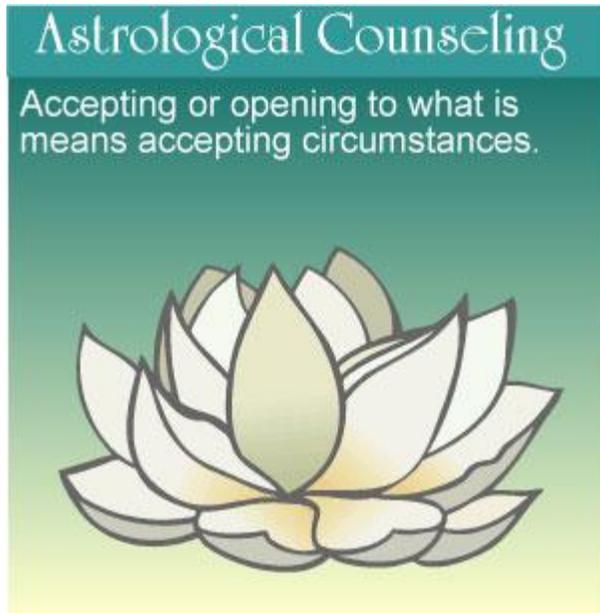
## Astrology as a Business

ignoring the real causes of a situation, then the counselor can proceed to read from the next level of alternatives.

Let me give an example:

Let's say a man wants to leave his wife and family because he feels he is in a one-way rut leading toward the grave, a permanent situation out of which he may never extract himself (not uncommon these days). In the first stage of the reading, he empties himself of all his anger and of the complaints he has about his wife and the impossibility of his situation. When he has let go of all this and is able to take another look at what is going on, he may have an opportunity to perceive that this is "his" wife and "his" situation, and that the situation is speaking to him and giving him a message. He may be able to gain clarity, and accept the situation as one of his own making, and then work *with it* towards a better solution.

If, however, he persists in ignoring his own part in this, his own responsibility—if he cannot respond—then a variety of alternatives appears; he may, for example, continue to live with his wife in a kind of stalemate for the sake of the kids, or, they may agree to separate, to have affairs, get a divorce, and so on. My point here is that there will always be a whole series of various levels of activity which will appear, and what happens is going to be dependent upon how much responsibility the client is able and willing to assume. I am not saying that a full acceptance of a situation is the only thing necessary to change a situation into something else, but only that:  
**WE CANNOT CHANGE WHAT WE CANNOT ACCEPT.**



### **Accepting What Is**

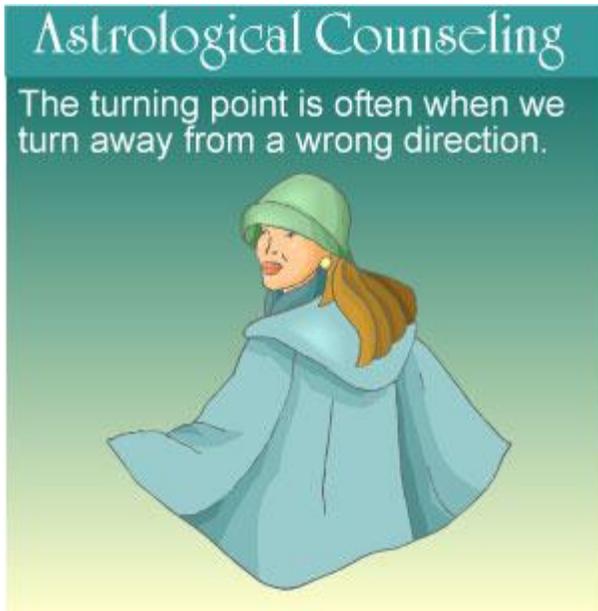
The role of the counselor is very like that of the priest who reads from *The Tibetan Book of the Dead*; hopefully, clients can see why it is to their own advantage to accept a situation and take their lives in their own hands, recognizing this as a necessary starting point in order to progress elsewhere; however, if a client cannot accept the situation 'as is', it is not the place of the counselor to pass judgment on this, but only to proceed to read and make clear the next level of alternatives, all the way down (if need be) to the door of the womb, and—using our example from above—complete divorce and the inevitable remarriage. The role of the counselor, like that of the midwife, is to serve and facilitate natural processes.

Once there has been release, the only subject worthy of consideration is the terms for re-entry or return. This is a matter of attitude or approach, and depends, to a

## Astrology as a Business

great degree, on the imprint or clarity that the client has been able to achieve through the process of the reading. A clear vision or imprint can guide one through hell itself, offering strength all the way!

While there can be no blame attached to the changing of one's life situation—leaving the husband or the kids, ignoring responsibilities—most experienced counselors will agree that, in most cases, this amounts to an escape, and a temporary putting off of a responsibility that will again assert itself. I cannot forget one client who divorced her husband because he beat her, only to marry a second and a third time, and, in each successive marriage, the new husband beat her even more! What's more, in each case she had attempted to find the gentlest man possible. Somehow, she had never faced up to her own fear of violence, and thus, seemed drawn to it.



### **The Turning Point**

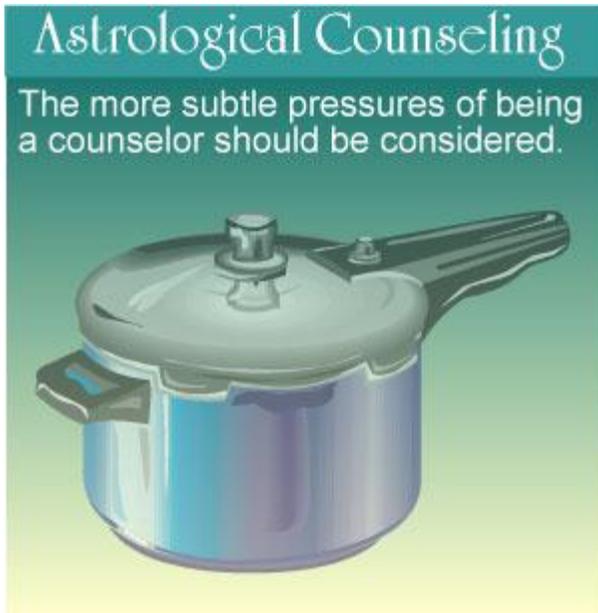
I repeat: it has been my experience that all readings have some kind of turning point, a point where what has been going out (as the tide does) begins to return or turn inward. It is this point in a reading I consider pivotal or crucial, and the rest of the reading can be seen as leading up to this point and moving away from this point. This is the moment of imprint or vision, and it is here that a deeper acceptance occurs, or, is ignored. This is the point in the reading when clients rediscover their gameness or appetite for life. Often clients become aware of how they really feel, and of their actual biases. Remember: astrology is an oracle. In other words, clients perceive that they are, in fact, already committed, and they accept this fact. The reading is effectively over at this point, for the client has managed to begin to respond again and take possession of his or her own self and life situation. They are off life support! Although

## Astrology as a Business

most readings do proceed on for some additional time, nothing of equal importance will be achieved. It is all over but for the talking! I get the impression that the clients are back in their drivers' seats and are no longer struggling to escape.

When no such acceptance occurs, the reading is far from over, and you, as a counselor, have a problem on your hands. The client may require professional help, and even extensive therapy, before he or she can come around to accepting their situation. These individuals may be resistant to change or have a learning problem in this regard. What they might need is a repetition of this kind of session—again and again—before they can find acceptance. This is not the province of the astrologer-counselor, but rather of a trained psychological therapist. Often clients will benefit from experiencing the process on a regular basis. I seldom will see a client more than twice in any short period of time. If they wish to see me on a regular basis, I am usually getting along with them well enough to explain that what they need is therapy, and that they should be prepared to pay someone to go through that consuming and laborious process.

To me, it is a very simple thing that takes place: a letting go of and a taking hold of again. I should remark, once again, that this process takes place through all of the many words that are exchanged between the client and the counselor and with the help of whatever astrological technique found useful.



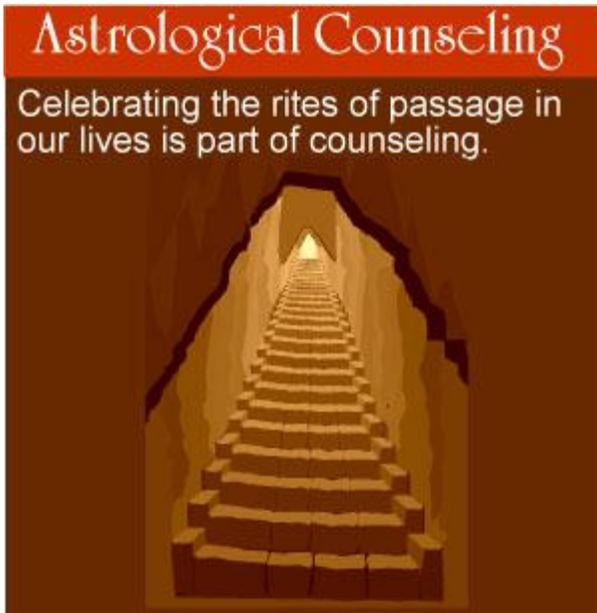
### **Pressures of Counseling**

Contrary to the popular belief, a belief which pictures the astrological counselor with a very easy life—making a lot of money telling people the obvious, the life of a professional counselor is not without its pressures, and even dangers. The counselor repeats the reading process with many hundreds, and even thousands, of individuals. In most instances, the reading is an important event in the life of the client. The client will not only consider carefully what transpires in the course of a reading, but he or she has every right to try and test these insights; moreover, the clearest of insights can fade in the bustle of everyday life. Often, the client cannot keep the original insights in mind, and may begin to doubt the validity of the insights, and perhaps of the entire counseling session—it may be more convenient to forget what was seen, or, the client may wish to turn

## Astrology as a Business

the whole reading around, looking at it some other way. We agree to forget what we find so hard to remember.

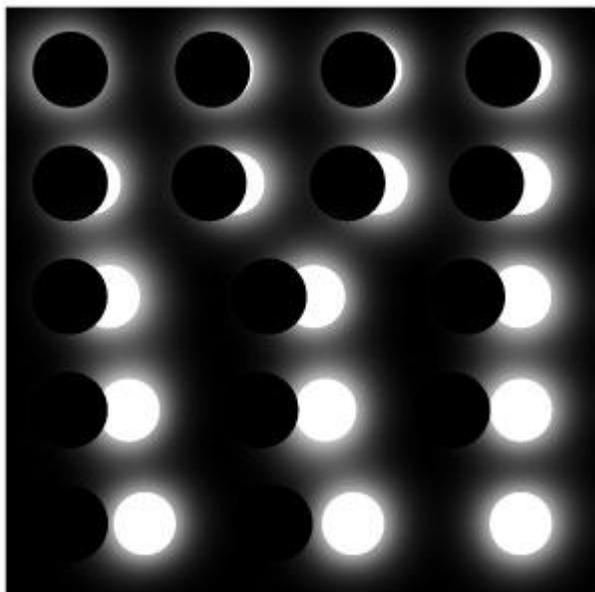
What I am saying, is that the counselor is under continual test, and even subject to attack, from dozens and perhaps even hundreds of individuals on any given day. The counselor is protected from doubts only by his or her own dedication to what is true or real. The counselor's only refuge is in the living of his or her own life, looking neither to the left nor to the right. I feel it takes several years for a beginning counselor to become acquainted with the various kinds of pressures and problems of this profession. Perhaps this is the straight gate through which every true astrological counselor must pass.



### **The Rites of Passage**

Another consideration is that, in these times, the counselor has taken on many of the activities of the priest or minister. One of the main functions of any counselor is to serve as a welcoming committee for souls coming through to greater self-discovery. There are very few refuges in our modern world where individuals can act out the rituals of the self. Again, here is where the analogy between the counselor and the midwife is so very complete: an individual just opening up and coming across into a greater understanding is as fresh and precious as any baby. Each of us deserves some kind of welcome, as well as an opportunity to act out a process as old as time itself—the process of self-discovery! The process of unfolding which is possible in the counseling session is very like the physical birth process. The modern-day counselor is, in reality, a midwife of the spirit.

## ***The Moon***



### **Eastern Astrology: Lunation Cycle**

The East seldom mentions the individual birth chart; their primary interest is in the dynamics of the lunation cycle itself, which they divide and analyze in great detail in order to make use of the opportunities it offers for day-to-day decision-making; in other words, in the East, the lunar cycle is used as a means to determine the kind of activity appropriate for each successive lunar day. There are thirty lunar days. This amounts to a form of electional astrology.

In the West, electional astrology is thought of as a means to pick an appropriate time in the future for a particular ceremony or happening, such as for a wedding. Eastern astrology also uses electional

## The Moon

astrology in this manner, but more often it uses it as a guide for day-to-day personal living and practice. Rather than a concern for what lunar type a given phase of the Moon might produce (birth chart), oriental astrology asks what is the current lunar phase good for. What kind of action is auspicious (or not) today? In India and Tibet, it is the lunation cycle rather than the yearly sun or solar cycle that is the primary indicator used for planning activities—and for personal guidance; in other words, in the East they live by and follow the cycle of the Moon on a day-to-day basis, just as we follow the Sun here in the West.



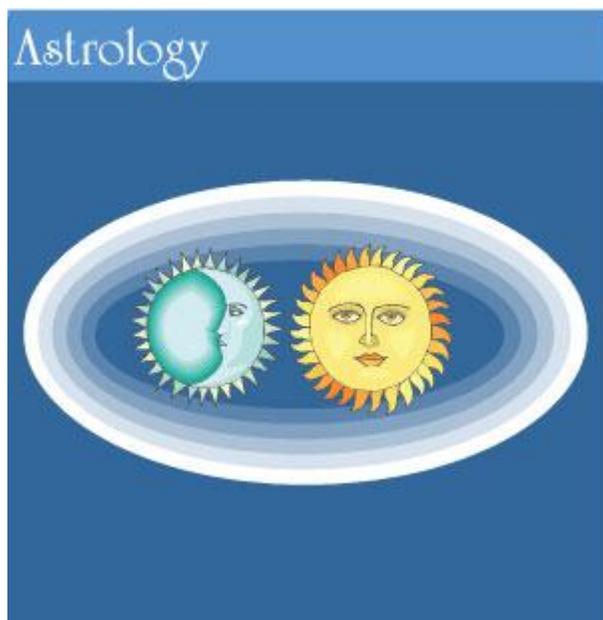
### **The Lunar Birthday**

A very clear illustration of this idea is the fact that, in most Eastern countries, birthdays are observed according to the particular day of the moon cycle (lunar phase angle) during which a person was born, rather according to the solar return (birthday), as here in the

## The Moon

West. If we celebrate your birthday in Nepal, we celebrate that phase of the moon (the lunar day, solunar angle) you were born in. Moreover, due to the fact that lunar months do not fit nicely within the solar year, a birthday in the East, for any given individual, can be up to a month away (during some years) from the actual date of birth—from the solar return—our Western-style birthday.

This simple fact makes it clear how important the moon and the lunar cycle are in these countries. A study of the existing literature on the meaning and use of the moon in astrology (East and West), shows much similarity, but also considerable difference.



### **The Cycle of the Sun and Moon**

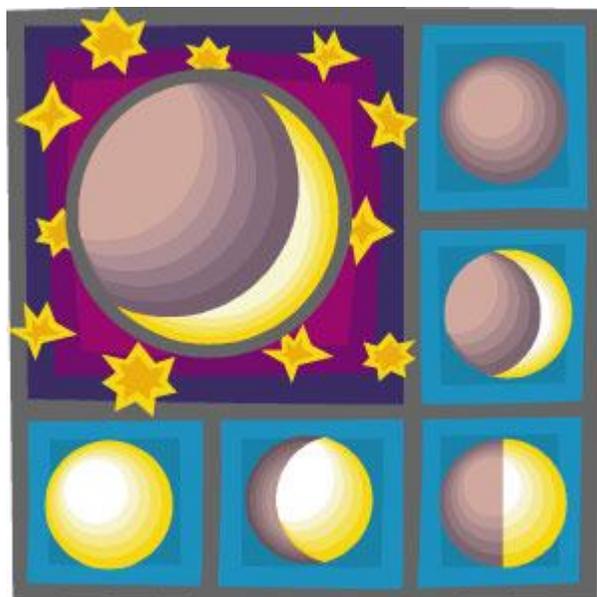
There is general agreement (East and West) about the nature of the lunation cycle: that it somehow proceeds from a seed time at the new moon to a fruition time at

## The Moon

the full moon, and so on. Tradition has it that we get an impulse, insight, or idea at the New Moon. During the two-weeks between the New Moon and the Full Moon (the waxing moon), this impulse or insight develops into something objective; we build it into something concrete; in other words, this seed impulse grows into something real and reaches fruition at the Full of the Moon. After the Full Moon, whatever we have built up or made manifest proceeds to break-up or dissolve, and we gather whatever experience or rewards we can from it; it breaks up during the waning two-weeks of the lunar cycle, from Full Moon to the next New Moon. Thus the endless lunation cycle, similar to the breathing of our lungs, goes from a collapsed seed point (New Moon) to a full manifestation (Full Moon) and back again. This is the archetype of the cycle.

The lunar cycle endlessly expands and contracts, bearing forth and taking back—creating and destroying. Given this fact and the tradition that has built up around it, those who study the lunar cycle seek to take advantage of this constant cycle and its very regular opportunities. In the West, this very practical knowledge either was never accumulated, never studied, or has been lost, it is hard to tell; my guess is that it has never been studied, here in the West, in as much detail as it has been in the East.

## The Moon



### Lunar Gaps

Although measuring time and life by the moon is ancient, it is more than just some primitive sort of clock. The very sophisticated concept of lunar gaps springs from centuries of painstaking psychological observation by the lamas of Tibet, and the Hindu sages. They practice this very observation today with the same vigor and intensity they did a thousand years ago. Unlike many other traditions, where the line of successors (lineage) has been broken due to various events, the dharma tradition of Tibet remains pure and unbroken to this day.

Although much of the Tibetan dharma tradition requires dedication and intense practice, learning to use the moon's phases, and the concept of lunar gaps, is easy to get into. The theory is simple.

It involves the ongoing relationship between the Sun, the Moon, and the Earth—the monthly cycle of the

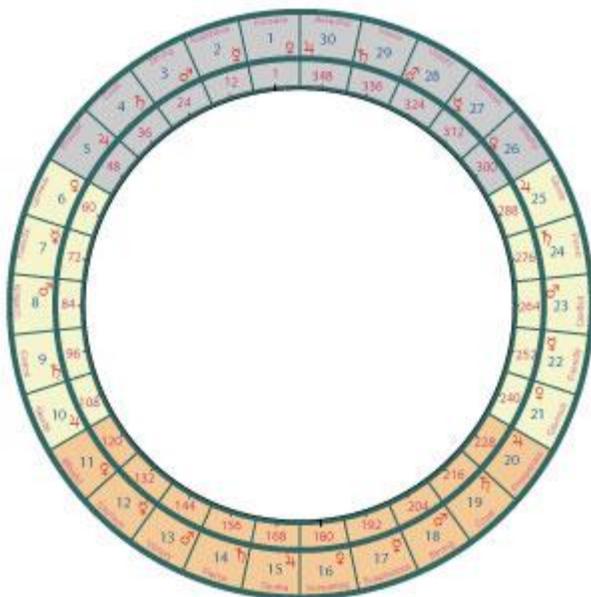
## The Moon

phases of the Moon. We already know about the moon cycle—we can walk outside at night and see which lunar phase we are in.

This is not the place (and I am not the expert) to describe to you either the very complicated astronomical motions these three heavenly bodies produce, or the profound theories of what all of this motion means in a philosophical sense. What is quite accessible is the concept of "lunar gaps."

As we know, the moon cycle goes through its phases from new moon to full moon and back to new moon, in a cycle of about one month—some 30 days. This is seen as an ongoing cycle of activity, endless in extent—it goes on forever.

## The Moon



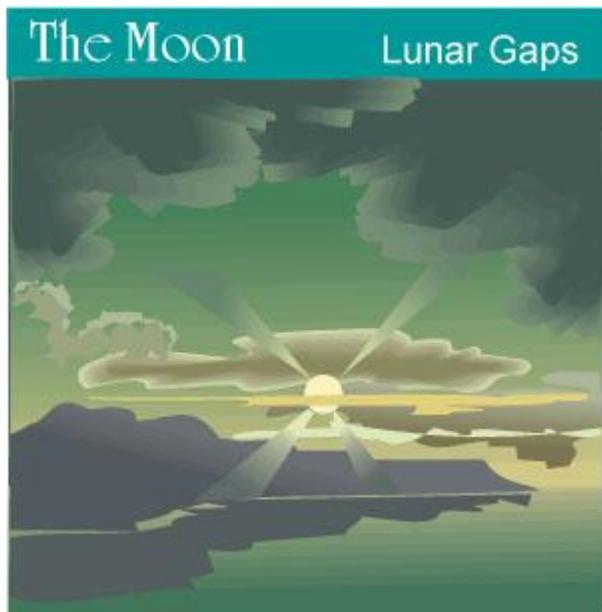
### Thirty Lunar Days

However, although the moon cycle is unending, it does have distinct phases; for example, the Full Moon, the New Moon, the quarters, and so on. In Tibet and India, the monthly lunar cycle is divided into 30 separate parts, called lunar days. There are thirty lunar days starting from the new moon (start of the 1st day) and counting through the waxing half of the moon cycle to the Full Moon (end of the 15th day), and on around through the waning cycle back to the new moon again.

What is interesting in how the lamas and most Hindus view this 30 day cycle is that the 30 lunar days are not considered of equal importance. The monthly cycle has very definite points in it of increased importance—lunar gaps. It is at these lunar gaps or openings that it is possible to get special insight into different areas of our life. In fact, the Tibetans take full advantage of these lunar gaps to perform very specific practices; that is,

## The Moon

certain of the lunar days have proven themselves to be auspicious for particular kinds of activities.



### **Moments of Clarity**

In the East, they speak of mental obscurations that tend to cloud our minds but that can sometimes clear up, just as the Sun comes out from behind the clouds. These moments of clarity are the gaps in the clouds. From a reading of the Eastern literature on this subject, one gets the sense that our minds and life in general, are perceived as being filled with the noise of our own problems (obscurations), making clear insight often difficult. These obscurations can be many, and their accumulation amounts to the sum total of our ignorance—that which we ignore.

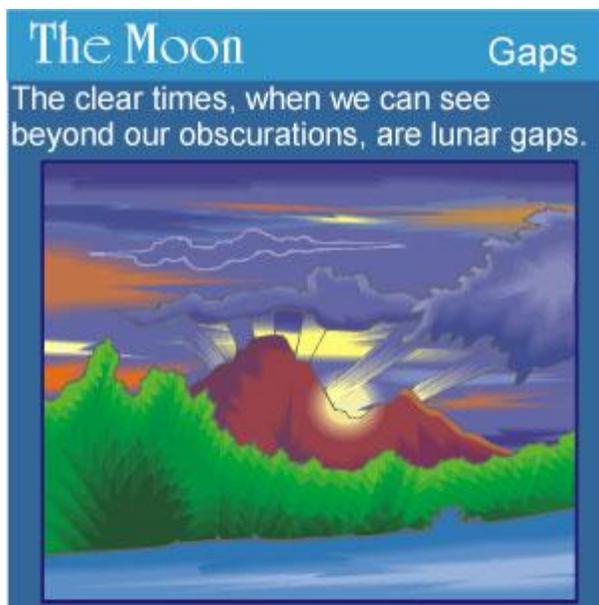
Therefore, in Eastern countries, these articulation points, or windows in time/space—lunar gaps—are very much valued. In fact, the Eastern approach is to analyze the

## The Moon

lunar cycle in minute detail in order to isolate these moments—these gaps in time/space—moments where insight into our larger situation can be gained. Much of the day-to-day practice in Eastern religion amounts to a scheduling of precise times for personal practice or activity built around the natural series of gaps that can be found in the continuous lunar cycle. In its own way, this is a very scientific approach. They have, in the East, been astute observers of the mind for many centuries.

Here in the West we are no stranger to days when our minds are clear—we have these too! The only difference is that we tend to believe that these so-called clear days appear randomly—every now and then. The more ancient and sophisticated psychological analyses of the East has found that these clear days are, for the most part, anything but random events; they have their own internal ordering, and oftentimes this ordering can be associated with the phases of the moon.

## The Moon



### **Summary: Lunar Gaps**

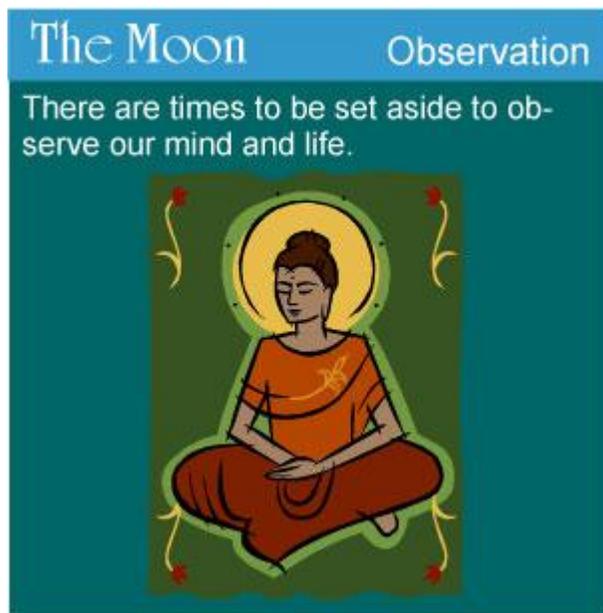
In summary, there are times each month when it is more auspicious or appropriate to perform certain activities or to be involved in one kind of activity or another. During the general obscuration or cloudiness of our minds, gaps occur, allowing us to see through the clouds; at these times, penetrating insight is possible.

As noted, times when one can see without obscuration (see clearly) are very much valued in the Tibetan dharma tradition. These are viewed as real opportunities for insight, and for the subsequent development that such insight generates. Knowing when and where to look for these insight-gaps has been the subject of study and research in Tibet for centuries.

And this has not just been the subject of academic research, reserved for the pundits. Everyone in the East uses the lunar calendar on a regular basis. Lunar gaps are used to plan a wide variety of events in the Tibetan

## The Moon

calendar, everything from finding a time to perform a simple healing ceremony to performing full scale empowerments.



### **Observation Times**

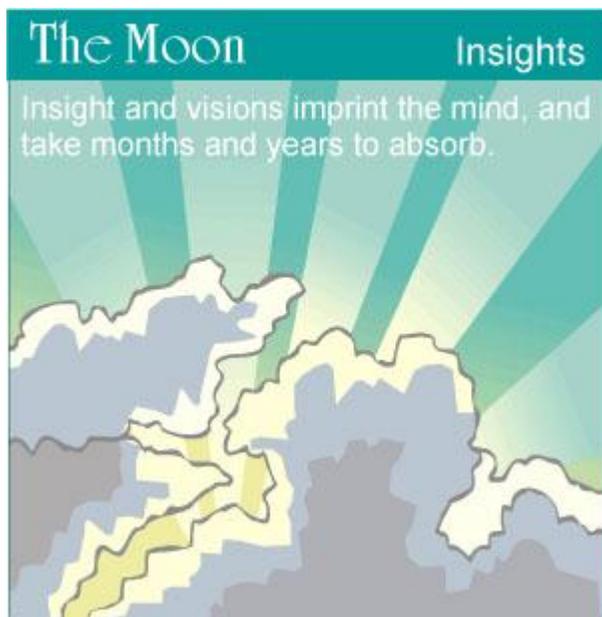
Aside from learning when these lunar gaps can be experienced, the other major thing to learn about this subject is: what to do when the gaps occur. As you might imagine, there are a wide range of practices, depending on the particular lunar gap (phase) and the personal needs of the practitioner.

However, in general, these lunar gap-times are set aside for special observation. Tibetans observe these days with great attention and care. In fact, in many Eastern countries, they don't have Saturday and Sunday off; instead, new and full moon days are considered holy days (holidays), and normal routines

## The Moon

are suspended at these times. These are days for observation.

This word "observation" is worth mentioning, for this is what takes place at these times. In the West, we might use the word meditation; however, in Tibet, there are many words that come under the general concept of meditation, so the word "observe" is a lot closer to what happens during these lunar gaps: Observe the nature of the day. Observe your mind at that time. Be alert and present, and set that time aside for just examining yourself, your mind, the nature of time—what-have-you. It is while being present—observing these seed times—that the so-called lunar gap can present itself. Many great dharma teachers have pointed out the existence of gaps in our life—moments when clarity and real insight is possible.



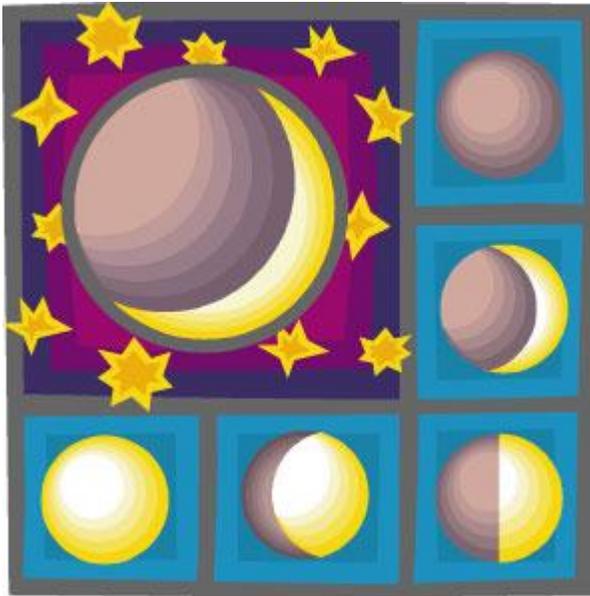
### **Lunar Opportunities**

And—lest we get too far afield, sitting there waiting for a gap in time or space to occur—let me restate: The gap that appears is a gap in our own particular set of obscurations, our own cloudiness. When such a gap takes place, there can be an intense insight into some aspect of our situation, and the effects of that insight will stay with us for a long time. One moment of real insight or vision can take weeks or months to examine in retrospect. Each time we bring it to mind, its richness is such that it continues to be a source of inspiration. This is what lunar gaps are all about.

At this point, you have, hopefully, some general idea as to what lunar gaps are and how you might go about taking advantage of them.

These lunar opportunities are sometimes referred to as gaps or openings—windows—in the otherwise continuous stream of our lives. These gaps are conceived as articulation points, much as an elbow is where the arm is articulated. They are natural joints or gaps in time/space upon which time and space turn, and through which it is sometimes possible to gain access to more information about the large and dynamic life-process encapsulating us. We have more detailed lists of these lunar gaps available, as well as lists customized to your particular location, including sunrise, etc.

## The Moon



### **Taking Advantage of the Lunar Cycle**

The phases of the moon have been observed for ages. The moon, from a Sanskrit term for measure, is the primary means by which the majority of people in the world (even in this 21st century!) measure time and the events in their own lives. This article takes a look at what astrologers (and ordinary people) have come to understand about the lunation cycle—the phases of the Moon; in particular, we will contrast the methods of the East and the West in regard to the use of the lunar cycle.

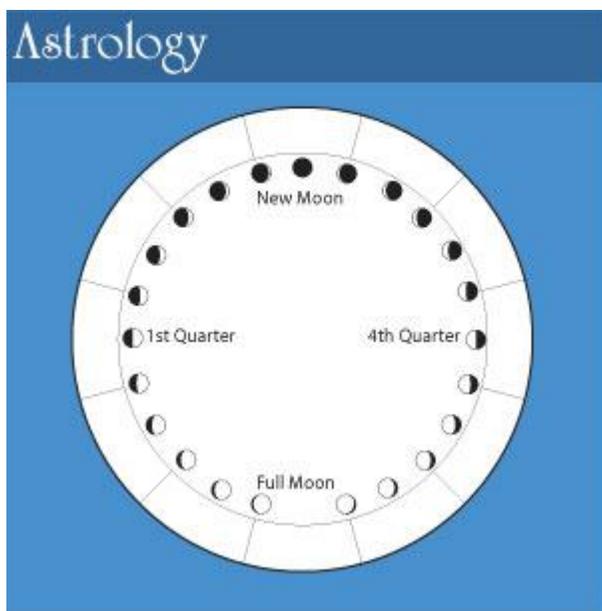
### **Lunation Cycle in Western Astrology**

Eastern and Western astrology use the lunar cycle in both the same and in different ways. In the West, the lunar cycle is most often seen as a key to the personality and to the birth chart. Although books such as Rudhyar's, *The Lunation Cycle*, and many other books as well, describe the cycle as a dynamic process

## The Moon

that unfolds each month, their focus has been not so much on the day-to-day process but rather on individual snapshots—actual various lunar types—taken from the overall process. And then, there are also books along the lines of William Butler Yeats', *A Vision*. This extremely involved intellectual study attempts to deal with concepts of anima and animus—the endless process of psychological self-projection and its resolution. Since this work is somewhat of a mental challenge, analogous to a tongue-twister in speech, the practical benefit of this kind of writing is questionable. In this article we will not deal with these highly intellectual approaches to the Moon, but instead, will take a quick look at the how the Moon has been considered in Western astrology.

## The Moon



### **The Phases of the Moon**

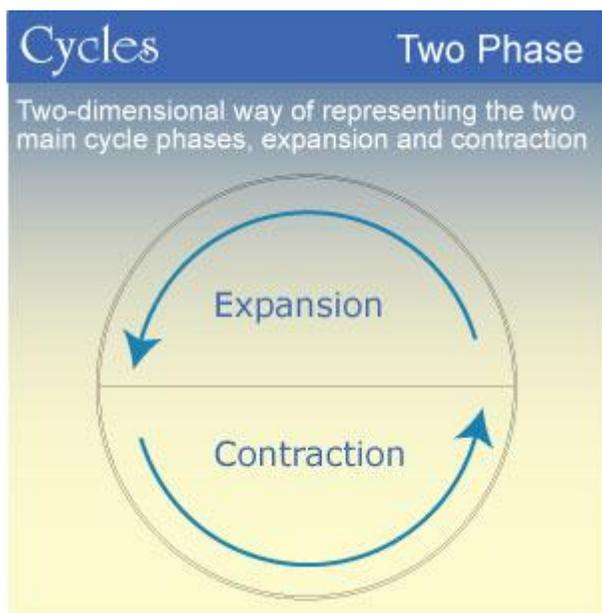
Here is a summary as any competent astrologer might present it:

The phases of the Moon are known to all: Starting from the dark of the New Moon, the phase cycle builds through the First Quarter and on through to the brightness of the Full Moon (start of Third Quarter), after which the lunar light begins to diminish. After the Full Moon, as the Moon's light starts to fail, arrives the Last Quarter moon phase, a phase which rapidly darkens until we reach the New Moon. The lunar cycle is perhaps the easiest to grasp of all the astrological cycles. It is longer than the cycle of a day and shorter than the cycle of a year—both of which can be harder to keep in mind.

As mentioned, the lunar cycle extends from the New Moon (Moon and Sun conjunct the same point in the

## The Moon

zodiac) through to the Full Moon (Moon and Sun on opposite sides of the Earth), and back again to another New Moon. The New Moon point is considered a time of conception and beginning, the Full Moon, a time of fruition and fullness—a time of experiencing. It is often stated in astrological literature that a seed idea, impulse, or insight present at the New Moon is externalized through the first two quarters of the waxing moon and reaches completion, or fullness, at the Full Moon. After the Full Moon, the implications or "meaning" of what was achieved through the externalization process of the waxing moon is seen—the lesson is learned, and preparation takes place for a new and perhaps more perfect idea to form at the next New Moon.



### Phase Cycles

Keep in mind that the cycle of the Moon resembles all cycles (that of the heartbeat, the breath, the day, the year, etc.). A cycle has a point of greatest inwardness or

## The Moon

conception (New Moon, inhalation-point) and a point of greatest externalization or fullness (Full Moon, exhalation-point).

Projects begun at the New Moon are said to reach fulfillment at the Full Moon. The first two quarters (when the Moon is waxing and growing with light) represent a period during which it is best to strive and build into reality a project that has been conceived—probably around the time of the New Moon. This is the time to project outward and ‘make real’ something we have visualized in our minds. We all have projects, be it a new effort, a new job, a new start—a new anything!

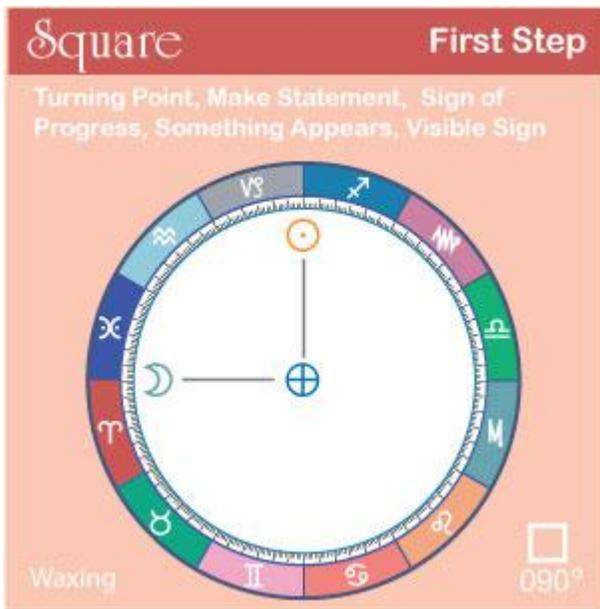


### New Moon

In the Western tradition, the time from the New Moon through the First Quarter is a good time for making the push outward from an insight, making our dreams into reality. The New Moon point is a time for vision and

## The Moon

involves a new seed impulse. This is sometimes called the solar tone.



### Second Quarter

The Second Quarter (beginning at the end of the First Quarter) represents, according to the tradition established by Dane Rudhyar, a crisis in action, a time when we must carry our new impulse or idea beyond the planning stage and into the sphere of action. This is a time when the idea breaks into reality and is launched. The First Quarter is a time to get things underway, to figure out how to make our dreams and ideas come true.

The end of the First Quarter and beginning of the Second Quarter marks that point in the lunar cycle where we are able to bring some portion of an insight or idea on across into reality. The Second Quarter through the Full Moon (beginning with the Third Quarter) represents the time when we achieve the outward

## The Moon

realization or actualization of what we saw or felt at the New Moon impulse. It is a time for physical work and externalization. It is during the Second Quarter that we put into our project the energy and material that give it substance and form.



### Full Moon

The Full Moon marks outward extension and completion of the project. For better or worse, this is it! If we have tuned into the insight available at the New Moon, if we have worked to that end, then the Full Moon can represent a time of fruition and completion. What we have dreamed of or seen in the mind is now real and can be experienced in the flesh. If we have worked at cross purposes to the New Moon message, then the Full Moon may bring home that fact as well. We can reap the reward of our misguided effort. Above all, the Full Moon represents an experience—a fullness, if you will.

## The Moon

The Third Quarter is a time during which we can appreciate, enjoy, and begin to reflect on the experience that peaked at the time of the Full Moon. This quarter is traditionally a time for growing awareness of what happened at the Full Moon, and for learning and assimilation. The Full Moon impact and experience begin to pass, and we find ourselves having thoughts about that experience. If nothing more, we sense that the experience is over and passing. Reflection occurs. We begin to grasp and appreciate the Full Moon experience, for better or for worse. As the lunar light begins to diminish, we start drawing conclusions of one sort or another—taking a lesson.



### Fourth Quarter

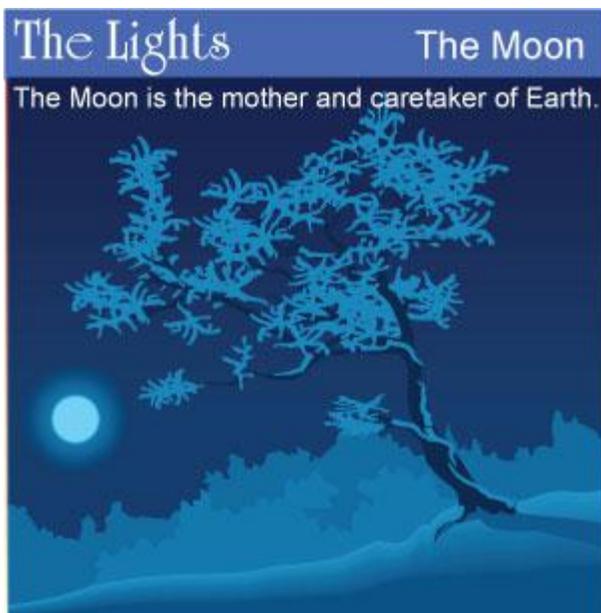
The start of the Fourth Quarter is said to mark a crisis in consciousness. The experience of the Full Moon is over, and we are left to draw whatever conclusions we can from it. It is during the Fourth Quarter that we prune and

## The Moon

weed out from our lives that which we have found, of this experience, to be no use or value. It is a time for constructive elimination and release. It is often referred to as 'seed time' and it is here we keep or take to heart the seed or kernel of the experience we had at the full of the moon. We are drawing to a close—both that experience and the entire cycle for that month. We are approaching another New Moon and the start of a new cycle and impulse.

Since we are dealing with a cycle or circle, there is no real beginning or end. All circles or cycles are endless or eternal (eternally repeating). The lunar cycle (phases of the Moon) is something we can learn to use. After we read about and become aware of the different parts of this cycle, we can begin to observe it happening around us. The lunar cycle described above in theory, is seldom experienced in such clarity in everyday life. Over time, we recognize parts of the cycle and learn to use them. We might find it hard to push or begin projects during the Fourth Quarter, particularly in the three days or so just before a New Moon; this is, however, a good time to finish up a project, or to clean up loose odds and ends of business—to draw things to a close. We could find that get-togethers, parties, and social events seem to come off well around or just before the Full Moon. We learn to take advantage of the qualities and opportunities of each section of the moon cycle; what's more, we don't have to wait to begin, since we are already—right now—in that cycle. What we develop, then, is an awareness of the Moon cycle.

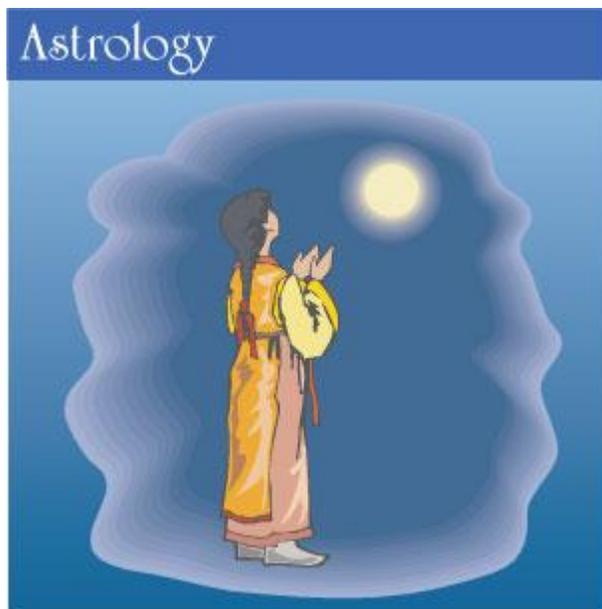
## The Moon



### **Seed Impulse: Themes**

An important concept to grasp is that the lunar cycle is experienced by all beings. The seed insight or impulse available at the New Moon is open to each of us. It is a global experience belonging to the entire planet. Although we may each take it personally and in our own way, it is, above all, a common experience. Each passing month, or lunar cycle, modifies this experience and, at the New Moon, presents us a new or slightly altered theme or impulse to consider—and there are endless variations on every theme. Any seed-thought or impulse somehow sets the tone for succeeding lunar cycles. The moments of New and Full moon are considered special. This is particularly true at the time of an eclipse.

## The Moon



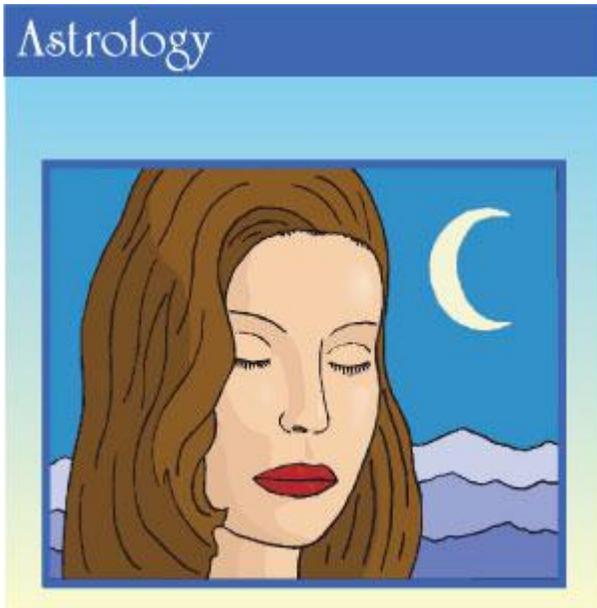
### **Eclipses**

Eclipses are simply New or Full Moons with extraordinary alignment or focus. They have been considered for centuries to be astrological events of the first magnitude. If we consider New and Full Moons to be important, then eclipses represent the keys to the lunar cycles of the year.

We mentioned earlier that the New Moon contains an impulse or insight that grows to fruition at the Full Moon. Eclipses, then, provide moments when extraordinary insight or vision are available to us. It is possible for some of us, at least at certain times in our lives, to experience what has been called the "vision of the eclipse," and to remember or keep that vision in mind. There appears to be a theme or principal insight connected with major eclipses. Let me make clear just what we mean here by the word vision.

## The Moon

"Vision" does not mean the fairytale dream picture we might conjure up; it is, however, related to this. A vision is a moment of extreme clarity or understanding, when 'in a flash' we know or experience something in its entirety. We take it in. There are times in each of our lives when we have vision—or see some intrinsic truth about our lives—about life itself.



### **The Vision of the Eclipse**

As mentioned above, there appears to be a common or communal vision that occurs around the time of major eclipses. While each of us interprets the insight or vision in a personal way, the theme or essence of the vision is a common experience—it is possible to share that vision. Although we all experience it at once, only some of us are capable of remembering that experience in a conscious fashion. It seems we are privileged to be consciously aware of the vision of an eclipse at special

## The Moon

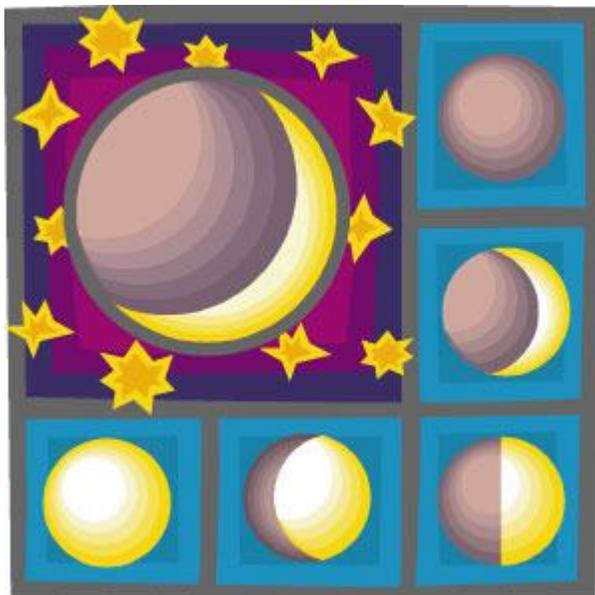
or crucial moments in our lifetimes—at times when we are particularly aware.

The message or vision of any given eclipse will tend to dominate our deeper or subconscious minds for months surrounding that eclipse. It is a peculiarity of these eclipse moments that they can happen days or even weeks before or after the actual moment of an eclipse. That is: the eclipse theme pervades the time prior to and after the actual physical event. Sometimes eclipses happen in pairs, two weeks apart. These are particularly powerful, and the whole time between these events can be a kind of waking dream—a vision.

Learn to recognize a moment of vision, for taking advantage of these enhanced moments of vision surrounding an eclipse can be important. If the point in the zodiac where an eclipse occurs is in high focus in your natal chart, then that particular eclipse may have special importance for you.

In general, eclipses of the Sun (New Moons) represent vision into the nature of our lives (ideas about life), while eclipses of the Moon (Full Moons) represent a waking experience or sensational event—a living in our own dream.

## The Moon



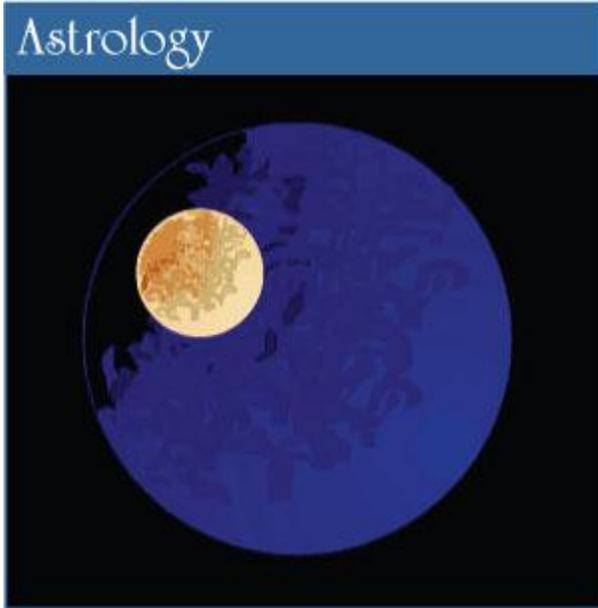
### **The Lunation Cycle: East and West**

The lunar cycle and its gaps are available to everyone, all the time. If we don't observe these special times, it is because we have not set aside the time to observe and to check it out for ourselves. In the East, most people are introduced to basic observation techniques, or mind practice, from an early age. It is unfortunate that mind practice is not much known here in the West. I mean, how many people do you know who practice observing or using their mind, anyway? Most of us assume that the mind is perfectly usable just as we find it, and that it doesn't require any practice, at all, to use it.

In Tibet, mind practice is not only acceptable, it is pretty much obligatory. And this is true not only in Tibet, but also in Nepal, much of India, and even in parts of China and Japan. In these countries, the mind is considered, by nature, to be unruly and hard to manage. No one would think of trying to do much with it without

## The Moon

considerable practice. Mind practice, or mind preparation or training, as it is sometimes called, is standard fare in the orient.

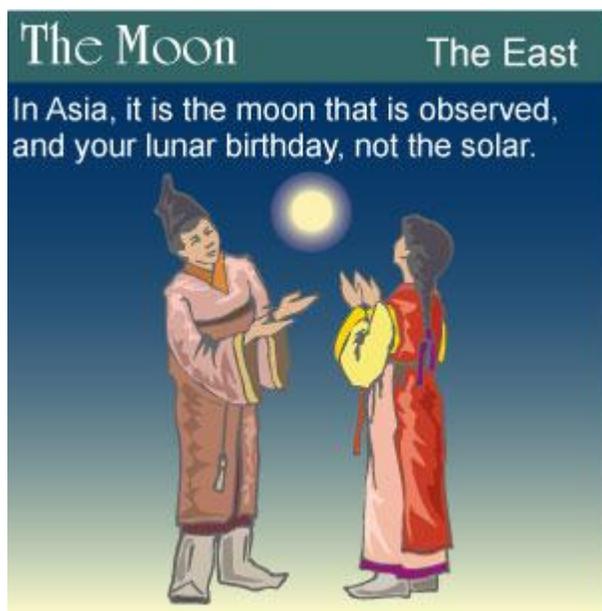


### **East and West**

We might wonder why this style of mind practice has never caught on in North America. In part, this is due to our whole take on meditation, and what we think it is. Meditation in the West has come to mean something almost like relaxation therapy—a way to relax and get away from it all, to escape from the worries of the world by the contemplation of some inner landscape. Somewhere, perhaps early in this century, the word meditation lost any semblance to its Eastern counterpart and became definitive of what most in the West understand meditation to be today—a way to relax and get rid of tension.

## The Moon

Of course, this method of relaxation is nothing like the Tibetan concept of mind practice or mind preparation, which involves the intense use of the mind. It is unfortunate that this very active mind practice has been misplaced under the general label of meditation here in the West.



### Gaps in the Clouds

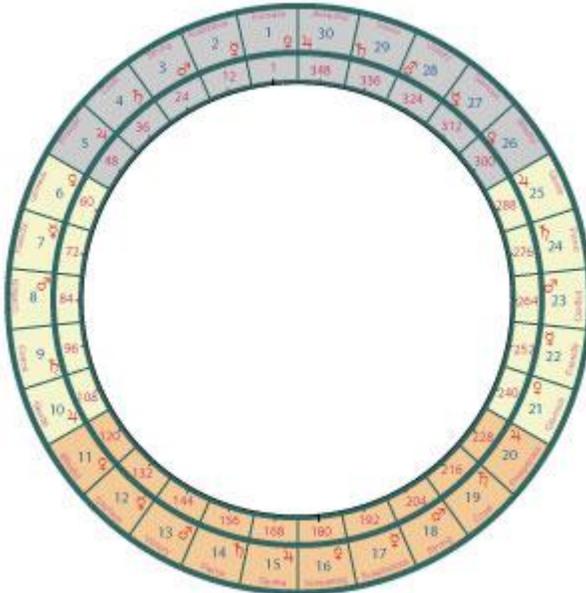
Having pointed this out, it may be helpful to clarify—to describe what it is that the Tibetan Buddhists (and other groups as well) do when they sit down on their cushions. In general, if you ask them what they are doing on their cushions, the answer will be that they are "practicing", or that they are "sitting". Indeed, that is what takes place. They sit and observe.

There are many Tibetan words for the different kinds of mind practice that are possible, while in the West we

## The Moon

have just the one word: meditation. What, then, is mind practice?

The most important difference between sitting practice (mind practice) and meditation—as it is understood in this country—is that mind practice is anything but relaxing or passive. It is very active.



### The Thirty Lunar Days

The actual technique is quite simple, taking only a few minutes to learn. It is, however, worth getting this instruction from someone authorized to give it. Most Buddhist and some Hindu groups offer this type of mind practice. When looking for training in mind practice, be sure to ask for a technique that emphasizes concentration on the present moment—on being present, and not for some of the more dreamy relaxation techniques. What you need in order to use lunar gaps is to become very alert and observant. The technique is

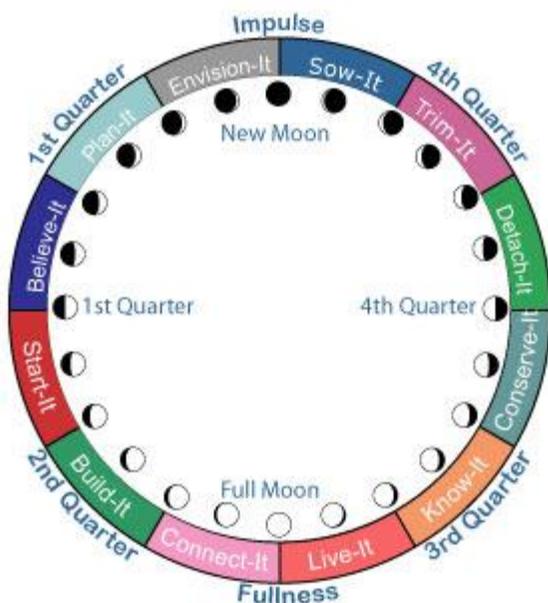
## The Moon

called Shamata training in the Tibetan Buddhist tradition and Zazen in Zen Buddhism tradition. I would be happy to send a list of well-respected centers to anyone who writes to me at: 315 Marion Avenue, Big Rapids, Michigan 49307. It is important that you receive instruction from someone who is trained in the technique, and also that you get an authentic connection with a tradition.

Even the non-astrologer cannot help but notice the time of the Full Moon each month—that time when the full disk of the Moon passes overhead around midnight. It is a fact that many people have trouble sleeping when the Full Moon makes this overhead transit in the middle of the night. Often sleep will not come until the Moon finishes rising, transits overhead, and begins to set. This has been used by some as a way to determine whether a late-night party or bout of TV-watching will be a satisfying experience; in general, you can plan on a building of tension (and attention) while the Full Moon is rising and an easing of that state just after the Moon crests overhead. After the Moon crests and begins to set is a good time to bring activities to a close. Sleep often will come with ease at this point.

Learning to get in step with and make use of the Moon cycle is a basic part of astrological training. There has been general agreement among astrologers for thousands of years as to how the lunar cycle functions and the uses it can be put to.

## The Moon



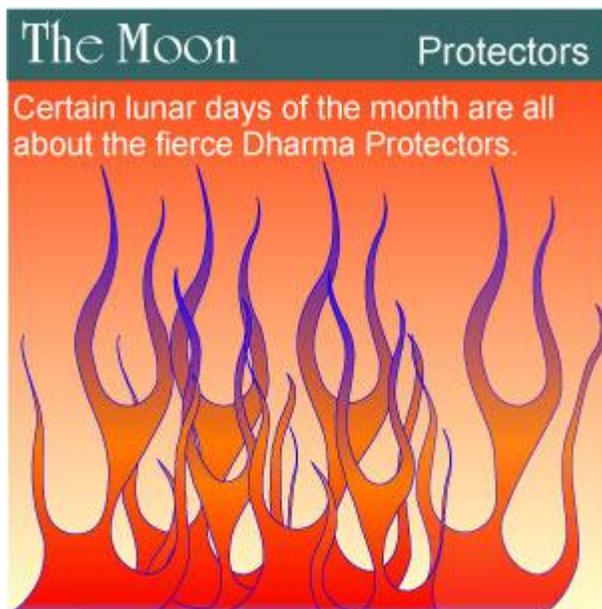
### The Four Quarters

It seems that although East and West agree on the importance of New and Full moons, there is less congruence when it comes to the Quarter moons. Here in the West, the lunar quarters are next in importance to the New and Full moon times; in the East, however, other days are considered of even greater importance, for example, the 10th and 25th lunar days.

There is agreement, though, in both traditions, that the 2 or 3 days preceding the moment of the New Moon are difficult ones, days which require special observation. In the West, these days have been called the dark of the Moon, or devil's days—days when the darker forces have power. Both traditions affirm that we sort of 'survive' these final days each month. Check it out for yourself. The three days before a new moon can be a hard time. The East is in total agreement on this point,

## The Moon

and the days prior to new moon are set aside for invoking the fierce dharma protectors, whose energies ward off harm and protect us during the worst of times.



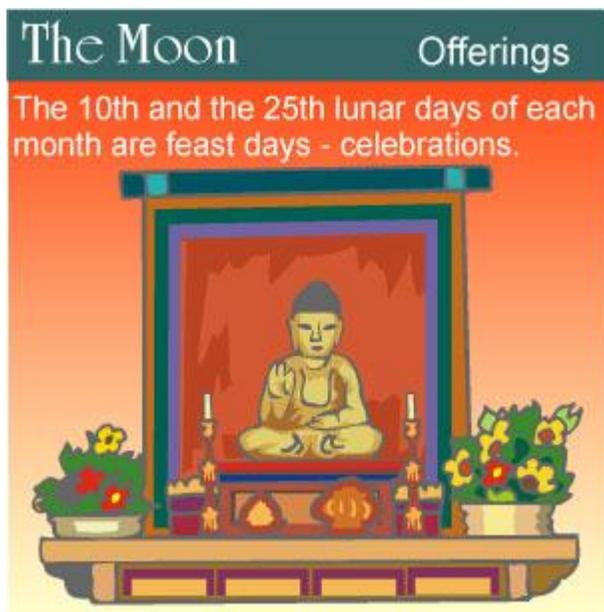
### Protector Days

In particular, the 29th day (the day before the New Moon) is called 'dharma protector' day. It is a day and time given over to purification and preparation for the moment of the New Moon. Ritual fasting, confession of errors, and the like, are common practices. In a similar vein, the days just prior to the full moon (the 13th and 14th) are also days of purification, days in which the various guardian and protector deities are again invoked, but in a somewhat more restrained way. For example, the 14th day is often given over to a fire puja, a ritual purification. In summary, during days prior to full and new moon, there is some attempt at purification, both physical and mental, in preparation for those auspicious events.

## The Moon

It is clear from the literature that the times of the new and full moon are considered of great importance. These days are set aside for special rituals and worship. As pointed out, full and new moon (full more than new) are times of collective worship and public confession. In many traditions, the monks and priests assemble for a day of special observance. In the East, the full moon celebration and the entire waxing lunar fortnight are oriented toward the masculine element in consciousness—what are called the father-line deities. The new moon and the waning fortnight are given over to the mother-line deities and the feminine element. The full moon completes the masculine or active, waxing phase, of the cycle, and the new moon completes the feminine, waning phase, of the month. To my knowledge, this kind of analysis does not exist in the West.

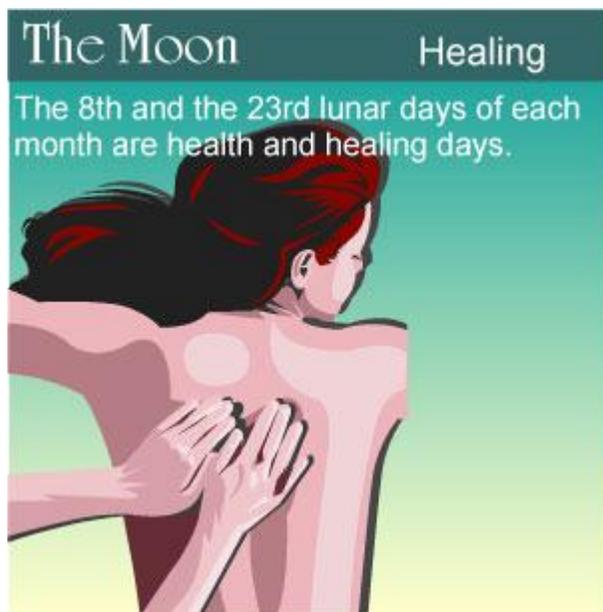
## The Moon



### Days of Observation

Aside from the new and full moon, the two most auspicious lunar days in the East are the 10th and the 25th. The 10th day ( $108^{\circ}$  to  $120^{\circ}$ ), called Daka Day, is considered auspicious for invoking the father-line deities—the masculine. The 25th day ( $288^{\circ}$  to  $300^{\circ}$ ), called Dakini Day, is given over to the feminine principle and the mother-line deities. These two days, the 10th and the 25th, are formal feast days, days of observation when extra offerings are made and increased attention is given to what is happening. There is some sense of celebration at these points in the month. In many respects, these two days rival even the new and full moon days in importance. The fact is, these four days (new, full, 10th, 25th), are the primary auspicious days as practiced in many Eastern rituals.

## The Moon



### **Health and Healing**

There are many other days of lesser importance, which might also interest Western astrologers. Health and healing are important in Eastern ritual, and the 8th and 23rd days of the lunar month are auspicious for this purpose. It is these days that straddle the first and last lunar quarters. The 8th day ( $84^{\circ}$  to  $96^{\circ}$ ) is often called Medicine Buddha Day. Again, this occurs in the male, or father-line, half of the month. The 23rd day ( $264^{\circ}$  to  $276^{\circ}$ ), occurring in the feminine half of the month, is dedicated to Tara practice. Tara is the female deity connected to health, long life, and healing in general.

## The Moon



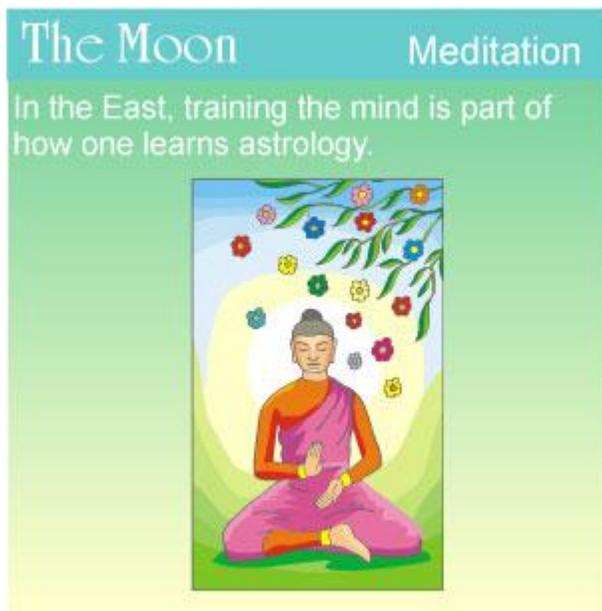
### **Purification Days**

Earlier, we mentioned the days given over to purification, the prominent ones being the 13th and the 29th. In addition, on a lesser scale, the 9th and the 19th days are also noted as days when the protector deities should be invoked and kept in mind—and these are days of purification also. And there are more, still finer subdivisions that are made. In this brief article, these major observance days are enough to give us an idea of how the Eastern astrologers approach the lunar cycle. It should be kept in mind that, in the East, astrology is practiced by the general public. So, it is not just astrologers who are using the lunar days: everyone observes these days as well.

Next, we might ask ourselves how this Eastern approach to the lunation cycle might be of value to the West. As mentioned earlier, a major fact is that the lunar cycle is perceived as having a variety of gaps, joints, or

## The Moon

points of articulation that can be used. These can be seen as chinks in the armor of our particular obscurations. Many Western mystery traditions also observe the times of the full (and sometimes also the new) moon; full moon meditations are common. The quarter moons are given less attention, and, to my knowledge, few Western rituals exist in relation to these.



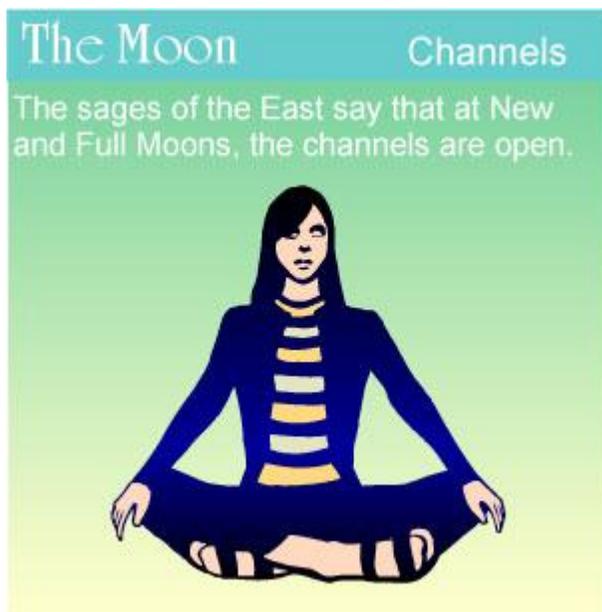
### **Insight Moments**

It is an intuitive fact that moments of clarity and insight (gaps) do come in the course of living. We all benefit from this kind of insight. What Eastern astrology seems to suggest is that many of these gaps are not just random events that occur haphazardly in our lives. They are regular opportunities, joints in the nick of time; they are times when insights are somehow more possible than at other times; it is, therefore, common practice to set aside some portion of these special days for observance—for meditation.

## The Moon

It is unfortunate that the concept of meditation entertained by the public, here in the West, amounts to a perception of some kind of relaxation therapy—a quiet time. This is very far from what the truth of meditation is perceived to be in India, Japan, Tibet, and in other Eastern countries. In fact, meditation is a form of observation. It is the observation of what is, and of what is happening in one's mind and in the environment. When the Eastern mind meditates on special lunar days, it sets aside a time to observe with great care the nature of that particular day. Meditation, as taught in Tibet and Japan, is a technique that increases our ability to observe. The one meditating is not lost in deep inner space—that is our Western take on the concept of meditation—in the East, the one meditating is right here and now, observing the mind and life. This is why it is said that these special days are days set aside for observation.

## The Moon



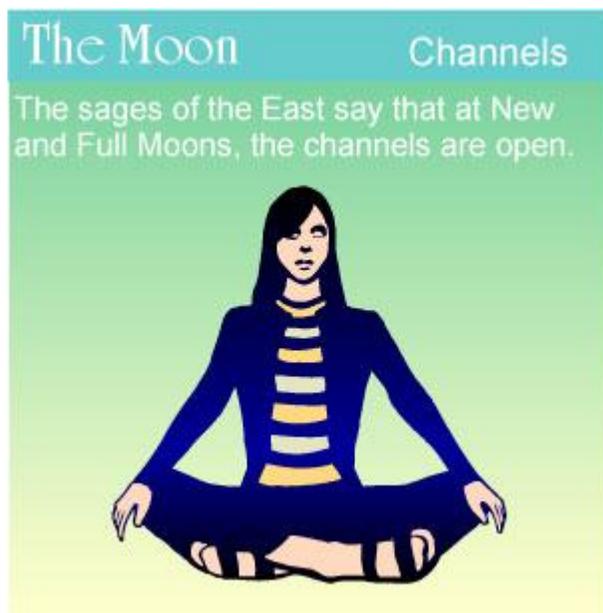
### **Open Channels**

Here in the West, we are beginning to learn these techniques of observation. By setting aside a time on these special lunar days for observation, we can be open to and aware of the possibilities of insight. This kind of awareness appears to be what is required to pick up on these natural events. If we have an insight at one of these times, we might be more willing to give it credence, knowing that it is happening on such-and-such a lunar day—and so on.

It is quite clear from the Eastern teachings that the moments of the full and new moon are times when the various channels in the psychophysical body are somehow aligned. This is not to say the new or full moon days are days of peace and quiet. It is taught in the East that, although a new or full moon day may tend to be wild or hectic, any patience or forbearance we can muster at that time will be much rewarded. In other

## The Moon

words, there can be deep insights available to us at these times. According to these same teachings, an eclipse at the full or new moon is even more auspicious. In the teachings it is said that, during these very special events, both male and female energies (channels) are in simultaneous alignment—the ultimate opportunity. The lunar cycle, and its effects and opportunities, has been analyzed in great detail in the Eastern teachings.



### **East and West**

In summary, the major difference between Eastern and Western astrology as related to the lunation cycle is that in the East any lunar theory is put to the test. It exists as a guide to practice. In other words, they practice what they preach. Here in the West, it would appear that we are somewhat more theoretical. We read about and discuss ideas on the lunar cycle, but very few astrologers I have met make use of the lunar-phase cycle as a guide to day-to-day practice. As a society, we

## The Moon

do not even observe the full or the new moon, much less the quarters or any of the other lunar days of possible importance. It is true that most astrologers are aware of what zodiac sign the Moon is in, but this is not the part of the tradition we have been examining here—here we are looking at the cycle of the lunar phases. In the West, we astrologers may know that it is a new moon or a full moon, but we do nothing out of the ordinary in response to that information. And, the general public, of course, seldom even takes note of any lunar events at all.

The Eastern approach to the lunar cycle is quite ancient and very detailed. East or West, I assume that both astrological traditions have been engaged in recording something—rather than nothing—all these centuries. In other words, I assume that the existing lunar tradition, both of the East and of the West, is a reflection of reality rather than something we have made up. After all, that is what astrology is all about and why we practice it.

Here we have concentrated on the synodic cycle of the sun, the moon, and the earth—the lunation cycle. We have ignored the use of the Moon by astrologers in the signs and houses, although that is something practiced both in the West and in the East.

## The Moon



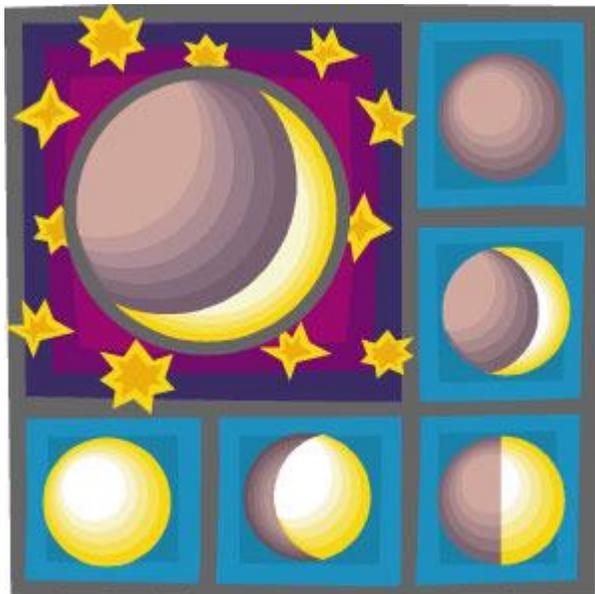
### Summary

On a personal note, my study of the lunation cycle has led me from Western to Eastern texts in an attempt to obtain more practical information for day-to-day living. When I ran out of new texts to study, I sought out some of the Eastern practitioners of meditation, those who observe the lunar cycle on a regular basis. For example, we have had a wide variety of Eastern astrologers living and working at our Center in recent years. In addition, one individual, skilled in Sanskrit and Tibetan astrology, spent almost two years at the Center, translating various Buddhist texts on the subject.

From my experience with these sources, the primary piece of information that stays with me is that reading about or listening to someone with experience in this area, is, by definition, preliminary. Both text and teachers (however fine they may be) can but point beyond themselves to the lunar cycle itself. Beyond any

## The Moon

differences that exist, all sources seem united in this one maxim: go and see for yourself. Check it out. The purpose of the teachings is the experience itself that waits to be known. They are telling us: Observe these days. Call it meditation or observation (whatever), but observe with care and attention—for yourself—whether or not these insight gaps are there.



### ***The Lunation Cycle***

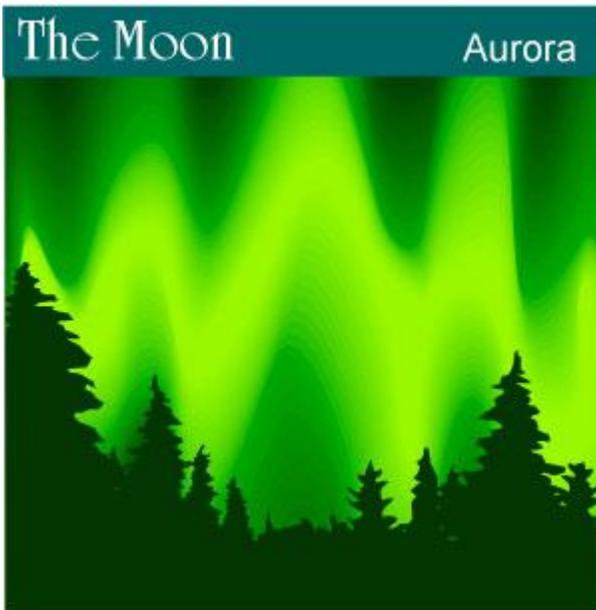
In other sections, we have presented thoughts from both sides of the world, from the East and from the West, on lunar astrology. Is there any scientific evidence to back such thinking up?

Scientific research into the lunation cycle over the last 15-20 years is fascinating from an astrologer's perspective. It was not many years ago that science gave little or no credence to the possibility of there being a lunar effect on life here on earth. Today it is no

## The Moon

longer a question of "is there an effect?" but rather one of "let me count the ways." In fact, the research at this point is so extensive that in this brief article we can only mention some of the high points from the existing literature.

It should go, without saying, but I will repeat it here, that science still has little or nothing to say about the psychological or personal events connected with lunar activity. Instead, it has discussed how the moon relates to such things as rainfall, weather and atmosphere. More important to astrologers, and a step closer to the psychological, is the growing evidence for a hard connection between lunar activity and geomagnetic activity. It is this connection we will detail here.



### **Earth's Aura**

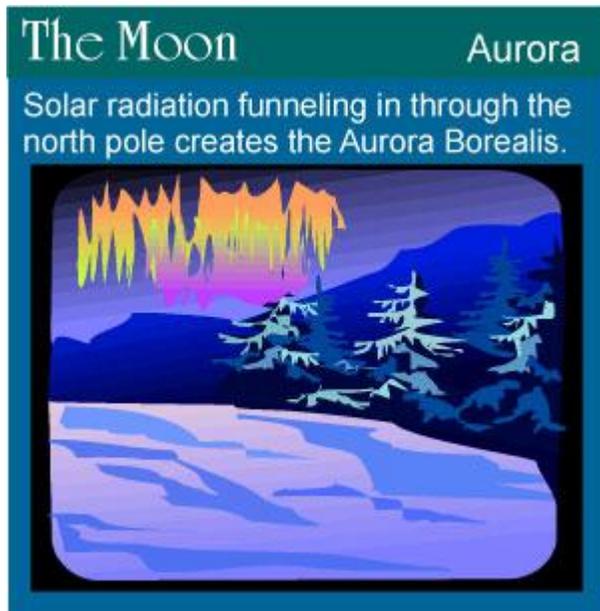
Geomagnetic activity coming from beyond the earth's aura or atmosphere has been linked to all kinds of

## The Moon

mundane activities, ranging from radio reception to the aurora borealis type displays, and so on. The picture that emerges from modern research is one where each body (the earth, the sun, and perhaps even each of us) is surrounded by some sort of magnetic field. We radiate, and this radiation surrounds us and even keeps some things out: it is our aura or mandala.

The earth's aura (or magnetosphere, as it is called) keeps at bay enormous amounts of radiation coming from the sun, and from the galaxy—in which our solar system is but a part. Very energetic particles can penetrate our magnetosphere and find their way through the atmosphere to the surface of the earth. For the most part, these particles funnel in from the north and south polar caps via field lines of high geomagnetic declination. During times of increased solar activity, such as during solar flares or during the peak of the sunspot cycle, much more solar radiation reaches the earth than at other times. The weaker cosmic radiation must wait for the years of sunspot minimum to reach their maximum penetration. Please examine the diagrams of the magnetosphere shown below as we examine some of the scientific evidence that relates to the lunation cycle and lunar power.

## The Moon



### **Auroras**

Although oceanic tides have long been studied, we now know that there are atmospheric tides as well that move in response to the position of the Moon. For example, auroras are caused by the excitation of atmospheric molecules by energetic charged particles penetrating the atmosphere along geomagnetic field lines. Although the mechanism of this phenomenon is still being examined, it is generally understood that auroras are associated with the arrival of solar corpuscular radiation in the magnetosphere 1 to 3 days after a solar flare. These particles (depending on their intrinsic energy and the current density of the atmosphere) penetrate the atmosphere.

It has now been shown that these auroral peaks and valleys are modulated by the position of the Moon. This lunar auroral tidal effect in the upper atmosphere can be correlated with flood and ebb tides on earth, thus linking

## The Moon

its rise and fall to the position of the Moon in its monthly cycle.



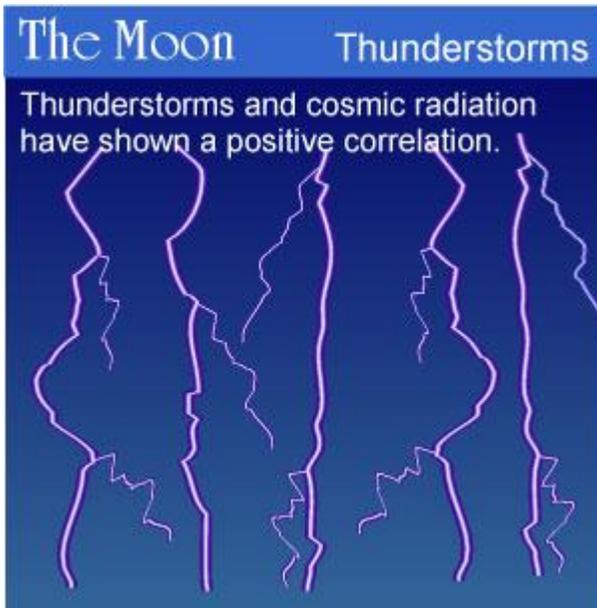
### Rainfall

It has been well documented that rainfall correlates with the Moon's position, in its monthly cycle. According to many studies, rainfall maximizes midway through the 1st and Third Quarters of the lunar synodic month. In other words, about a half week after the New and a half week after the Full Moon, rainfall reaches a peak. Correspondingly, a low point in rainfall occurs during the 2nd and Fourth Quarters, with the lowest point of all occurring some three days before each the New and the Full Moon.

In addition, it was found that increased rainfall at these two peak times in the month was greater at solar minimum than at solar maximum. The lunar cycle accounts for 65 percent of the variance during years of

## The Moon

solar minimum, but only 14 percent during years of solar maximum. It has been suggested that cosmic radiation may be a factor, since this form of radiation penetrates more deeply into the solar system during years of low solar activity, while during years of high solar activity a more powerful solar wind helps to keep out cosmic radiation.



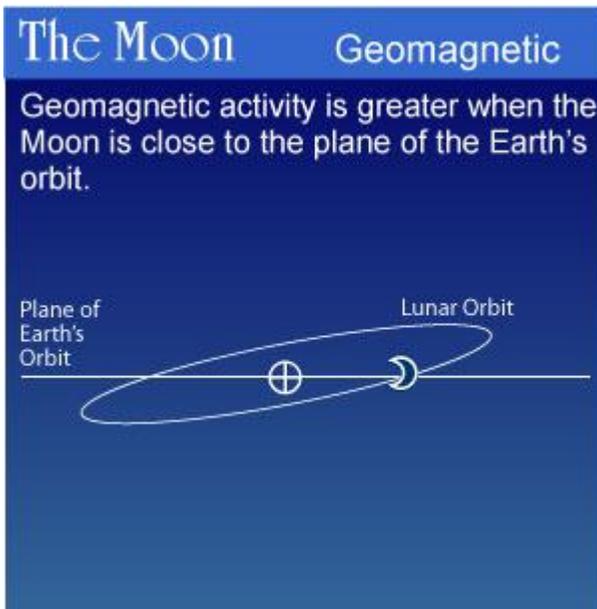
### **Thunderstorms and Cosmic Radiation**

It has been shown that the maximum activity of thunderstorms coincides with the maximum in galactic cosmic radiation and vice versa, that minimum thunderstorm activity coincides with the minimum in galactic cosmic ray radiation. There have been many studies on the relationship of cosmic radiation to lunar activity. Cosmic radiation consists of energetic particles entering our solar system from beyond its aura, the magnetosphere. As mentioned, there is an inverse relationship between cosmic radiation and solar activity.

## The Moon

In other words, the increased solar wind at sunspot maximum keeps cosmic radiation out of the solar system and away from the earth. During the years of sunspot minimum, cosmic radiation is strong enough to penetrate the solar aura and reach the earth's atmosphere.

Thunderstorms and the Moon: It has been shown that the maximum in thunderstorms coincides with maximum geomagnetic activity. In addition, it has been shown that thunderstorm activity is modulated by lunar position. The greatest numbers of thunderstorms occur after either a New or a Full Moon. Thunderstorm frequency reaches a maximum two days after a Full Moon and remains high for most of the third quarter.



### **The Moon and Geomagnetic Activity**

The Kp-geomagnetic index varies with the lunar phases. When the Moon is less than 3 1/2 degrees from the

## The Moon

plane of the ecliptic, geomagnetic activity reaches a minimum during the 2nd lunar quarter and a maximum during the 3rd lunar quarter. Lunar modulation near the ecliptic suggests that the Moon is influencing the solar corpuscular flux which, guided by the solar magnetic field, generally approaches the earth from close to the plane of the ecliptic. Some of these particles become trapped in the magnetosphere.

There is a thin, neutral-sheet region close to the ecliptic plane, in the tail of the earth's magnetosphere that the Moon may be modulating when it is traveling near the plane of the ecliptic. The high density of field lines near the ecliptic would make this region particularly sensitive to a magnetic perturbation, which could modulate the flux of particles reaching our atmosphere. In short, there is evidence that the moon has a magnetohydrodynamic wake with an enhanced magnetic field, which, when in the magnetospheric tail, causes magnetic disturbances on the earth.



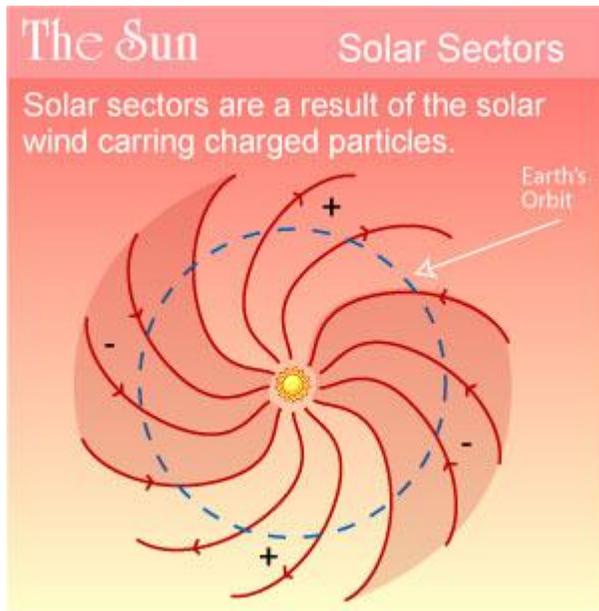
### **Polar Cap Absorption (PCA)**

PCA happens when solar protons from solar flares enter the earth's upper atmosphere in high geomagnetic latitudes, often causing radio blackouts and increased auroral activity. These periods of severe ionospheric disturbance are often marked by Forbush decreases; Forbush decreases are when the counting rate of background galactic cosmic radiation has sudden anomalous decreases—decreases which may not recover and attain normal levels for hours or days.

In effect, it is as if there was a magnetic screening of galactic cosmic radiation by the enhanced solar plasma. It has been noted, but unexplained, that PCA events and Forbush decreases seem to be ordered with the lunar synodic period (29.5 days). When this research was begun, it was expected that a 27.3-day period would be found, indicating a link with solar rotation. It was a surprise to scientists when, instead, results

## The Moon

fingered the lunar synodic period (29.5 days). It is possible, therefore, that the moon somehow controls solar corpuscular radiation streaming toward the earth. A mechanism for this is still undetermined at this time.



### Solar Sectors

Solar sectors, and the geometry of the solar magnetic field, are important areas of research. The solar wind is plasma of charged particles endlessly being ejected from the surface of the sun. These particles tend to concentrate in the plane of the ecliptic. All of the planets are within the aura, or atmosphere, of the sun, and thus also that of the solar wind. Each charged particle moves away from the sun in a straight line; however, since the sun itself is rotating, these particle streams get bent into a spiral of the type made famous by Archimedes; in addition, the plasma contains a frozen-in magnetic region constituting the sun's magnetic field, and this

## The Moon

region conforms to the spiral also. This is the interplanetary magnetic field.

Because of this spiral effect—at the distance the earth is from the sun—the magnetic field is oriented about 45 degrees west of the earth-sun line, on the morning side of the earth. Both the slow (4 days) and the fast (10 minutes to several hours) charged, solar particles approach the earth guided by the solar magnetic field. They come in from the western side of the sun (morning side of earth) at about a 45-degree angle to the earth—although this angle fluctuates from moment to moment based on changes in the solar plasma. The fact is, each of us is exposed to these particles coming from this general direction, at around 9 AM each morning, and most shielded from them at around 9 P.M. each night.

The great rotating disk of the solar magnetic field is itself divided into four primary sectors, each having an alternating polarity. The magnetic field direction is either positive (away from the sun) or negative (toward the sun). These sectors are 'tied into' definite regions on the surface of the sun—to what are the corresponding magnetic signs. It has been suggested that this may be thought of as a rigid disk in the plane of the ecliptic, with four quadrants connected to the sun, all rotating with the sun in its 27-day rotation cycle—a co-rotating sector structure.

It has been found that geomagnetic and cosmic ray activity, as well as the velocity and density of the solar wind, vary, as a function of position, within the solar sectors; thus, there is a weekly fluctuation in the Kp-geomagnetic index. Studies show a maximum in thunderstorm activity when the earth passes from a positive sector into a negative sector. These four huge sectors are like a great pinwheel rotating past earth,

## The Moon

exposing our planet to alternating positive and negative solar phases.

A study of the lunar position in relation to the Kp-geomagnetic index, the PCA, and the Forbush decreases, shows that both PCA and the Forbush decreases reach a minimum during the middle of the 4th lunar quarter, a time when the moon is near the 45° axis—and thus between the earth and the spot where the charged particles arrive from the sun. A maximum for these values is reached when the moon is in the Second Quarter—unable to block the particle advance. It has been shown that the moon has an electrical charge of at least 100 V/m, which means that the moon has a positive electrical charge and can deflect solar protons.

There is also a minimum in the Kp-geomagnetic index during the Second Quarter, when PCA and Forbush decreases are at a maximum. It has been suggested that at the Second Quarter the moon may *least* disturb the geomagnetic field, which is, at that time, most active.

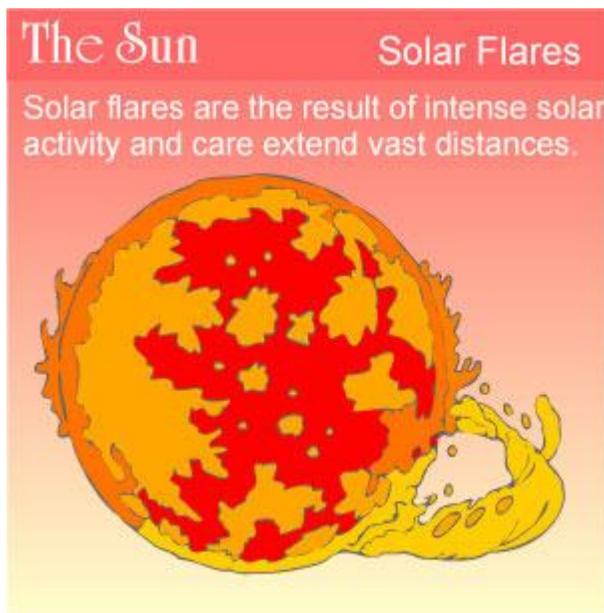
There is a sharp rise in the Kp index just prior to the Full Moon and continuing into the Third Quarter. It has been suggested that this might be due to the magnetohydrodynamic wake of the moon interacting with the tail of the magnetosphere, or, with it modulating the flow of solar particles to the tail.

It is interesting to note that, at around the Second Quarter—the 10th/11th days—there is a maximum of PCP activity. This is when the father-line deities are observed in Eastern astrology. The 25th/26th days are when the Moon somehow blocks or inhibits the solar magnetic field, and this is when the mother-line deities are celebrated in that tradition. Thus the time of greatest

## The Moon

activity (male) has some scientific backup, as does the time of least activity and greatest calm (female).

The western portion of the sun is linked magnetically, and very strongly so, to the earth, while the eastern portion of the sun is not. This is due to the fact that solar corpuscular radiation approaches the earth from the west, guided by the solar magnetic field. As pointed out, these particles come in from the Western side of the sun at about a 45° angle to the morning side of earth. Statistical studies show that solar flares occurring on the eastern portion of the sun are much less frequently associated with geomagnetic storms than those occurring near the central or western portion of it.



### Solar Flares

Flares occur during periods of solar activity; solar activity typically last a few days. These regions of

## The Moon

activity (near sunspots) travel from east to west across the face of the sun, with a sunspot taking about seven days to travel from the central meridian to the western limb. Thus active solar regions—those generating particles capable of reaching the earth—move into and through the western section of the sun, the section magnetically linked to the earth. During this period, recurrent particle streams from an active sunspot region can reach the earth. There have been periods when solar protons have bombarded the upper atmosphere for over ten days.

### Summary

This has been a very brief description of some of the geophysical research that has been taking place in the last twenty years and that might be of interest to astrologers. It seems that all bodies have a field or aura around them. The earth and the sun radiate, and that radiation is swept along behind whatever trajectory the object travels in. It is fascinating to see scientific evidence emerging that seems to conform to the astrological tradition.

As pointed out in the section on the lunation cycle, the 10th and 25th lunar days have been considered, for ages, to be significant periods within the month, periods where some kind of change or transition takes place. It is interesting to note that these points are more or less in line with the  $45^\circ$  vector along which solar corpuscular radiation reaches the earth.

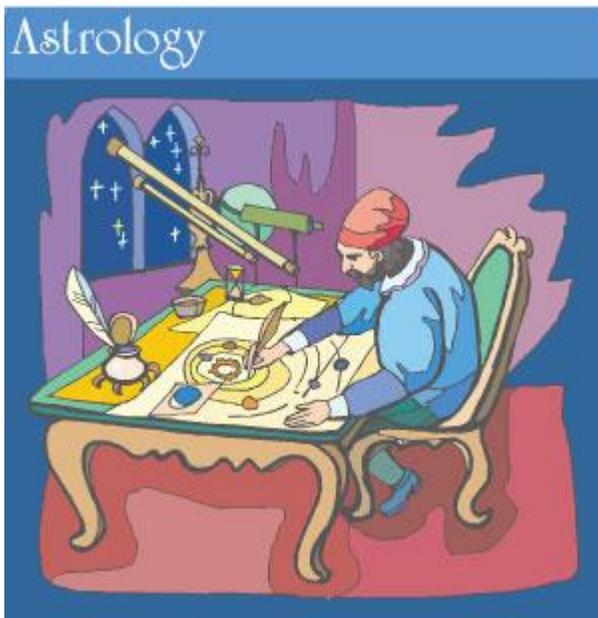
The Moon, in its monthly cycle, appears to somehow modulate this stream of radiation when it reaches the area surrounding a solunar phase angle of some  $315^\circ$ . At this point, the Moon, perhaps due to its magnetic field, effectively blocks and cuts off some of the radiation stemming from the sun. At the opposite point in its orbit

## The Moon

(around  $135^\circ$ ), the Moon reaches a point of least blockage, a point where the most amount of solar radiation can penetrate and reach the earth.

It is at this point in the lunar Second Quarter, the point during which the greatest amount of radiation is available to the earth, that the Eastern astrologers have set aside as a time for the masculine (active) element. The Fourth Quarter, where the Moon effectively blocks the solar radiation, is the point at which the feminine energies are most observed.

It is interesting that—on the surface at any rate—ancient tradition and modern science appear to be in general agreement.



### Exoteric References

B. Bell and R.J. Defouw. 1966. Dependence of the lunar modulation of geomagnetic activity on the celestial latitude of the moon, *J. Geophys. Res.* 71: 951-957.

## The Moon

D. A. Bradley, M.A. Woodbury and G. W. Brier. 1962. Lunar synodical period and widespread precipitation. *Science* 137:748-749.

G.W. Brier and D.A. Bradley. 1964. Lunar synodical period and precipitation in the United States. *J. Atmos. Sci.* 21:386-395.

H.W. Dodson and E.R. Hedeman. 1964. An unexpected effect in solar cosmic ray data related to 29.5 days. *J. Geophys. Res.* 69:3965-3972.

L. Harang, *The Aurorae*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1951. 44

B. Haurwitz. 1964. Atmospheric tides. *Science* 144:1415-1422.

J.R. Herman and R.A. Goldberg. 1978. Sun, weather and climate. *National Aeronautics and Space Administration*.

M. Lethbridge. Solar-Lunar variables, thunderstorms and tornadoes. *Dept. of Meteor Report*. College of Earth and Mineral Sciences, Penn. State Univ., University Park, 1969. 58 pgs.

W.I. Linlor. *Electric Fields in Space and on the Lunar Surface*. In *Planetary Electrodynamics*, edited by S. Coroniti and J. Hughes Gordone, Vol. 2. New York: Breach, 1969. 369

R. Markson. 1971. Considerations regarding solar and lunar modulation of geophysical parameters, atmospheric electricity and thunderstorms. *Pure and Applied Physics*. 84:161-200.

F.F. Ness. 1965. The magnetohydrodynamic wake of the moon. *J. Geophys, Res.* 70:517-534.

## The Moon

H.L. Stolov. 1965. Further investigations of a variation of geomagnetic activity with lunar phase, *J. Geophys. Res.* 70:77-82.

J.M. Wilcox and N.F. Ness. 1968. The interplanetary magnetic field, solar origin and terrestrial effects. *Space Sci. Rev.* 8:258-328

### Esoteric References:

N.P. Subramania Iyer. *Kalaprakasika*. Ranjan Publications, 1982

Ven. Khenpo Karthar, Rinpoche. From a teaching on Buddhist Festivals, given in Big Rapids, MI in 1980's.

D. Bahadur L.D. Swamikannu Pillai. *Panchang and Horoscope*. Asian Educational Services, 1985.

D. Bahadur L.D. Swamikannu Pillai. *Indian Chronology*, Asian Educational Services, 1982.

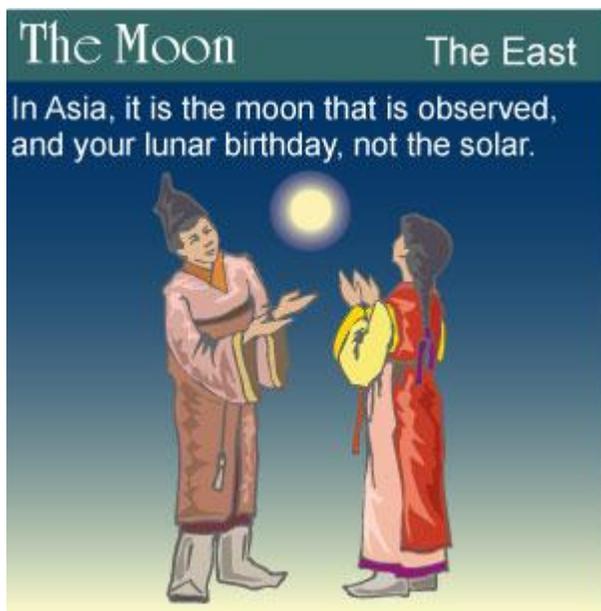
Swami Prakashananda. Personal communication

Shyam Sundar Das. Personal communication

Sange Wangchug. Personal communication, translation of Tibetan texts.

Conversations on astrology and/or dharma with high lamas in the Karma Kagyu lineage, including: H.H. the 17th Karmapa, H.E. Jomgon Kongtrul Rinpoche, H.E. Tai Situ Rinpoche, H.E. Gyaltsap Rinpoche, H.E. Shamar Rinpoche, Ven. Bokar, Rinpoche, Ven. Thrangu, Rinpoche, Ven. Khenpo Karthar, Rinpoche, Ven. Bardor Tulku, Rinpoche, and others.

## The Moon



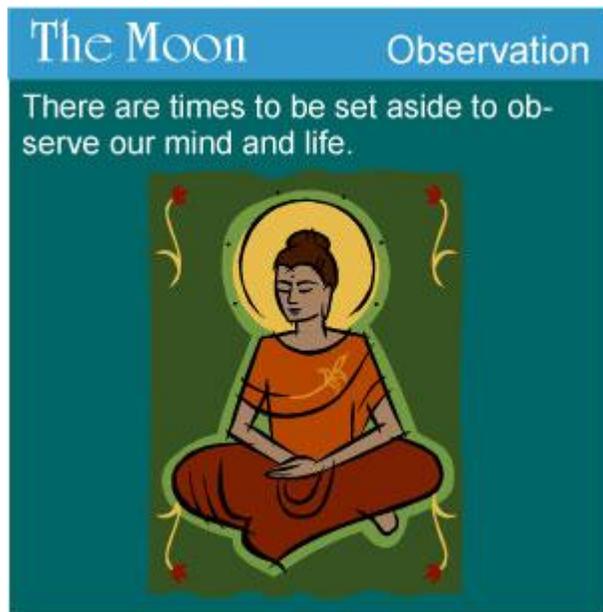
### **Mind Practice**

The lunar cycle and its gaps are available to everyone, all of the time. If we don't observe these special times, it is because we have not set aside the time to observe and to check them out for ourselves. In the East, most people are introduced to basic observation techniques, or mind practice, from an early age. It is unfortunate that mind practice is not very well known here in the West. What I mean is how many people do you know who practice observing or using their mind? Most of us assume that the mind is perfectly usable just as we find it, and that it doesn't require any practice to use it.

In Tibet, mind practice is not only acceptable, it is pretty much obligatory. This is true not only in Tibet, but also in Nepal, much of India, and even in parts of China and Japan. Over there, the mind is considered, by nature, to be unruly and hard to manage. No one would think of trying to do much with it without considerable practice.

## The Moon

Mind practice, or mind preparation or training, as it is sometimes called, is standard fare in the orient.



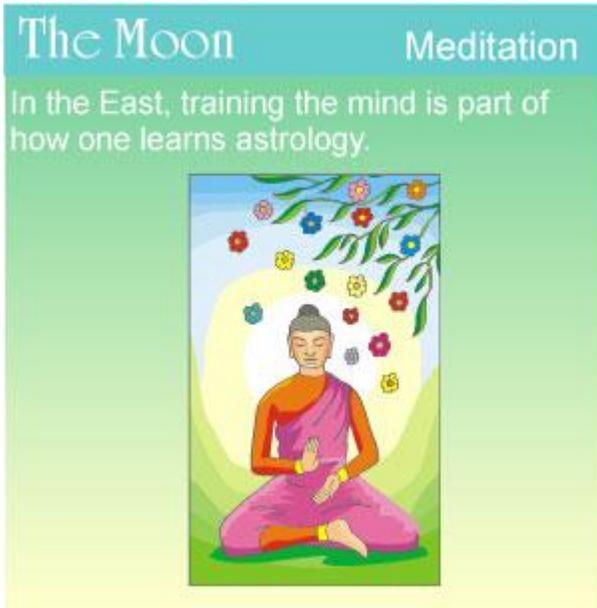
### **Mind Practice**

We might wonder why this style of mind practice has never caught on in North America. In part, this is due to our whole take on meditation, and what we think it means. Meditation, in the West, has come to mean something almost like relaxation therapy—a way to relax and get away from it all, to escape the worries of the world while in contemplation of some inner landscape. Somewhere, perhaps early in this century, the word meditation lost any semblance to its Eastern counterpart and became what most people think of as meditation today—as a way to relax and get rid of tension.

Of course, this is nothing like the Tibetan concept of mind practice, or mind preparation, which involves the

## The Moon

intense use of the mind. It is unfortunate that this very active mind practice has itself come under the general label of meditation here in the West.



### **Sitting and Looking**

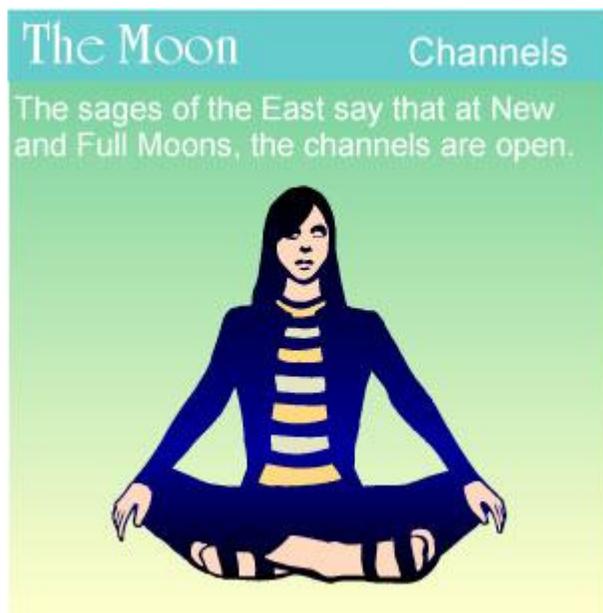
Having pointed this out, it may be helpful to clarify and describe what it is that the Tibetan Buddhists (and other groups, also) do, when they sit down on their cushions. In general, if you ask them what they are doing on their cushions, the answer will be that they are "practicing", or that they are "sitting". Indeed, this is what takes place. They sit and observe.

There are many Tibetan words for the different kinds of mind practice that are possible, while in the West we have just the one word: meditation. What, then, is mind practice?

The most important difference between mind practice (sitting practice) and meditation as it is understood in

## The Moon

this country is that mind practice is anything but relaxing or passive. It is very active.



### The Techniques

The actual technique is quite simple, taking only a few minutes to learn; it is, however, worth getting this instruction from someone authorized to give it. Most Buddhist and some Hindu groups offer this type of mind practice. When looking for training in mind practice, be sure to ask for a technique that emphasizes concentration on the present moment—on being present: avoid all of the more dreamy relaxation techniques. What you need in order to use lunar gaps is to become very alert and observant. This mind technique is called 'Shamata training' in Tibetan Buddhism, and 'Zazen' in Zen Buddhism. I would be happy to send a list of well-respected Centers offering training to anyone who writes to me at: 315 Marion Avenue, Big Rapids, MI 49307. It is important that you

## The Moon

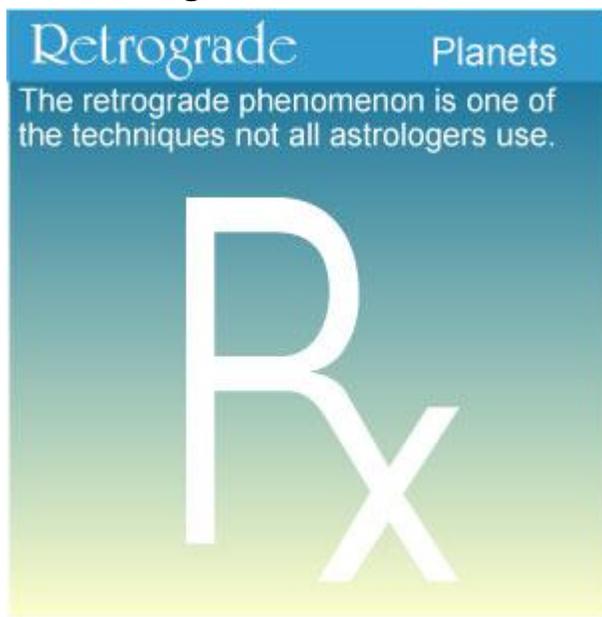
receive instruction from someone trained in the technique and that you get an authentic connection with a tradition.

Even the non-astrologer cannot help but notice the time of the Full Moon each month—that time when the full disk of the Moon passes overhead around midnight. It is a fact that many have trouble sleeping when the Full Moon makes this overhead transit in the middle of the night. Often sleep will not come until the Moon finishes rising, transits overhead, and begins to set. This has been used by some as a way to determine whether a late-night party or a bout of TV watching will be a satisfying experience; in general, you can plan on the building of tension (and attention) while the Full Moon is rising and on an easing of that state just after the Moon crests overhead. After the Moon crests and begins to set is a good time to bring activities to a close. Sleep often will come with ease at that point.

Learning to get in step with and make use of the Moon cycle is a basic part of astrological training. There has been general agreement among astrologers for thousands of years as to how the lunar cycle functions and the uses it can be put to.

About Michael Erlewine

## ***The Retrograde Phenomenon***



### **Burn Rate**

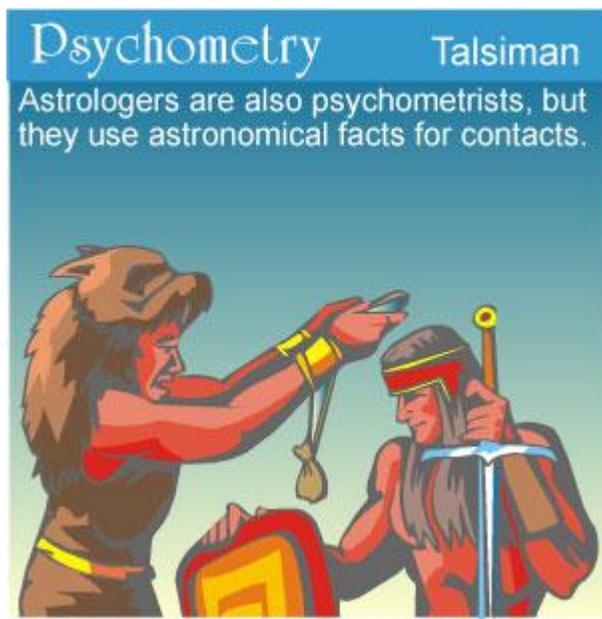
Perhaps no astrological factor has more different opinions and less agreement among astrologers than the phenomenon of retrograde motion—the fact that, from the earth's view, all the planets appear to move backward, in reverse motion through the zodiac, one or more times a year. Expert's opinions range from the thought that there is no effect whatsoever when a planet is retrograde, to the idea that there is a very dramatic effect; however, even if (and where) an effect is indicated, there is a wide range of declaration as to what that effect might be. The interpretations are all over the board. In this section, we will examine the physical astronomy behind the retrograde phenomenon, and, based on that, go on to discuss how it might be interpreted.

## About Michael Erlewine

For starters, among those who do credit retrograde planets with an interpretation at all, it is generally agreed that, when a planet is retrograde, its nature and its effect are somehow retarded, delayed, or obscured. For the most part, and with a few exceptions, it is not considered a good or helpful thing to have a planet retrograde.

The most well known example of a retrograde planet and what it portends is that of Mercury. Most of us have heard things like "Don't sign that contract! Mercury is retrograde"—there is a whole astrological subculture built up around what you should and should not do when Mercury goes retrograde. When Mercury is retrograde, so it is claimed, communications of all kind cannot be trusted, and may go haywire. The advice is, usually "Wait until Mercury goes direct." With that in mind, let's examine the retrograde phenomenon.

If we want to understand what most astrologers agree retrograde indicates, it would be something to the effect that, when a planet is moving backward in the zodiac, it is not moving forward, doing its thing. As obvious as this statement is, it makes sense. If we have been progressing forward in one direction or another, and then suddenly find ourselves backtracking over the same ground—we are not going forward. This seems to be the essence of the traditional interpretation of what retrograde motion is all about.



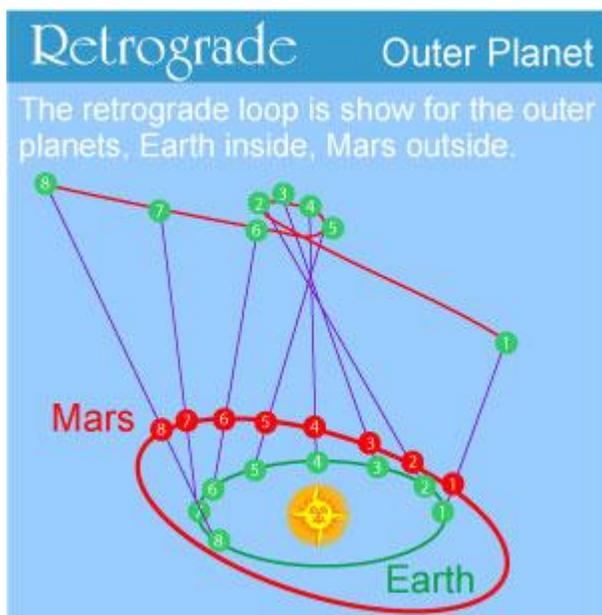
## Psychometrists

Astrologers are not unlike their more psychic cousins, the psychometrists, who use objects to get in touch with various types of information. Instead of handling some object belonging to the person in question, we astrologers tend to use the available astronomical facts as a touchstone or pointer to whatever meaning we are searching for.

Much of modern astrology is concerned with our paying close attention to the observed facts as determined by the science of astronomy and astrophysics. Perhaps, early in this century, astrologers were a little fuzzy as regards science, but nowadays, most astrologers are interested in learning all they can about the hard facts of deep space, the planets, and what not. My point here is that it seems the more we understand the actual facts, the better directed we are to any inner meanings these facts may indicate or point to. The real facts of any

## About Michael Erlewine

situation are the ultimate talisman or key to the meaning or directionality that may be involved. With this in mind, let's take a look at the very important phenomenon of planetary motion, in particular, the fact that the planets appear to go forward *and* backward thru the zodiac—the retrograde phenomenon.



### Outer Planets Retrograde

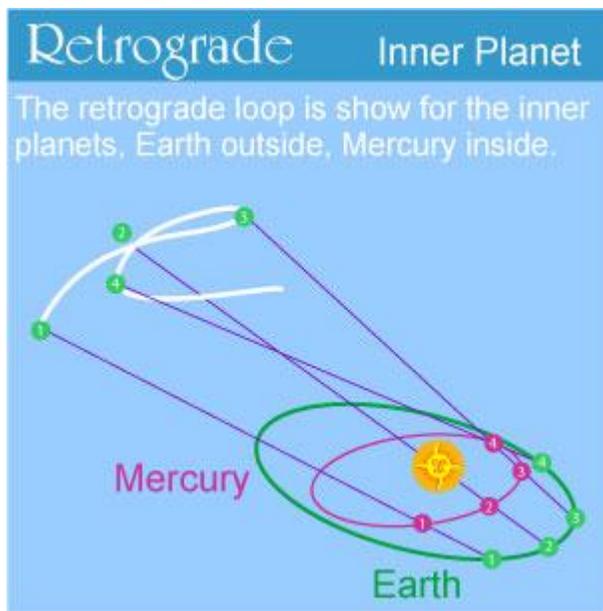
First, a brief review: The planets orbit the Sun in large, almost circular, orbits. Considered from a heliocentric or Sun-centered standpoint, there is no retrograde or backward motion, only the steady forward travel thru the zodiac—cycle after cycle, round after round. Retrograde, or backward motion, only exists from the Earth-centered or geocentric perspective. As the earth moves thru its orbit around the Sun, the other planets appear, at times, to move backward (retrograde) in the zodiac, much like a slower train seems to move backward when seen from within a faster moving train. Thus the position of a

## About Michael Erlewine

planet like Mars (as seen from Earth) appears to slow down in the sky, come to a complete halt (reaches its station or stopping point), and then begins to move backward—or retrograde, thru the zodiac. After a time of retrograde motion, it comes to a halt once again and then starts moving in a direct manner—or with forward motion.

In the diagram shown here, Earth is the green orbit and Mars is the red orbit. A number sequence shows how Earth views Mars as both orbits progress. Here are the details, as seen from Earth:

- (1) Mars appears direct in motion, moving along its orbit in the normal direction—the direction the signs of the zodiac are moving.
- (2) Mars is Stationary Retrograde, motionless in the sky, and about to begin moving backward against the flow of the zodiac.
- (3) Mars is Retrograde, now going over a part of the zodiac it has recently passed through.
- (4) Mars is conjunct Earth, in both the heliocentric and geocentric chart.
- (5) Mars is again motionless in the sky, as it reaches its farthest point backward in the zodiac, what is called Stationary Direct. It is about to go over a section of the zodiac for the 3rd time during this orbit.
- (6, 7, 8) Mars is proceeding on in direct motion along the zodiac.



### Inner Planets Retrograde

Each major planet moves thru the zodiac and appears to have one major zig-zag, or retrograde loop, per year, as the earth completes its annual cycle. The inner planets, Mercury and Venus, have a more complicated schedule. Astrologers note where this loop or zig-zag occurs in the zodiac each year. It is considered particularly significant if the retrograde loop occurs at a sensitive point in one's horoscope, such as at the position of a natal planet; in such a case, the retrograding planet may pass over this sensitive point up to three separate times—forward, backward, and forward again. What follows is an introduction to retrogrades.

This technique requires some understanding of the heliocentric workings of the planets. After all, the entire retrograde phenomenon is little more than a reflection of the Earth's motion around the Sun and in relation to the

## About Michael Erlewine

planet in question—this reflection is thus "thru a glass darkly" so to speak. In all of the following, the steady advance of the planet from the helio perspective should be understood and kept in mind—in reality, the planets only move forward in a counter-clockwise motion around the Sun.

Here are the details for an inner planet retrograde:

- (1) Mercury is moving in Direct Motion, in the direction of the zodiac.
- (2) Mercury and Earth are at what is called their Inferior Conjunction; Mercury is still in direct motion.
- (3) Mercury is motionless in the sky, at the point where it is Stationary Retrograde, about to go backward through the zodiac. It will pass over an area of the zodiac it just went through.
- (4) Mercury is motionless in the sky, at the point called Stationary Direct; at this point it will, once again, become direct in motion, passing over an area of the zodiac for the third time.

Retrograde	Phase Angle
The outer planets have a limit as to how much the helio and geo are separated.	
Mercury	22°46'
Venus	46°19'
Mars	41°01'
Jupiter	11° 05'
Saturn	06°01'
Uranus	02°59'
Neptune	01°54'
Pluto	01°27'

### Background

Except at the two moments when the Earth is conjunct or in opposition to a particular planet, the geocentric position always differs from the heliocentric position. The helio position is a kind of midpoint about which the geocentric position ebbs and flows, at least for those planets beyond the orbit of the Earth. The same thing is indicated for the inner planets (Mercury and Venus) by what is called their points of "greatest elongation" (geocentrically).

This difference between the helio and geo planet positions is based upon what we can call here the maximum phase angle possible between Earth and the planet in question. Below is a list of the maximum phase angles (average distance from Sun) for the outer planets using circular orbits —the fact of a non-circular orbit produces values that may, at times, be greater than those listed.

## About Michael Erlewine

### Planet Phase Angle

Mercury 22°46'

Venus 46°19'

Mars 41°01'

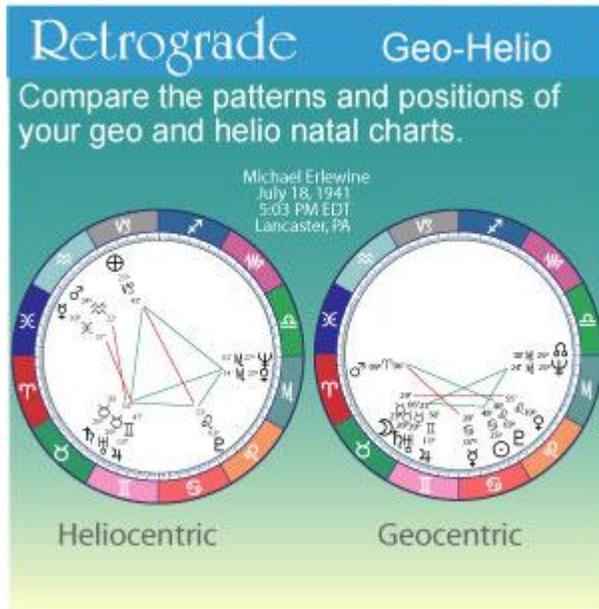
Jupiter 11° 05'

Saturn 06°01'

Uranus 02°59'

Neptune 01°54'

Pluto 01°27'



### **Geocentric and Heliocentric: Interface**

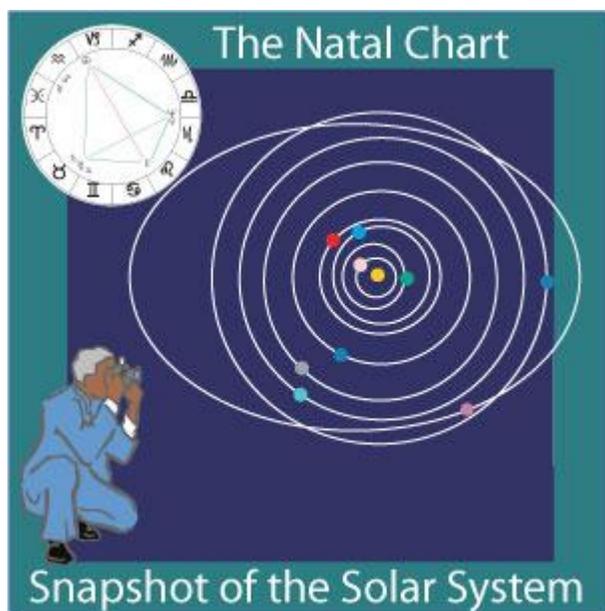
Most astrologers who have investigated the difference between a birth or event as seen from a geocentric and a heliocentric perspective find that the geo chart refers more to our personality—or the outer circumstances and

## About Michael Erlewine

appearances in which we find ourselves, while the helio chart points to our inner self, the part of us (who we are) that is living in these personal circumstances.

The position of Mars in the standard geocentric natal chart and the actual position of Mars in the zodiac in its circle around the Sun (heliocentric) can differ by some 41 degrees or more. For example, my geocentric Mars is at 9 degrees of Aries, but my heliocentric Mars is in 24 degrees of the sign Aquarius—a big difference. How might we interpret this?

Using standard astrological interpretation methods, we could say that, although my Mars appears to be in Aries (geo), in essence it has an Aquarian tone. Perhaps my rash Aries Mars always manages to accomplish some group or Aquarian goal. This type of geo/helio comparison is worth thinking about. When we examine our geo and helio charts side by side, with this approach in mind, some interesting thoughts can be forthcoming. Another, even more interesting technique is to compare the overall chart patterns in the geo chart against the overall chart patterns in the helio chart. This is covered elsewhere in this course.



### **Before and Behind**

What is interesting here is the fact that if we consider the helio position of a planet as being where that planet actually is, in fact, in its journey thru the zodiac around the Sun (which *is* a fact), then the geo position (except at conjunction/opposition) is ALWAYS either ahead of this helio position or behind it; in other words, the geocentric position for any planet runs for a time ahead of the helio position, stops in the sky, pauses, turns retrograde, and begins to move backward through the zodiac—over the ground it just covered. It continues backward until it crosses the helio position, and, still moving back (and now behind the helio position), it then comes to another slow stop; next, it begins to go forward again, finally catching up to and passing the helio position. This is what is called the retrograde loop.

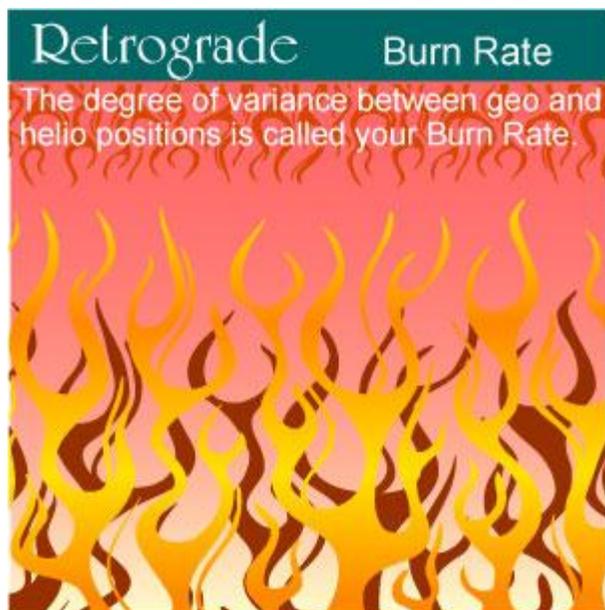
The heliocentric motion of the planet is always forward and the planet position never stops or wavers. It is the

## About Michael Erlewine

geocentric planet position that shows this forward and backward movement that we call the retrograde loop. Again, keep in mind that the geo position is nothing other than a snapshot of the helio planet's position; in other words, the geo planet position is how the given helio planet position "appears" from the earth's view—not how that planet is as an integral part of the solar system. And I am not saying here that appearances are not valid or worth considering—for we must consider them, because they do exist.

What I am pointing out, and you may want to think it through as I have had to do, is that the geo position for a planet results from how the planet appears to move as seen from earth (a view we all know). It is the earth's attempt to see where that planet is—yet that planet is a moving target, not because it ever moves any other way than forward, but because WE do. The earth is moving and this affects what we see, and that effect or appearance results in the retrograde loop. Now, what thoughts do these differences between the geo and helio positions suggest at any moment?

Here are some obvious ones: The simple fact that a considerable difference can exist between the geo and helio positions is noteworthy. For some individuals, there may be little or no difference between the geo and helio positions for a given planet on their chart. Perhaps this might indicate something along the lines of "what you see is what you get." In these cases, the outer (geo) position is identical to the inner (helio) position. Someone with little or no difference may be a natural when it comes to that planet. Its' function works smoothly. They are born with it in clear focus, and there is no variation between these two positions.



### **The Burn Rate**

On the other hand, for other individuals, there may be a great difference between the geo and the helio position for a given planet, and thus also an inner need or drive to reconcile these two positions and to make them one. The amount of difference between the helio and geo position for any planet has been termed the "burn rate," and we can speak of someone having a high burn rate for Mars (great difference) or a low burn rate for Mars (little or no difference).

The term "burn rate" comes from charts of individuals with a great difference between the geo and helio positions for a planet, and the fact that they may have to struggle to bring these two together—to make them one in their life. Perhaps this is an indication that they will undergo many experiences (much change) in regard to that particular planet over the course of their life. Perhaps each of us undergoes an initiation for each

## About Michael Erlewine

planet based upon the amount of difference between the geo and helio positions of it in our natal chart. We have different rates of change in life. Our burn rates differ—that is, how much it takes to pull any given area of our life (planet influence) together.

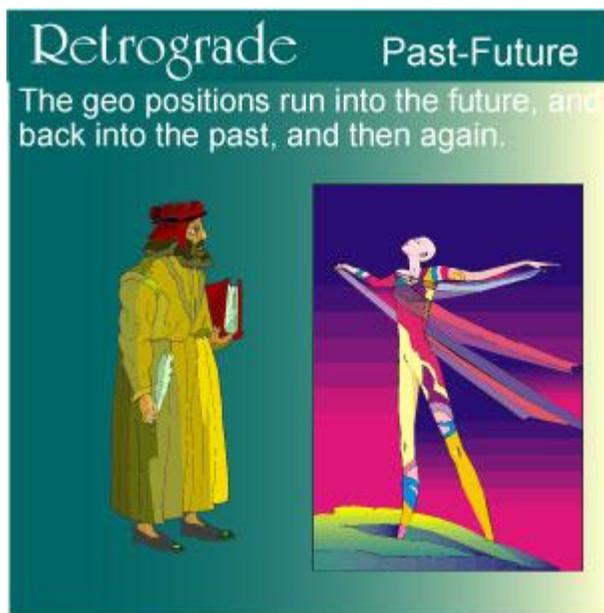
To make it easier to work with, we can even create a little index by dividing the difference between the geo and helio position for each planet by the maximum indicated in the table above. The result is an index from 0 to 99 percent (or higher)—the higher index indicating greater difference between the geo and helio positions, and therefore a higher burn rate.

For example, the maximum difference for Mars is  $41^{\circ} 01'$  (from the table) and the difference between my helio Mars at  $24^{\circ}$  Aquarius, and my geo Mars at  $9^{\circ}$  Aries, is some 45 degrees, actually greater than the average extreme for that planet:  $45$  divided by  $41^{\circ} 01'$  divided by  $45$  equals  $1.097$ . In this case, the total is rather large, indicating an extreme amount of change or difference between the geo and helio positions—a high burn rate. I can, therefore, expect a lot of initiation or change as regards the Mars principle in my life—whatever we could agree that might mean—and I have, in fact, had a lot of emotional experience in life, including that of being a performing musician for a good number of years. This example should give you some idea as to how you might use this technique.

Moreover, we can calculate this index for all of the planets (excepting the Sun and Moon, of course) and get a total index for the birth chart in question. A high total index might point to a lot of change within a single lifetime for a person in regard to that particular planet. The individual may have to go through a lot of changes to bring these two positions into alignment. On the other

## About Michael Erlewine

hand, a low index, a low Burn Rate, might indicate a relatively stable and smoothly operating life.



### **The Past, Present, and Future**

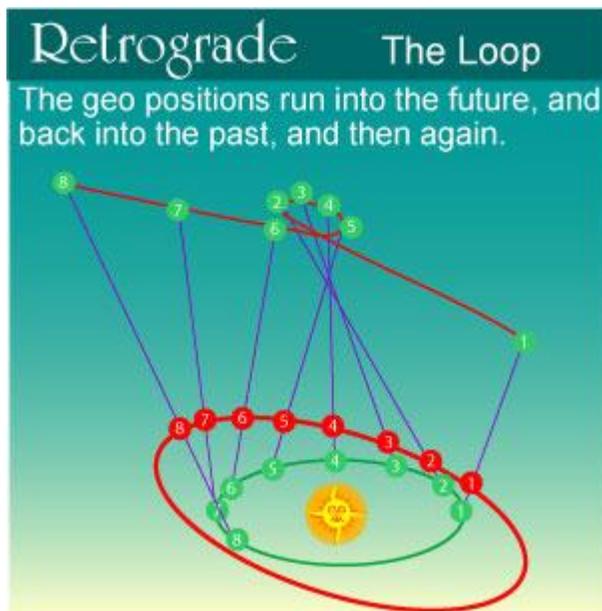
There is another measurement relating to the retrograde phenomenon that is, to me, even more interesting. This has to do with the fact that, as mentioned, the geo position (at any given moment), may be either ahead of or behind the helio position for a given planet. If we grant that the helio position somehow represents the mean position of the planet in the zodiac (the inner, or essential position), which, in fact, it does, then the geo position may either lead or trail this helio position by a lesser or greater amount. How are we to interpret this?

First, let's refresh ourselves on the difference in interpretation between the geo and helio position of any planet, keeping in mind that the geo planet position is the earth's view of that planet as it moves, always

## About Michael Erlewine

forward in the zodiac, in the sun-centered solar system, and the helio planet position is the position of the same planet in the actual solar system—with the Sun as center.

Astrologers who use helio positions, such as Dane Rudhyar and Robert Hand, for example, and myself as well, find that while the geo position charts the outward personality, circumstances, and how these appear in our lives (as traditional astrology states), the helio position, with its steady advance through the zodiac, marks the inner or true position (and meaning) of the planet.



### Retrograde and Direct

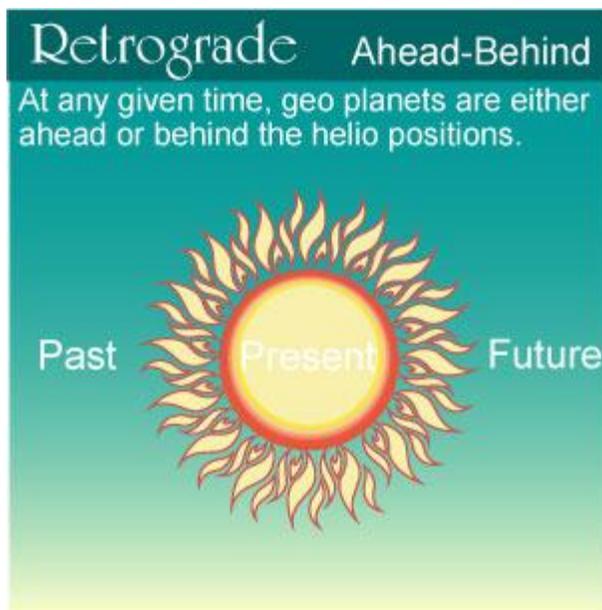
What, then, are we to make of the fact that the geo position, throughout the course of any year, alternately moves ahead of the Sun for a time, goes retrograde, retraces its steps for awhile, and then again turns direct?

## About Michael Erlewine

This geo position runs ahead of or behind the actual position of the planet in the solar system—as that planet is considered heliocentrically. At any given time, the geocentric position of any planet (when not conjunct or opposed) is either ahead of or behind the helio position. In fact, in the course of going retrograde and then direct, a planet passes over certain degrees of the zodiac three different times: two while going forward, and one while going backward—the retrograde loop. That is a lot of going over the same ground.

This retrograde loop is actually very fascinating when we consider the interpretation of it. What that loop points out is that, for any planet (and its meaning), there are times when the outer function and nature of that planet (geocentric) runs ahead—as into the future—of its true position, and other times when it lags or falls behind that true (helio) position. It is similar to our circumstances, in that appearances are seldom exactly at one with our true inner meaning.

Sometimes things are future-oriented, even hypothetical, as when we are trying something out or experimenting—things get ahead of themselves. At other times, when the planet falls behind its helio position, we are working with areas well-traveled—perhaps with something from our past—and we may, then, be much more deliberate and conservative.



### **Inner and Outer**

If you try looking at retrogrades this way, you will quickly find it a helpful technique for understanding where, in the scheme of things, a particular planet is. And, when using this view, the fact of whether a planet is direct or retrograde, while important, may not be AS important as determining whether it is running ahead of or behind its helio position. Is it in the future or in the past, and, how close to either? Are we going over a piece of ground (the zodiac) for the first, the second or the third time? These are questions worth considering.

Perhaps, at times, the external world of appearances or circumstances (geo) runs ahead of or before the real essence (helio) of the planet. At other times, events may trail behind the essence, or inner activity, bringing up the rear. Perhaps at some points of a year we are more far-seeing or future-oriented (geo position ranging ahead of the helio), while at other points we are more

## About Michael Erlewine

concerned with what has happened—with the past, and the geo position is then falling behind the helio. At times our mind may run before what is possible, while at other times we seem to be doing detective work—trying to figure out what has happened. Sometimes we are speculating on the future, while at other times we are more conservative, hanging onto our past.

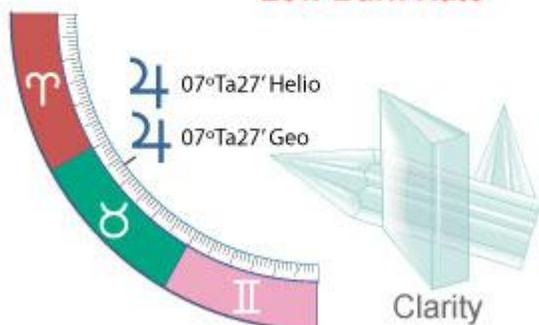
### Retrograde Conjunction

Earth is conjunct Jupiter, so both geo and helio positions are at one - identical.

Apr. 27, 1976

#### Geo in the PRESENT

#### Low Burn Rate



### The Retrograde Loop: Conjunct

Next is a detailed presentation of what happens during the retrograde phase of the outer planets. Give it a look. I don't know how many diagrams I have seen over the years presenting the retrograde phenomenon, but they all fail to point out the relationship between the geocentric and the heliocentric positions as described below.

## About Michael Erlewine

Please keep in mind that we cannot examine the problem of retrograde in detail without reference to both the helio and geo positions. They go together. The fact is that the helio moves ever forward in its circle through the zodiac, while our perspective—the geocentric view, ebbs and flow...now ranging ahead of the helio and now behind. Here are some of the details.

**Retrograde Conjunction**

Earth is conjunct Jupiter, so both geo and helio positions are at one - identical.

Apr. 27, 1976

♃ 07°Ta27' Helio

♃ 07°Ta27' Geo



**Low Burn Rate Geo in the PRESENT**

### Sun Conjunct Planet

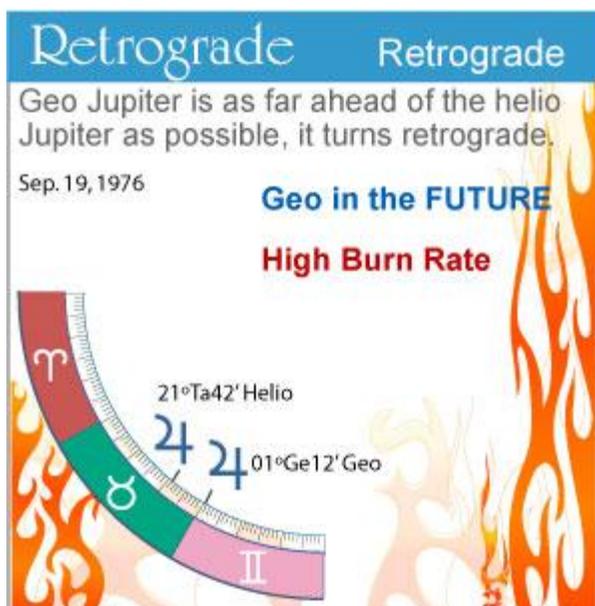
At the moment of conjunction, the helio and geo positions are perfectly aligned, and following this alignment there marks the beginning of a period which extends from the conjunction until the planet goes retrograde, a period during which the geocentric position of the planet ranges ahead of the heliocentric position and thus moves into new ground for this cycle.

At this point what you see is what you get. The geo position is neither in the future nor in the past but rather

## About Michael Erlewine

squarely in the present. After this point, our appearances (geo) are venturing into a section of the zodiac that is fresh or new, one that has not been experienced by the helio planet since the last complete cycle. We are in new territory, ahead of the game, so to speak, speculating. The difference between reality (helio) and appearances is growing, as the geo position moves out ahead of the helio. We have the lowest burn rate here.

Again, as the conjunction passes, the geo position of the planet moves ahead of the helio position and into uncharted territory, into degrees of the zodiac that the helio has not seen since the last cycle. In some sense, we appear to be moving into our own future—ranging ahead of reality.



### Planet Retrogrades

This marks a period where the geocentric position of the planet stops its forward motion and begins to move back

## About Michael Erlewine

over the new area it has just traversed, making a second pass over this particular area of the zodiac. This always takes place during the waning "square" of the Earth in relation to the outer planet in question.

**Retrograde**      **Retrograde**

Geo Jupiter is as far ahead of the helio Jupiter as possible, it turns retrograde.

Sep. 19, 1976

♃ 21°Ta42' Helio

♃ 01°Ge12' Geo



**High Burn Rate**      **Geo in the FUTURE**

### Planet Retrograde Interpretation

Appearances (geo) are still ahead of reality (helio), but we have stopped forging into new zodiac territory and are now going back over the same new ground we just covered. Things are not progressing farther into the future but they are still ahead of the game—which is measured by the actual helio position for the planet. We are becoming more realistic; there is still, however, a discrepancy between appearances and reality, although that discrepancy is narrowing day by day.

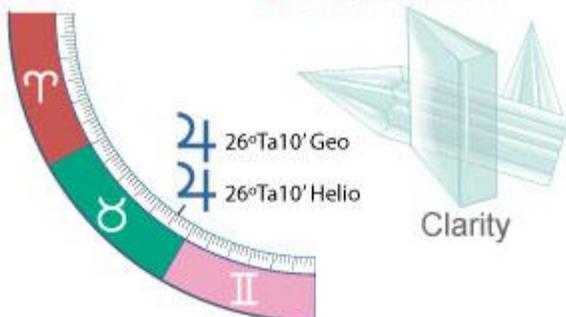
## Retrograde Opposition

The Earth is again conjunct Jupiter, this time while going backward in the zodiac.

Nov. 18, 1976

### Geo in the PRESENT

#### Low Burn Rate



### Sun Opposition Planet

Once again, this is a point where there is no difference between the geo and the helio positions, they are perfectly aligned and clear.

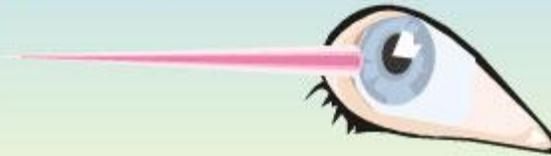
The time following this point marks a period when the geocentric position moves behind the heliocentric position, covering once again an area gone over before. Meanwhile, the helio position is covering an area just recently covered by the geocentric foray ahead into the zodiac.

**Retrograde**      **Opposition**

The Earth is again conjunct Jupiter, this time while going backward in the zodiac.

Nov. 18, 1976

4 26°Ta10' Geo  
4 26°Ta10' Helio



**Low Burn Rate**      **Geo in the PRESENT**

The image is a vertical rectangular graphic with a light blue background. At the top, the words 'Retrograde' and 'Opposition' are written in a white, serif font. Below this, a paragraph of text explains the astronomical event. The date 'Nov. 18, 1976' is centered. Two lines of coordinates are listed, each preceded by a large blue number '4'. To the right of the text is a stylized illustration of a human eye with a blue iris, looking to the left. A bright pink laser beam extends from the eye's pupil towards the left edge of the graphic. At the bottom, the phrases 'Low Burn Rate' and 'Geo in the PRESENT' are written in red and blue respectively.

### **Sun Opposition Planet Interpretation**

The geo position is no longer speculating, but has moved firmly into familiar territory, territory just covered by the helio. We are in the past—as far as the zodiac goes, and we are going backward into the past. We could say that, if we were speculative and future-oriented before, we are now conservative or past-oriented. We are on familiar turf, and may be consolidating our position. Still, we are building an ever larger discrepancy between the geo and helio positions, only this time we are digging in the history of where we have just been.



### Planet Goes Direct in Motion

At this point, the planet slows to a stop and changes direction once again, from retrograde to direct, and begins to cover the same zodiac territory for the 3rd and final time during this loop.

This marks a period when the geocentric position moves up from behind so as to catch up to the helio position at the next conjunction. Also, the helio position now has reached the limit of the geo position's previous sweep, and is now forging ahead into new ground that was NOT scanned by the geo. This always takes place during the waxing "square" of the Earth in relation to the outer planet in question.

## About Michael Erlewine

**Retrograde** **Direct**

Geo Jupiter is as far behind of the helio Jupiter as possible, it turns direct.

Jan. 15, 1977

♄ 21°Ta24'Geo

♄ 01°Ge24'Helio



**High Burn Rate** **Geo in the PAST**

### **Planet Direct Interpretation**

If we want to look for our most conservative position, then here it is. We are moving forward, but over ground we have repeatedly crossed. This is our third pass over the same zodiac degrees, so we should know it by now. We are coming from behind, perhaps informed by the familiarity and history of our repetition. We may be reactionary and conservative, but it is our own history informing us.

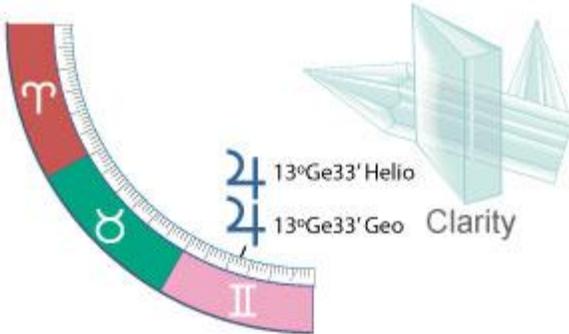
## Retrograde Conjunction

Earth is conjunct Jupiter, so both geo and helio positions are at one - identical.

Jun. 4, 1977

**Geo in the PRESENT**

**Low Burn Rate**

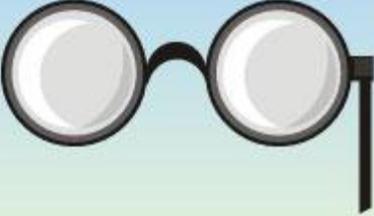


### Sun Conjunct Planet

Sun Conjunct Planet (again)—this marks the point where the geocentric position of the planet has caught up with the helio position and they are one; from this point on the geo position proceeds to forge ahead.

**Retrograde Conjunction**  
Earth is conjunct Jupiter, so both geo and helio positions are at one - identical.  
Jun. 4, 1977

♃ 13°Ge33' Helio  
♃ 13°Ge33' Geo



**Low Burn Rate Geo in the PRESENT**

### **Sun Conjunct Planet Interpretation**

And here again, what you see is what you get. The geo position is neither in the future nor in the past but squarely in the present. After this point, our appearances (geo) are venturing into a section of the zodiac that is fresh or new, one that has not been experienced by the helio planet since the last complete cycle. We are in new territory—ahead of the game, so to speak, speculating. The difference between reality (helio) and appearances is growing, as the geo position moves out ahead of the helio. We have the lowest burn rate here.

As the conjunction passes, the geo position of the planet moves ahead of helio position and into uncharted territory, into degrees of the zodiac the helio has not seen since the last cycle. In some sense, we appear to be moving into our own future—ranging ahead of reality.

## About Michael Erlewine

### Event Geo Helio Date

Sun Conjunct Jupiter Geo=07°Ta27' Helio=07°Ta27'  
Apr. 27, 1976

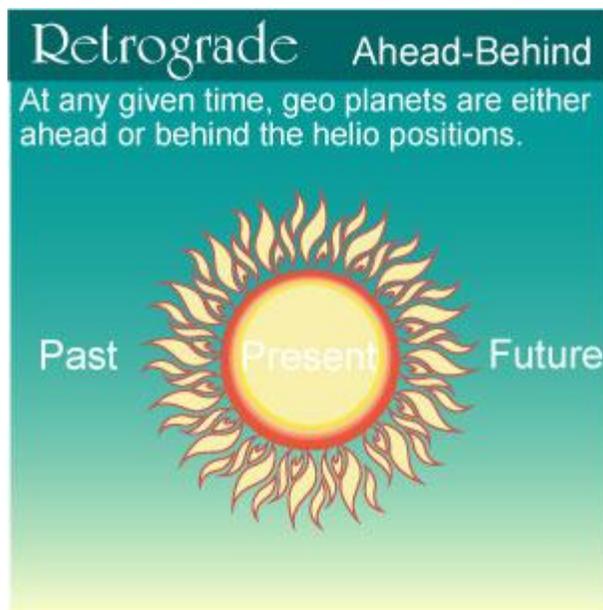
Jupiter Retrogrades Geo=01°Ge12' Helio=21°Ta42'  
Sep. 19, 1976

Sun Opposition Jupiter Geo=26°Ta10' Helio=26°Ta10'  
Nov. 18, 1976

Jupiter Direct Motion Geo=21°Ta10' Helio=01°Ge24'  
Jan. 15, 1977

Sun Conjunct Jupiter Geo=13°Ge33' Helio=13°Ge33'  
Jun. 04, 1977

Note: The geocentric position in the zodiac where the planet goes retrograde is about where the heliocentric position will be when that planet goes direct. In a similar vein, the heliocentric position of the planet at retrograde becomes the same place of the geocentric position of that planet going direct.



## Summary

Thus, the geocentric and the heliocentric position both have a time within the cycle during which they lead or are sampling new degrees of the zodiac, that is, when they are going over fresh zodiac area. In fact, the helio position is the midpoint or focus about which the geo position loops, which is what we have been pointing out all along.

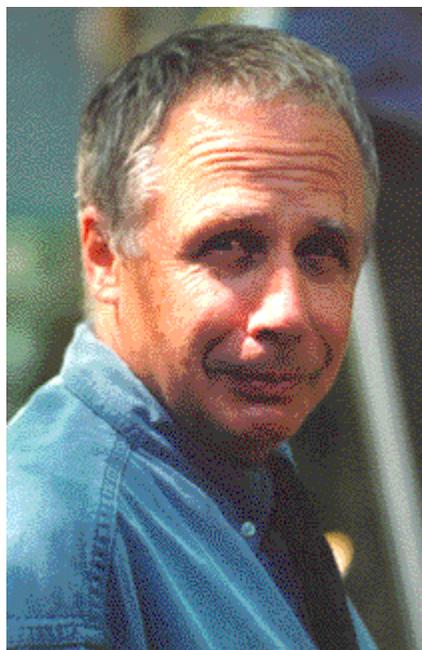
The point in the zodiac where the planet goes retrograde and the point where the planet goes direct—these are the points where maximum phase angle takes place. This may amount to an alternate form of the square aspect, where, instead of 90-degrees being the limit, the limit becomes the maximum phase angle—in effect, it becomes the stations or points themselves. In other words, this technique measures the point of maximum phase angle between the Earth and any other planet. This is perhaps another approach to the concept

## About Michael Erlewine

of the "square" aspect, only here we have a measure of the amount of change required for the two planets to become one—we have an index of change.

This technique is one of a number of techniques that are very useful for charts where there is no exact birth time. For each planet we can determine the percentage of difference between the geo and the helio position. In addition, we can calculate a total for the entire chart—using all of the planets, but leaving aside the Sun and the Moon. And then for each planet we can determine where in the retrograde cycle it is. Is the geo position ahead of the helio? Is it ahead and direct in motion, or ahead and retrograde in motion? Or, is the geo position behind the helio position? Again, is it behind and direct in motion or behind and retrograde in motion?

## About Michael Erlewine



### **Astrologer Michael Erlewine**

Entrepreneur Michael Erlewine, an internationally-known astrologer, has studied and practiced astrology for over 40 years. He is a respected author, teacher, lecturer, personal consultant, programmer and conference producer.

Erlewine pioneered computerized astrology. In 1977 he became the very first astrologer to program astrology on microcomputers, making those programs available to his fellow astrologers. He founded the first astrology software company, Matrix Software, in 1978, and this company, along with Microsoft, is the oldest software company still on the Internet.

Michael, joined by his astrologer-brother Stephen Erlewine, revolutionized astrology by creating, for the first time, microcomputer software capable of producing

## About Michael Erlewine

written astrological reports, research systems, high-resolution chart wheels, geographic and star maps, as well as many other computer applications relevant to astrology.

Along the way, Matrix, the company Michael founded, has produced audio programs of astrology, created personal astrological videos and infomercials, and has accomplished many other pioneering feats as well.

Michael went on to found the All-Music Guide, the All-Movie Guide, and other major entertainment sites. He has developed astrological content under contract with MSN and AOL, and the companies he has founded have received scores of awards. Michael himself has received major awards from the American Federation of Astrologers, from UAC (United Astrological Conferences), from AFA (American Federation of Astrologers), and from PIA (Professional Astrologers Incorporated); he has also been the recipient of multiple online awards.

Michael and Stephen Erlewine, together, have published a yearly astrological calendar for almost 30 years—since 1969, and, over the years, Michael himself has produced and put on more than 36 conferences pertaining to either astrology or Buddhism.

Michael has a least two other careers. In the 1960s, he was a musician. He hitchhiked with Bob Dylan, and was the lead singer for the Prime Movers Blues Band (Iggy Pop was his drummer). Their band opened for bands such as Cream, at the Fillmore, in San Francisco, during the Summer of Love.

An expert in blues music, Michael has interviewed (and documented the interviews) of dozens of blues musicians. His writings on this subject have been published. He has written many articles and books on

## About Michael Erlewine

astrology as well, and is currently the curator of the Heart Center Astrological Library, which is perhaps the largest astrological research library in existence today. Michael has made two pilgrimages to Tibet, and is a practicing Buddhist. He has been married for 35 years, and has four children. He lives with his wife, Margaret, in Big Rapids, Michigan. He can be reached at: Michael@StarTypes.com.

***Internationally known astrologer and author, Noel Tyl, author of 34 books on astrology, has this to say about Michael Erlewine:***

“Michael Erlewine is the giant influence whose creativity is forever imprinted on all astrologers’ work since the beginning of the Computer era! He is the man who single-handedly applied computer technology to astrological measurement, research, and interpretation, and has been the formative and leading light of astrology’s modern growth. Erlewine humanized it all, adding perception and incisive practical analyses to modern, computerized astrology. Now, for a second generation of astrologers and their public, Erlewine’s genius continues with StarTypes ... and it’s simply amazing!”

### **Astro\*Image Cards**

Aside from his current work as a consultant for NBC’s iVillage, and for Astrology.com, Erlewine has personally designed over 6,000 tarot-like astrology cards, making authentic astrology available to people with little or no experience in this area. These Astro\*Image™ cards can be found in a variety of the astrological software

## About Michael Erlewine

programs, and in a number of eBooks as well. Some examples can be found at [WWW.StarTypes.com](http://WWW.StarTypes.com). A link to his astrological software will be found there also.

### **Personal Readings in Astrology**

Michael has been doing personal astrological readings for almost forty years. He enjoys sharing his knowledge with others. Although his busy schedule makes it difficult to honor all requests, feel free to email him ([Michael@Erlewine.net](mailto:Michael@Erlewine.net)) if you wish a personal chart reading. He will let you know if his current schedule allows him the time to work with you.

The sections that follow give more details about Michael Erlewine and his very active Heart Center.



### **The Heart Center House**

In 1972, Michael and Margaret Erlewine established the Heart Center, a center for community studies. Today, the Heart Center continues to be a center for astrological and spiritual work. Over the years, hundreds of invited guests have stayed at the Heart Center, some for just a night, others for many years. Astrologers,

## About Michael Erlewine

authors, musicians, Sanskrit scholars, swamis—you name it, the Heart Center has been home to a wide variety of individuals, all united by their interest in spiritual or cultural ideas.



### **Heart Center Library**

Erlewine also founded and directs The Heart Center Astrological Library, the largest astrological library in the United States (and possibly in the world) open to researchers. Meticulously catalogued, the current project of the library is the scanning of the Table of Contents of all the major books and periodicals on astrology.

The library does not have regular hours, so if you wish to visit, please contact ahead of time:

Michael@Erlewine.net

## About Michael Erlewine



### **The All-Music Guide / All-Movie Guide**

Michael Erlewine's devotion to studying and playing the music of Black Americans, in particular blues, led him to travel to the small blues clubs of Chicago, to hear—live—blues greats such as Little Walter, Magic Sam, Big Walter Horton and many others. He went on to interview dozens of performers. Many of these interviews took place in 1969 and 1970, at the original Ann Arbor Blues Festivals—the first electric blues festivals of any size ever held in North America—later interviews took place at the Ann Arbor Blues & Jazz Festivals.

With their extensive knowledge of blues music, Michael Erlewine and his brother Daniel were asked to play host, during these early festivals, to a score or so of professional blues musicians and their bands. They were in charge of serving them food and (of course) drink. Michael went on to interview most of these performers with an audio recorder, and, in later interviews, he used video as well.

## About Michael Erlewine

This interviewing led to more study, and ultimately resulted in Michael founding and developing AMG—the All-Music Guide—which, today, is the single largest database of music reviews and documentation on the planet.

Michael Erlewine started from a one-room office. The reviewers and music aficionados of the time laughed at his attempt to cover all music, but he persisted, and the all-Music Guide appeared as a Gopher Site—before the World Wide Web even existed—a new database of popular music for all music lovers.

Over the years, as AMG grew, the All-Movie Guide and the All-Game Guide were created as well and flourished also. Michael later established ClassicPosters.com, a guide devoted to the history and documentation of rock n' roll posters—some 35,000 of them!

These guides changed the way music was reviewed and rated. Previous to AMG, review guides, such as the "Rolling Stones Record Guide," were typically run by a few sophisticated reviewers, and the emphasis was on the expertise of the reviewer and their point of view. Erlewine insisted that all artists be treated equally, each on their own merit, and did not compare artist to artist. What is important, Michael emphasized, is finding the best music any artist has produced, not in noting whether they are better or worse than Jimmie Hendrix or Bob Dylan.

Erlewine sold AMG in 1996. There were 150 fulltime employees and 500 free-lance writers working for the company at that time. During this time, Michael had also edited and published a large number of books and CD-ROMs on film and music. While AMG was owned and run by Michael, there were no advertisements on the site and nothing was being charged. Erlewine wrote

## About Michael Erlewine

that, "All of us deserve to have access to our own popular culture. That is what AMG and ClassicPosters.com are all about." Today, AMG reviews can be found everywhere across the Internet. Erlewine's music collection is housed in an AMG warehouse, it numbers nearly 500,000 CDs.



### **Heart Center Meditation Room**

Michael Erlewine has been active in Buddhism since the 1950s. Here, in his own words:

“Back in the late 1950s and early 1960, Buddhism was one of the many ideas we stayed up late talking about, while we smoked cigarettes and drank lots of coffee, along with ideas about existentialism, poetry and the like.

“It was not until I met the Tibetan Lama, Chogyam Trungpa Rinpoche, in 1974, that I understood Buddhism not just as a Philosophy but also as a path, as a way to get through life. Having been raised Catholic—serving as an altar boy, learning church Latin and all that—I had

## About Michael Erlewine

not been given any kind of a path, other than the path of faith. I hung onto that faith as long as I could, but it told me very little about how to live and work in this world.

“I had been trying to learn the basics of Tibetan Buddhism before I even met Trungpa Rinpoche, but the spark able to weld everything together was missing. Trungpa provided that spark. I got to be his chauffeur for a weekend and design a poster for his public talk.

“But most important, only about an hour after we met, Trungpa took me into a small room for a couple of hours and taught me to meditate. I didn’t even understand what I was learning. All that I knew was that I was learning about myself.

“After that meeting, I began to understand more of what I read, but it was almost ten years later before I met my teacher, Khenpo Karthar Rinpoche, the abbot of Karma Triyana Dharmachakra Monastery, located in the mountains above Woodstock, New York. Meeting Rinpoche was life-changing.



### **Heart Center Symbol**

“It was not long after this meeting that we started the Heart Center Meditation Center in Big Rapids, Michigan, which is still active today. My wife and I became more and more involved with the monastery in New York, and ended up serving on several boards, becoming fundraisers for the monastery as well. We helped to raise the funds necessary to build a 3-year retreat center in upstate New York—one for men and one for women.

“We established KTD Dharma Goods, a mail-order dharma goods business designed to assist practitioners in locating any meditation materials they might have need of. We also published many sadhanas—the traditional Buddhist practice texts—and other teachings as well, in print and on audio tape.

Though years have gone by, I am still working with Khenpo Rinpoche and the Sangha at the Woodstock monastery. Some years ago, Rinpoche surprised my wife and me by telling us we should go to Tibet and meet His Holiness, the 17th Karmapa, and that we should go right away, that summer. And I hate to even leave the house!

That trip and a second trip some years later were pilgrimages that turned out to be life changing. Our center in Big Rapids now has a shrine room (a separate building of its own) and even a small Stupa. Pictures are shown below.

I can never repay the kindness that Khenpo Rinpoche and the other Rinpoches I have taken teachings from have shown me.

## About Michael Erlewine

### Music Career



Michael Erlewine's career in music started early on, when he dropped out of high school and hitchhiked to Venice West, in Santa Monica, California, in an attempt to catch a ride on the tail end of the Beatnik era. This was 1960, and he was a little late for that, but right on time for the folk music revival that was just beginning to bloom. Like many other people his age, Erlewine traveled from college center to college center across the nation—from Ann Arbor to Berkeley to Cambridge to Greenwich Village—for there was a well-beaten track upon which traveled the young folk musicians of the future.

Erlewine, who also played folk guitar, hitchhiked for a stint with a young Bob Dylan, and then more extensively with guitar virtuoso and instrumentalist, Perry Lederman. Erlewine helped Dylan put on his first concert in Ann Arbor. He hung out with people like Ramblin' Jack Elliot, Joan Baez, The New Lost City Ramblers, and The County Gentlemen.

## About Michael Erlewine

In 1965, the same year that the Grateful Dead were forming, Michael Erlewine, his brother Daniel, and a few others, formed the first new-style band in the Midwest—the Prime Movers Blues Band. Iggy Pop was their drummer, and it was during his stint in this band that he got the name ‘Iggy’. This was the beginning of the hippie era. Michael was the band’s lead singer, and played an amplified Chicago-style blues harmonica. He still plays.

Erlewine was also the manager of the band, and personally designed and silkscreened the band’s posters, one of which is shown below.

The Prime Movers became a seminal band throughout the Midwest and they traveled as far as the West Coast, where they spent the year of 1967—the “Summer of Love”—playing at all the famous clubs, and opening for artists such as Eric Clapton and Cream, at the Fillmore Auditorium.

As the 60’s wound down and bands began to break up, Erlewine was still studying the music of American Blacks, in particular—blues. Because of their knowledge of the blues and their familiarity with many of the blues players, Michael and his brother Dan were invited to help host the first major electric blues festival ever held in the United States—the 1969 Ann Arbor Blues Festival. They got to wine and dine the performers and to look after them in general.

Michael interviewed (audio and video) most of the blues players (musicians) at the first two Ann Arbor Blues Festivals, including: Big Joe Turner, Luther Allison, Carey Bell, Bobby Bland, Clifton Chenier, James Cotton, Pee Wee Crayton, Arthur Crudup, Jimmy Dawkins,

## About Michael Erlewine

Doctor Ross, Sleepy John Estes, Lowell Fulson, Buddy Guy, John Lee Hooker, Howlin' Wolf, J.B. Hutto, Albert King, B.B King, Freddie King, Sam Lay, Lightnin' Hopkins, Manse Lipscomb, Robert Lockwood, Magic Sam, Fred Mcdowell, Muddy Waters, Charlie Musslewhite, Louis Myers , Junior Parker, Brewer Phillips, Otis Rush, Johnnie Shines, George Smith, Son House, Victoria Spivey, Hubert Sumlin, Sunnyland Slim, Roosevelt Sykes, Eddie Taylor, Hound Dog Taylor, Big Mama Thornton, Eddie Vinson, Sippie Wallace, Junior Wells, Big Joe Williams, Robert Pete Williams, Johnny Young, and Mighty Joe Young.

### ***Email:***

Michael Erlewine can be reached at  
Michael@Erlewine.net